ARTISAN®
TECHNOLOGY GROUP

Your **definitive** source for quality pre-owned equipment.

**Artisan Technology Group**
(217) 352-9330 | sales@artisantg.com | artisantg.com

**Full-service, independent repair center**
with experienced engineers and technicians on staff.

**We buy your excess, underutilized, and idle equipment**
along with credit for buybacks and trade-ins.

**Custom engineering**
so your equipment works exactly as you specify.

- Critical and expedited services
- In stock / Ready-to-ship
- Leasing / Rentals / Demos
- ITAR-certified secure asset solutions

**Expert team | Trust guarantee | 100% satisfaction**

All trademarks, brand names, and brands appearing herein are the property of their respective owners.

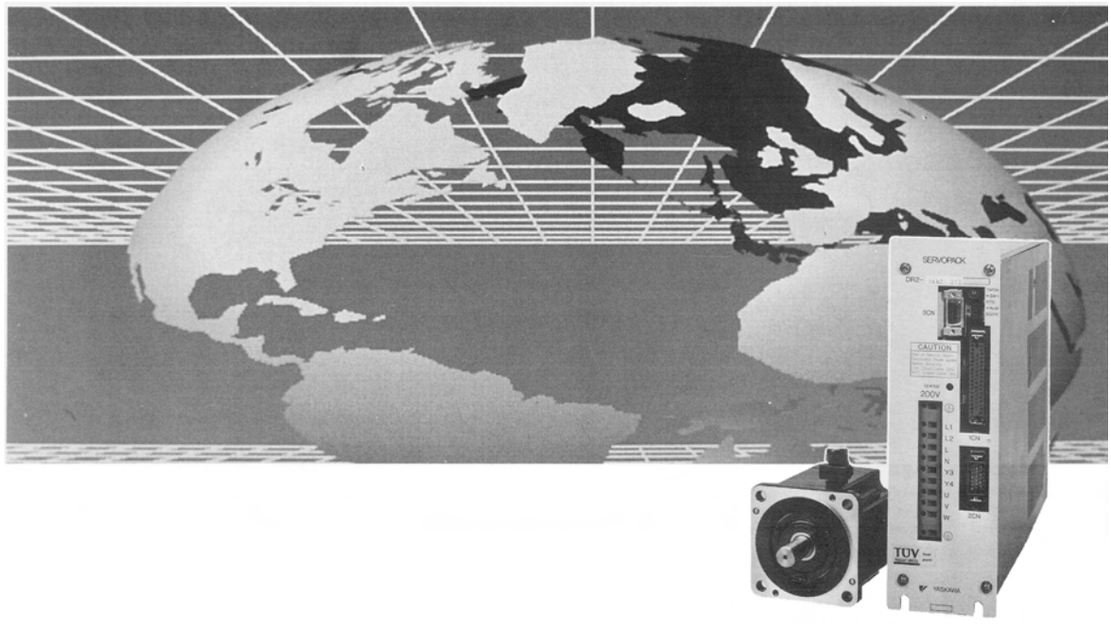
Find the *Yaskawa DR2-02AC-NY41* at our website: *Click HERE*

YASKAWA

# Σ Series SGM/SGMP/DR2
# USER'S MANUAL

AC Servomotors and Driver

SGM/SGMP Servomotors
DR2 Servopack




YASKAWA

MANUAL NO. TSE-S800-17D

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# PREFACE

The rapid progress being made in today's automation and information technologies is resulting in a growing need for even more-advanced motion control for future high-tech equipment. The end result is a need for devices that can provide more-precise and quicker motion at higher speeds. Servo control technology makes this possible. Launched by Yaskawa in 1993, the Σ Series consists of innovative AC Servos that were developed using leading-edge servo control technology.

This manual covers all products information on the Σ Series SGM□/DR2, which feature superior functions and performance. This manual was designed to provide comprehensible information for users who are about to use a servo for the first time as well as for users who already have experience in using servos. This manual enables users to understand what Σ-Series AC Servos are all about and how to design, install, operate, and maintain a servo system. Keep this manual in a convenient location and refer to it whenever necessary in operating and maintaining the servo system.

YASKAWA ELECTRIC CORPORATION

## General Precautions

- Some drawings in this manual are shown with the protective cover or shields removed, in order to describe the detail with more clarity. Make sure all covers and shields are replaced before operating this product.
- Some drawings in this manual are shown as typical example and may differ from the shipped product.
- This manual may be modified when necessary because of improvement of the product, modification or changes in specifications.
  Such modification is made as a revision by renewing the manual No.
- To order a copy of this manual, if your copy has been damaged or lost, contact your YASKAWA representative listed on the last page stating the manual No. on the front cover.
- YASKAWA is not responsible for accidents or damages due to any modification of the product made by the user since that will void our guarantee.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# NOTES FOR SAFE OPERATION

Read this manual thoroughly before installation, operation, maintenance or inspection of the AC Servo Drives. In this manual, the NOTES FOR SAFE OPERATION are classified as “WARNING” or “CAUTION”.

⚠ WARNING

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious personal injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate personal injury and/or damage to the equipment.

In some instances, items described in ⚠ CAUTION may also result in a serious accident. In either case, follow these important items.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## ⚠ WARNING

(INSTALLATION)

- After voltage resistance test, wait at least five minutes before servicing the product.
  Failure to observe this warning may result in electric shock.

(WIRING)

- Grounding must be in accordance with the national code and consistent with sound local practices.
  Failure to observe this warning may lead to electric shock or fire.

(OPERATION)

- Never touch any rotating motor parts during operation.
  Failure to observe this warning may result in personal injury.

(INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE)

- Be sure to turn OFF power before inspection or maintenance.
  Otherwise, electric shock may result.
- After turning OFF power, wait at least five minutes before servicing the product.
  Otherwise, residual electric charges may result in electric shock.

## ⚠ CAUTION

(RECEIVING)

- Use the specified combination of SERVOMOTOR and SERVOPACK.
  Failure to observe this caution may lead to fire or failure.

(INSTALLATION)

- Never use the equipment where it may be exposed to splashes of water, corrosive or flammable gases, or near flammable materials.
  Failure to observe this caution may lead to electric shock or fire.

(WIRING)

- Do not connect three−phase power supply to output terminals Ⓤ Ⓥ and Ⓦ.
  Failure to observe this caution may lead to personal injury or fire.
- Securely tighten screws on the power supply and motor output terminals.
  Failure to observe this caution can result in a fire.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## ⚠ CAUTION

(OPERATION)

- To avoid inadvertent accidents, run the SERVOMOTOR only in test run (without load).
  Failure to observe this caution may result in personal injury.
- Before starting operation with a load connected, set up user constants suitable for the machine.
  Starting operation without setting up user constants may lead to overrun failure.
- Before starting operation with a load connected, make sure emergency-stop procedures are in place.
  Failure to observe this caution may result in personal injury.
- During operation, do not touch the heat sink.
  Failure to observe this caution may result in burns.

(INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE)

- Do not disassemble the SERVOMOTOR.
  Failure to observe this caution may result in electric shock or personal injury.
- Never change wiring while power is ON.
  Failure to observe this caution may result in electric shock or personal injury.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# Manual Contents

This manual provides Σ-Series users with information on the following:

- An overview of servo systems for first-time users.
- Checking the product on delivery and basic applications of the servo.
- Servo applications.
- Selecting an appropriate servo for your needs and placing an order.
- Inspection and maintenance.

# Manual Structure

All chapters in this manual are classified into one or more of three areas according to their contents: **A**, **B**, and **C**. Refer to the applicable chapters for the information you require.

**A:** Chapters explaining how to select a servo: For users who wish to gain a basic understanding of Σ Series products or who need to select an appropriate servo.

**B:** Chapters explaining how to design a servo system: For users who are about to design, install, and operate a Σ-Series Servo Control System.

**C:** Chapters explaining maintenance: For users who are going to maintain and troubleshoot Σ-Series products.


| Chapter | Title | Page | Area |
|---|---|---|---|
| CHAPTER 1 | **For First-time Users of AC Servos** | 1 | A, B |
| | Provides an overview of servos and the Σ Series | | |
| CHAPTER 2 | **Basic Uses of Σ-series Products** | 15 | B |
| | Describes steps to take when product is received, plus basic wiring and application methods. | | |
| CHAPTER 3 | **Applications of Σ-series Products** | 49 | B |
| | Describes the effective usage of Σ-Series features according to application. | | |
| CHAPTER 4 | **Using the Digital Operator** | 169 | B |
| | Describes operating procedures for Σ-Series servos, turning features ON and OFF, setting control constants, etc. | | |
| CHAPTER 5 | **Servo Selection and Data Sheets** | 203 | A, B |
| | Describes selection methods for Σ-Series servos and peripherals and provides servo specifications. | | |
| CHAPTER 6 | **Inspection, Maintenance, and Troubleshooting** | 387 | C |
| | Describes user maintenance and troubleshooting. | | |
| CHAPTER 7 | **Measures to Satisfy the Requirements of EMC Directive** | 415 | B |
| | Provides the measures to conform to the EMC Directive. | | |




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**APPENDIXES**


| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **A** | Differences between DR2 and DR1, SGDA and SGD Servopacks | 423 | ..... | **A, B. C** |
| **B** | Servo Adjustment | 429 | ..... | **B, C** |
| **C** | List of I/O Signals | 445 | ..... | **A, B, C** |
| **D** | List of User Constants | 465 | ..... | **B, C** |
| **E** | List of Alarm Displays | 477 | ..... | **B, C** |
| **F** | Relationship between Reference Forms and User Constants | 481 | ..... | **B, C** |
| **G** | Reviewing the Full-closed Loop Specifications | 489 | ..... | **B, C** |

**INDEX** ..... 497 ..... **A, B, C**




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# Basic Terms

Unless otherwise specified, the following definitions are used:

Servomotor: Σ-Series SGM/SGMP Servomotor

Servopack: An amplifier (Trademark of Yaskawa servo amplifier “DR2 Servopack”)

Servodrive: A SGM/SGMP Servomotor and an amplifier (DR2 Servopack)

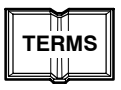
Servo system: A complete servo control system consisting of servodrive, host controller, and peripheral devices

# Visual Aids

The following aids are used to indicate certain types of information for easier reference.



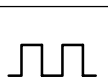
Indicates references for additional information.



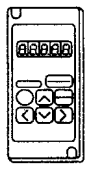

Technical terms placed in bold in the text are briefly explained in a “TERMS” section at the bottom of the page. The following kinds of technical terms are explained: Technical terms that need to be explained to users who are not very familiar with servo systems or electronic devices and technical terms specific to Σ Series Servos that need to be explained in descriptions of functions.




The text indicated by this icon is applicable only to Servopack in speed/torque control mode.




The text indicated by this icon is applicable only to Servopack in position control mode.




The text indicated by this icon explains the operating procedure using hand-held type digital operator (Type: JUSP-OP02A-1).

**NOTE** A Σ-Series Servodrive alone cannot ensure the functionality and performance of the entire machine control system. It must be combined with an appropriate machine and host controller so that the entire control system works properly. Therefore, carefully read the instruction manuals for the machine to be used before attempting to operate the servodrive.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**©Yaskawa, 1996**

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by any means, mechanical, electronic, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Yaskawa. No patent liability is assumed with respect to the use of the information contained herein. Moreover, because Yaskawa is constantly striving to improve its high-quality products, the information contained in this manual is subject to change without notice. Every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this manual. Nevertheless, Yaskawa assumes no responsibility for errors or omissions. Neither is any liability assumed for damages resulting from the use of the information contained in this publication.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# CONTENTS


**CHAPTER 1 FOR FIRST-TIME USERS OF AC SERVOS . . . . . 1**

1.1 Basic Understanding of AC Servos . . . . . 2
1.1.1 Servo Mechanisms . . . . . 2
1.1.2 Servo Configuration . . . . . 5
1.1.3 Features of Σ-Series Servos . . . . . 11

**CHAPTER 2 BASIC USES OF Σ-SERIES PRODUCTS . . . . . 15**

2.1 Precautions . . . . . 16
2.1.1 Notes on Use . . . . . 16
2.2 Installation . . . . . 18
2.2.1 Checking on Delivery . . . . . 18
2.2.2 Installing the Servomotor . . . . . 19
2.2.3 Installing the Servopack . . . . . 22
2.3 Connection and Wiring . . . . . 25
2.3.1 Connecting to Peripheral Devices . . . . . 25
2.3.2 Main Circuit Wiring and Power ON Sequence . . . . . 28
2.3.3 Examples of Connecting I/O Signal Terminals . . . . . 30
2.4 Conducting a Test Run . . . . . 37
2.4.1 Test Run in Two Steps . . . . . 37
2.4.2 Step 1: Conducting a Test Run for Motor without Load . . . . . 39
2.4.3 Step 2: Conducting a Test Run with the Motor Connected to the Machine . . . . . 43
2.4.4 Supplementary Information on Test Run . . . . . 45
2.4.5 Minimum User Constants Required and Input Signals . . . . . 47

**CHAPTER 3 APPLICATIONS OF Σ-SERIES PRODUCTS . . . . . 49**

3.1 Setting User Constants According to Machine Characteristics . . . . . 52
3.1.1 Changing the Direction of Motor Rotation . . . . . 52
3.1.2 Setting the Overtravel Limit Function . . . . . 54
3.1.3 Restricting Torque . . . . . 57
3.2 Setting User Constants According to Host Controller . . . . . 64
3.2.1 Inputting Speed Reference . . . . . 64
3.2.2 Inputting Position Reference . . . . . 69
3.2.3 Using Encoder Output . . . . . 76
3.2.4 Using Contact I/O Signals . . . . . 80
3.2.5 Using Electronic Gear . . . . . 82
3.2.6 Using Contact Input Speed Control . . . . . 86
3.2.7 Using Torque Control . . . . . 91
3.2.8 Using Torque Feed-forward Function . . . . . 97
3.2.9 Using Torque Restriction by Analog Voltage Reference . . . . . 98
3.2.10 Using the Reference Pulse Inhibit Function (INHIBIT) . . . . . 100
3.2.11 Using the Reference Pulse Input Filter Selection Function . . . . . 101
3.2.12 Using the Analog Monitor . . . . . 102
3.3 Setting Up the Σ Servopack . . . . . 103
3.3.1 Setting User Constants . . . . . 103
3.3.2 Setting the Jog Speed . . . . . 104
3.3.3 Setting the Number of Encoder Pulses . . . . . 105
3.3.4 Setting the Motor Type . . . . . 106




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# CONTENTS


3.4 Setting Stop Mode . . . . . 107
3.4.1 Adjusting Offset . . . . . 107
3.4.2 Using Dynamic Brake . . . . . 108
3.4.3 Using Zero-Clamp . . . . . 109
3.4.4 Using Holding Brake . . . . . 110
3.5 Running the Motor Smoothly . . . . . 114
3.5.1 Using the Soft Start Function . . . . . 114
3.5.2 Using the Smoothing Function . . . . . 115
3.5.3 Adjusting Gain . . . . . 115
3.5.4 Adjusting Offset . . . . . 116
3.5.5 Setting the Torque Reference Filter Time Constant . . . . . 116
3.6 Minimizing Positioning Time . . . . . 118
3.6.1 Using Autotuning Function . . . . . 118
3.6.2 Setting Servo Gain . . . . . 118
3.6.3 Using Feed-forward Control . . . . . 120
3.6.4 Using Proportional Control . . . . . 120
3.6.5 Setting Speed Bias . . . . . 121
3.6.6 Using Mode Switch . . . . . 122
3.7 Forming a Protective Sequence . . . . . 128
3.7.1 Using Servo Alarm Output and Alarm Code Output . . . . . 128
3.7.2 Using Servo ON Input Signal . . . . . 132
3.7.3 Using Positioning Complete Signal . . . . . 133
3.7.4 Using Speed Coincidence Output Signal . . . . . 134
3.7.5 Using Running Output Signal . . . . . 136
3.7.6 Using Servo Ready Output Signal . . . . . 138
3.8 Special Wiring . . . . . 140
3.8.1 Wiring Instructions . . . . . 140
3.8.2 Wiring for Noise Control . . . . . 142
3.8.3 Using More Than One Servo Drive . . . . . 147
3.8.4 Using Regenerative Units . . . . . 148
3.8.5 Using an Absolute Encoder . . . . . 151
3.8.6 Extending an Encoder Cable . . . . . 159
3.8.7 Using DR2 Servopack with High Voltage Line . . . . . 161
3.8.8 Connector Terminal Layouts . . . . . 163

**CHAPTER 4 USING THE DIGITAL OPERATOR . . . . . 169**
4.1 Basic Operations . . . . . 170
4.1.1 Connecting the Digital Operator . . . . . 170
4.1.2 Resetting Servo Alarms . . . . . 171
4.1.3 Basic Functions and Mode Selection . . . . . 172
4.1.4 Operation in Status Display Mode . . . . . 173
4.1.5 Operation in User Constant Setting Mode . . . . . 176
4.1.6 Operation in Monitor Mode . . . . . 179




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# CONTENTS


4.2 Using the Functions . . . . . 183
4.2.1 Operation in Alarm Trace-back Mode . . . . . 183
4.2.2 Operation Using the Digital Operator . . . . . 186
4.2.3 Autotuning . . . . . 188
4.2.4 Reference Offset Automatic Adjustment . . . . . 195
4.2.5 Speed Reference Offset Manual Adjustment Mode . . . . . 197
4.2.6 Clearing Alarm Trace-back Data . . . . . 200
4.2.7 Checking Motor Type . . . . . 201
4.2.8 Checking Software Version . . . . . 201

**CHAPTER 5 SERVO SELECTION AND DATA SHEETS . . . . . 203**

5.1 Selecting a Σ-Series Servo . . . . . 205
5.1.1 Selecting a Servomotor . . . . . 205
5.1.2 Selecting a Servopack . . . . . 212
5.1.3 Digital Operator . . . . . 216
5.2 SGM Servomotor . . . . . 217
5.2.1 Ratings and Specifications . . . . . 217
5.2.2 Mechanical Characteristics . . . . . 230
5.3 Servopack Ratings and Specifications . . . . . 233
5.3.1 Ratings and Specifications . . . . . 233
5.3.2 Power Consumption . . . . . 238
5.3.3 Overload Characteristics . . . . . 239
5.3.4 Starting Time and Stopping Time . . . . . 240
5.3.5 Load Inertia . . . . . 241
5.3.6 Overhanging Loads . . . . . 246
5.4 Σ-Series Dimensional Drawings . . . . . 247
5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings . . . . . 247
5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings (TÜV approved, conforming to the machine instructions) . . . . . 289
5.4.3 Servopack Dimensional Drawings . . . . . 329
5.4.4 Digital Operator Dimensional Drawing . . . . . 334
5.5 Selecting Peripheral Devices . . . . . 335
5.5.1 Selecting Peripheral Devices . . . . . 335
5.5.2 Order List . . . . . 341
5.6 Specifications and Dimensional Drawings of Peripheral Devices . . . . . 349
5.6.1 Cable Specifications and Peripheral Devices . . . . . 349
5.6.2 Motor Cables . . . . . 355
5.6.3 Connector Kits . . . . . 358
5.6.4 Brake Power Supply . . . . . 363
5.6.5 Encoder Cables . . . . . 365
5.6.6 Battery for Absolute Encoder . . . . . 371
5.6.7 1CN Connector . . . . . 371
5.6.8 Circuit Breaker . . . . . 373
5.6.9 Noise Filter . . . . . 374
5.6.10 Magnetic Contactor . . . . . 375
5.6.11 Surge Suppressor . . . . . 376
5.6.12 Regenerative Unit . . . . . 376
5.6.13 Variable Resistor for Speed Setting . . . . . 379




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# CONTENTS


5.6.14 Encoder Signal Converter Unit . . . . . 379
5.6.15 Cables for Connecting PC and Servopack . . . . . 381
5.6.16 4CN Connector . . . . . 385

**CHAPTER 6 INSPECTION, MAINTENANCE, AND TROUBLESHOOTING . 387**
6.1 Inspection and Maintenance . . . . . 388
6.1.1 Servomotor . . . . . 388
6.1.2 Servopack . . . . . 389
6.1.3 Replacing Battery for Absolute Encoder . . . . . 390
6.2 Troubleshooting . . . . . 391
6.2.1 Troubleshooting Problems with Alarm Display . . . . . 391
6.2.2 Troubleshooting Problems with No Alarm Display . . . . . 409
6.2.3 Internal Connection Diagram and Instrument Connection Examples . . . . . 411

**CHAPTER 7 MEASURES TO SATISFY THE REQUIREMENTS OF EMC DIRECTIVE . . . . . 415**
7.1 What is European Safe Standard? . . . . . 416
7.1.1 What is EN Standard? . . . . . 416
7.1.2 What is CE Marking? . . . . . 416
7.1.3 EMC Directive . . . . . 417
7.1.4 Certification Body TÜV Authorized by EU . . . . . 417
7.2 Measures to Satisfy the Requirements of EMC Directive . . . . . 418
7.2.1 Applicable Servomotor . . . . . 418
7.2.2 Applicable Noise Filter . . . . . 418
7.2.3 Motor Cables . . . . . 419
7.2.4 Encoder Cables . . . . . 419
7.2.5 Control I/O . . . . . 420
7.2.6 Digital Operator and Monitoring by Personal Computer . . . . . 420
7.2.7 The Core on the Cable . . . . . 421
7.2.8 Wiring . . . . . 421

**APPENDIXES**
A Differences Between DR2 and DR1, SGDA and SGD Servopacks . . . . . 423
B Servo Adjustment . . . . . 429
B.1 Σ-Series AC Servopack Gain Adjustment . . . . . 430
B.1.1 Σ-Series AC Servopacks and Gain Adjustment Methods . . . . . 430
B.1.2 Basic Rules for Gain Adjustment . . . . . 431
B.2 Adjusting a Servopack for Speed Control . . . . . 432
B.2.1 Adjusting Using Auto-tuning . . . . . 432
B.2.2 Manual Adjustment . . . . . 433
B.3 Adjusting a Servopack for Position Control . . . . . 436
B.3.1 Adjusting Using Auto-tuning . . . . . 436
B.3.2 Manual Adjustment . . . . . 437
B.4 Gain Setting References . . . . . 441
B.4.1 Guidelines for Gain Settings According to Load Inertia Ratio . . . . . 441
C List of I/O Signals . . . . . 445
D List of User Constants . . . . . 465




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# CONTENTS


E List of Alarm Displays . . . . . 477
F Relationship between Reference Forms and User Constants . . . . . 481
G Reviewing the Full-closed Loop Specifications . . . . . 489

**INDEX . . . . . 497**




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# FOR FIRST-TIME USERS OF AC SERVOS

# 1



This chapter is intended for first-time users of AC servos. It describes the basic configuration of a servo mechanism and basic technical terms relating to servos.
Users who already have experience in using a servo should also take a look at this chapter to understand the features of Σ-Series AC Servos.

**1.1 Basic Understanding of AC Servos . . . . . 2**
1.1.1 Servo Mechanisms . . . . . 2
1.1.2 Servo Configuration . . . . . 5
1.1.3 Features of Σ-Series Servos . . . . . 11



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 1.1 Basic Understanding of AC Servos

This section describes the basic configuration of a servo mechanism and technical terms relating to servos and also explains the features of Σ-Series AC Servos.

1.1.1 Servo Mechanisms . . . . . 2
1.1.2 Servo Configuration . . . . . 5
1.1.3 Features of Σ-Series Servos . . . . . 11



## 1.1.1 Servo Mechanisms

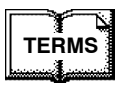
You may be familiar with the following terms:

- Servo
- **Servo mechanism**
- Servo control system

In fact, these terms are synonymous. They have the following meaning:

**A control mechanism that monitors physical quantities such as specified positions.**

In short, a servo mechanism is like a servant who does tasks faithfully and quickly according to his master's instructions. In fact, "servo" originally derives from the word "servant."




**Servo mechanism**

According to Japanese Industrial Standard (JIS) terminology, a "servo mechanism" is defined as a mechanism that uses the position, direction, or orientation of an object as a process variable to control a system to follow any changes in a target value (set point).
More simply, a servo mechanism is a control mechanism that monitors physical quantities such as specified positions. Feedback control is normally performed by a servo mechanism. (Source: JIS B0181)



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Servo system could be defined in more detail as a mechanism that:

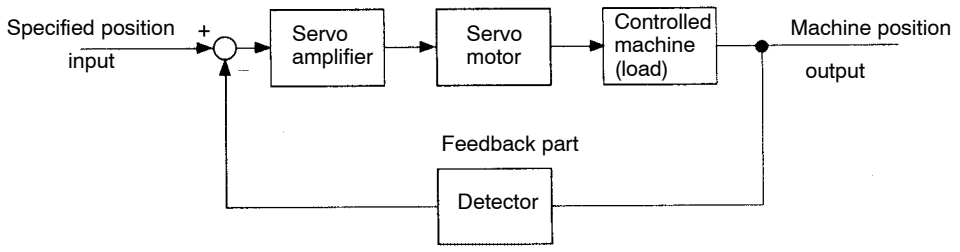
• Moves at a specified speed and

• Locates an object in a specified position

To develop such a servo system, an automatic control system involving **feedback control** must be designed. This automatic control system can be illustrated in the following block diagram:



Configuration of Servo System




This servo system is an automatic control system that detects the machine position (output data), feeds back the data to the input side, compares it with the specified position (input data), and moves the machine by the difference between the compared data.

**In other words, the servo system is a system to control the output data to match the specified input data.**

If, for example, the specified position changes, the servo system will reflect the changes.

In the above example, input data is defined as a position, but input data can be any physical quantities such as orientation (angle), water pressure, or voltage.

Position, speed, force (torque), electric current, and so on are typical controlled values for a servo system.

**The main technical terms used in this manual are as follows:**

1) Servo mechanism

2) Servo

Normally, servo is synonymous with servo mechanism. However, because “mechanism” is omitted, the meaning becomes somewhat ambiguous. Servo may refer to the entire servo mechanism but may also refer to an integral part of a servo mechanism such as a servomotor or a servo amplifier. This manual also follows this convention in the use of the term “servo”.

TERMS

**Feedback control**

A control that returns process variables to the input side and forms a closed loop. It is also called closed-loop control.



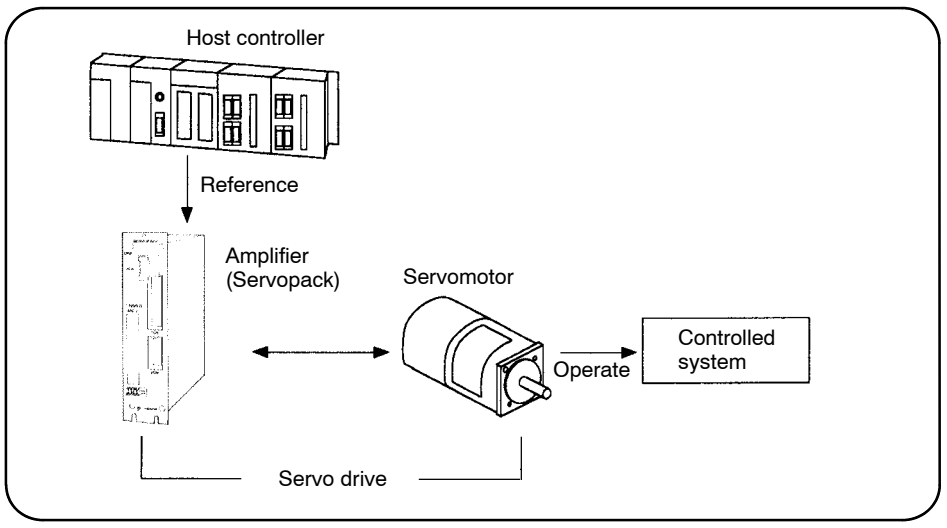
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3) Servo control system

Servo control system is almost synonymous with servo mechanism but places the focus on system control. In this manual, the term “servo system” is also used as a synonym of servo control system.



| Related Terms | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Servomotor | General servomotors or Yaskawa SGM/SGMP Servomotors. In some cases, a position detector (encoder) is included in a servomotor. |
| Servopack | Trademark of Yaskawa servo amplifier “DR2 Servopack.” |
| Servo drive | A Servomotor and amplifier pair. Also called “servo.” |
| Servo system | A closed control system consisting of a host controller, servo drive and controlled system to form a servo mechanism. |
| | |




Servo system

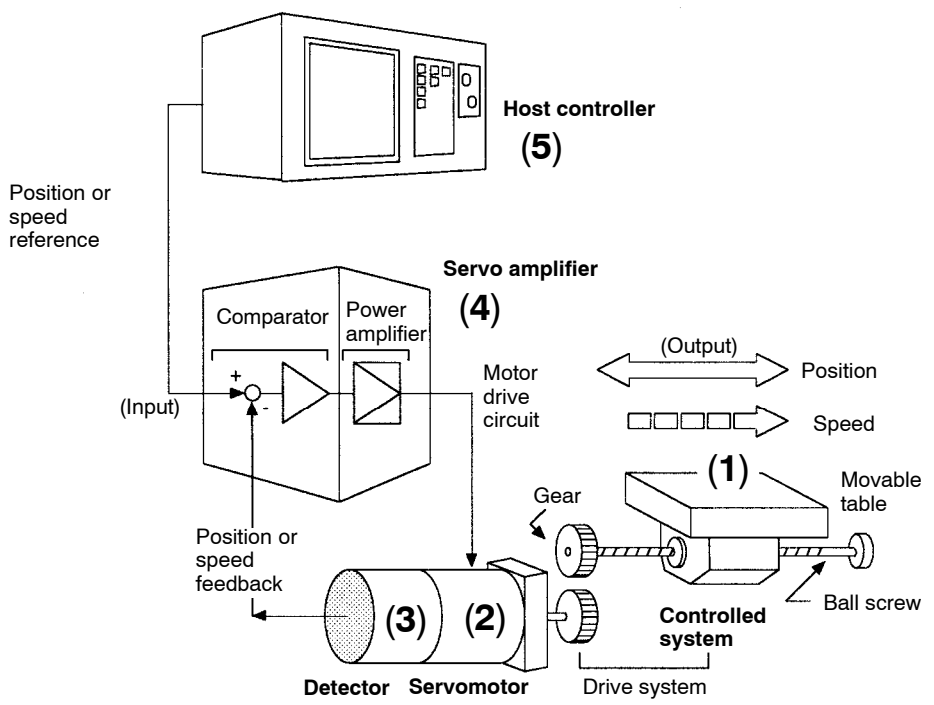


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 1.1.2 Servo Configuration

1) Configuration of Servo System

The following diagram illustrates a servo system in detail:




(1) Controlled system: Mechanical system for which the position or speed is to be controlled.
This includes a drive system that transmits torque from a servomotor.

(2) Servomotor: A main actuator that moves a controlled system. Two types are available: AC servomotor and DC servomotor.

(3) Detector: A position or speed detector. Normally, an encoder mounted on a motor is used as a position detector.

(4) Servo amplifier: An amplifier that processes an error signal to correct the difference between a reference and feedback data and operates the servomotor accordingly. A servo amplifier consists of a comparator, which processes error signals, and a power amplifier, which operates the servomotor.

(5) Host controller: A device that controls a servo amplifier by specifying a position or speed as a set point.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Servo components (1) to (5) are outlined below:

(1) Controlled system

In the previous figure, the controlled system is a movable table for which the position or speed is controlled. The movable table is driven by a ball screw and is connected to the servomotor via gears.
So, the **drive system** consists of:

**Gears + Ball Screw**

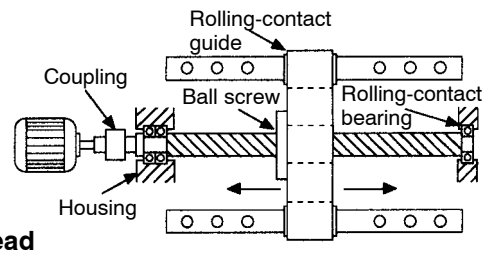
This drive system is most commonly used because the power transmission ratio (gear ratio) can be freely set to ensure high positioning accuracy. However, play in the gears must be minimized.

The following drive system is also possible when the controlled system is a movable table:

**Coupling + Ball Screw**

When the power transmission ratio is 1 : 1, a coupling is useful because it has no play.

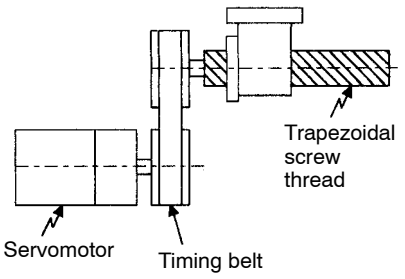
This drive system is widely used for machining tools.




**Timing Belt + Trapezoidal Screw Thread**

A timing belt is a coupling device that allows the power transmission ratio to be set freely and that has no play.

A trapezoidal screw thread does not provide excellent positioning accuracy, so can be treated as a minor coupling device.




To develop an excellent servo system, it is important to select a rigid drive system that has no play.

Configure the controlled system by using an appropriate drive system for the control purpose.

TERMS

**Drive system**

Also called a drive mechanism.
A drive system connects an actuator (such as a servomotor) to a controlled system and serves as a mechanical control component that transmits torque to the controlled system, orientates the controlled system, and converts motion from rotation to linear motion and vice versa.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

(2) Servomotor

(a) DC Servomotor and AC Servomotor

Servomotors are divided into two types: DC servomotors and AC servomotors.

DC servomotors are driven by direct current (DC). They have a long history. Up until the 1980s, the term “servomotor” used to imply a DC servomotor.

From 1984, AC servomotors were emerging as a result of rapid progress in microprocessor technology. Driven by alternating current (AC), AC servomotors are now widely used because of the following advantages:

- Easy maintenance: No brush
- High speed: No limitation in rectification rate

Note however that servomotors and Servopacks use some parts that are subject to mechanical wear or aging. For preventive maintenance, inspect and replace parts at regular intervals.
For details, refer to *Chapter 6 Inspection, Maintenance, and Troubleshooting.*

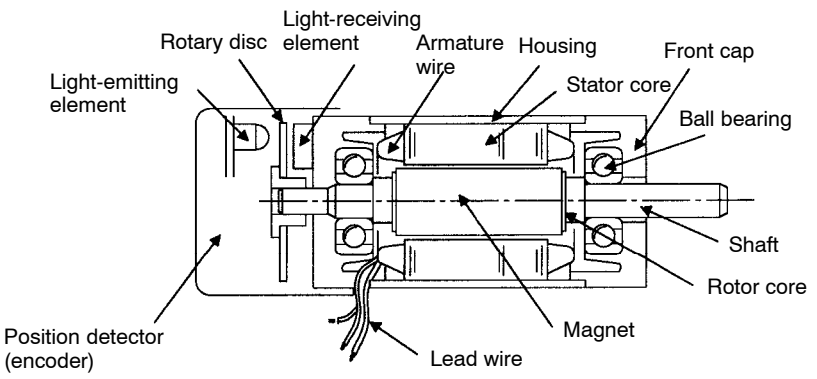
(b) AC Servomotor

AC servomotors are divided into two types: synchronous type and induction type. The synchronous type is more commonly used.

For a synchronous type servomotor, motor speed is controlled by changing the frequency of alternating current.

A synchronous type servomotor provides strong holding torque when stopped, so this type is ideal when precise positioning is required. Use this type for a servo mechanism for position control.

The following figure illustrates the structure of a synchronous type servomotor:




Yaskawa SGM and SGMP Servomotors are of the synchronous type.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

(c) Performance of Servomotor

A servomotor must have “instantaneous power” so that it can start as soon as a start reference is received.
The term “power rating (kW/s)” is used to represent instantaneous power.
It refers to the electric power (kW) that a servomotor generates per second.
The greater the power rating, the more powerful the servomotor.

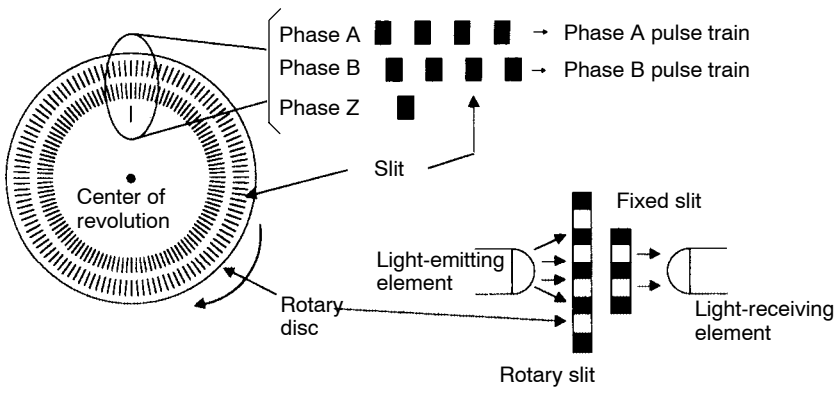
1

(3) Detector

A servo system requires a position or speed detector. It uses an encoder mounted on a servomotor. Optical and magnetic detection methods are both available.
Encoders are divided into the following two types:

(a) Incremental Encoder

An incremental encoder is a pulse generator, which generates a certain number of pulses per revolution (e.g., 2,000 pulses per revolution). If this encoder is connected to the mechanical system and one pulse is defined as a certain length (e.g., 0.001 mm), it can be used as a position detector.
However, this encoder does not detect an absolute position and merely outputs a pulse train. Hence zero return operation must be performed before positioning.
The following figure illustrates the operation principle of a pulse generator (Optical method):




(b) Absolute Encoder

An absolute encoder is designed to detect an absolute angle of rotation as well as to perform the general functions of an incremental encoder. With an absolute encoder, therefore, it is possible to create a system that does not require zero return operation at the beginning of each operation.

- Difference between an absolute and incremental encoder:
  An absolute encoder will keep track of the motor shaft position even if system power is lost and some motion occurs during that period of time. The incremental encoder is incapable of the above.

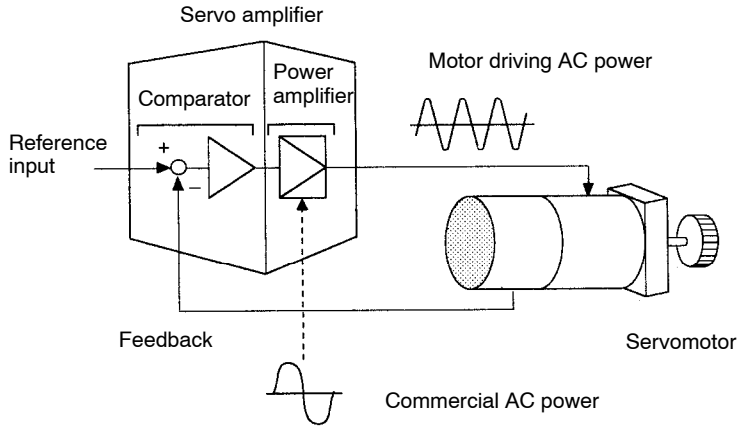


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

(4) Servo amplifier

A servo amplifier is required to operate an AC servomotor.

The following figure illustrates the configuration of a servo amplifier:




A servo amplifier consists of the following two sections:

(a) Comparator

A comparator consists of a comparison function and a control function. The comparison function compares reference input (position or speed) with a feedback signal and generates a differential signal.

The control function amplifies and transforms the differential signal. In other words, it performs proportional (P) control or **proportional/integral (PI) control**. (It is not important if you do not understand these control terms completely at this point.)

(b) Power Amplifier

A power amplifier runs the servomotor at a speed or torque proportional to the output of the comparator. In other words, from the commercial power supply of 50/60 Hz, it generates alternating current with a frequency proportional to the reference speed and runs the servomotor with this current.

TERMS

**Proportional/integral (PI) control**

PI control provides more accurate position or speed control than proportional control, which is more commonly used.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

(5) Host Controller

A host controller controls a servo amplifier by specifying a position or speed as a set point.

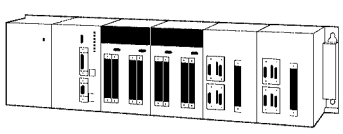
For speed reference, a position control loop may be formed in the host controller when a position feedback signal is received. Yaskawa **PROGIC-8** is a typical host controller.



TERMS

**PROGIC-8**

A programmable machine controller. If combined with a servo amplifier for speed control (maximum eight axis control), the PROGIC-8 can provide position control.
The PROGIC-8 also provides programmable controller functions.



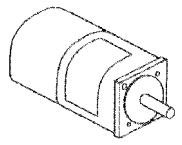


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 1.1.3 Features of Σ-Series Servos

1) Σ-Series SGM/SGMP Servomotors are synchronous type servomotors and have the following features:

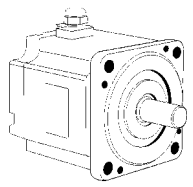
- Size and weight reduced to one-third those of our conventional models.
  Compact Servomotor for saving installation space.



SGM type

- Servo performance (power rating) enhanced to three times that of our conventional models.
  Enhanced **power rating (kW/s)** to satisfy every need.

- A wide product range covering rated output of 30 W to 750 W.



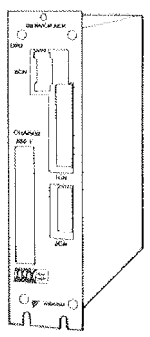
SGMP type

Supply Voltage Rated Output
100 VAC: 30 W, 50 W, 100 W, 200 W, 300 W
(0.04 HP, 0.07 HP, 0.13 HP, 0.27 HP, 0.40 HP)
200 VAC: 30 W, 50 W, 100 W, 200 W, 400 W, 750 W
(0.04 HP, 0.07 HP, 0.13 HP, 0.27 HP, 0.53 HP, 1.01 HP)

2) DR2 Servopacks can perform speed/torque or position control. Select the control mode by setting of the user constant Cn-02 (memory switch).

- Speed/Torque Control Mode: User constant Cn-02 (memory switch) Bit B = 0
  This mode uses speed or torque reference input. Reference input is by analog voltage.

- Position Control Mode: User constant Cn-02 (memory switch) Bit B = 1
  This mode uses position reference input. Reference input is by pulse train.



DR2 Servopack

**TERMS**

**Power rating (kW/s)**

A constant that represents response performance of a servomotor. It can be determined by dividing squared rated torque by motor inertia. Power rating is the electric power (kW) that a servomotor can generate per second.
The greater the power rating, the more powerful the servomotor.



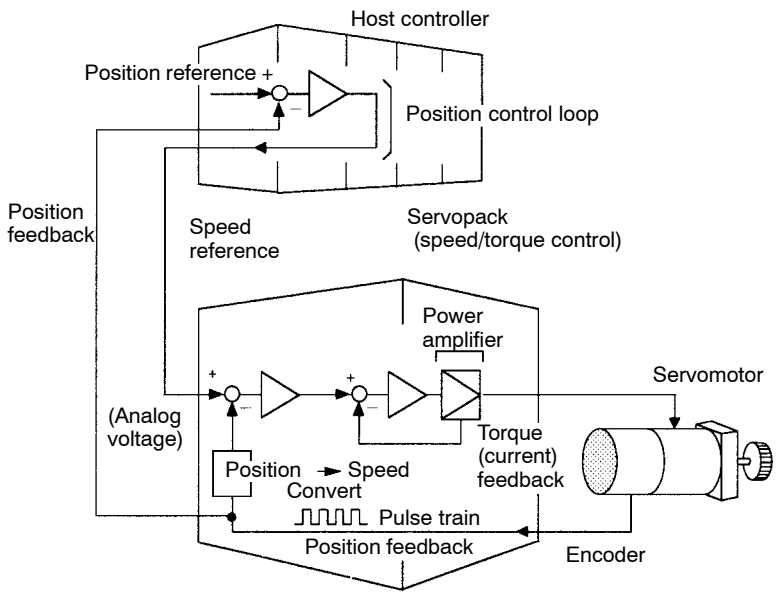
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*1.1.3 Features of Σ-Series Servos cont.*



3) The most common usage of a speed/torque control Servopack is shown below:

• Using Servopack in Speed/Torque Control Mode (Speed Control)




As shown in the figure above, a position control loop is formed in the host controller. The host controller compares a position reference with a position feedback signal and sends processing results to the Servopack as a speed reference.

In this way, the host controller can freely perform the control required for the servo mechanism.
The Servopack undertakes the speed control loop and subsequent control processing.

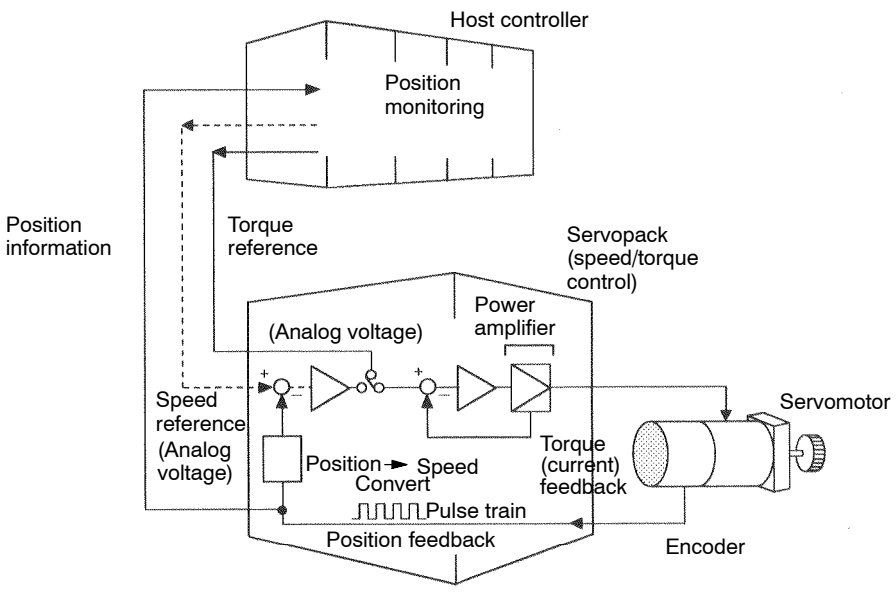
Yaskawa programmable machine controller PROGIC-8 is available as a typical host controller.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4) Speed/torque control Servopack can also provide torque control as shown below.

• Using Servopack in Speed/Torque Control Mode (Torque Control)




Set the user constants for Servopack to switch between the following torque control modes:

(1) Controlling servomotor torque by torque reference

(Torque control I)

(2) Operating servomotor by switching between torque reference and speed reference

(Torque control II)

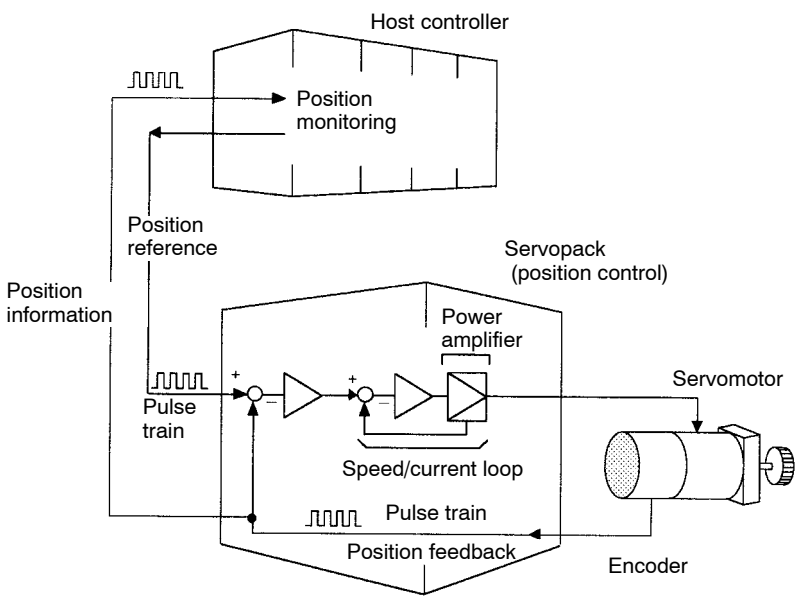
The host controller outputs a torque reference or speed reference to control the Servopack.
It also receives a pulse train (position information) from the Servopack and uses it to monitor the position.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

5) Position control Servopack can be used as below.

• Using Servopack in Position Control Mode




The host controller can send a position reference (pulse train) to the Servopack to perform positioning or interpolation.
This type of Servopack contains a position control loop.

User constants can be used to select either of the following pulse trains:

(1) Code and pulse train

(2) Two-phase pulse train with 90° phase difference

(3) Forward and reverse pulse trains

The host controller receives a pulse train (position information) from the Servopack and uses it to monitor the position.

6) A Digital Operator can be used to set user constants for a Servopack as follows:

(1) Setting user constants to enable or disable each function

(2) Setting user constants required for functions to be used

Set user constants according to the servo system to be set up.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# BASIC USES OF Σ-SERIES PRODUCTS

# 2

This chapter describes the first things to do when Σ-Series products are delivered. It also explains the most fundamental ways of connecting and operating Σ-Series products. Both first-time and experienced servo users **must read** this chapter.




**2.1 Precautions . . . . . 16**
2.1.1 Notes on Use . . . . . 16

**2.2 Installation . . . . . 18**
2.2.1 Checking on Delivery . . . . . 18
2.2.2 Installing the Servomotor . . . . . 19
2.2.3 Installing the Servopack . . . . . 22

**2.3 Connection and Wiring . . . . . 25**
2.3.1 Connecting to Peripheral Devices . . . . . 25
2.3.2 Main Circuit Wiring and Power ON Sequence . . . . . 28
2.3.3 Examples of Connecting I/O Signal Terminals . . . . . 30

**2.4 Conducting a Test Run . . . . . 37**
2.4.1 Test Run in Two Steps . . . . . 37
2.4.2 Step 1: Conducting a Test Run for Motor without Load . . . . 39
2.4.3 Step 2: Conducting a Test Run with the Motor Connected to the Machine . . . . . 43
2.4.4 Supplementary Information on Test Run . . . . . 45
2.4.5 Minimum User Constants Required and Input Signals . . . . . 47




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 2.1 Precautions

This section provides notes on using Σ-Series products.

2.1.1 Notes on Use . . . . . 16

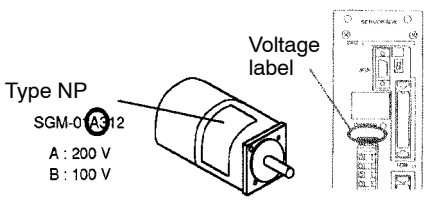
## 2.1.1 Notes on Use



**NOTE** Always note the following to ensure safe use.

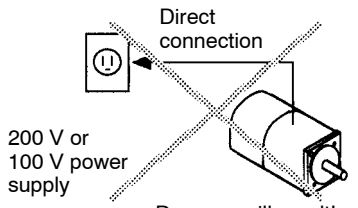
**Two types of supply voltage are available, 100 V and 200 V.**

Both Σ-Series Servomotor and Servopack have 100 V and 200 V types. Be sure to use the correct type.



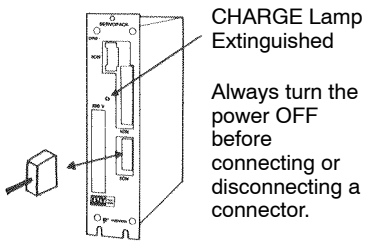

**Always use the SGM/SGMP Servomotor and DR2 Servopack in pairs.**

The SGM/SGMP Servomotor cannot run without the DR2 Servopack.
Do not plug the SGM Servomotor directly into the commercial power supply. (Direct connection to the commercial power supply will damage the Servomotor.)



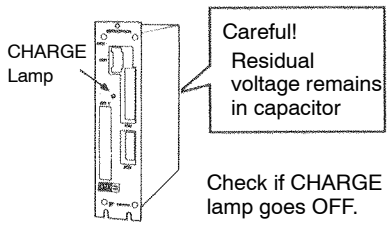

**Do not change wiring when power is ON.**

Always turn the power OFF before connecting or disconnecting a connector.
(Except for Digital Operator (Type: JUSP-OP02A-1))




**Note that residual voltage still remains in the Servopack even after the power is turned OFF.**

Even after the power is turned OFF, residual voltage still remains in the capacitor inside the Servopack. Before inspection is to be performed, make sure if CHARGE lamp is extinguished.

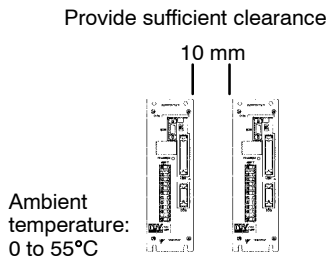





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Always follow the specified installation method.**

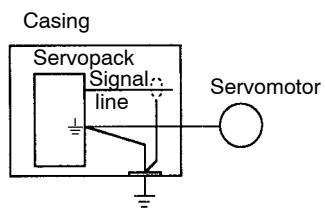
The Servopack generates heat. Install the Servopack so that it can radiate heat freely. Note also that the Servopack must be in an environment free from condensation, vibration and shock.




**Perform noise reduction and grounding properly.**

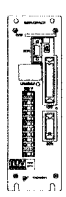
If the signal line is noisy, vibration or malfunction will result.

- Separate high-voltage cables from low-voltage cables.
- Use cables as short as possible.
- Use at least class 3 grounding (ground resistance 100Ω or below) for the Servomotor and Servopack.
- Never use a line filter for the power supply in the motor circuit.




**Conduct a voltage resistance test under the following conditions.**

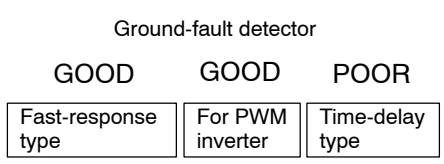
- Voltage: 1500 Vrms AC, one minute
- Braking current: 30 mA
- Frequency: 50/60 Hz
- Voltage applied point: Between L1, L2, L, N, +, -, Y3, Y4, U, V, W terminals and ground terminal ⏚ (connect between terminals securely.)



Conduct a voltage resistance test as described on the left.

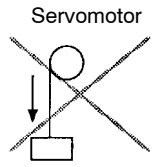
**Use a fast-response type ground-fault detector.**

For a ground-fault detector, always use a fast-response type or one designed for PWM inverters. Do not use a time-delay type.




**Do not perform continuous operation under overhanging load.**

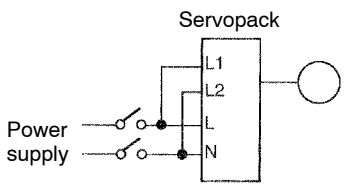
Continuous operation cannot be performed by rotating the motor from the load and applying regenerative braking. Regenerative braking by the Servopack can be applied only for a short period, such as the motor deceleration time.




Regenerative braking continuously applied

**The Servomotor cannot be operated by turning the power ON and OFF.**

Frequently turning the power ON and OFF causes the internal circuit elements to deteriorate. Always start or stop the servomotor by using reference pulses.




Starting and stopping by turning power ON and OFF



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 2.2 Installation

This section describes how to check Σ-Series products on delivery and how to install them.

2.2.1 Checking on Delivery . . . . . 18
2.2.2 Installing the Servomotor . . . . . 19
2.2.3 Installing the Servopack . . . . . 22

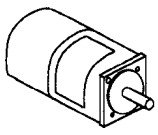
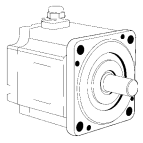
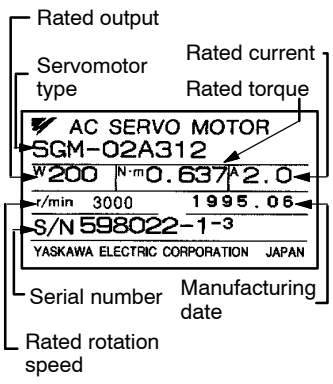
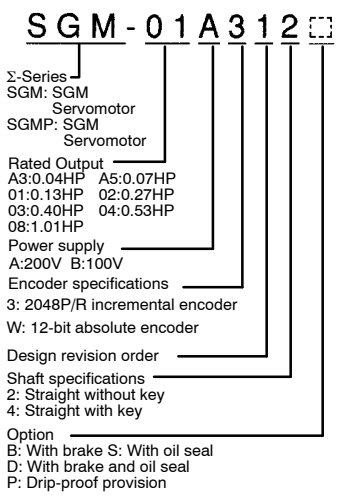


## 2.2.1 Checking on Delivery

1) When Σ-Series products are delivered, check the following items:

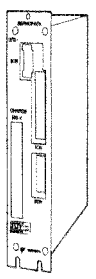
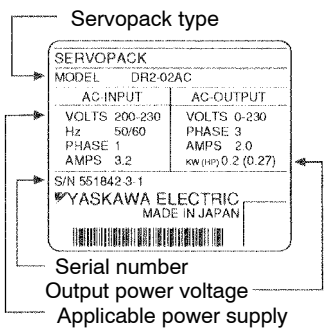
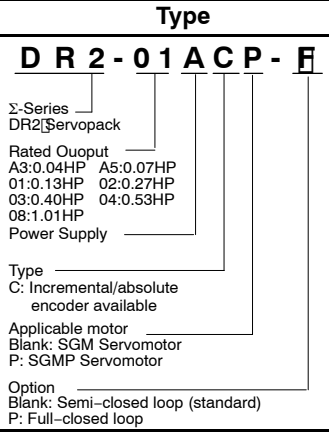
| Check Items | Remarks |
|---|---|
| Check if the delivered products are the ones you ordered. | Check the types marked on the nameplates of Servomotor and Servopack (see the table below). |
| Check if the motor shaft rotates smoothly. | If the motor shaft is smoothly turned by hand, it is normal. However, if the motor has brakes, it cannot be turned manually. |
| Check for damage. | Check the overall appearance, and check for damage or scratches resulting from transportation. |
| Check screws for looseness. | Check for looseness by using a screwdriver as necessary. |

If any of the above items are faulty or incorrect, contact the dealer from which you purchased the products or your nearest local sales representative.

| | Appearance | Nameplate | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| Servo motor |  Σ-Series SGM Servomotor  Σ-Series SGMP Servomotor |   |   |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | Appearance | Nameplate | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| Servo-pack |  Σ-Series DR2 Servopack |   |   |

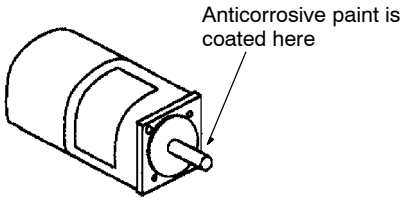
2

## 2.2.2 Installing the Servomotor

Servomotor SGM and SGMP types can be installed either horizontally or vertically. However, if the Servomotor is installed incorrectly or in an inappropriate location, the service life will be shortened or unexpected problems will occur. To prevent this, always observe the installation instructions described below.

**Before installation**:

Anticorrosive paint is coated on the edge of the motor shaft. Clean off the anticorrosive paint thoroughly using a cloth moistened with thinner.




**NOTE** Avoid getting thinner on other parts of the Servomotor when cleaning the shaft.

**Storage:**

When the Servomotor is to be stored with the power cable disconnected, store it in the following temperature range:

Between –20°C and 60°C



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2

**Installation sites:**

The Servomotor SGM and SGMP types are designed for indoor use.
Install Servomotor in an environment which meets the following conditions:

a) Free from corrosive and explosive gases

b) Well-ventilated and free from dust and moisture

c) Ambient temperature of 0 to 40°C

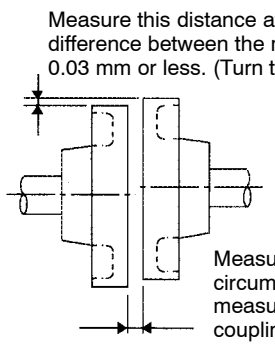
d) Relative humidity of 20% to 80% (non-condensing)

e) Inspection and cleaning can be performed easily

If the Servomotor is used in a location subject to water or oil mist, install a shield cover over the Servomotor.

**Alignment**:

Align the shaft of the Servomotor with that of the equipment to be controlled, then connect the shafts with couplings. Install the Servomotor so that alignment accuracy falls within the range shown below.



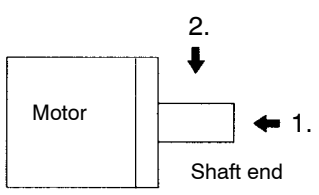

**NOTE** If the shafts are not aligned properly, vibration will occur, resulting in damage to the bearings.

**Mechanical shock to the shaft end must be less than 98m/s$^2$ (10G) and must be applied no more than twice.**
Design the mechanical system so that **thrust load and radial load** applied to the servomotor shaft end during operation falls within the range shown in the following table.

TERMS

**Thrust load and radial load**

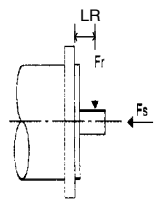
1. Thrust load: Shaft-end load applied parallel to the centerline of a shaft
2. Radial load: Shaft-end load applied perpendicular to the centerline of a shaft





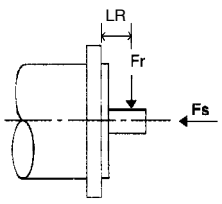

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• Servomotor with incremental encoder

| Motor Type | Allowable Radial Load Fr [N(lb)] | Allowable Thrust Load Fs [N(lb)] | LR mm (in.) | Reference Drawing |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| SGM-A3 | 68 (15) | 54 (12) | 20 (0.82) |  |
| SGM-A5 | 68 (15) | 54 (12) | 20 (0.82) | |
| SGM-01 | 78 (17) | 54 (12) | 20 (0.82) | |
| SGM-02 | 245 (55) | 74 (16) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGM-03 | 245 (55) | 74 (16) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGM-04 | 245 (55) | 74 (16) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGM-08 | 392 (88) | 147 (33) | 35 (1.43) | |
| SGMP-01 | 78 (17) | 49 (11) | 20 (0.82) | |
| SGMP-02 | 245 (55) | 68 (15) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGMP-03 | 245 (55) | 68 (15) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGMP-04 | 245 (55) | 69 (15) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGMP-08 | 392 (88) | 147 (33) | 35 (1.43) | |



• Servomotor with absolute encoder

| Motor Type | Allowable Radial Load Fr [N(lb)] | Allowable Thrust Load Fs [N(lb)] | LR mm (in.) | Reference Drawing |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| SGM-A3 | 49 (11) | 19 (4) | 20 (0.82) |  |
| SGM-A5 | 68 (15) | 19 (4) | 20 (0.82) | |
| SGM-01 | 68 (15) | 19 (4) | 20 (0.82) | |
| SGM-02 | 196 (44) | 49 (11) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGM-03 | 196 (44) | 49 (11) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGM-04 | 196 (44) | 68 (15) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGM-08 | 343 (77) | 98 (22) | 35 (1.43) | |
| SGMP-01 | 78 (17) | 49 (11) | 20 (0.82) | |
| SGMP-02 | 245 (55) | 68 (15) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGMP-03 | 245 (55) | 68 (15) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGMP-04 | 245 (55) | 69 (15) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGMP-08 | 392 (88) | 147 (33) | 35 (1.43) | |



**Note** The radial load and thrust load values shown above are the maximum allowed values for the sum of the load generated by motor torque and the load externally applied to the shaft.

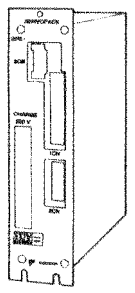




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 2.2.3 Installing the Servopack

Σ-Series DR2 Servopack is a rack–mounted type servo controller.
Incorrect installation will cause problems. Always observe the installation instructions described in the next page.



DR2 Servopack



**Storage:**

When the Servopack is to be stored with the power cable disconnected, store it in the following temperature range:

Between –20°C and 85°C

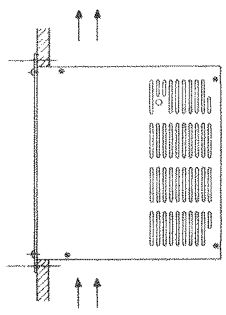
**Installation sites:**

| Situation | Notes on Installation |
|---|---|
| When installed in a control panel | Design the control panel size, unit layout, and cooling method so that the temperature around the periphery of the Servopack does not exceed 55°C. |
| When installed near a heating unit | Suppress radiation heat from the heating unit and a temperature rise caused by convection so that the temperature around the periphery of the Servopack does not exceed 55°C. |
| When installed near a source of vibration | Install a vibration isolator underneath the Servopack to prevent it from receiving vibration. |
| When installed in a place receiving corrosive gases | Corrosive gases do not immediately affect the Servopack but will eventually cause contactor-related devices to malfunction. Take appropriate action to prevent corrosive gases. |
| Others | Avoid installation in a hot and humid place or where excessive dust or iron powder is present in the air. |

**Orientation:**

Install the Servopack perpendicularly as shown in the figure.

The Servopack must be orientated as shown in the figure because it is designed to be cooled by natural convection.



Ventilation

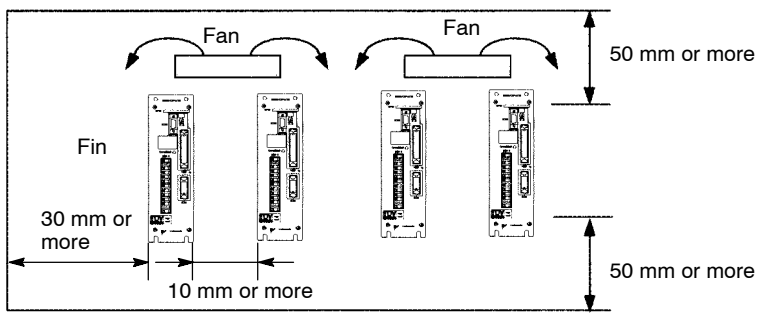
- Firmly secure the Servopack through three or four mounting holes.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Installation method:**

When installing multiple Servopacks side by side in a control panel, observe the following installation method:




a) Install Servopack perpendicularly so that the front panel (containing connectors) faces outward.

b) Provide sufficient space around each Servopack to allow cooling by natural convection.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

c) When installing Servopacks side by side, provide at least 10 mm space between them and at least 50 mm space above and below them as shown in the figure above. Install cooling fans above the Servopacks to prevent the temperature around each Servopack from increasing excessively and also to maintain the temperature inside the control panel evenly.

d) Maintain the following conditions inside the control panel:

- Ambient temperature for Servopack: 0 to 55°C
- Humidity: 90%RH or less
- Vibration: 0.5G (4.9 $m/s^2$)
- Condensation and freezing: None
- Ambient temperature to ensure long-term reliability: 45°C or less





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 2.3 Connection and Wiring

This section describes how to connect Σ-Series products to peripheral devices and explains a typical example of wiring the main circuit. It also describes an example of connecting to main host controllers.

2.3.1 Connecting to Peripheral Devices . . . . . 25
2.3.2 Main Circuit Wiring and Power ON Sequence . . . . . 28
2.3.3 Examples of Connecting I/O Signal Terminals . . . . . 30



## 2.3.1 Connecting to Peripheral Devices

This section shows a standard example of connecting Σ-Series products to peripheral devices and briefly explains how to connect to each peripheral device.

**NOTE** Read the following notes before wiring:

- Connect only one cable to one terminal. Never connect two cables to one terminal.
- Do not solder the cable.
- Peel back the cable shield by about 10mm (0.39in.) min. Then insert the cable into the terminal securely and tighten the screw. Never leave the bare wires outside of the terminl.
- When the cable is inserted into the flat terminal, use the following ferrules.
  Non−insulated ferrules, 2.5mm$^2$ or less (Made by PHOENIX CONTACT)

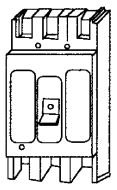
<Reference> Terminal block type: FRONT 2.5H/SA5
(Made by PHOENIX CONTACT)



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

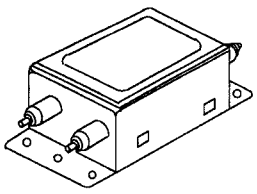
## Standard connection method for Σ-Series AC Servo Drives:

**Molded-case circuit breaker (MCCB)**



Used to protect power supply line. Shuts the circuit off when overcurrent is detected.

**Noise filter**

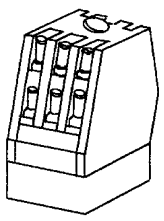


Used to eliminate external noise from power supply line.

Note: The following noise filters do not conform to the EMC instructions. As for the noise filters conforming to EMC instructions, refer to *7.2.2*.

Types: LF-205A (for DR2-A3A, A5A, 01A, 02A, A3B, A5B, and 01B)
LF-210 (for DR2-04A and 02B)
LF-220 (for DR2-03B and 08A)

**Magnetic contactor**

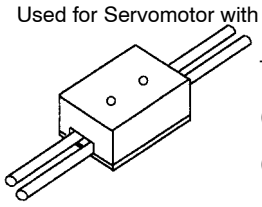


Turns the main power ON or OFF.
Use a surge suppressor for the magnetic contactor.

Type: HI-15E5 (30 A)

**Brake power supply**

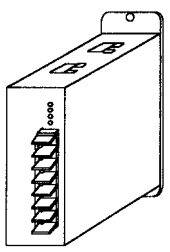
Used for Servomotor with brake.



Types:
LPSE-2H01
(for 200 V input)
LPDE-1H01
(for 100 V input)

**Regenerative unit**

(For types DR2-A3A, A5A, 01A, 02A)



Type: JUSP-RG08
(Not applicable to types DR2□A3B, A5B, 01B)

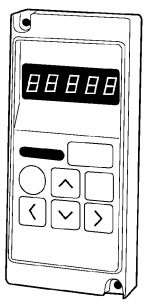
**Exterior type regenerative resistor**

Applicable to DR2-04ACY8, 08ACY8, 02BCY8, 03BCY8)

Power supply:
Single-phase
200 or 100 V

**Digital Operator**

Allows the user to set user constants or operation references and display operation status or alarm status.



Hand-held type
(JUSP-OP02A-1)
1-meter(3.3ft.) cable included

**Σ-Series DR2 Servopack**

Brake control relay

See the precautions on wiring (on the previous page).

L1
L2
L
N

+(Y3), -(Y4)

U
V
W

U
V
W

TÜV

YASKAWA

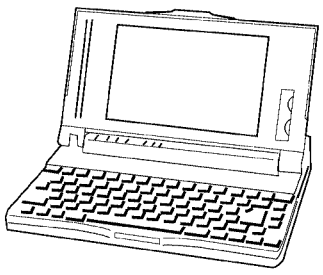
Connector for PG (on Servopack side)

This wiring is required only for a Servomotor with brake

Connector kits for pulse generator (PG) and for motor are not required if the following parts are ordered:
- Cable with terminal connectors
- Cable with connector and amplifier terminal



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com



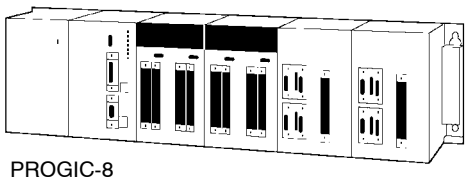
**Personal computer**

Exclusive-use cable between personal computer and Servopack (for NEC PC) is available.
Type: DE9405258 (2m, 6.6ft.)
consult factory about cable for IBM PC.

**Host controller**

Servopack is compatible with most P.L.C.motion controllers and indexers.

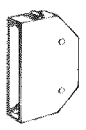
References are input as analog signals or pulse trains.



PROGIC-8

**1CN connector kit**

(Type: DP9420010)



**Cable for PG**

This cable is used to connect a Servomotor encoder to a Servopack.

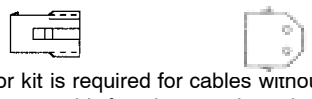
The following two types of cable are available according to the encoder type.
As for the PG cables conforming to EMC instructions, refer to *7.2.4.*

- Cable for incremental encoder
  (with connector on both ends)
  9.8ft: DP9320082-1 16.4ft: DP9320082-2
  32.8ft: DP9320082-3 49.2ft: DP9320082-4
  65.6ft: DP9320082-5
- Cable for absolute encoder
  (with connectors on both ends)
  9.8ft: DP9320084-1 16.4ft: DP9320084-2
  32.8ft: DP9320084-3 49.2ft: DP9320084-4
  65.6ft: DP9320084-5

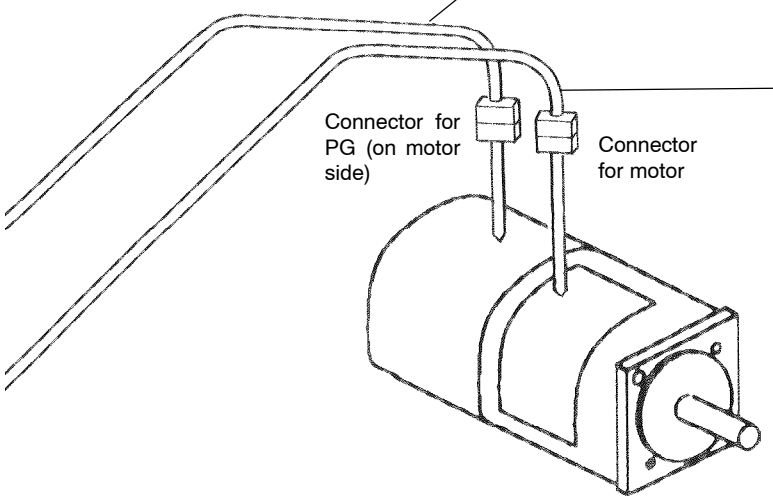
A cable with a single connector (without connector on Servopack side) and a cable without connectors are also available.

**Connector kit for PG**

On Servomotor side On Servopack side



This connector kit is required for cables without connectors.
For moving parts, a cable for robot must be ordered separately.




**Σ-Series Servomotor**

**Cable for motor**

This is a power cable for connecting a Servomotor to a Servopack.

For a Servomotor with brake, this cable is also used to wire the brake.
As for the motor cables conforming to EMC instructions, refer to *5.6.1.*

- Without brake (connector included)
  9.8ft: DP9320659-1 16.4ft: DP9320659-2
  32.8ft: DP9320659-3 49.2ft: DP9320659-4
  65.6ft: DP9320659-5
- With brake (connector included)
  9.8ft: DP9320660-1 16.4ft: DP9320660-2
  32.8ft: DP9320660-3 49.2ft: DP9320660-4
  65.6ft: DP9320660-5

A cable without connector and spare solder is also available.

**Connector kit for motor**

Connector for motor (on motor side)



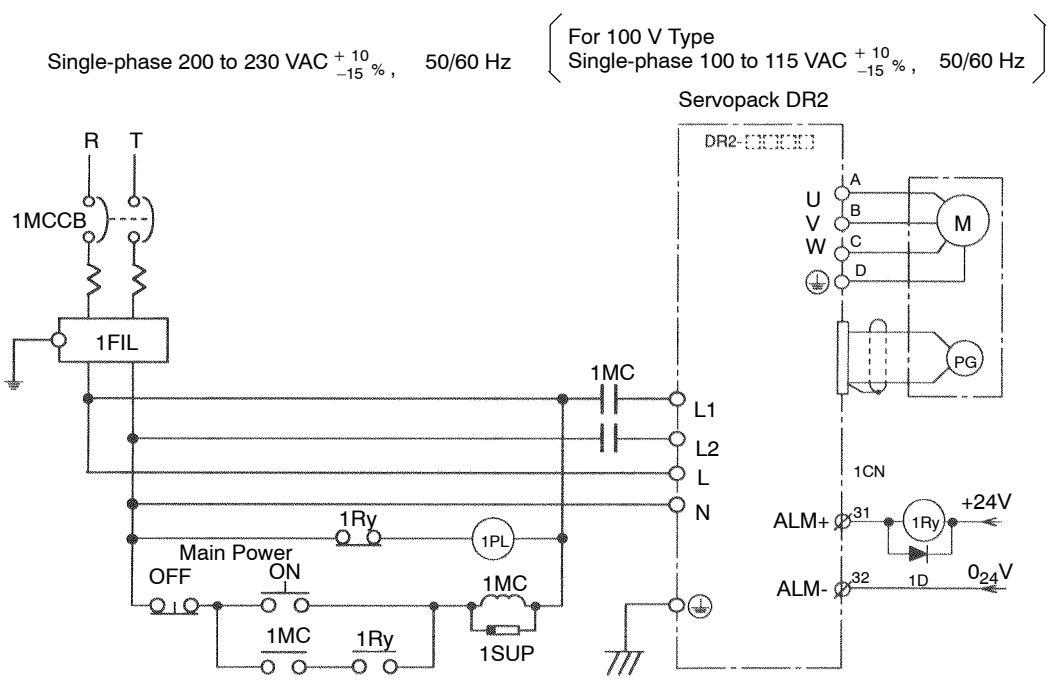
This connector kit is required for cables without connector and amplifier terminal.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 2.3.2 Main Circuit Wiring and Power ON Sequence

1) The following diagram shows a typical example of wiring the main circuit for Σ-Series products:




1MCCB: Circuit breaker
1FIL: Noise filter
1MC: Contactor
1Ry: Relay
1PL: Patrol light
1SUP: Surge suppressor
1D: Flywheel diode

2) The following table shows the name and description of each main circuit terminal:

| Terminal Symbol | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| L1, L2 | Main circuit AC input | Single-phase 200 to 230 VAC +10 −15 %, 50/60Hz*1 |
| L, N | Control power supply input | Single-phase 200 to 230 VAC +10 −15 %, 50/60Hz*1 |
| U, V, W | Motor connection | Connects terminal U to motor terminal (red), V to (white) and W to (blue). |
| ⏚ ×2 | Ground terminal | Connects to ground and motor terminal (for ground and motor grounding) |
| Y3, Y4 | Regenerative resistor connection | Regenerative resistor connection (External connection is not normally required.)*2 |
| +, − | Regenerative unit connection | Regenerative unit connection terminal (Connection is not normally required.)*3 |

*1 For 100 V power supply: Single-phase 100 to 115 VAC +10 −15 %, 50/60Hz

*2 Provided only for types 400W, 750W (200VAC) and 200W, 300W (100VAC).

*3 Provided only for types 30W to 200W (200VAC).

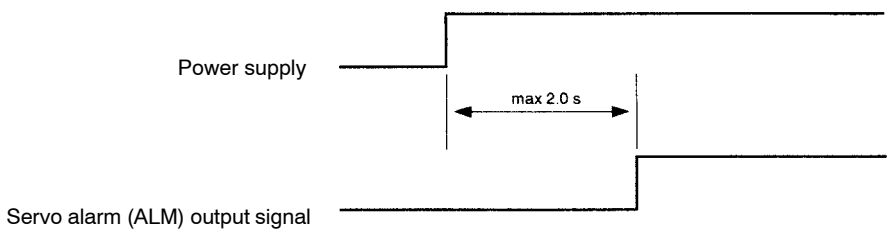


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3) Form a power ON sequence as follows:

a) Form a power ON sequence so that the main power is turned OFF when a servo alarm signal is output. (See the circuit diagram shown on the previous page.)

b) Hold down the power ON push-button for at least two seconds. The Servopack outputs a servo alarm signal for approximately two seconds or less when the power is turned ON. This operation is required to initialize the Servopack.






**NOTE**

- After turning the power OFF, do not touch the power terminals for 5 minutes. High voltage may remain in the Servopack.

- Avoid frequently turning the power ON and OFF. Since the Servopack has a capacitor in the power supply, a high charging current flows (for 0.2 second) when the power is turned ON. Therefore, frequently turning the power ON and OFF causes the main power devices (such as capacitors and fuses) to deteriorate, resulting in unexpected problems.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 2.3.3 Examples of Connecting I/O Signal Terminals

1) This sub-section provides typical examples of connecting to main host controllers. Connection to other host controllers is also possible. Connect to the host controller according to the connection examples shown below by referring to technical documentation for the host controller.

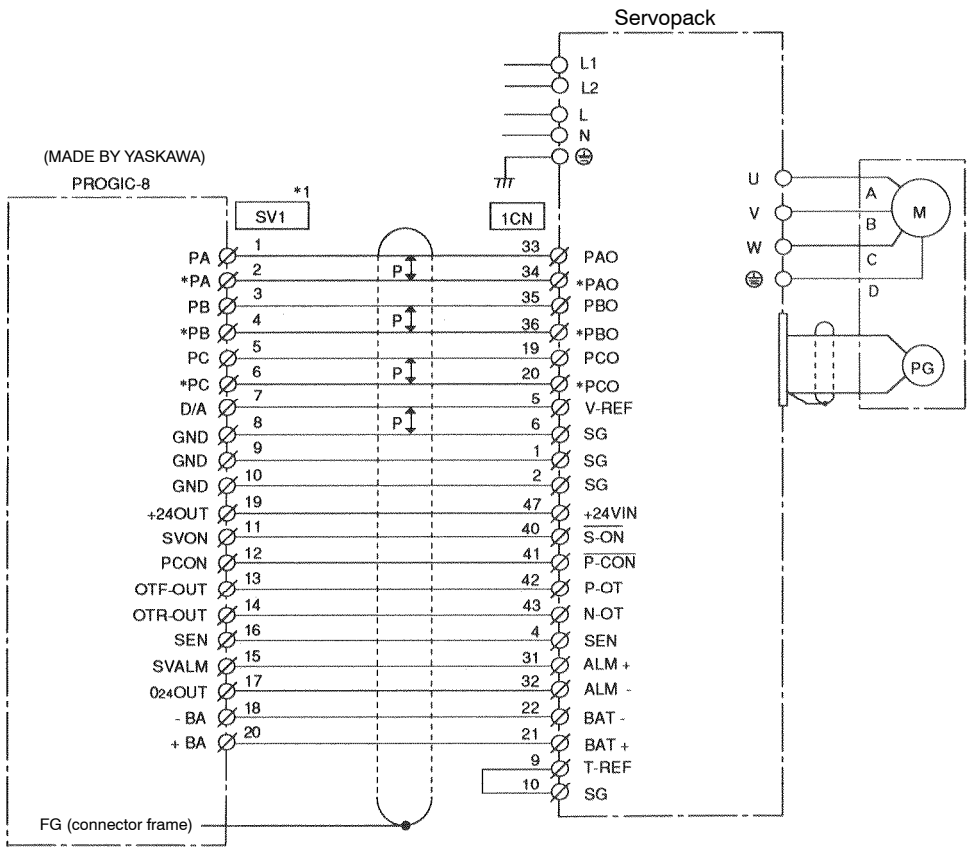
**NOTE** This sub-section describes signals related to the DR2 Servopack only. For other signals, refer to the relevant technical documentation.

2) Example of Connecting to PROGIC-8



**Speed**

**Servopack for Speed Control**




*1 These pin numbers are also applicable to SV2 to SV4.

*2 Do not change the standard settings of user constants for the Servopack.

Cable between PROGIC–8 and DR2 Servopack
Type JEPMC – W5521 – 05 (1.6ft.)
JEPMC – W5521 – 10 (3.3ft.)
JEPMC – W5521 – 30 (9.8ft.)

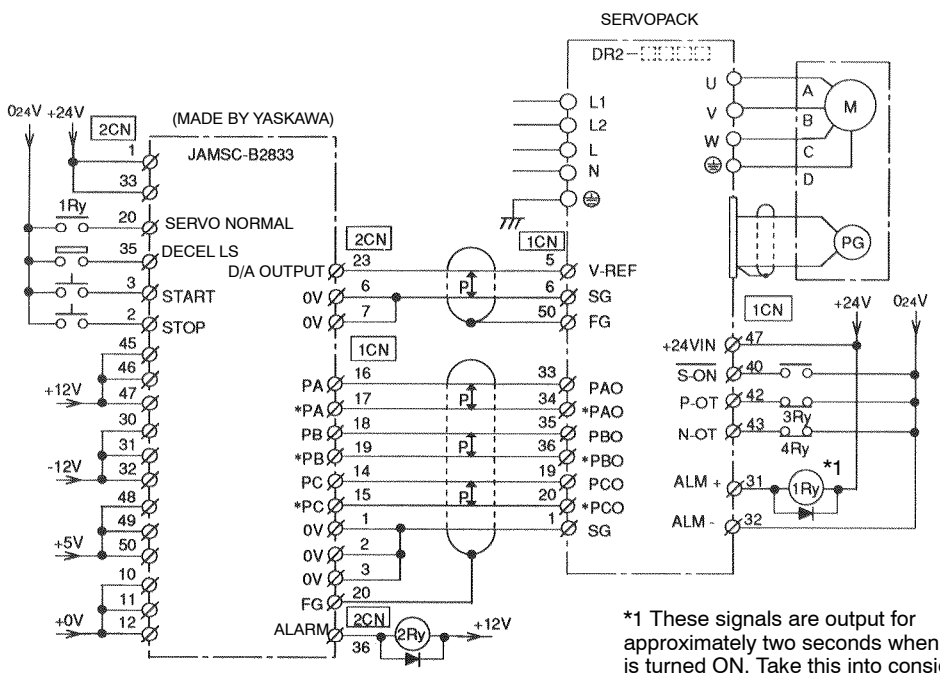


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3) Example of Connecting to GL-Series Positioning Module B2833

**Speed**

**Servopack for Speed Control**




*1 These signals are output for approximately two seconds when the power is turned ON. Take this into consideration when designing a power ON sequence. Relay 1Ry is used to stop main circuit power supply to the Servopack.



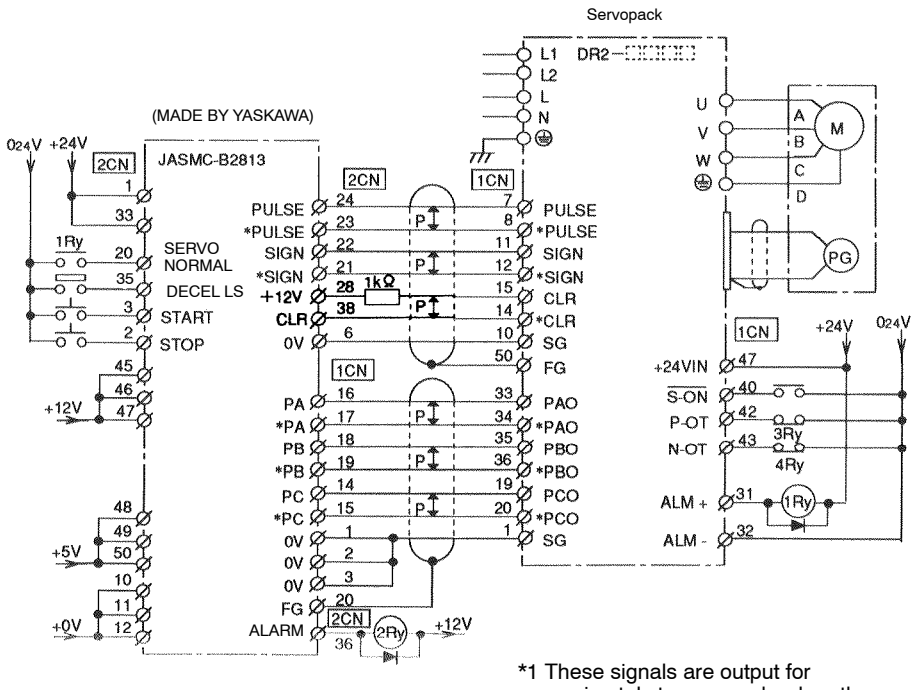


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4) Example of Connecting to GL-Series Positioning Module B2813

Positions

**Servopack for Position Control**




*1 These signals are output for approximately two seconds when the power is turned ON. Take this into consideration when designing a power ON sequence. Relay 1Ry is used to stop main circuit power supply to Servopack.

*2 Change the Cn-02 setting as follows:
Bit No. 3 = 0
Bit No. 4 = 0
Bit No. 5 = 0
Bit No. B = 1

*3 Pull up the CLR signal with 1 kΩ resistance.
Change the Cn-02 setting as follows:
Bit No. A =1

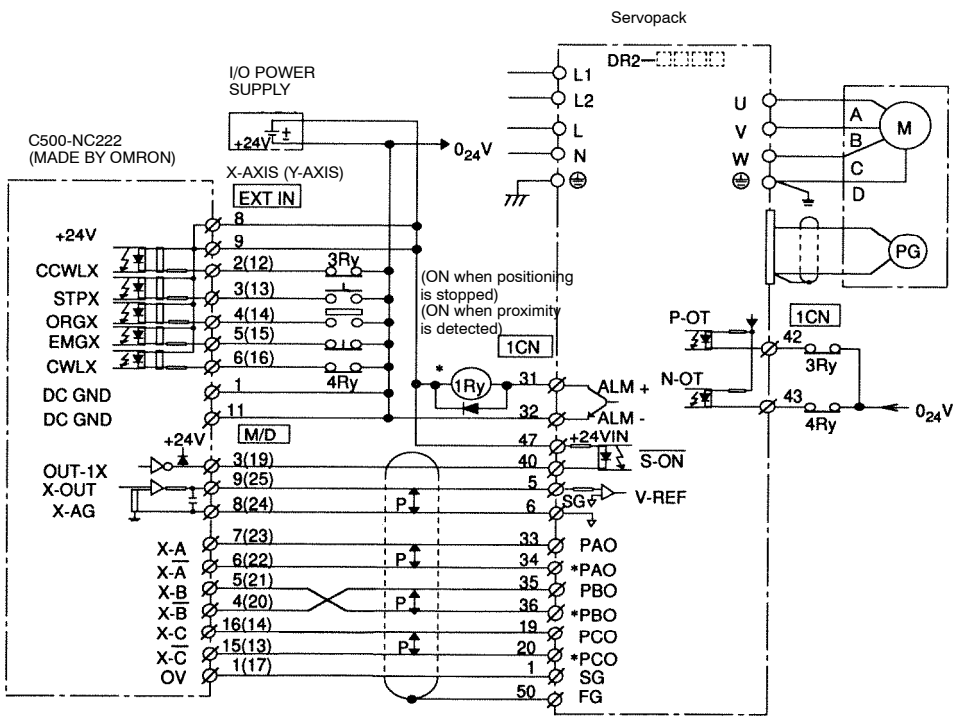


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

5) Example of Connecting to OMRON Position Control Unit C500-NC222

**Speed**

### Servopack for Speed Control




* These signals are output for approximately two seconds when the power is turned ON. Take this into consideration when designing a power ON sequence. Relay 1Ry is used to stop main circuit power supply to Servopack.

**Note** The signals shown here are applicable only to OMRON Sequencer C500-NC222 and Yaskawa Servopack DR2-□□□□.



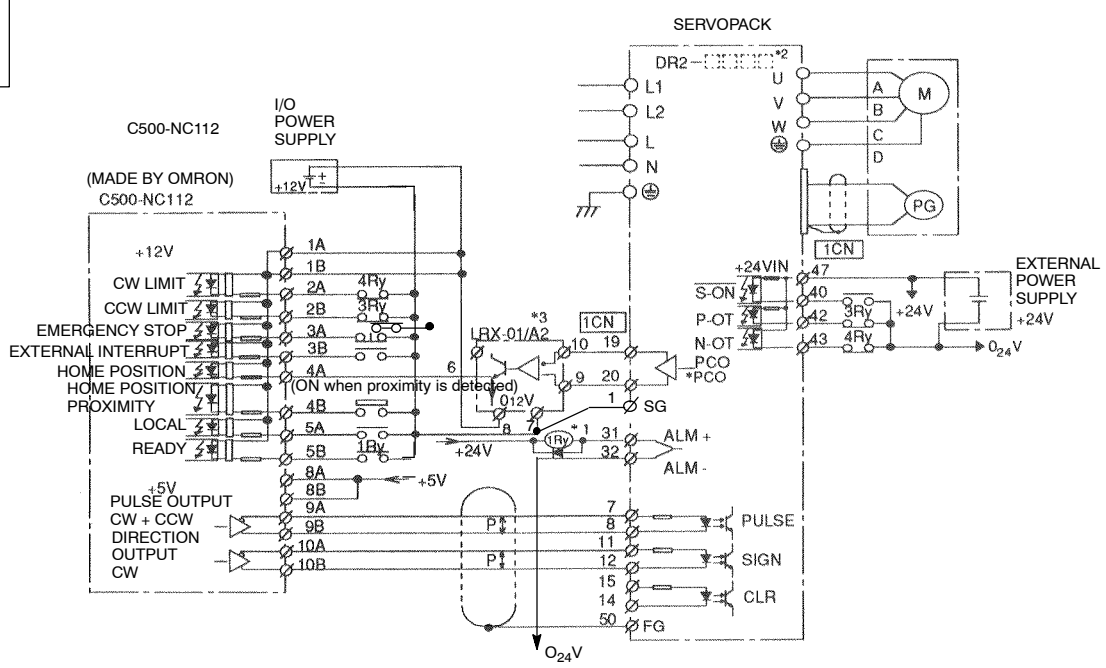


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

6) Example of Connecting to OMRON Position Control Unit C500-NC112

Positions

**Servopack for Position Control**




*1 These signals are output for approximately two seconds when the power is turned ON. Take this into consideration when designing a power ON sequence. Relay 1Ry is used to stop main circuit power supply to Servopack.

*2 Change the Cn-02 setting as follows:
Bit No. 3 = 1
Bit No. 4 = 0
Bit No. 5 = 0

*3 Manufactured by Yaskawa Controls Co., Ltd.

**Note** The signals shown here are applicable only to OMRON Sequencer C500-NC112 and Yaskawa Servopack DR2-□□□□.

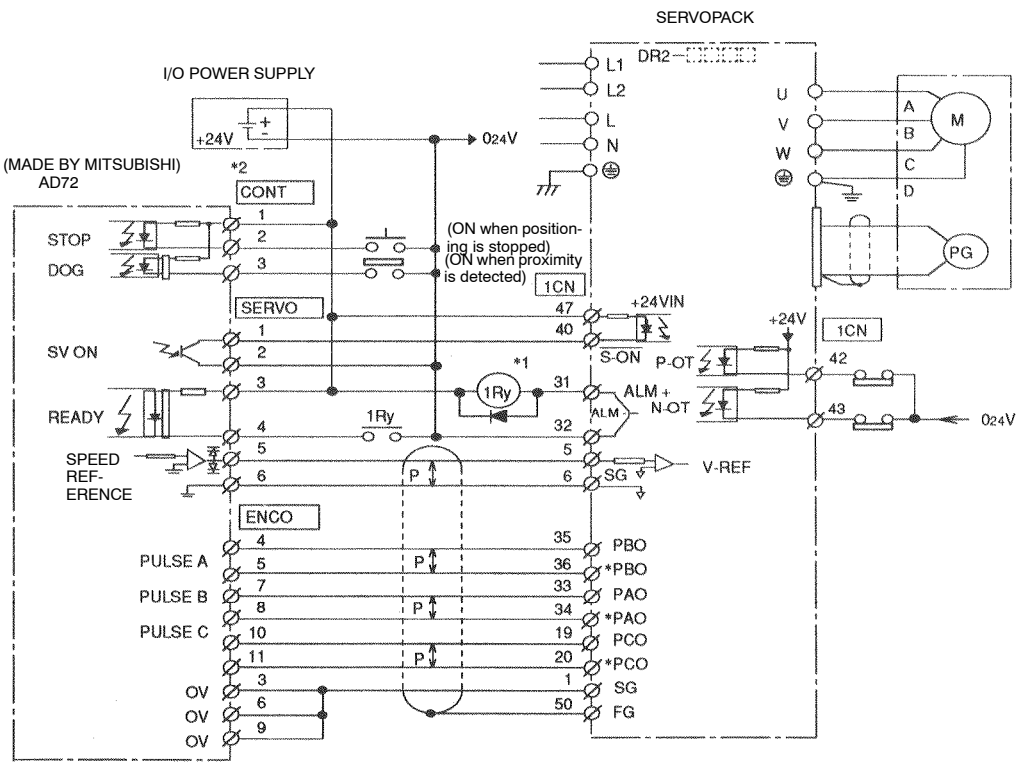


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

7) Example of Connecting to MITSUBISHI Positioning Unit AD72

Speed

**Servopack for Speed Control**




*1 These signals are output for approximately two seconds when the power is turned ON. Take this into consideration when designing a power ON sequence. Relay 1Ry is used to stop main circuit power supply to Servopack.

*2 These pin numbers are the same for both X and Y axes.

**Note** The signals shown here are applicable only to MITSUBISHI Sequencer AD72 and Yaskawa Servopack DR2-□□□□.

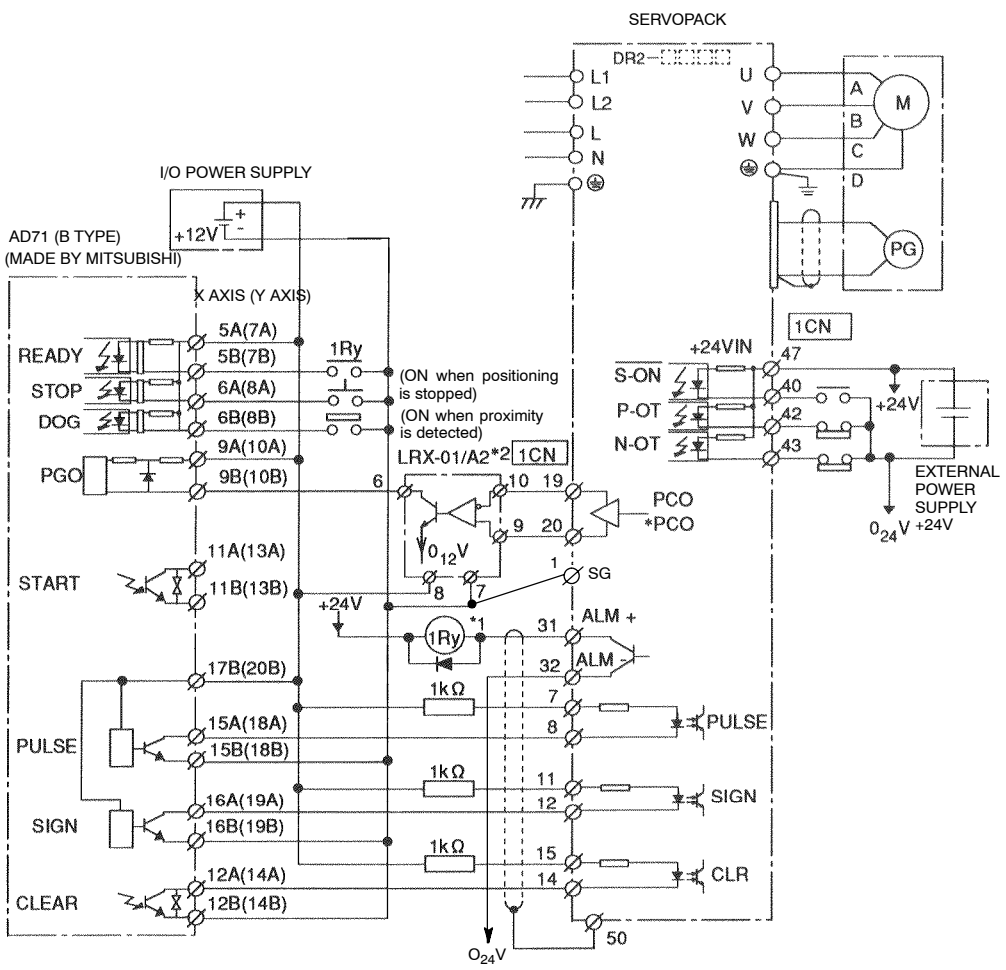


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

8) Example of Connecting to MITSUBISHI Positioning Unit AD71 (B Type)

Positions

**Servopack for Position Control**




*1 These signals are output for approximately two seconds when the power is turned ON. Take this into consideration when designing a power ON sequence. Relay 1Ry is used to stop main circuit power supply to Servopack.

*2 Manufactured by Yaskawa Controls Co., Ltd.

**Note** The signals shown here are applicable only to MITSUBISHI Sequencer AD71 (B Type) and Yaskawa Servopack DR2-□□□□.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 2.4 Conducting a Test Run

This section describes how to conduct a full test run. The test run is divided into two steps. Complete a test run in step 1 first, then proceed to step 2.

2.4.1 Test Run in Two Steps . . . . . 37
2.4.2 Step 1: Conducting a Test Run for Motor without Load . . . . . 39
2.4.3 Step 2: Conducting a Test Run with the Motor Connected to the Machine 43
2.4.4 Supplementary Information on Test Run . . . . . 45
2.4.5 Minimum User Constants Required and Input Signals . . . . . 47



## 2.4.1 Test Run in Two Steps

Conduct the test run when wiring is complete.

Generally, conducting a test run for servo drives can be difficult. However, by following the two steps described below, the test run can be performed safely and correctly.

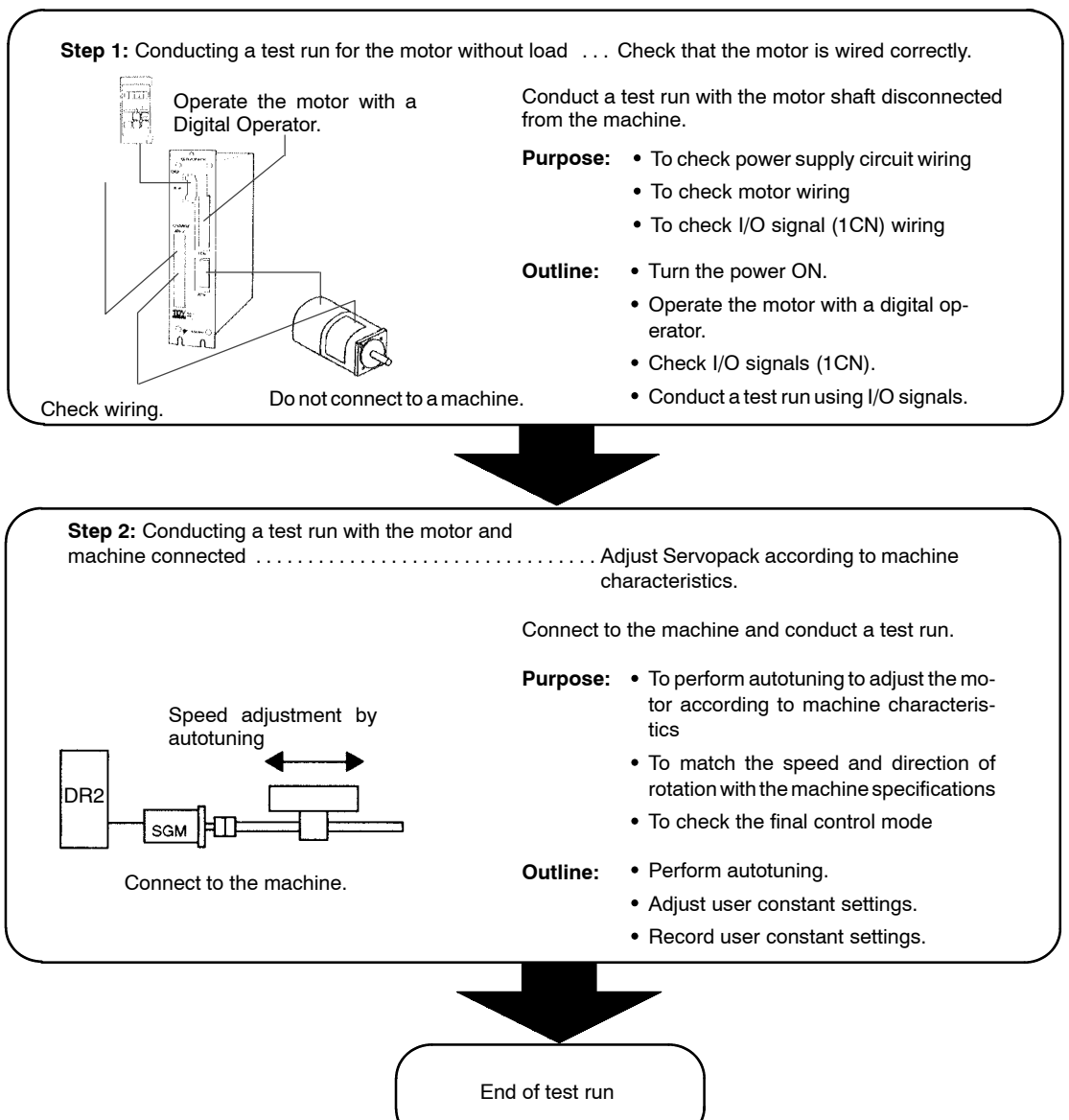
**NOTE** To prevent accidents, initially conduct a test run only for a servomotor under no load (i.e., with all couplings and belts disconnected). Do not run the servomotor while it is connected to a machine.

The test run is divided here into steps 1 and 2.

Complete the test run in step 1 first, then proceed to step 2. The purposes of each step are described on the next page.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com




For customers who use a servomotor with a brake, refer to *Section 2.4.4 Supplementary Information on Test Run* before starting a test run.

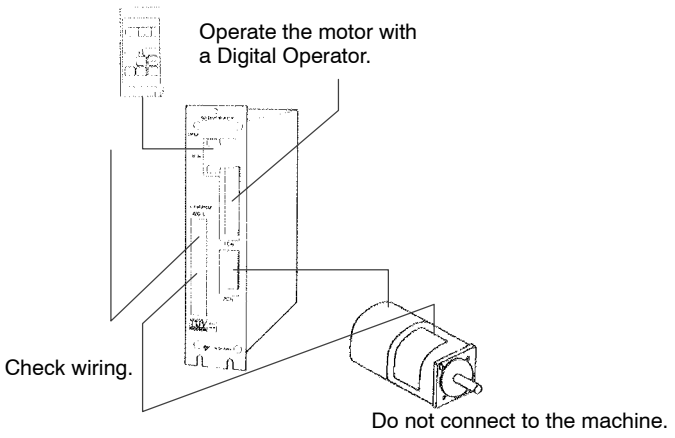
The following pages describe the test run procedure in detail.



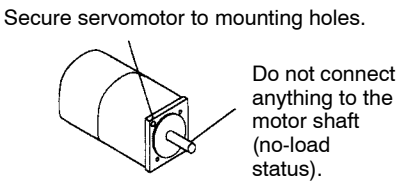
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 2.4.2 Step 1: Conducting a Test Run for Motor without Load

Check that the motor is wired correctly.
If the motor fails to rotate properly during a servo drive test run, the cause most frequently lies in incorrect wiring.
Conduct a test run for the motor without load according to the procedure described below.
For customers who use a servomotor with brake, refer to *Section 2.4.4 Supplemental Information on Test Run* before starting a test run.



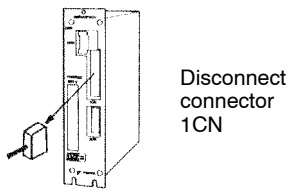

(1) Secure the servomotor.
Secure the servomotor to mounting holes to prevent it from moving during operation. Alternatively, install the servomotor on the machine and disconnect couplings and belts.



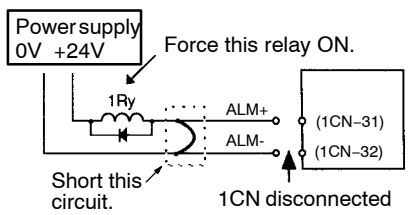

(2) Disconnect connector 1CN, then check the motor wiring in the power supply circuit.

**(When incremental encoder is used)**
I/O signals (1CN) are not to be used so leave connector 1CN disconnected.

**(When absolute encoder is used)**
Connect the battery to the battery terminals 1CN-21, -22.




(3) Short the alarm signal circuit.
Because connector 1CN is disconnected, the alarm signal prevents the power supply circuit from being turned ON. Therefore, temporarily short the alarm signal circuit.





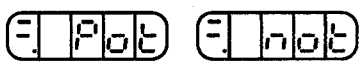

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*2.4.2 Step 1: Conducting a Test Run for Motor without Load cont.*

(4) Turn the power ON.

Turn the Servopack power ON. If the Servopack is turned ON normally, the LED on the Digital Operator lights up as shown in the figure.

Power is not supplied to the servomotor because the servo is OFF.







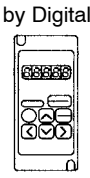
If an alarm display appears on the LED as shown in the figure above, the power supply circuit, motor wiring or encoder wiring is incorrect. In this case, turn the power OFF, then correct the problem.

(5) Operate using the Digital Operator

Operate the motor with the Digital Operator. Check that the motor runs normally.

Refer to *4.2.2 Operating Using the Digital Operator*.

Operation by Digital Operator



If an alarm occurs, the power supply circuit, motor wiring, or encoder wiring is incorrect.

(6) Connect signal lines.

Connect connector 1CN as follows:

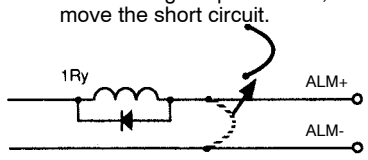
(1) Turn the power OFF.

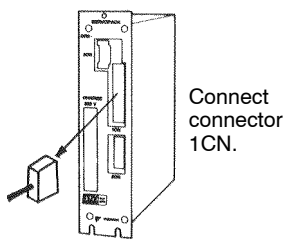
(2) Return the alarm signal circuit shorted in the above step (3) to its original state.

(3) Connect connector 1CN.

(4) Turn the power ON again.

After turning the power OFF, remove the short circuit.



Connect connector 1CN.

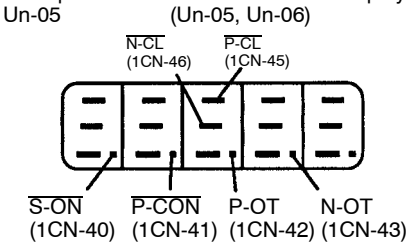
(7) Check input signals.

Check the input signal wiring in monitor mode. For the checking method, refer to *4.1.6 Operation in Monitor Mode*.

- Checking method
  Turn each connected signal line ON and OFF to check that the monitor bit display changes accordingly.

Example of Un-05

Internal status bit display (Un-05, Un-06)




The memory switch can be used to eliminate the need for external short-circuits in wiring (Refer to 3.1.2).

| Input Signal | ON/OFF | Monitor Bit Display |
|---|---|---|
| High level or open | OFF | Extinguished |
| 0 V level | ON | Lit |

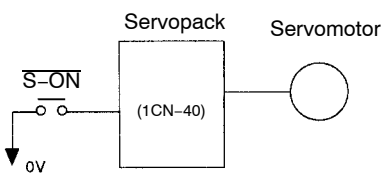


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

If the signal lines below are not wired correctly, the motor fails to rotate. Always wire them correctly. (If signal lines are not to be used, short them as necessary.)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| P-OT | 1CN-42 | Motor can rotate in forward direction when this input signal is at 0 V. |
| N-OT | 1CN-43 | Motor can reverse when this input signal is at 0 V. |
| $\overline{\text{S-ON}}$ | 1CN-40 | Servo is turned ON when this input signal is at 0 V. However, leave the servo in OFF status. |

(8) Turn servo (motor) ON.



Turn the servo ON

Turn the servo ON as follows:

(1) Check that no reference has been input.

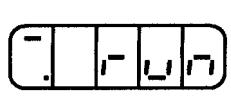
Speed/torque control mode :
V-REF (1CN-5) and T-REF (1CN-9) are at 0 V.

Position control mode:
PULS (1CN-7) and SIGN (1CN-11) are fixed.

(2) Turn the servo ON signal ON.

Set $\overline{\text{S-ON}}$ (1CN-40) to 0 V. If normal, the motor is turned ON and the Digital Operator displays the data as shown in the figure. If an alarm display appears, take appropriate action as described in *Appendix E List of Alarm Displays*.

Display when servo is turned ON



(9) Operate by reference input.

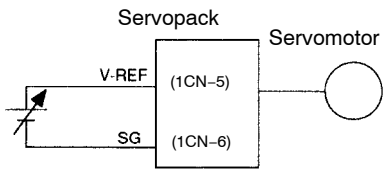
The operating procedure differs according to the Servopack control mode used.

Speed/Torque

**Speed/Torque Control Mode**

(This section describes the standard speed control setting.)

(1) Gradually increase the speed reference input (V-REF, 1CN-5) voltage. The motor will rotate.



Servomotor rotates at a speed proportional to the reference voltage.

**When a host controller such as a programmable controller performs position control, it may be difficult to directly input the speed reference voltage. In this case, constant voltage reference should be input once to ensure correct operation.**



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

(2) Check the following items in monitor mode (Refer to 4.6.1.):

(1) Has a reference speed been input?

(2) Is the motor speed as designed?

(3) Does the reference speed match the actual motor speed?

(4) Does the motor stop when no reference is input?

| | |
|---|---|
| Un-00 | Actual motor speed |
| Un-01 | Reference speed |

(3) If the motor rotates at an extremely slow speed when 0 V is specified as the reference voltage, correct the reference offset value as described in *Section 4.2.4 Reference Offset Automatic Adjustment*

(4) To change motor speed or the direction of rotation, reset the user constants shown below.

| | |
|---|---|
| Cn-03 | Speed reference gain (Refer to 3.2.7.) |
| Cn-02 bit 0 | Reverse rotation mode (Refer to 3.1.1.) |

**Positions**

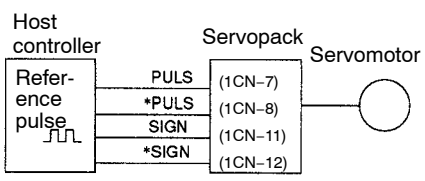
**Position Control Mode**

(1) Set user constant Cn-02 so that the reference pulse form matches the host controller output form. (Refer to 4.1.5 for details on how to set user constants.)

**Selecting reference pulse form (Refer to 3.2.2.)**

| | |
|---|---|
| Cn-02 | Bit 3 |
| | Bit 4 |
| | Bit 5 |

(2) Input a slow speed pulses from the host controller and execute low-speed operation.






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

(3) Check the following items in monitor mode (Refer to 4.6.1.):

(1) Has a reference pulse been input?

(2) Is the motor speed as set?

(3) Does the reference speed match the actual motor speed?

(4) Does the motor stop when no reference is input?

| | |
|---|---|
| Un-00 | Actual motor speed |
| Un-07 | Reference pulse speed display |
| Un-08 | Position error |



(4) To change motor speed or the direction of rotation, reset the user constants shown below.

| | |
|---|---|
| Cn-24,Cn-25 | Electronic gear ratio (Refer to 3.2.5.) |
| Cn-02 bit 0 | Reverse rotation mode (Refer to 3.1.1.) |

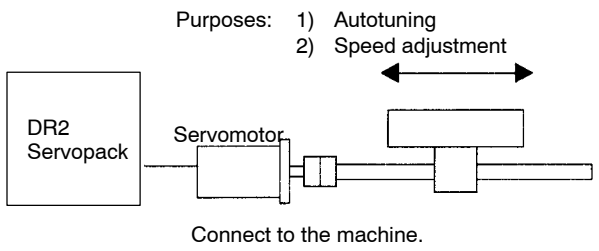
**If an alarm occurs or the motor fails to rotate during the above operation, connector 1CN wiring is incorrect or the user constant settings do not match the host controller specifications.**
**In this case, check the wiring and review the user constant settings, then repeat step 1.**

**Refer to *Appendix E List of Alarm Displays* and *Appendix D List of User Constants*.**

This is all that is required to complete step 1 (conducting a test run for motor without load).
Whenever possible, perform tuning associated with the host controller and other necessary adjustments in step 1 (before installing the motor on the machine).

### 2.4.3 Step 2: Conducting a Test Run with the Motor Connected to the Machine

After step 1 is complete, proceed to step 2 in which a test run is conducted with the motor connected to the machine. The purpose of step 2 is to adjust the Servopack according to the machine characteristics.
Conduct a test run according to the procedure described below.

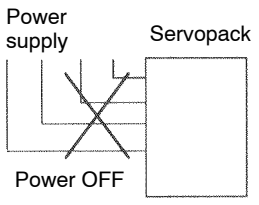




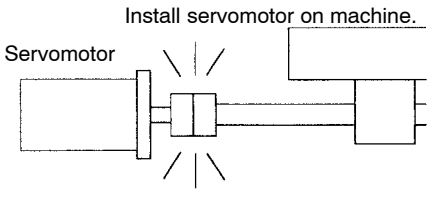

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**NOTE** Before proceeding to step 2, repeat step 1 (conducting a test run for the motor without load) until you are fully satisfied that the test has been completed successfully. Operation faults that arise after the motor is connected to the machine not only damage the machine but may also cause an accident resulting in injury or death. Therefore, all items including user constants setting and wiring should be tested as conclusively as possible before step 1 is complete.

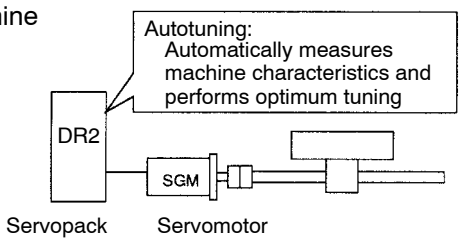
(1) Check that power is OFF.
Turn the Servopack power OFF.



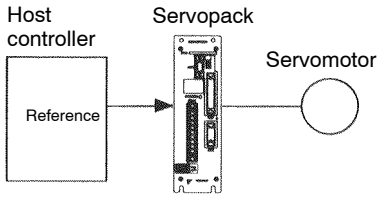

(2) Connect the servomotor to the machine.
Refer to *2.2.2 Installing the Servomotor*.



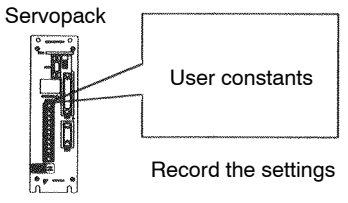

(3) Perform autotuning.
Tune the Servopack according to the machine characteristics. Refer to *4.2.3 Autotuning*.




(4) Operate by reference input.
As in step 1 (conducting a test run for motor without load), perform (9) *Operate by reference input* on page 41. Perform tuning associated with the host controller.




(5) Set user constants and record the settings.
Set user constants as necessary. Record all the user constant settings for maintenance purposes.




This is all that is required to conduct the test run.

Normally, the machine may cause much friction because of an insufficient running-in period. After a test run is complete, perform adequate running-in.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 2.4.4 Supplementary Information on Test Run

In the following cases, always refer to the information described below before starting a test run:

- When using a servomotor with a brake
- When performing position control from the host controller

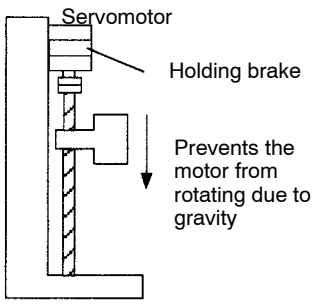
1) **When using a servomotor with brake**

The brake prevents the motor shaft from rotating due to a backdriving torque. Such a torque may be created by an external force or the force of gravity acting on the load and may result in undesired motion or the load, should motor power be lost.

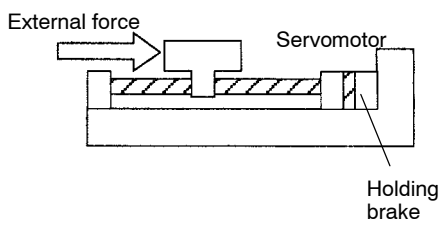
Servopack uses the brake interlock output (BK) signal to control holding brake operation for a servomotor with brake.



• Vertical axis

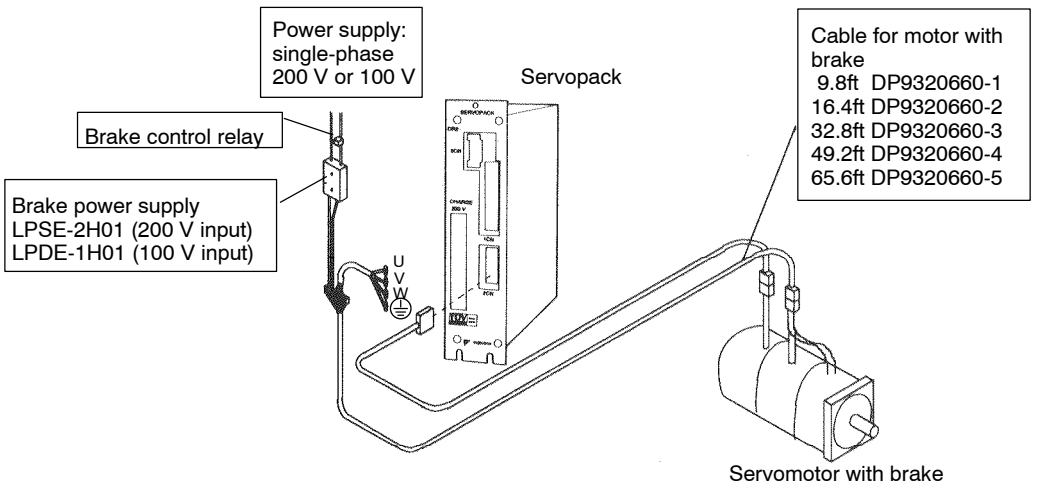



• Axis to which external force is applied




**NOTE** To prevent faulty operation caused by gravity (or external force), first check that the motor and holding brake operate normally with the motor disconnected from the machine. Then, connect the motor to the machine and conduct a test run.

For wiring of a servomotor with a brake, refer to *3.4.4 Using Holding Brake*.

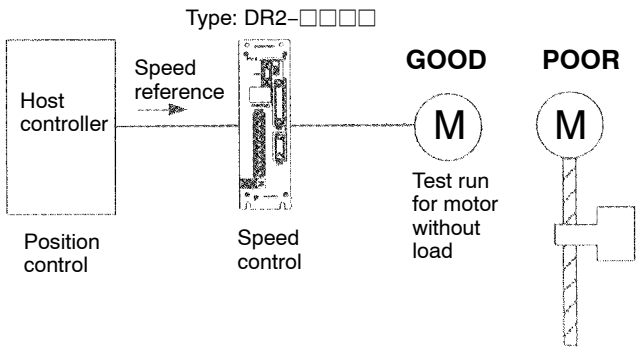





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*2.4.4 Supplementary Information on Test Run cont.*

2) **When performing position control from the host controller**
Check motor operation first and then conduct a test run as described in the table below.




**NOTE** Check the motor operation with the motor disconnected from the machine. If the host controller does not perform position control correctly, the motor may run out of control.

| Reference from Host Controller | Check Items | Check Method | Review Items |
|---|---|---|---|
| Jogging (constant-speed reference input from host controller) | Motor speed | Check the motor speed as follows:<br>● Use the speed monitor (Un-00) of the digital operator.<br>● Run the motor at low speed. For example, input a speed reference of 60 r/min and check that the motor makes one revolution per one second. | Check whether the speed reference gain value (user constant Cn-03) is correct. |
| Simple positioning | Number of motor revolutions | ● Input a reference equivalent to one motor revolution and visually check that the motor shaft makes one revolution. | Check whether the dividing ratio count (user constant Cn-0A) is correct. |
| Overtravel (when P-OT and N-OT signals are used) | Whether the motor stops rotating when P-OT and N-OT signals are input | ● Check that the motor stops when P-OT and N-OT signals are input during continuous motor operation. | If the motor does not stop, review the P-OT and N-OT wiring. |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 2.4.5 Minimum User Constants Required and Input Signals

1) This section describes the minimum user constants that must be set to conduct a test run. For details on how to set each user constant, refer to *4.1.5 Operation in User Constant Setting Mode*.

a) Servopack in speed/torque control mode

| | |
|---|---|
| Cn-03 | Speed reference gain |
| Cn-0A | Dividing ratio setting |

b) Servopack in torque control mode

| | |
|---|---|
| Cn-13 | Torque reference adjustment gain |
| Cn-0A | Dividing ratio setting |

c) Servopack in position control mode

| | |
|---|---|
| Cn-02 bits 3, 4 and 5 | Reference pulse form selection |
| Cn-24 | Electronic gear ratio (numerator) |
| Cn-25 | Electronic gear ratio (denominator) |

After changing the Cn-02 setting, always turn the power OFF, then ON. This makes the new setting valid.

2) If the specified direction of rotation differs from the actual direction of rotation, the wiring may be incorrect. In this case, recheck the wiring and correct it accordingly. Then, if the direction of rotation is to be reversed, set the following user constant:

| | |
|---|---|
| Cn-02 (bit 0) | Reverse rotation mode |

After changing the Cn-02 setting, always turn the power OFF, then ON. This makes the new setting valid.

3) The following table lists the minimum input signals required to conduct a test run. For details of each input signal, refer to the relevant page.

| Signal Name | | Pin Number | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| $\overline{\text{S-ON}}$ | (servo ON) | 1CN-40 | Switching between motor ON and OFF status.The memory switch can be used to eliminate the need for external short-circuit wiring (see page 132). |
| P-OT | (forward rotation prohibited) | 1CN-42 | Overtravel limit switch<br>The memory switch can be used to eliminate the need for external short-circuit wiring (see page 54). |
| N-OT | (revere rotation prohibited) | 1CN-43 | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# APPLICATIONS OF Σ-SERIES PRODUCTS

# 3

This chapter is prepared for readers who wish to learn more about the applications of Σ-series products after fully understanding *Chapter 2 Basic Uses of Σ-series Products*. It explains how to set user constants for each purpose and how to use each function. Read the applicable sections according to your requirements.



Before Reading this Chapter . . . . . 51

**3.1 Setting User Constants According to Machine Characteristics . . . . . 52**
3.1.1 Changing the Direction of Motor Rotation . . . . . 52
3.1.2 Setting the Overtravel Limit Function . . . . . 54
3.1.3 Restricting Torque . . . . . 57

**3.2 Setting User Constants According to Host Controller . . . . . 64**
3.2.1 Inputting Speed Reference . . . . . 64
3.2.2 Inputting Position Reference . . . . . 69
3.2.3 Using Encoder Output . . . . . 76
3.2.4 Using Contact I/O Signals . . . . . 80
3.2.5 Using Electronic Gear . . . . . 82
3.2.6 Using Contact Input Speed Control . . . . . 86
3.2.7 Using Torque Control . . . . . 91
3.2.8 Using Torque Feed-forward Function . . . . . 97
3.2.9 Using Torque Restriction by Analog Voltage Reference . . . . 98
3.2.10 Using the Reference Pulse Inhibit Function (INHIBIT) . . . . . 100
3.2.11 Using the Reference Pulse Input Filter Selection Function . . 101
3.2.12 Using the Analog Monitor . . . . . 102

**3.3 Setting Up the Σ Servopack . . . . . 103**
3.3.1 Setting User Constants . . . . . 103
3.3.2 Setting the Jog Speed . . . . . 104
3.3.3 Setting the Number of Encoder Pulses . . . . . 105
3.3.4 Setting the Motor Type . . . . . 106

**3.4 Setting Stop Mode . . . . . 107**
3.4.1 Adjusting Offset . . . . . 107



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3.4.2 Using Dynamic Brake . . . . . 108
3.4.3 Using Zero-Clamp . . . . . 109
3.4.4 Using Holding Brake . . . . . 110

**3.5 Running the Motor Smoothly . . . . . 114**
3.5.1 Using the Soft Start Function . . . . . 114
3.5.2 Using the Smoothing Function . . . . . 115
3.5.3 Adjusting Gain . . . . . 115
3.5.4 Adjusting Offset . . . . . 116
3.5.5 Setting the Torque Reference Filter Time Constant . . . . . 116

**3.6 Minimizing Positioning Time . . . . . 118**
3.6.1 Using Autotuning Function . . . . . 118
3.6.2 Setting Servo Gain . . . . . 118
3.6.3 Using Feed-forward Control . . . . . 120
3.6.4 Using Proportional Control . . . . . 120
3.6.5 Setting Speed Bias . . . . . 121
3.6.6 Using Mode Switch . . . . . 122

**3.7 Forming a Protective Sequence . . . . . 128**
3.7.1 Using Servo Alarm Output and Alarm Code Output . . . . . 128
3.7.2 Using Servo ON Input Signal . . . . . 132
3.7.3 Using Positioning Complete Signal . . . . . 133
3.7.4 Using Speed Coincidence Output Signal . . . . . 134
3.7.5 Using Running Output Signal . . . . . 136
3.7.6 Using Servo Ready Output Signal . . . . . 138

**3.8 Special Wiring . . . . . 140**
3.8.1 Wiring Instructions . . . . . 140
3.8.2 Wiring for Noise Control . . . . . 142
3.8.3 Using More Than One Servo Drive . . . . . 147
3.8.4 Using Regenerative Units . . . . . 148
3.8.5 Using an Absolute Encoder . . . . . 151
3.8.6 Extending an Encoder Cable . . . . . 159
3.8.7 Using DR2 Servopack with High Voltage Line . . . . . 161
3.8.8 Connector Terminal Layouts . . . . . 163



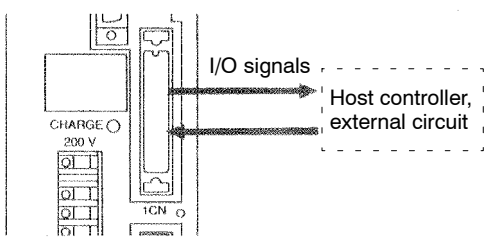


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# Before Reading this Chapter

1) This chapter describes how to use each 1CN connector I/O signal for the DR2 Servopack and how to set the corresponding user constant.

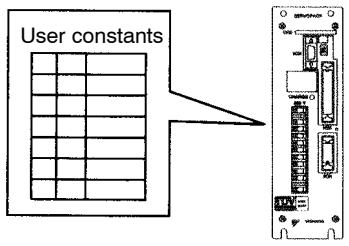
2) For a list of I/O signals of 1CN connecor, refer to *Appendix C List of I/O Signals*.
For terminal arrangement for I/O signals of 1CN connecor, refer to *3.8.8 Connector Terminal Layouts*.




3) For a list of user constants, refer to *Appendix D List of User Constants*.

4) User constants are divided into the following two types.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1) Memory switch Cn-01 and Cn-02 | Set each bit to ON or OFF to select a function. |
| 2) Constant setting Cn-03 and later | Set a numerical value such as a torque limit value or speed loop gain. |




5) For details on how to set user constants, refer to *4.1.5 Operation in User Constant Setting Mode.*







Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 3.1 Setting User Constants According to Machine Characteristics

This section describes how to set user constants according to the dimensions and performance of the machine to be used.

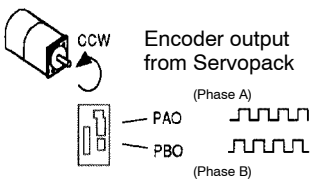
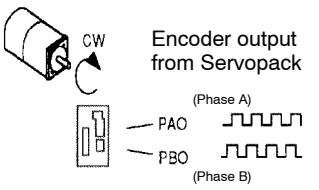
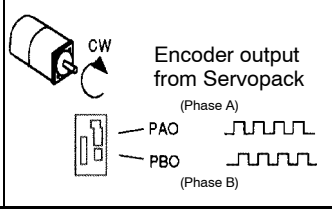
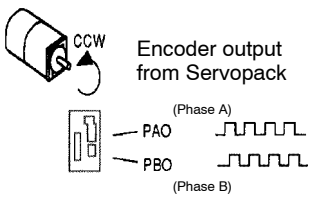
3.1.1 Changing the Direction of Motor Rotation . . . . . 52
3.1.2 Setting the Overtravel Limit Function . . . . . 54
3.1.3 Restricting Torque . . . . . 57

## 3.1.1 Changing the Direction of Motor Rotation



1) This Servopack provides a reverse rotation mode in which the direction of rotation can be reversed without altering the servomotor wiring. With the standard setting, forward rotation is defined as counterclockwise (CCW) rotation when viewed from the drive end.

2) If reverse rotation mode is used, the direction of motor rotation can be reversed without other items being changed. The direction (+/–) of axial motion is reversed.

| | Standard Setting | Reverse Rotation Mode |
|---|---|---|
| Forward Run Reference |  |  |
| Reverse Run Reference |  |  |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3) **Setting Reverse Rotation Mode:**

Reverse rotation mode can be set in either of the following two ways. Normally, method 1 is easier to use.

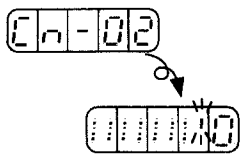
a) **Method 1: Setting Memory Switch**

Set bit 0 of memory switch Cn-02 to select reverse rotation mode.

| **Cn-02 Bit 0** | Rotation Direction Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
|---|---|---|---|

Set the direction of rotation.

| Setting | Meaning | |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Forward rotation is defined as counterclockwise rotation when viewed from the drive end. | (Standard setting) |
| 1 | Forward rotation is defined as clockwise rotation when viewed from the drive end. | (Reverse rotation mode) |

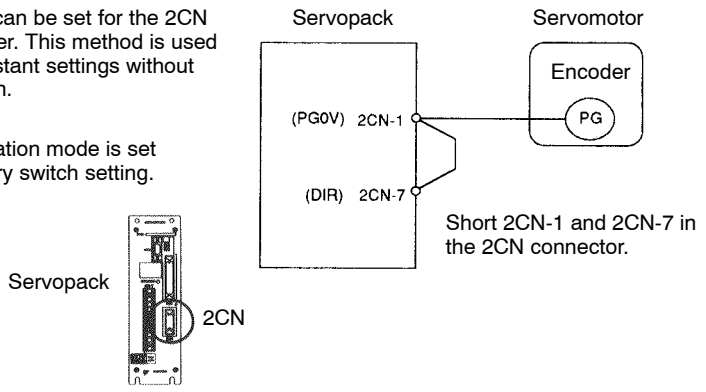



3

b) **Method 2: Shorting the Wiring in the 2CN Connector**

Reverse rotation mode can be set for the 2CN connector for the encoder. This method is used to standardize user constant settings without using the memory switch.

In this case, reverse rotation mode is set regardless of the memory switch setting.






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.1.2 Setting the Overtravel Limit Function

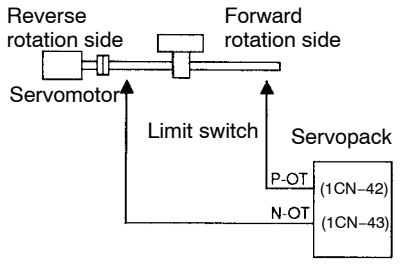
1) The overtravel limit function forces the moving part of the machine to stop when it exceeds the movable range.

2) To use the overtravel limit function, connect the following input signal terminals correctly.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **→ Input P-OT 1CN-42** | Forward Rotation Prohibited (Forward Overtravel) | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **→ Input N-OT 1CN-43** | Reverse Rotation Prohibited (Reverse Overtravel) | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Inputs terminals for overtravel limit switch.

For linear motion, connect a limit switch to prevent damage to the machine.




| | | |
|---|---|---|
| P-OT | ON: 1CN-42 is at low level. | Forward rotation allowed. Normal operation status. |
| | OFF: 1CN-42 is at high level. | Forward rotation prohibited (reverse rotation allowed). |
| N-OT | ON: 1CN-43 is at low level. | Reverse rotation allowed. Normal operation status. |
| | OFF: 1CN-43 is at high level. | Reverse rotation prohibited (forward rotation allowed). |



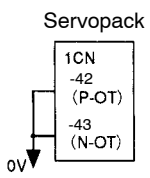
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3) Use the following user constants (memory switch) to specify whether input signals for overtravel are to be used.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01 Bit 2** | Use of P-OT Input Signal | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-01 Bit 3** | Use of N-OT Input Signal | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Specifies whether the P-OT input signal for prohibiting forward rotation at overtravel (1CN-42) is to be used and whether the N-OT input signal for prohibiting reverse rotation at overtravel (1CN-43) is to be used.

Specifies "1" when external short-circuit wiring is to be omitted.




The short-circuit wiring shown in the figure can be omitted when P-OT and N-OT are not used.

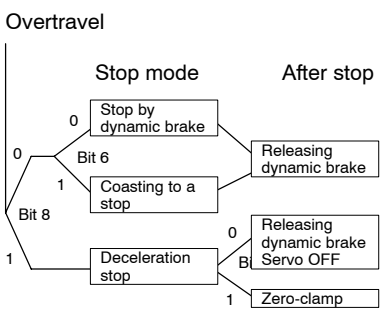
| Bit | Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| Bit 2 | 0 | Uses the P-OT input signal for prohibiting forward rotation. (Forward rotation is prohibited when 1CN-16 is open. Forward rotation is allowed when 1CN-42 is at 0 V.) |
| | 1 | Does not use the P-OT input signal for prohibiting forward rotation. (Forward rotation is always allowed. This has the same effect as shorting 1CN-42 to 0 V.) |
| Bit 3 | 0 | Uses the N-OT input signal for prohibiting reverse rotation. (Reverse rotation is prohibited when 1CN-17 is open. Reverse rotation is allowed when 1CN-43 is at 0 V.) |
| | 1 | Does not use the N-OT input signal for prohibiting reverse rotation. (Reverse rotation is always allowed. This has the same effect as shorting 1CN-43 to 0 V.) |

4) If the P-OT and N-OT input signals are used, set the following user constants to specify how to stop the motor.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01 Bit 8** | How to Stop Motor at Overtravel | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-01 Bit 9** | Operation to be Performed when Motor Stops after Overtravel | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed Control and Position Control |

- Inputs signal for prohibiting forward rotation (P-OT, 1CN-42)
- Inputs signal for prohibiting reverse rotation (N-OT, 1CN-43)

Specify how to stop the motor when either of the above signals is input.






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| Cn-01 bit 8 | 0 | Stops the motor in the same way as when the servo is turned OFF.<br>The motor is stopped by dynamic brake or coasts to a stop. Either of these stop modes can be selected by setting bit 6 of Cn-01. |
| | 1 | Stops the motor by decelerating it with the preset torque.<br>Preset value: Cn-06 (EMGTRQ) emergency stop torque |

If deceleration stop mode is selected, specify the operation to be done after the motor stops.

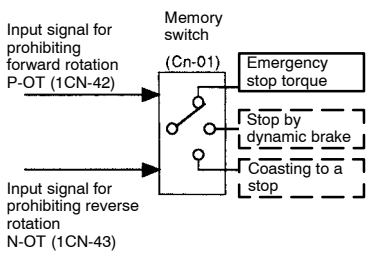
| | Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| Cn-01 bit 9 | 0 | Turns the servo OFF when the motor stops in deceleration stop mode. |
| | 1 | Causes the motor to enter zero-clamp status after it stops in deceleration stop mode. |

**If torque control mode is selected, the motor stops in the same way as when the servo is turned OFF, regardless of the setting of Cn-01 bit 8.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-06** | EMGTRQ Emergency Stop Torque | Unit: % | Setting Range: 0 to Maximum Torque | Factory Setting: Maximum Torque | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Specifies the stop torque to be applied at overtravel when the input signal for prohibiting forward or reverse rotation is to be used.

Specifies a torque value in terms of a percentage of the rated torque.

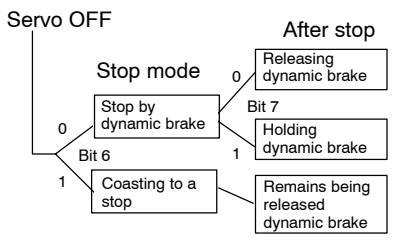



| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01 Bit 6** | How to Stop Motor at Servo OFF | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-01 Bit 7** | Operation to Be Performed when Motor Stops after Servo OFF | Factory Setting: 1 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

The Servopack enters servo OFF status when:

- Servo ON input signal (S-ON, 1CN-40) is turned OFF.
- Servo alarm arises.
- Main power is turned OFF.

Specify how to stop the motor when one of the above events occurs during operation.




Dynamic brake is a function that electrically applies brakes by using a resistor to consume motor rotation energy.

| | Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| Cn-01 bit 6 | 0 | Stops the motor by dynamic brake. |
| | 1 | Causes the motor to coast to a stop.<br>The motor power is OFF and stops due to machine friction. |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

If dynamic brake stop mode is selected, specify the operation to be performed when the motor stops.

| | Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| Cn-01 bit 7 | 0 | Releases dynamic brake after the motor stops. |
| | 1 | Does not release dynamic brake even after the motor stops. |

### 3.1.3 Restricting Torque

1) The Servopack can provide the following torque control:

- **Torque restriction**
  - **Level 1: To restrict the maximum output torque to protect the machine or workpiece**
  - **Level 2: To restrict torque after the motor moves the machine to a specified position**
- Torque control
  - Level 3: To always control output torque, not speed
  - Level 4: To alternately use speed control and torque control



This section describes how to use levels 1 and 2 of the torque restriction function.

2) **How to Set Level 1: Internal Torque Limit**

The maximum torque is restricted to the values set in the following user constants.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-08** | TLMTF Forward Rotation Torque Limit | Unit: % | Setting Range: 0 to Maximum Torque | Factory Setting: Maximum Torque | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-09** | TLMTR Reverse Rotation Torque Limit | Unit: % | Setting Range: 0 to Maximum Torque | Factory Setting: Maximum Torque | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*3.1.3 Restricting Torque cont.*

Sets the maximum torque values for forward rotation and reverse rotation, respectively.

Sets these user constants when torque must be restricted according to machine conditions.

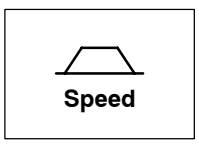
This torque restriction function always monitors torque, and outputs the signal shown on the right when the limit value is reached.

Specifies a torque limit value in terms of a percentage of the rated torque.

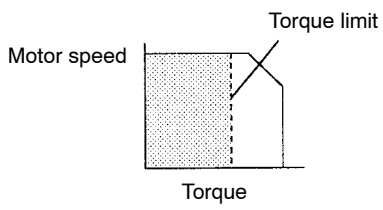
**Output Signal for Torque Restriction Function**

- $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+ (1CN-25), $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- (1CN-26)
- Status indication mode bit data
- Monitor mode (Un-05) bit 4

User Constant Setting:
Memory switch (Cn-01) bit 4 = 0



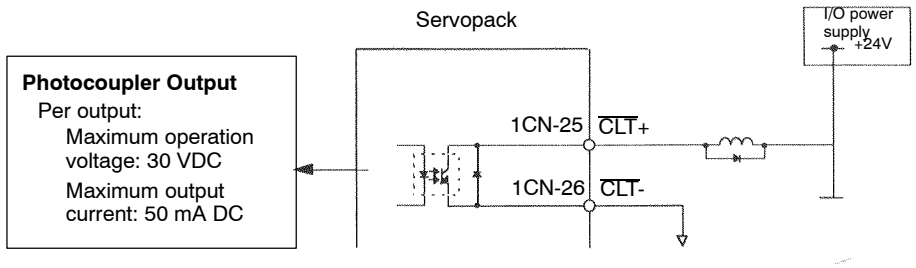

Example of Use: Machine Protection




Note that too small a torque limit value will result in torque shortage at acceleration or deceleration.

• Using $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+, $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- Signals

This section describes how to use contact output signals $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+, $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- as a torque limit output signal.




| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Output → $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+ 1CN-25**<br>**Output → $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- 1CN-26** | Torque Limit Output (Running Output) | For Speed/Torque Control |

This signal indicates whether motor output torque (current) is being restricted.

| | |
|---|---|
| ON status: The circuit between 1CN-25 and 1CN-26 is closed.<br>1CN-25 is at low level. | Motor output torque is being restricted.<br>(Internal torque reference is greater than the preset value.) |
| OFF status: The circuit between 1CN-25 and 1-CN26 is open.<br>1CN-25 is at high level. | Motor output torque is not being restricted.<br>(Internal torque reference is equal to or below the preset value.) |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Preset Value: Cn-08 (TLMTF)
Cn-09 (TLMTR)
Cn-18 (CLMIF) : $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ input only
Cn-19 (CLMIR) : $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ input only

**Note** This function is changed to another function depending on the setting of bit 4 of memory switch Cn-01.

To use output signals $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+, $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- as a torque limit output signal, set the following memory switch to 0.

This memory switch can also be used to set level 2 torque restriction (described in the next subsection).

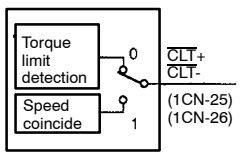
| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01 Bit 4** | $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+, $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- Output Signals Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control |

3

Sets the output conditions for output signals $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+ (1CN-25) and $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- (1CN-26).

| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | **Uses $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+, $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- output signals as a torque limit output signal.**<br>**Compares the DR2 Servopack internal torque (current) reference with the preset value.**<br>**Preset Value: Cn-08 (TLMTF)**<br>**Cn-09 (TLMTR)**<br>**Cn-18 (CLMIF): P-CL input only**<br>**Cn-19 (CLMIR): N-CL input only**<br>**Internal torque (current) reference ≧ preset value** → **Opens the circuit between 1CN-25 and 1CN-26**<br>**Internal torque (current) reference < preset value** → **Closes the circuit between 1CN-25 and 1CN-26** |
| 1 | Uses $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+, $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- output signals as a speed coincide output signal.<br>For details, refer to 3.7.4. |

Bit 4 of memory switch Cn-01




When $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+, $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- output signals are changed, the following bit data are also changed:

- Status indication mode bit data
- Monitor mode Un-05 bit 4

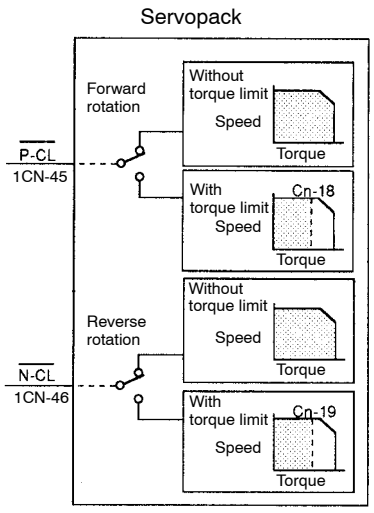


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3 **How to Set Level 2: External Torque Limit**

First, use a contact input signal to make the torque (current) limit value set in the user constant valid. Torque limit can be set separately for forward and reverse rotation.

To use this function, always set bit 2 of memory switch Cn-02 to 0 (standard setting). The contact input speed control function cannot be used.




| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| P-CL | ON: 1CN-45 is at low level. | Torque restriction applies during forward rotation. | Limit value: Cn-18 |
| | OFF: 1CN-45 is at high level. | Torque restriction does not apply during forward rotation. | |
| N-CL | ON: 1CN-46 is at low level. | Torque restriction applies during reverse rotation. | Limit value: Cn-19 |
| | OFF: 1CN-46 is at high level. | Torque restriction does not apply during reverse rotation. | |

This torque restriction function outputs the signal shown on the right.

**Output Signal for Torque Restriction Function**

| |
|---|
| • CLT+ (1CN-25), CLT- (1CN-26)<br>• Status indication mode bit data<br>• Monitor mode Un-05 bit 4 |
| User Constant Setting:<br>Memory switch Cn-01 bit 4 = 0 |

Examples of Use:

- Forced stopping
- Holding workpiece by robot



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-18** | CLMIF<br>Forward External Torque Limit | Unit:<br>% | Setting Range: 0 to Maximum Torque | Factory Setting:<br>100 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-19** | CLMIR<br>Reverse External Torque Limit | Unit:<br>% | Setting Range: 0 to Maximum Torque | Factory Setting:<br>100 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Sets a torque limit value when torque is restricted by external contact input.

This function is valid when bit 2 of memory switch Cn-02 is set to 0.

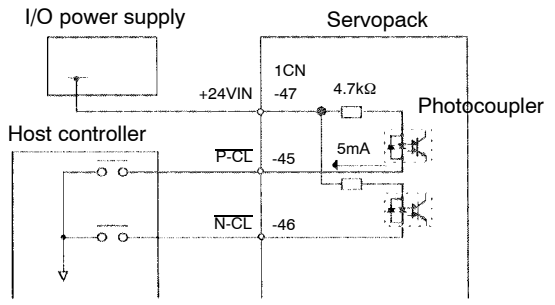
| | |
|---|---|
| When $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ (1CN-45) is input | Applies torque restriction as specified in Cn-18 |
| When $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ (1CN-46) is input | Applies torque restriction as specified in Cn-19 |

For torque restriction by analog voltage reference, refer to *3.2.9 Using Torque Restriction by Analog Voltage Reference*.

3

• Using $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ and $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ Signals

This section describes how to use input signals $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ and $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ as torque limit input signals.




| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **→ Input $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ 1CN-45** | Forward External Torque Limit Input (Speed Selection 1) | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **→ Input $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ 1CN-46** | Reverse External Torque Limit Input (Speed Selection 2) | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

These signals are for forward and reverse external torque (current) limit input.

This function is useful in forced stopping.

**Output Signal for Torque Restriction Function**

| |
|---|
| • $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+ (1CN-25), $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- (1CN-26)<br>• Status indication mode bit data<br>• Monitor mode Un-05 bit 4 |
| • User Constant Setting:<br>Memory switch Cn-01 bit 4 = 0 |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ | ON: 1CN-45 is at low level. | Torque restriction applies during forward rotation. | Limit value: Cn-18 |
| | OFF: 1CN-45 is at high level. | Torque restriction does not apply during forward rotation. Normal operation status. | |
| $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ | ON: 1CN-46 is at low level. | Torque restriction applies during reverse rotation. | Limit value: Cn-19 |
| | OFF: 1CN-46 is at high level. | Torque restriction does not apply during reverse rotation. Normal operation status. | |

The signal shown on the right is output while torque is being restricted.

**Note** This function is changed to another function depending on the setting of bit 2 of memory switch Cn-02 (see below).

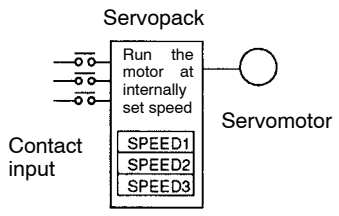
To use input signals $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ and $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ as torque limit input signals, set the following memory switch to 0.



| **Cn-02 Bit 2** | Contact Input Speed Control Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
|---|---|---|---|

Prohibits the contact input speed control function.

If the contact input speed control function is used, the contents of the input signals shown below will change.




**After this memory switch is reset, the meanings of the following signals will also change:**

**Monitor mode (Un-05) bit 7 and bit 8**

| Setting | Meaning | Input Signal |
|---|---|---|
| **0** | **Does not use the contact input speed control function.** | **$\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ (1CN-41)** — **Used to switch between P control and PI control. (For speed/torque control, bits A and B of Cn-01 take precedence over this signal.)**<br>**$\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ (1CN-45)** — **Used for forward external torque limit input**<br>**$\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ (1CN-46)** — **Used for reverse external torque limit input** |
| 1 | Uses the contact input speed control function. | 0: OFF, 1: ON<br>Direction of rotation 0: Forward 1: Reverse |

| $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ | $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ | $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ | Speed Setting |
|---|---|---|---|
| Direction of rotation 0: Forward 1: Reverse | 0 | 0 | Normal speed/torque or position control |
| | 0 | 1 | Cn-1F (SPEED1) |
| | 1 | 1 | Cn-20 (SPEED2) |
| | 1 | 0 | Cn-21 (SPEED3) |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

- Handling of the $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+, $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- signals are the same as for level 1 (internal torque limit). Refer to *Using $\overline{CLT}$+, $\overline{CLT}$- Signals* on page 58.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 3.2 Setting User Constants According to Host Controller

This section describes how to connect a Σ-series Servo to a host controller and how to set user constants.

3.2.1 Inputting Speed Reference . . . . . 64
3.2.2 Inputting Position Reference . . . . . 69
3.2.3 Using Encoder Output . . . . . 76
3.2.4 Using Contact I/O Signals . . . . . 80
3.2.5 Using Electronic Gear . . . . . 82
3.2.6 Using Contact Input Speed Control . . . . . 86
3.2.7 Using Torque Control . . . . . 91
3.2.8 Using Torque Feed-forward Function . . . . . 97
3.2.9 Using Torque Restriction by Analog Voltage Reference . . . . . 98
3.2.10 Using the Reference Pulse Inhibit Function (INHIBIT) . . . . . 100
3.2.11 Using the Reference Pulse Input Filter Selection Function . . . . . 101
3.2.12 Using the Analog Monitor . . . . . 102



## 3.2.1 Inputting Speed Reference

1) Using the following memory switch, select the speed/torque control.

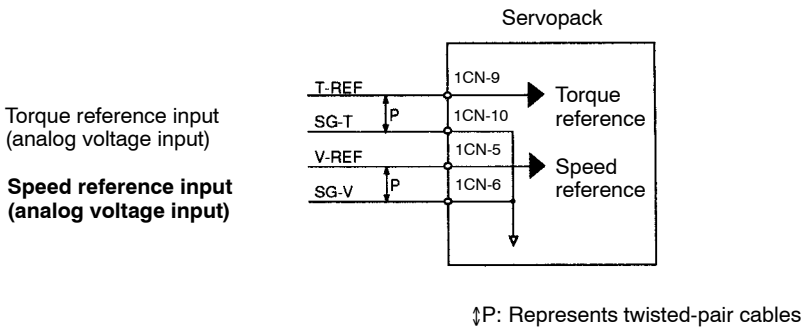
| Cn-02 Bit B | Selection of Speed/Torque Control or Position Control | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
|---|---|---|---|

Select the control mode (speed/torque control or position control) by bit B of memory switch Cn-02.

| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Selects speed or torque control.<br>Select the control form by bits A and B of memory switch Cn-01. |
| 1 | Selects position control. |

**Note** For the memory switch Cn-02, always turn the power OFF and then ON after changing the setting. This makes the new setting valid.

2) Input a speed reference by using the following input signal "speed reference input." Since this signal can be used in different ways, set the optimum reference input for the system to be created.




↕P: Represents twisted-pair cables



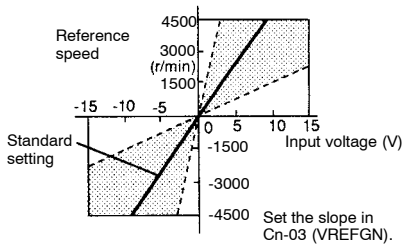
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| → Input V-REF 1CN-5 | Speed Reference Input | For Speed/Torque Control Only |
| → Input SG-V 1CN-6 | Signal Ground for Speed Reference Input | For Speed/Torque Control Only |

Use these signals when speed control is selected (memory switch Cn-02 bit B = 0).

For ordinary speed control, always wire the V-REF and SG-V terminals.

Motor speed is controlled in proportion to the input voltage between V-REF and SG-V.



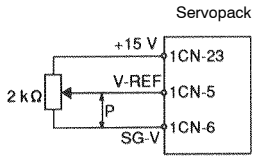

• Standard Setting:

Cn-03 = 500: This setting means that 6 V is equivalent to rated speed (3,000 r/min)

Examples:
+6 V input → 3000 r/min in forward direction
+1 V input → 500 r/min in forward direction
–3 V input → 1500 r/min in reverse direction

User constant Cn-03 can be used to change the voltage input range.

• Example of Input Circuit
(See the figure on the right)

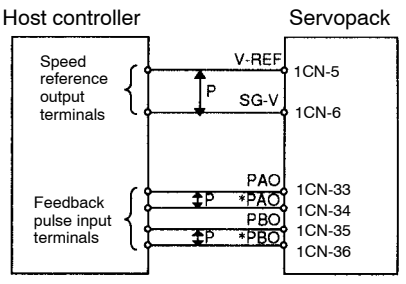



For noise control, always use twisted-pair cables.

Recommended Variable Resistor for Speed Setting:
Type 25HP-10B manufactured by Sakae Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.

When position control is performed by a host controller such as a programmable controller.

Connect V-REF and SG-V to speed reference output terminals on the host controller. In this case, adjust Cn-03 according to output voltage specifications.




↕P: Represents twisted-pair cables

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Output → +15V 1CN-23 | +15V power supply for speed/torque control | For Speed/Torque Control Only |
| Output → -15V 1CN-24 | -15V power supply for speed/torque control | For Speed/Torque Control Only |

Power output for speed/torque control.
Max. output current is 30mADC.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*3.2.1 Inputting Speed Reference cont.*

3) Use the memory switch and input signal $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ to specify one of the four modes shown below.

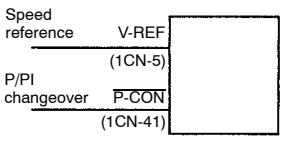
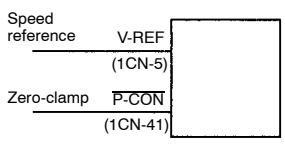
| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01 Bit A** | Control Mode Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control Only |
| **Cn-01 Bit B** | Control Mode Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control Only |

The Servopack for speed/torque control provides four different control modes.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Cn-01 Setting</th><th rowspan="2">Control Mode</th><th rowspan="2"></th></tr>
<tr><th>Bit B</th><th>Bit A</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Speed Control<br>This is normal speed control.<br>● Speed reference is input from V-REF (1CN-5).<br>● $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ (1CN-41) signal is used to switch between P control and PI control.<table><tr><td>1CN-41 is open</td><td>PI control</td></tr><tr><td>1CN-41 is at 0 V</td><td>P control</td></tr></table>● Torque reference input T-REF (1CN-9) cannot be used.</td><td>DR2 Servopack<br>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Zero-clamp Speed Control<br>This speed control allows the zero-clamp function to be set when the motor stops.<br>● Speed reference is input from V-REF (1CN-5).<br>● $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ (1CN-41) signal is used to turn the zero-clamp function ON or OFF.<table><tr><td>1CN-41 is open</td><td>Turns zero-clamp function OFF</td></tr><tr><td>1CN-41 is at 0 V</td><td>Turns zero-clamp function ON</td></tr></table>● Torque reference input T-REF (1CN-9) cannot be used.</td><td>DR2 Servopack<br>
<br>Zero-clamp is performed when the following two conditions are met:<br>Condition 1: $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ is turned ON.<br>Condition 2: Motor speed drops below the preset value.<br>Preset value: Cn-29 (ZCLVL)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td colspan="2">Torque control I</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Torque control II</td></tr>
</table>

For torque control, refer to *3.2.7 Using Torque Control*.



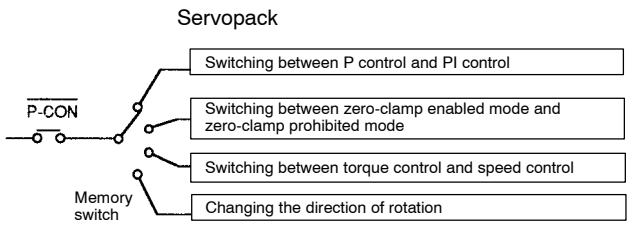
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*3.2.1 Inputting Speed Reference cont.*

• Using $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ Signal:

| → Input $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ 1CN-41 | Proportional Control, etc. | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
|---|---|---|

The function of input signal $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ changes with the memory switch setting.

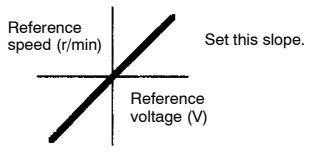



| Memory Switch | | | Meaning of $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ Signal |
|---|---|---|---|
| Cn-02 Bit 2 | Cn-01 Bit B | Cn-01 Bit A | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | Switching between proportional (P) control and proportional/integral (PI) control |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | Switching between zero-clamp enabled/prohibited mode Speed control with zero-clamp function |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | Torque control I ($\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ is not used.) |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | Switching between torque control and speed control (Torque control II) |
| 1 | – | – | Changing the direction of rotation during contact input speed control |

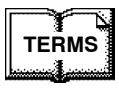
4) Adjust the speed reference gain using the following user constant.

| Cn-03 | VREFGN Speed Reference Gain | Unit: (r/min)/V | Setting Range: 10 to 2162 | Factory Setting: 500 | For Speed/Torque Control Only |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|

This user constant is for speed/torque control only. Sets the voltage range for speed reference input V-REF (1CN-5). Sets this user constant according to the output form of the host controller or external circuit.




The factory setting is as follows:
Rated speed (3000 r/min)/6 V = 500




**Zero-clamp function**

This function is used for a system in which the host controller does not form a position loop. In this case, the stopping position may shift even if a speed reference is set to 0. If the zero-clamp function is turned ON, a position loop is internally formed so that the stopping position is firmly “clamped.”



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.2.2 Inputting Position Reference

1) Using the following memory switch, select the position control.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-02 Bit B** | Selection of Speed/Torque Control or Position Control | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Select the control mode (speed/torque control or position control) by bit B of memory switch Cn-02.

| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Selects speed or torque control.<br>Select the control form by bits A and B of memory switch Cn-01. |
| **1** | **Selects position control.** |

**Note** For the memory switch Cn-02, always turn the power OFF and then ON after changing the setting. This makes the new setting valid.

3

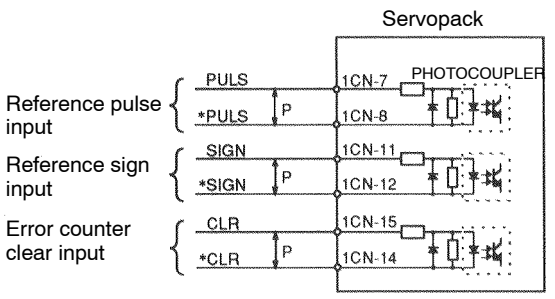
**Positions**

2) Input a position reference by using the following input signal "reference pulse input." Since there are several specifications for input signal, select reference input for the system to be created.

Inputs a move reference by pulse input.

Position reference can correspond to the following three types of output form:

- Line driver output
- +12V Open collector output
- +5V Open collector output

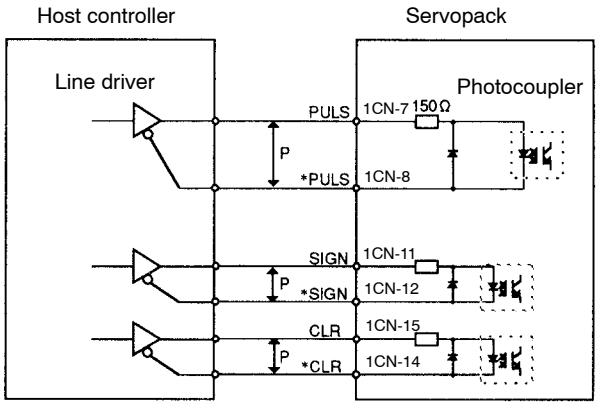



↕P: Represents twisted-pair cables

**Connection Example 1: Line Driver Output**

Line Driver Used:

SN75174 manufactured by Texas Instruments Inc., or MC3487 or equivalent.






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

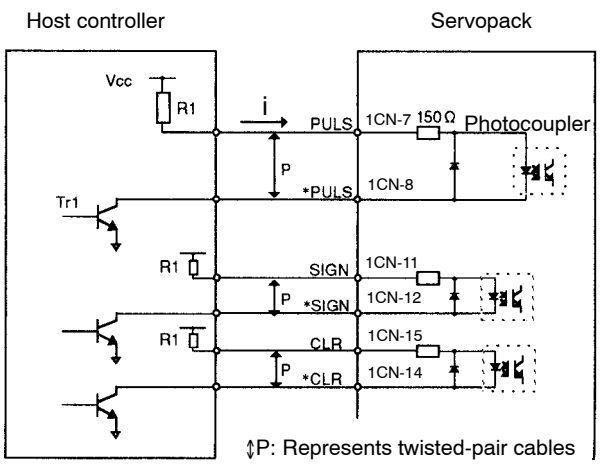
### Connection Example 2: Open Collector Output

Sets the value of limiting resistor R1 so that input current **i** falls within the following range:

Input Current **i**: 7 to 15 mA

Examples:

- When Vcc is 12 V, R1 = 1 kΩ
- When Vcc is 5 V, R1 = 180 Ω




**Note** The signal logic for open collector output is as follows.

| | |
|---|---|
| When Tr1 is ON | Equivalent to high level input |
| When Tr1 is OFF | Equivalent to low level input |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Output → PL1 1CN-3** | Power for Open Collector Reference | For Position Control Only |
| **Output → PL2 1CN-13** | | |
| **Output → PL3 1CN-18** | | |

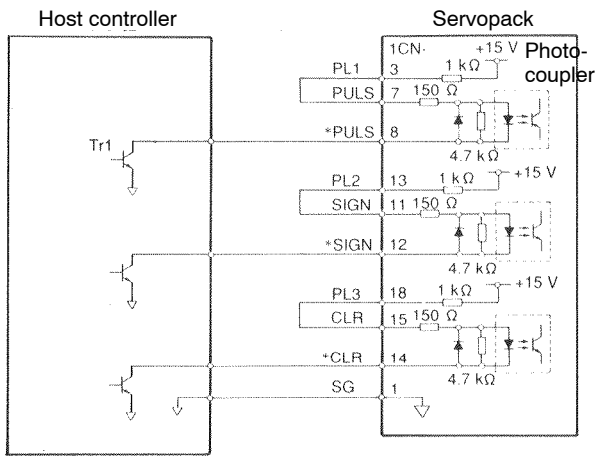
For details, refer to the Connection Example 3 (When Power for Open Collector Reference is Used) shown below:



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

### Connection Example 3: When Power for Open Collector Reference is Used

When power for open collector reference (PL1, PL2, PL3) is used, connect between PL1 and PULS, PL2 and SIGN, PL3 and CLR as follows:




↕P: Represents twisted-pair cables

**Note** The signal logic for open collector output is as follows.

| | |
|---|---|
| When Tr1 is ON | Equivalent to high level input |
| When Tr1 is OFF | Equivalent to low level input |

3) Use the following memory switch to select the reference pulse form to be used:

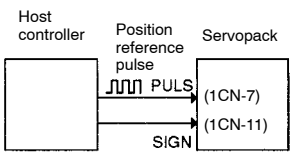
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **→ Input PULS 1CN-7** | Reference Pulse Input | For Position Control Only |
| **→ Input ⋆PULS 1CN-8** | Reference Pulse Input | For Position Control Only |
| **→ Input SIGN 1CN-11** | Reference Sign Input | For Position Control Only |
| **→ Input ⋆SIGN 1CN-12** | Reference Sign Input | For Position Control Only |

The motor only rotates at an angle proportional to the input pulse.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-02 Bit 3** | Reference Pulse Form Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Position Control Only |
| **Cn-02 Bit 4** | Reference Pulse Form Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Position Control Only |
| **Cn-02 Bit 5** | Reference Pulse Form Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Position Control Only |

Sets the form of a reference pulse that is externally output to the Servopack.

Sets the pulse form according to the host controller specifications.

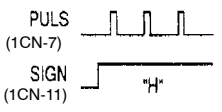
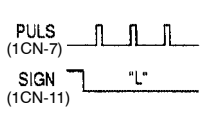
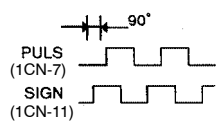
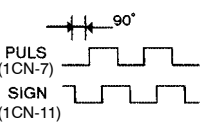
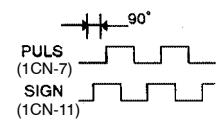
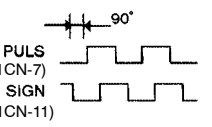
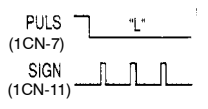
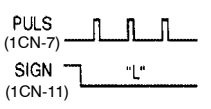
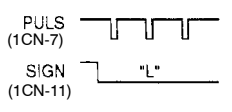
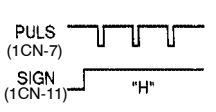
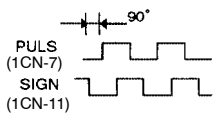
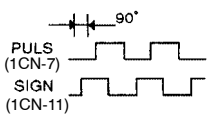
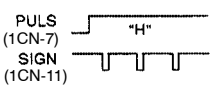
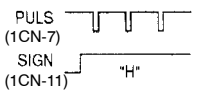



Set also the input pulse logic in bit D of Cn-02.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*3.2.2 Inputting Position Reference cont.*

| Cn-02 Bit D | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Input Pulse Multiplier | Reference Pulse Form | Motor Forward Run Reference | Motor Reverse Run Reference |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 (Positive logic setting) | 0 | 0 | 0 | | Sign + pulse train |  |  |
| | 0 | 1 | 0 | ×1 | Two-phase pulse train with 90° phase difference |  |  |
| | 0 | 1 | 1 | ×2 | |  |  |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | ×4 | | | |
| | 0 | 0 | 1 | | CW *1 pulse + CCW pulse |  |  |
| 1 (Negative logic setting) | 0 | 0 | 0 | | Sign + pulse train |  |  |
| | 0 | 1 | 0 | ×1 | Two-phase pulse train with 90° phase difference |  |  |
| | 0 | 1 | 1 | ×2 | |  |  |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | ×4 | | | |
| | 0 | 0 | 1 | | CW *2 pulse + CCW pulse |  |  |

*1 When CW pulse + CCW pulse and positive logic setting, make sure to set each of the signals (the one not being input the pulse) to Low level.

*2 When CW pulse + CCW pulse and negative logic setting, make sure to set each of the signals (the one not being input the pulse) to High level.

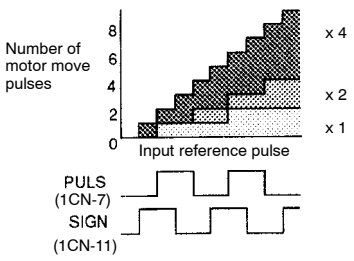


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

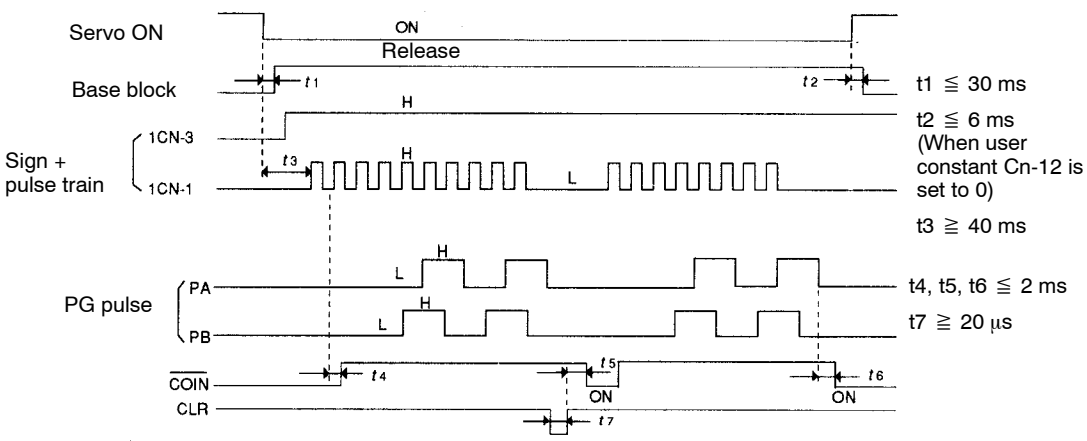
**Input Pulse Multiply Function:**

**When the reference form is two-phase pulse train with 90° phase difference, the input pulse multiply function can be used.**

**The electronic gear function can also be used to convert input pulses.**




**Example of I/O Signal Generation Timing**



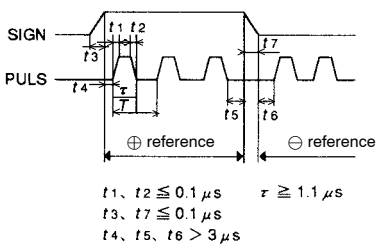
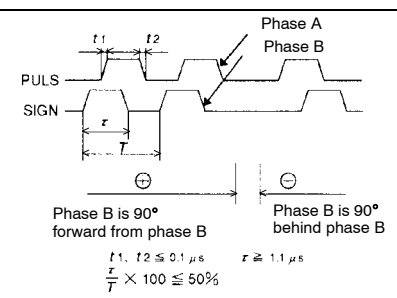
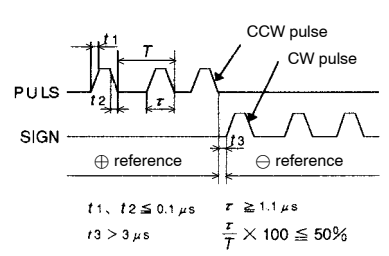

**Note** The interval from the time the servo ON signal is turned ON until a reference pulse is input must be at least 40 ms. Otherwise, the reference pulse may not be input. The error counter clear (CLR) signal must be ON for at least 20 μs. Otherwise, it becomes invalid.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

### Allowable Voltage Level and Timing for Reference Pulse Input

| Reference Pulse Form | Electrical Specifications | Remarks |
|---|---|---|
| Sign + pulse train input (SIGN + PULS signal)<br>Maximum reference frequency: 450 kpps | <br>t1、t2 ≦ 0.1 μs τ ≧ 1.1 μs<br>t3、t7 ≦ 0.1 μs<br>t4、t5、t6 > 3 μs | The signs for each reference pulse are as follows:<br>⊕: High level<br>⊖: Low level |
| 90° different two-phase pulse train (phase A + phase B)<br>Maximum reference frequency<br>x 1 multiplier: 450 kpps<br>x 2 multiplier: 400 kpps<br>x 4 multiplier: 200 kpps | <br>t1、t2 ≦ 0.1 μs τ ≧ 1.1 μs<br>$\frac{\tau}{T} \times 100 \leqq 50\%$ | User constant Cn-02 (bits 3, 4 and 5) is used to switch the input pulse multiplier mode. |
| CCW pulse + CW pulse<br>Maximum reference frequency: 450 kpps | <br>t1、t2 ≦ 0.1 μs τ ≧ 1.1 μs<br>t3 > 3 μs $\frac{\tau}{T} \times 100 \leqq 50\%$ | |

3

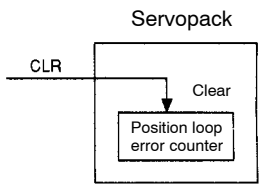
4) The following describes how to clear the error counter.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| → Input CLR 1CN-15 | Error Counter Clear Input | For Position Control Only |
| → Input ✶CLR 1CN-14 | Error Counter Clear Input | For Position Control Only |

Setting the CLR signal to high level does the following:

- Sets the error counter inside the Servopack to 0.
- Prohibits position loop control.

Use this signal to clear the error counter from the host controller.



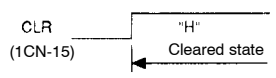
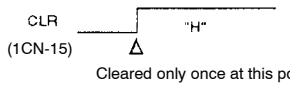

Bit A of memory switch Cn-02 can be set so that the error counter is cleared only once when the leading edge of an input pulse rises.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-02 Bit A** | Error Counter Clear Signal Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Position Control Only |

Selects the pulse form of error counter clear signal CLR (1CN-15).

| Setting | Meaning | |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Clears the error counter when the CLR signal is set at high level. Error pulses do not accumulate while the signal remains at high level. |  |
| 1 | Clears the error counter only once when the rising edge of the CLR signal rises. |  |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01 Bit A** | Error Counter Processing at Servo OFF | Factory Setting: 0 | For Position Control Only |

Select the error counter processing at Servo OFF.

| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Error counter is cleared at Servo OFF. |
| 1 | Error counter is not cleared at servo OFF. |

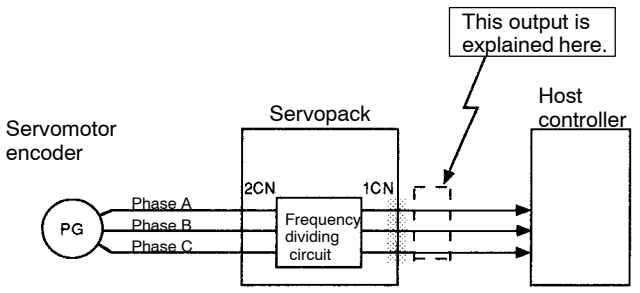




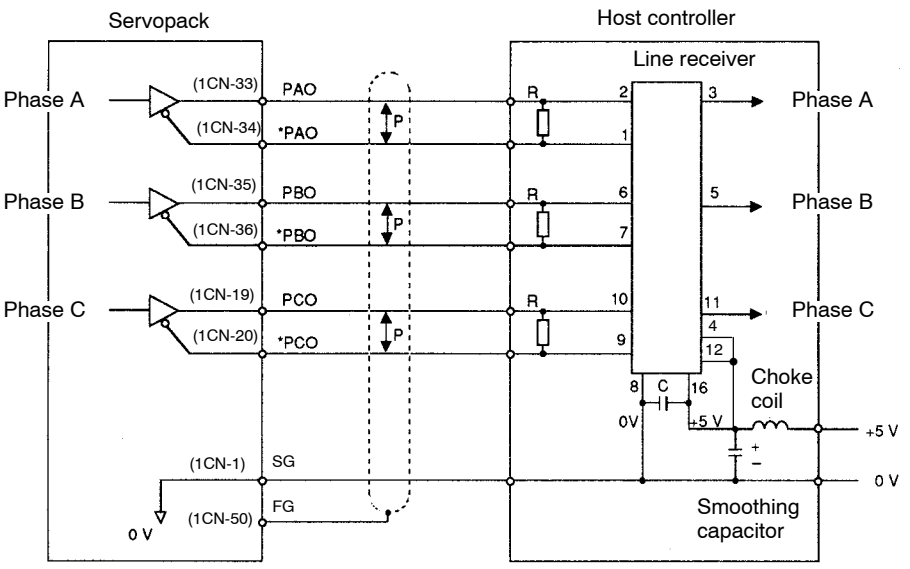
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.2.3 Using Encoder Output

1) Encoder output signals **divided** inside the Servopack can be output externally. These signals can be used to form a position control loop in the host controller.




The output circuit is for line driver output. Connect each signal line according to the following circuit diagram.




↕P: Represents twisted-pair cables

**Line receiver used: SN75175 manufactured by Texas Instruments Inc. or MC3486 (or equivalent)**

**R (termination resistor): 220 to 470 Ω**

**C (decoupling capacitor): 0.1 μF**

TERMS

**Divided (or dividing)**

"Dividing" means converting an input pulse train from the encoder mounted on the motor according to the preset pulse density and outputting the converted pulse. The unit is pulses per revolution.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) I/O signals are described below.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Output → PAO 1CN-33** | Encoder Output Phase-A | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Output → ✶ PAO 1CN-34** | Encoder Output Phase-A | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Output → PBO 1CN-35** | Encoder Output Phase-B | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Output → ✶ PBO 1CN-36** | Encoder Output Phase-B | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Output → PCO 1CN-19** | Encoder Output Phase-C | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Output → ✶ PCO 1CN-20** | Encoder Output Phase-C | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Divided encoder signals are output.

Always connect these signal terminals when a position loop is formed in the host controller to perform position control.

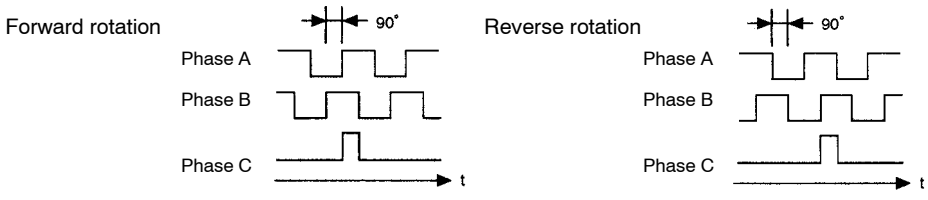
Set a dividing ratio in the following user constant.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Dividing ratio setting** | Cn-0A | PGRAT |

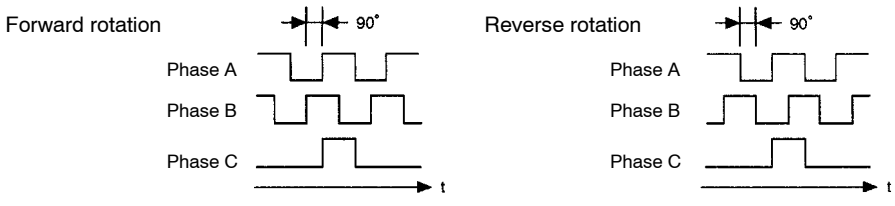
**The dividing ratio setting is not relevant to the gear ratio setting (Cn-24, 25) for the electronic gear function of the Servopack for position control.**

**Output Phase Form**

**(Incremental Encoder)**




**(Absolute Encoder)**






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| → Input SEN 1CN-4 | SEN Signal Input | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| → Input 0SEN 1CN-2 | SEN Signal Input | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| Output → PSO 1CN-48 | Encoder Output Phase-S | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| Output → ✶PSO 1CN-49 | Encoder Output Phase-S | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| → Input BAT⊕ 1CN-21 | Battery (+) | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| → Input BAT⊖ 1CN-22 | Battery (–) | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Use these signals (SEN to BAT⊖) for absolute encoders. For details, refer to *3.8.5 Using an Absolute Encoder*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Output → SG 1CN-1 | Signal Ground for Encoder Output | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| Output → FG 1CN-50 | Frame Ground | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

SG: Connect to 0 V on the host controller.
FG: Connect to the cable shielded wire.

3) Use the following memory switch to specify the type of the encoder to be used.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-02 Bit 9** | Encoder Type Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Sets the encoder type according to the servomotor type as shown in the table.

**After changing the memory switch setting, always turn the power OFF, then ON.**

| Motor Type | Encoder Type | Setting |
|---|---|---|
| SGM-□□□31□<br>SGMP-□□□31□ | Incremental encoder | 0 |
| SGM-□□□W1□<br>SGMP-□□□W1□ | Absolute encoder | 1 |



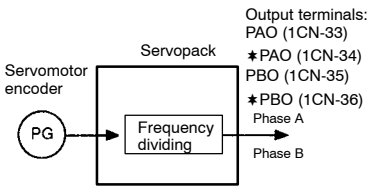
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4) Set the pulse dividing ratio in the following user constant.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-0A** | PGRAT<br>Dividing Ratio Setting | Unit:<br>P/R | Setting Range: 16 to No. of Encoder Pulses | Factory Setting: 2048 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Sets the number of output pulses for PG output signals (PAO, ✶PAO, PBO and ✶PBO).

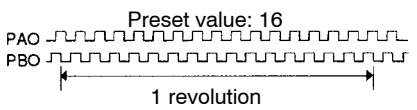
Pulses from motor encoder (PG) are divided by the preset number of pulses before being output.




The number of output pulses per revolution is set in this user constant. Set this value according to the reference unit of the machine or controller to be used.

The setting range varies according to the encoder used.

Setting example:




| Motor Type | Number of Encoder Pulses Per Revolution | Setting Range |
|---|---|---|
| SGM-□□□31□<br>SGMP-□□□31□ | Incremental encoder: 2048 pulses per revolution | 16 to 2048 |
| SGM-□□□W1□<br>SGMP-□□□W1□ | Absolute encoder: 1024 pulses per revolution | 16 to 1024 |

**For the user constant Cn-0A, always turn the power OFF and then ON after changing the setting. This makes the new setting valid.**



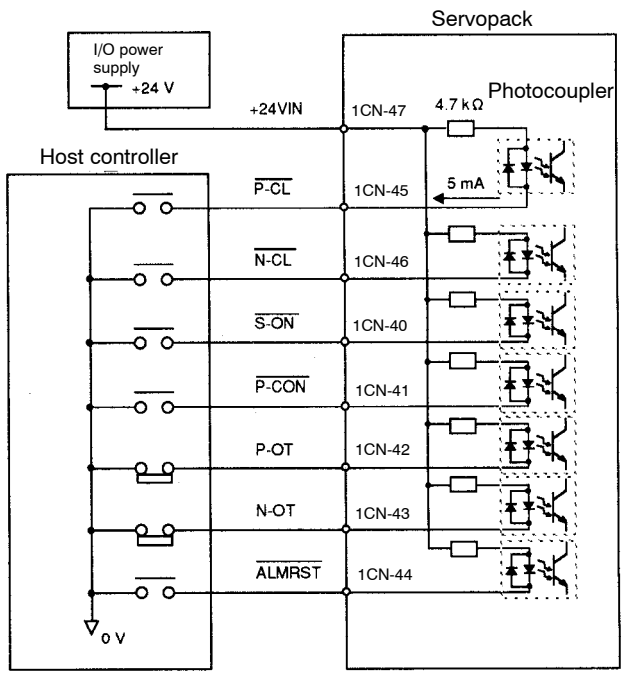


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.2.4 Using Contact I/O Signals

### 1) Contact Input Signal Terminal Connections

These signals are used to control DR2 Servopack operation. Connect these signal terminals as necessary.




**Note** Provide an external I/O power supply separately.
There are no power terminals to which the DR2 Servopack outputs signals externally.

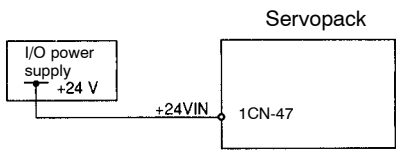
External Power Supply: 24 ±1 VDC
50 mA or more

Yaskawa recommends that this external power supply be the same type as for the output circuit.

| → Input +24VIN 1CN-47 | I/O Power Supply | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
|---|---|---|

This external power supply input terminal is common to the following contact input signals:

**Contact Input Signals:** $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ **(1CN-45)**
$\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ **(1CN-46)**
$\overline{\text{S-ON}}$ **(1CN-40)**
$\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ **(1CN-41)**
**P-OT (1CN-42)**
**N-OT (1CN-43)**
$\overline{\text{ALMRST}}$ **(1CN-44)**

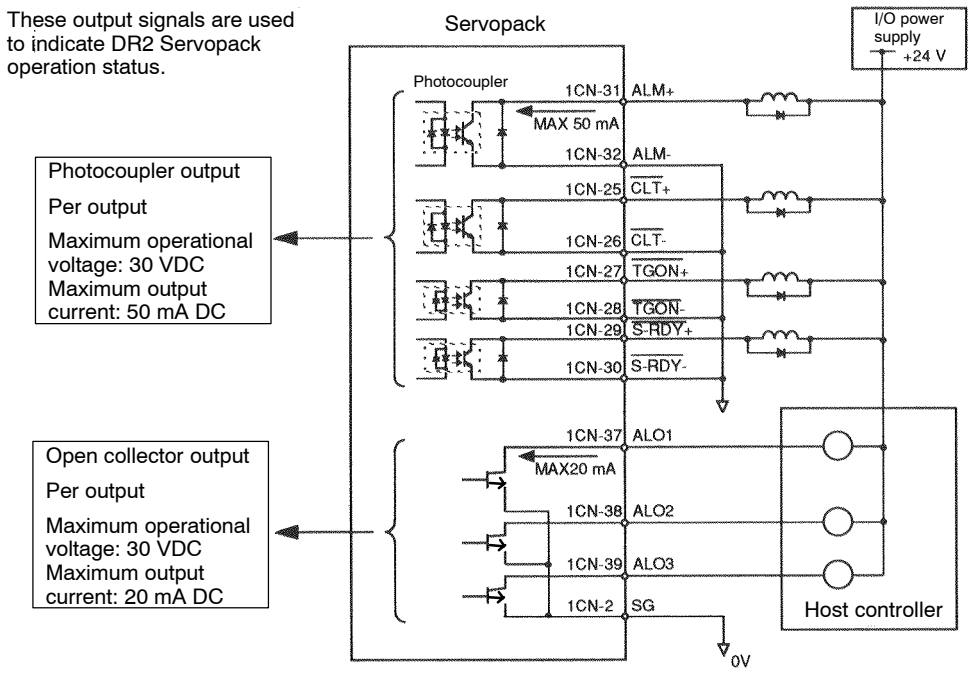



Connect an external I/O power supply.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) **Contact Output Signal Terminal Connections**




**Note** Provide an external I/O power supply separately.
There are no power terminals to which the DR2 Servopack outputs signals externally.
Yaskawa recommends that this external power supply be the same type as for the input circuit.

| **Output → SG** | **1CN-2** | Signal Ground for Alarm Code Output Signal | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
|---|---|---|---|

This signal ground is used for the following output signals. Connect to 0 V on the external power supply.

**Contact Output Signals:** **ALO1** **(1CN-37)**
**ALO2** **(1CN-38)**
**ALO3** **(1CN-39)**



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.2.5 Using Electronic Gear

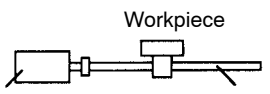
For position control only.

**Positions**

1) **Outline**

The electronic gear function enables the motor travel distance per input reference pulse to be set to any value. It allows the host controller to perform control without having to consider the machine gear ratio and the number of encoder pulses.

When Electronic Gear Function is Not Used




Number of encoder pulses: 2048

Ball screw pitch: 6 mm

To move a workpiece 10 mm,

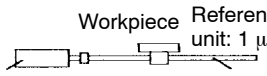
One revolution is equivalent to 6 mm, so
10 ÷ 6 = 1.6666 (revolutions)

2048 x 4 (pulses) is equivalent to one revolution, so
1.6666 x 2048 x 4 = 13653 (pulses)

A total of 13653 pulses must be input as a reference.

the host controller needs to make this calculation.

When Electronic Gear Function is Used




Number of encoder pulses: 2048

Ball screw pitch: 6 mm

Machine conditions and reference unit must be defined for the electronic gear function beforehand.

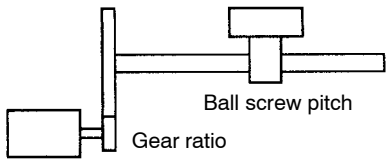
To move a workpiece 10 mm:

Reference unit is 1 μm, so
10 mm ÷ 1 μm = 10000 pulses

2) **Setting the Electronic Gear**

Calculate the electronic gear ratio (B/A) according to the procedure below and set the value in Cn-24 and Cn-25.

a) Check the machine specifications.




Items related to electronic gear:
- Gear ratio
- Ball screw pitch
- Pulley diameter

b) Check the number of encoder pulses for the SGM Servomotor.

| Motor Type | Encoder Type | Number of Encoder Pulses Per Revolution |
|---|---|---|
| SGM-□□□31□<br>SGMP-□□□31□ | Incremental encoder | 2048 |
| SGM-□□□W1□<br>SGMP-□□□W1□ | Absolute encoder | 1024 |

Same as user constant Cn-11 settings.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

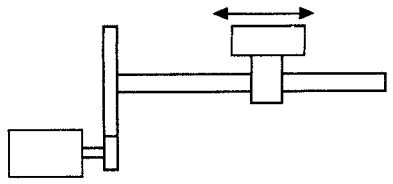
c) Determine the reference unit to be used.

**Reference unit is the minimum unit of position data used for moving the load. (Minimum unit of reference from host controller)**

**Examples:**
**0.01 mm, 0.001 mm, 0.1°, 0.01 inch**

Reference input of one pulse moves the load by one reference unit.

To move a table in 0.001 mm units
Reference unit: 0.001 mm



Determine the reference unit according to machine specifications and positioning accuracy.

Example: When reference unit is 1 μm
If a reference of 50,000 pulses is input, the load moves 50 mm (50,000 x 1 μm).

d) Determine the load travel distance per revolution of load shaft in reference units.

$$\text{Load travel distance per revolution of load shaft (in reference units)} = \frac{\text{Load travel distance per revolution of load shaft (in unit of distance)}}{\text{Reference unit}}$$

**Example: When ball screw pitch is 5 mm and reference unit is 0.001 mm**
**5/0.001 = 5,000 (reference units)**

| Ball Screw | Disc Table | Belt & Pulley |
|---|---|---|
| Load shaft<br><br>P: Pitch<br>1 revolution = $\frac{P}{\text{Reference unit}}$ | <br>Load shaft<br>1 revolution = $\frac{360°}{\text{Reference unit}}$ | Load shaft<br><br>D: Pulley diameter<br>1 revolution = $\frac{\pi D}{\text{Reference unit}}$ |

e) Determine the electronic gear ratio $\left(\frac{B}{A}\right)$.

If the load shaft makes “n” revolutions when the motor shaft makes “m” revolutions, the gear ratio of motor shaft and load shaft is $\frac{n}{m}$.

$$\text{Electronic gear ratio } \left(\frac{B}{A}\right) = \frac{\text{Number of encoder pulses x 4}}{\text{Travel distance per revolution of load shaft (in reference units)}} \times \frac{m}{n}$$

**NOTE** **Make sure that the electronic gear ratio meets the following condition:**

$$\mathbf{0.01 \leq \text{Electronic gear ratio } \left(\frac{B}{A}\right) \leq 100}$$

**If the electronic gear ratio is outside this range, the Servopack does not work properly. In this case, modify the load configuration or reference unit.**



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

f) Set the electronic gear ratio in the user constants below.

Reduce the electronic gear ratio $\left(\frac{B}{A}\right)$ to their lowest terms so that both A and B are an integer smaller than 65535, then set A and B in the following user constants.

$\left(\frac{B}{A}\right)$

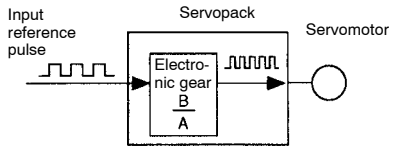
| | |
|---|---|
| Cn-24 | RATB Electronic gear ratio (numerator) |
| Cn-25 | RATA Electronic gear ratio (denominator) |

This is all that is required to set the electronic gear.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-24** | RATB<br>Electronic Gear Ratio<br>(Numerator) | Unit:<br>None | Setting<br>Range: 1<br>to 65535 | Factory<br>Setting: 4 | For Position<br>Control Only |
| **Cn-25** | RATA<br>Electronic Gear Ratio<br>(Denominator) | Unit:<br>None | Setting<br>Range: 1<br>to 65535 | Factory<br>Setting: 1 | For Position<br>Control Only |

These user constants are for position control only.

Set the electronic gear ratio according to machine specifications.




Electronic gear ratio $\left(\frac{B}{A}\right) = \frac{\text{Cn-24}}{\text{Cn-25}}$

B = [(Number of encoder pulses) x 4] x [Motor shaft rotating speed]

A = [Load travel distance per revolution of load shaft (Reference unit)] x [Load shaft rotating speed]

Note that the user constant settings must meet the following condition:

$$0.01 \leq \left(\frac{B}{A}\right) \leq 100$$

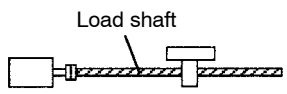


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

### 3) Examples of Setting an Electronic Gear Ratio for Different Load Mechanisms

**Ball Screw**

Reference unit: 0.001 mm




Incremental encoder: 2048 pulses per revolution

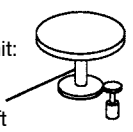
Travel distance per revolution of load shaft $= \frac{6mm}{0.001mm} = 6000$

Electronic gear ratio $\left(\frac{B}{A}\right) = \frac{2048 \times 4 \times 1}{6000 \times 1} = \frac{Cn\text{-}24}{Cn\text{-}25}$

Preset values

| | |
|---|---|
| Cn-24 | 8192 |
| Cn-25 | 6000 |

**Disc Table**




Incremental encoder: 2048 pulses per revolution

Travel distance per revolution of load shaft $= \frac{360°}{0.1°} = 3600$

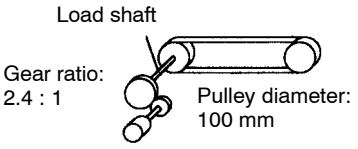
Electronic gear ratio $\left(\frac{B}{A}\right) = \frac{2048 \times 4 \times 3}{3600 \times 1} = \frac{Cn\text{-}24}{Cn\text{-}25}$

Preset values

| | |
|---|---|
| Cn-24 | 24576 |
| Cn-25 | 3600 |

**Belt & Pulley**

Reference unit: 0.0254 mm




Absolute encoder: 1024 pulses per revolution

Travel distance per revolution of load shaft $= \frac{3.14 \times 100mm}{0.0254mm} = 12362$

Electronic gear ratio $\left(\frac{B}{A}\right) = \frac{1024 \times 4 \times 2.4}{12362 \times 1} = \frac{Cn\text{-}24}{Cn\text{-}25}$

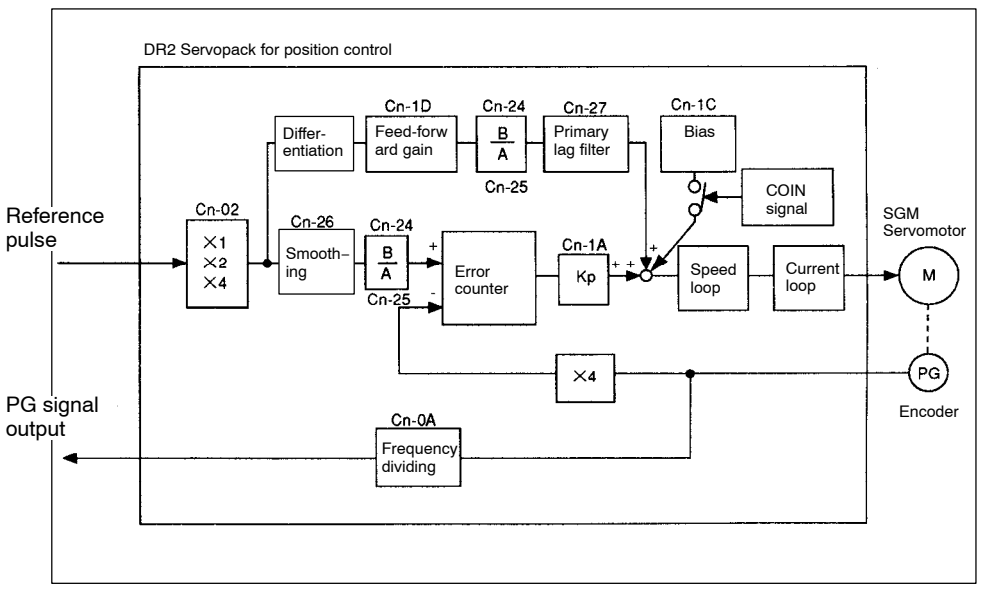
$= \frac{9830.4}{12362} = \frac{49152}{61810}$

Preset values

| | |
|---|---|
| Cn-24 | 49152 |
| Cn-25 | 61810 |

3

### 4) Control Block Diagram for Servopack for Position Control



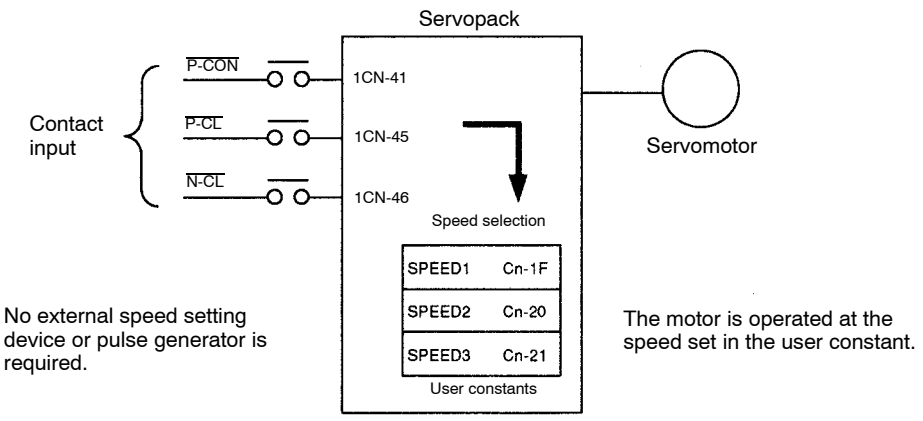



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.2.6 Using Contact Input Speed Control

1) The contact input speed control function provides easy-to-use speed control. It allows the user to initially set three different motor speeds in user constants, select one of the speeds externally by contact input and run the motor.

   This function can be used for both speed/torque control and position control.



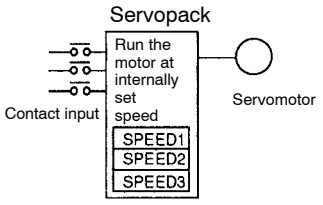

2) To use the contact input speed control function, perform Steps a) to c).

   a) Set the following memory switch to 1.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-02 Bit 2** | Contact Input Speed Control Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Enables the contact input speed control function.

If the contact input speed control function is used, the contents of the input signals shown below will change.




**When this memory switch is reset, the meanings of the following signals will also change:**

**Monitor mode (Un-05) bit 7 and bit 8**



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Setting | Meaning | Input Signal |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Does not use the contact input speed control function. | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$(1CN-41): Used to switch between P control and PI control.<br>$\overline{\text{P-CL}}$(1CN-45): Used for forward external torque limit input<br>$\overline{\text{N-CL}}$(1CN-46): Used for reverse external torque limit input |
| 1 | **Uses the contact input speed control function.**<br>**Note** In the case of the position control type, the reference pulse inhibit function (INHIBIT) cannot be used. | **0: OFF, 1: ON**<br>**$\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ / $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ / $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ / Speed Setting**<br>**Direction of rotation (0: Forward 1: Reverse)**<br>**0 / 0 / Stop (or pulse reference)**<br>**0 / 1 / Cn-1F, SPEED1**<br>**1 / 1 / Cn-20, SPEED2**<br>**1 / 0 / Cn-21, SPEED3** |

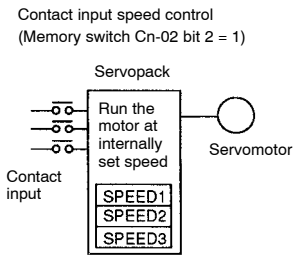


b) Set three motor speeds in the following user constants.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-1F** | SPEED1<br>1st Speed (Contact Input Speed Control) | Unit: r/min | Setting Range: 0 to Maximum Speed | Factory Setting: 100 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-20** | SPEED2<br>2nd Speed (Contact Input Speed Control) | Unit: r/min | Setting Range: 0 to Maximum Speed | Factory Setting: 200 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-21** | SPEED3<br>3rd Speed (Contact Input Speed Control) | Unit: r/min | Setting Range: 0 to Maximum Speed | Factory Setting: 300 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Use these user constants to set motor speeds when the contact input speed control function is used (set bit 2 of memory switch Cn-02).

Speed selection input signals $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ (1CN-45) and $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ (1CN-46), and rotation direction selection signal $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ (1CN-41) enable the motor to run at the preset speeds.




c) Set the soft start time (for speed/torque control only).

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-07** | SFSACC<br>Soft Start Time (Acceleration) | Unit: ms | Setting Range: 0 to 10000 | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-23** | SFSDEC<br>Soft Start Time (Deceleration) | Unit: ms | Setting Range: 0 to 10000 | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

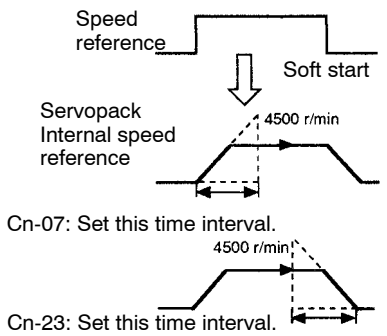


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

In the Servopack, a speed reference is multiplied by the preset acceleration or deceleration value to provide speed control.

When a progressive speed reference is input or contact input speed control is used, smooth speed control can be performed. (For normal speed control, set "0" in each user constant.)

Set the following value in each user constant.




- Cn-07: Time interval from the time the motor starts until it reaches the maximum speed (4,500 r/min)
- Cn-23: Time interval from the time the motor is running at the maximum speed (4500 r/min) until it stops

**Note** For position control type, the soft start function is available only when the contact input speed control function is used.

3

3) Contact input speed control performs the following operation.

The following input signals are used to start and stop the motor.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| → Input $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ 1CN-45 | Speed Selection 1 (Forward External Torque Limit Input) | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| → Input $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ 1CN-46 | Speed Selection 2 (Reverse External Torque Limit Input) | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

**a) Contact Input Speed Control when Cn-02 bit 2 = 1**

- For Speed/Torque Control:

0: OFF, 1: ON

| Contact Signal | | | User Constant | | | Selected Speed | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| P-CON | P-CL | N-CL | Cn-02 | Cn-01 | | | |
| | | | Bit 2 | Bit A | Bit B | | |
| ---- | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | Stop | Stopped by speed reference 0 |
| | | | | 1 | 0 | | Stopped by zero-clamp (Refer to 3.4.3.) |
| | | | | 0 | 1 | Analog speed reference (V-REF) input | |
| | | | | 1 | 1 | | With zero-clamp function |
| Direction of rotation<br>0: Forward<br>1: Reverse | 0 | 1 | | ---- | ---- | SPEED1 (Cn-1F) | |
| | 1 | 1 | | | | SPEED2 (Cn-20) | |
| | 1 | 0 | | | | SPEED3 (Cn-21) | |

Preset values (0 or 1) and input signal status in the portions indicated by horizontal bars (–) are optional.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• For Position Control:

0: OFF, 1: ON

| Contact Signal | | | User Constant | | Selected Speed |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ | $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ | $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ | Cn-02 Bit 2 | Cn-01 Bit F | |
| ---- | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | Stop |
| | | | | 1 | Pulse reference input |
| Direction of rotation 0: Forward rotation 1: Reverse rotation | 0 | 1 | | ---- | SPEED (Cn-1F) |
| | 1 | 1 | | | SPEED (Cn-20) |
| | 1 | 0 | | | SPEED (Cn-21) |

Preset values (0 or 1) and input signal status in the portions indicated by horizontal bars (–) are optional.

**Note** When the contact input speed control function is used, the reference pulse inhibit function is not available.

**b) Standard Setting when Cn-02 bit 2 = 0**
Input signals are used as external torque limit input.

Input signal $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ is used to specify the direction of motor rotation.

| → Input $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ 1CN-41 | Proportional Control, etc. | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
|---|---|---|

**a) Contact Input Speed Control when Cn-02 bit 2 = 1**
Use input signal $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ to specify the direction of motor rotation.

| $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 1 | Reverse rotation |
| 0 | Forward rotation |

0: OFF (high level), 1: ON (low level)

**b) Standard Setting when Cn-02 bit 2 = 0**
$\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ signal is used for proportional control, zero-clamp and torque/speed control changeover.

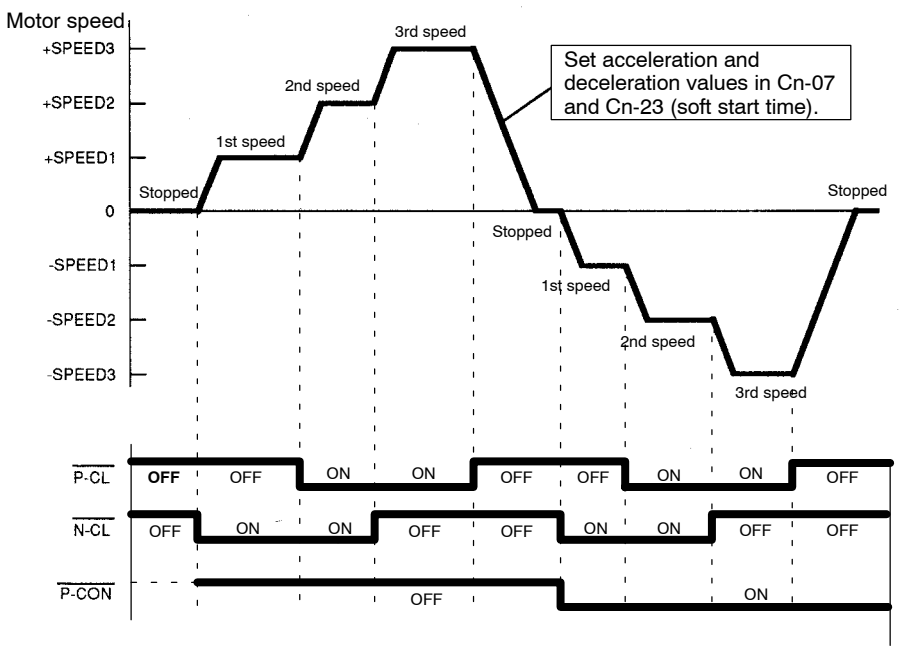
**Note** For the speed/torque control, control by external reference (voltage reference) is possible when the contact input speed control function is used by setting bits A and B of user constant Cn-01.
For the position control, control by external reference (pulse reference) is possible when the contact input speed control function is used by setting bit F of user constant Cn-01.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4) The figure below illustrates an example of operation in contact input speed control mode. Using the soft start function reduces physical shock at speed changeover.

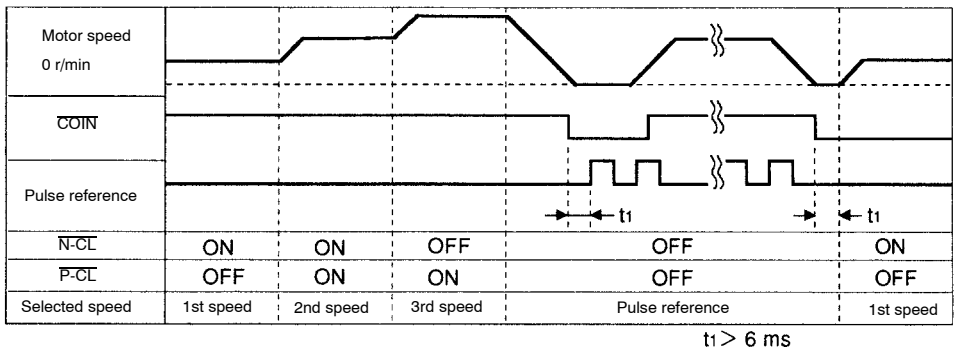
**When Contact Input Speed Control is Used**






**Note** For the position control, the soft start function is available only when contact input speed control is used. The soft start function is not available when pulse reference input is used.
For the position control type, if contact input speed control mode is switched to pulse reference input mode when the motor is running at the 1st, 2nd or 3rd speed, the Servopack does not receive a pulse reference until positioning complete signal $\overline{\text{COIN}}$ is output.
Always start outputting a pulse reference from the host controller after a positioning complete signal is output from the Servopack.

**Signal Generation Timing for Position Control Type**

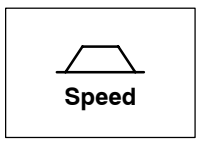



The above figure illustrates signal generation timing when the soft start function is used.
The value of $t_1$ is not influenced by use of the soft start function.
A maximum of 6 ms delay occurs when $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ or $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ signal is read.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.2.7 Using Torque Control




1) The Servopack can provide the following torque control:

- Torque restriction
  - Level 1: To restrict the maximum output torque to protect the machine or workpiece
  - Level 2: To restrict torque after the motor moves the machine to a specified position
- **Torque control**
  - **Level 3: To always control output torque, not speed**
  - **Level 4: To switch between speed control and torque control**

This section describes how to use levels 3 and 4 of the torque control function.

2) Use the following memory switch to select level 3 (torque control I) or level 4 (torque control II).

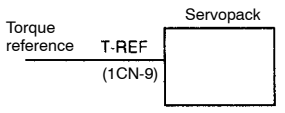
| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01 Bit A** | Control Mode Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control Only |
| **Cn-01 Bit B** | Control Mode Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control Only |

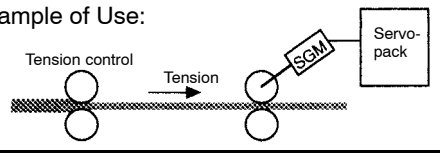
This is dedicated torque control.

A motor torque reference value is externally input into the Servopack to control torque.

**Examples of Use: Tension control**
**Pressure control**

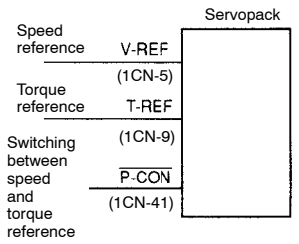
| Cn-01 Setting | | Control Mode |
|---|---|---|
| Bit B | Bit A | |
| 1 | 0 | **Torque Control I**<br>This is a dedicated torque control mode.<br>● A torque reference is input from T-REF (1CN-9).<br>● $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ is not used.<br>● Speed reference input V-REF (1CN-5) cannot be used.<br>● User constant Cn-14 can be used for maximum speed control.<br>Example of Use:<br>Tension control, Tension, SGM, Servo-pack |

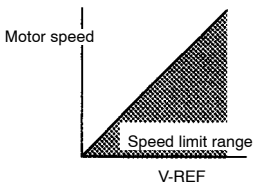





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Cn-01 Setting</th><th rowspan="2">Control Mode</th></tr>
<tr><th>Bit B</th><th>Bit A</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td><u>Torque Control II</u><br><br>Torque control and speed control can be switched.<br><br>● A speed reference or speed limit value is input from V-REF (1CN-5).<br><br>● T-REF (1CN-9) inputs a toque reference, torque feed-forward reference or torque limit value depending on the control mode used.<br><br>● $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ (1CN-41) is used to switch between torque control and speed control.<br><br>

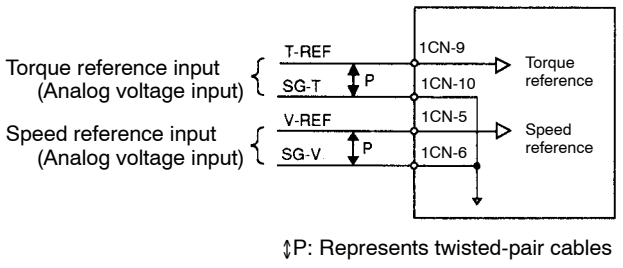
<table>
<tr><td>When 1CN-41 is open</td><td>Torque control</td></tr>
<tr><td>When 1CN-41 is at 0 V</td><td>Speed control</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>For Torque Control when $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ is OFF:<br>● T-REF reference controls torque.<br><br>● V-REF can be used to limit motor speed.<br><br>● V-REF voltage (+) limits motor speed during forward or reverse rotation.<br><br>Principle of Speed Restriction:<br><br>When the speed exceeds the speed limit, negative feedback of torque proportional to the difference between the current speed and the limit speed is performed to return the speed to within the normal speed range. Therefore, the actual motor speed limit value has a certain range depending on the load conditions.<br><br>
</td></tr>
</table>



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Cn-01 Setting</th><th rowspan="2">Control Mode</th></tr>
<tr><th>Bit B</th><th>Bit A</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>For Speed Control when $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ is ON:<br>Values set in bit F of user constant Cn-01 and bit F of Cn-02 determine the following:
<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">User Constant</th><th rowspan="2">Speed Reference Input (V-REF) (1CN-5,-6)</th><th rowspan="2">Torque Reference Input (T-REF) (1CN-9,-10)</th><th rowspan="3">Remarks</th></tr>
<tr><th>Cn-01</th><th>Cn-02</th></tr>
<tr><th>Bit F</th><th>Bit F</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">0</td><td rowspan="2">0</td><td colspan="2">Speed control</td><td rowspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td>Speed reference</td><td>Cannot be used</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">1</td><td rowspan="2">----</td><td colspan="2">Speed control with torque feed-forward</td><td rowspan="2">Any value can be set in bit F of Cn-02 (0 and 1 have the same effect).<br>For details of speed control with torque feed-forward, refer to 3.2.8 Using Torque Feed-forward Function.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Speed reference</td><td>Torque feed-forward</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">0</td><td rowspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">Speed control with torque limit by analog voltage reference</td><td rowspan="2">For details of speed control with torque limit by analog voltage reference, refer to 3.2.9 Using Torque Restriction by Analog Voltage Reference.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Speed reference</td><td>Torque limit value</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Speed control (Standard setting)</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Zero-clamp speed control (Refer to 3.4.3.)</td></tr>
</table>

3) The following input signals perform torque control.



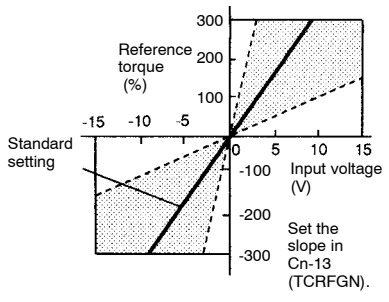



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| → Input T-REF 1CN-9 | Torque Reference Input | For Speed/Torque Control Only |
| → Input SG-T 1CN-10 | Signal Ground for Torque Reference Input | For Speed/Torque Control Only |

These signals are used when torque control is selected (bits A and B of memory switch Cn-01).

Motor torque is controlled so that it is proportional to the input voltage between T-REF and SG-T.



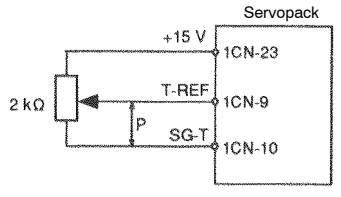

**Standard Setting**

Cn-13 = 30: This setting means that 3 V is equivalent to rated torque.

Examples: +3 V input → Rated torque in forward direction
+9 V input → 300% of rated torque in forward direction
–0.3 V input → 10% of rated torque in reverse direction

User constant Cn-13 can be used to change the voltage input range.

Example of Input Circuit:
See the figure on the right.




- For noise control, always use twisted-pair cables.

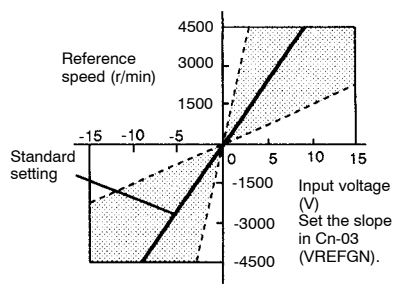
- Example of Variable Resistor for Speed Setting:
  Type 25HP-10B manufactured by Sakae Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| → Input V-REF 1CN-5 | Speed Reference Input (or Speed Limit Input) | For Speed/Torque Control Only |
| → Input SG-V 1CN-6 | Signal Ground for Speed Reference Input | For Speed/Torque Control Only |

These signals are used when speed control is selected (bits A and B of memory switch Cn-01).

For normal speed control, always connect these signal terminals.

Motor speed is controlled so that it is proportional to the input voltage between V-REF and SG-V.




**Standard Setting**

Cn-03 = 500: This setting means that 6 V is equivalent to rated speed (3000 r/min).

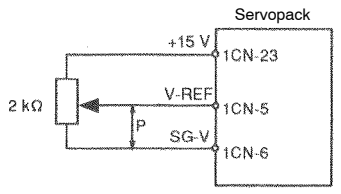
Examples: +6 V input → 3000 r/min in forward direction
+1 V input → 500 r/min in forward direction
–3 V input → 1500 r/min in reverse direction



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

User constant Cn-03 can be used to change the voltage input range. (This is also applicable to speed restriction.)

Example of Input Circuit:
See the figure on the right.




- For noise control, always use twisted-pair cables.

- Example of Variable Resistor for Speed Setting:
  Type 25HP-10B manufactured by Sakae Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.

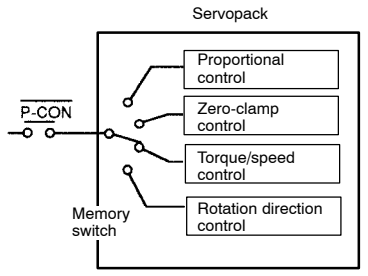
When input signal $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ is used to switch between speed reference and torque reference for torque control II, set both bits A and B of memory switch Cn-01 to 1.

| → Input $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ 1CN-41 | Proportional Control, etc. | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
|---|---|---|

3

The function of this input signal varies according to the memory switch setting.

| Cn-02 Bit 2 | Cn-01 Bit B | Cn-01 Bit A | Function of $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | Proportional control (Standard setting) |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | Speed control with zero-clamp function Switching between zero-clamp enabled/ prohibited mode |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | Torque control I ($\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ is not used.) |
| **0** | **1** | **1** | **Torque control II** |
| 1 | – | – | Changing the direction of rotation during contact input speed control. |




The function of $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ signal varies according to the memory switch setting.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

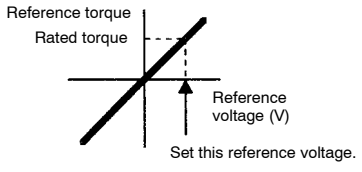
- **Torque/Speed Changeover Control**
  This function is used to switch between torque control and speed control in torque control II mode.

| | |
|---|---|
| ON: 1CN-41 is at low level. | Speed control |
| OFF: 1CN-41 is at high level. | Torque control |

4) Set the following user constants for torque control according to the servo system used.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-13** | TCRFGN<br>Torque Reference Gain | Unit:<br>0.1 V/Rated Torque | Setting Range:<br>10 to 100 | Factory Setting:<br>30 | For Speed/Torque Control Only |

Sets the voltage range of torque reference input T-REF (1CN-9) according to the output form of the host controller or external circuit.

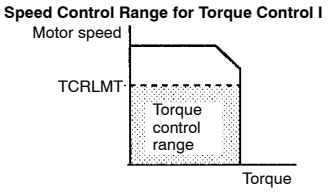



The factory setting is 30, so the rated torque is 3 V (30 x 0.1).

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-14** | TCRLMT<br>Speed Limit for Torque Control I | Unit:<br>r/min | Setting Range: 0 to Maximum Speed | Factory Setting:<br>Maximum Speed | For Speed/Torque Control Only |

Sets a motor speed limit value in this constant when torque control I is selected.

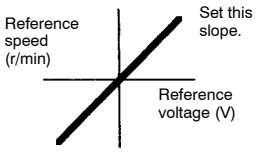
This user constant is used to prevent machine overspeed during torque control.




For torque control I, set bits A and B of memory switch Cn-01.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-03** | VREFGN<br>Speed Reference Gain | Unit:<br>(r/min)/V | Setting Range:<br>10 to 2162 | Factory Setting:<br>500 | For Speed/Torque Control Only |

Sets the voltage range of speed reference input V-REF (1CN-3) according to the output form of the host controller or external circuit.




The factory setting is 500 [rated speed (3000 r/min)/6 V = 500].



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.2.8 Using Torque Feed-forward Function

Speed

For speed control only.

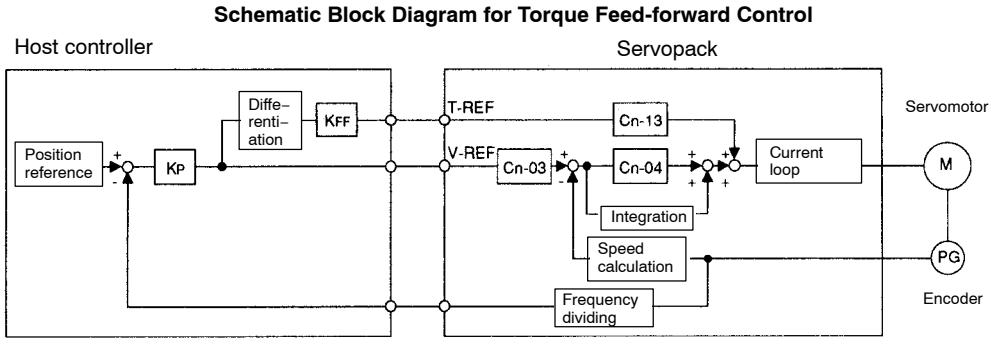
1) **Outline**

The torque feed-forward function reduces positioning time. It differentiates a speed reference at the host controller (prepared by the customer) to generate a torque feed-forward reference, then sends this torque feed-forward reference and the speed reference to the Servopack.

Too high a torque feed-forward value will result in overshoot or undershoot. To prevent this, set the optimum value while observing system response.

Connect a speed reference signal line and torque feed-forward reference signal line from the host controller to V-REF (1CN-5, 1CN-6) and T-REF (1CN-9, 1CN-10), respectively.

**Schematic Block Diagram for Torque Feed-forward Control**




$K_P$: Position loop gain
$K_{FF}$: Feed-forward gain

2) **How to Use Torque Feed-forward Function**

To use the torque feed-forward function, set the following memory switch to 1.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01 Bit F** | Selection of Torque Feed-forward Function | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed Control Only |

Enables the torque feed-forward function.

To use the torque feed-forward function, input a speed reference to the V-REF terminal and a torque feed-forward reference to the T-REF terminal.

The host controller must generate a torque feed-forward reference from a speed reference.

| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Does not use the torque feed-forward function. |
| **1** | **Uses the torque feed-forward function.** |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

- This function cannot be used with the function for torque restriction by analog voltage reference, described in *3.2.9 Using Torque Restriction by Analog Voltage Reference*.
- For user constants and control modes, refer to *Appendix D List of User Constants*.

3) **Setting a Torque Feed-forward Value in User Constant Cn-13**

The factory setting is Cn-13 = 30. If, for example, the torque feed-forward value is ±3 V, torque is restricted to ±100% (rated torque).

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-13** | TCRFGN<br>Torque Reference Gain | Unit: 0.1 V/Rated Torque | Setting Range: 10 to 100 | Factory Setting: 30 | For Speed/Torque Control Only |



## 3.2.9 Using Torque Restriction by Analog Voltage Reference

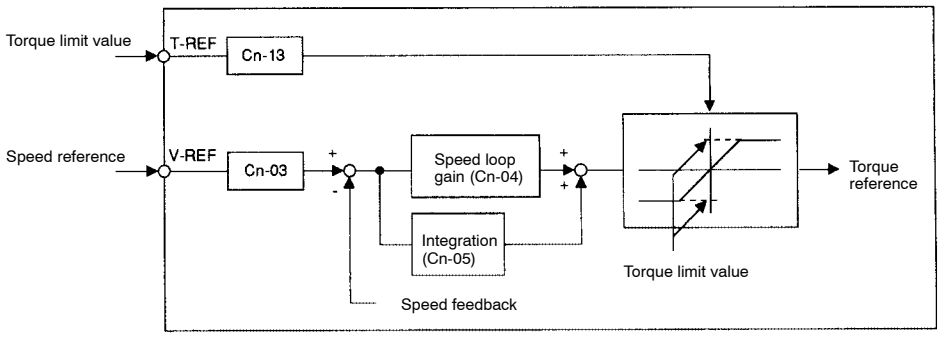
Speed

For speed control only.

1) **Outline**

This function restricts torque by assigning the T-REF terminal (1CN-9, 1CN-10) a torque limit value in terms of analog voltage. Since torque reference input terminal T-REF is used as an input terminal, this function cannot be used for torque control.

**Schematic Block Diagram for Torque Restriction by Analog Voltage Reference**






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) **How to Use Torque Restriction by Analog Voltage Reference**

To use this torque restriction function, set the following memory switch to 1.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-02 Bit F** | Torque Restriction by Analog Voltage Reference | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed Control Only |

Enables this torque restriction function.

To use this function, input a speed reference to the V-REF terminal and a torque limit value to the T-REF terminal.

This function cannot be used for torque control.

Torque restriction cannot be set separately for forward and reverse rotation. (The same setting applies to both forward and reverse rotation.)



| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Uses the T-REF terminal as a torque reference or torque feed-forward reference input terminal. |
| **1** | **Uses the T-REF terminal as a torque limit value input terminal.** |

- This function cannot be used with the torque feed-forward function described in *3.2.8 Using Torque Feed-forward Function*.

- For user constants and control modes, refer to *Appendix D List of User Constants*.

3) **Setting a Torque Limit Value in User Constant Cn-13**

The factory setting is Cn-13 = 30. If, for example, the torque limit value is 3 V, torque is restricted to 100% (rated torque).

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-13** | TCRFGN Torque Reference Gain | Unit: 0.1 V/ Rated Torque | Setting Range: 10 to 100 | Factory Setting: 30 | For Speed/Torque Control Only |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 3.2.10 Using the Reference Pulse Inhibit Function (INHIBIT)

**Positions**

For position control only.

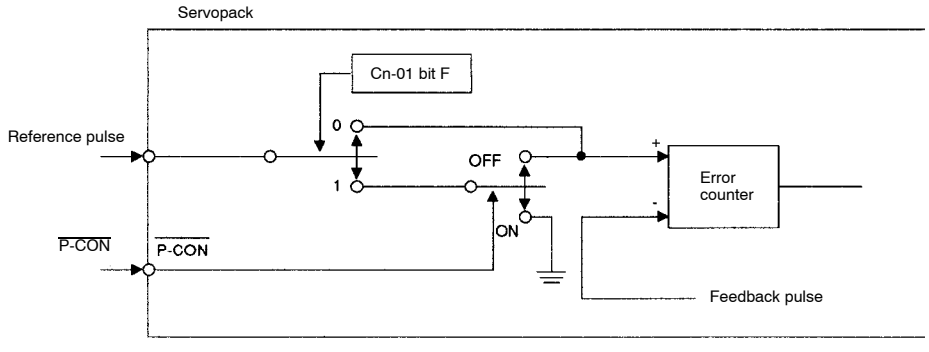
1) **Outline**

This function inhibits a position control from counting input reference pulses.

While this function is being used, the motor remains in servo locked (clamped) status. The $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ signal is used to enable or prohibit this function.

When this function is used, therefore, the $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ signal cannot be used to switch between proportion (P) control and proportional/integral (PI) control for speed loop. (PI control is always used.)

**Schematic Block Diagram for INHIBIT Function**




2) **How to Use Reference Pulse Inhibit Function: INHIBIT**

To use the INHIBIT function, set the following memory switch to 1:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01 Bit F** | Reference Pulse Inhibit Function (INHIBIT) | Factory Setting: 0 | For Position Control Only |

Enables the INHIBIT function.

| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Does not use the INHIBIT function.<br>Reference pulses are always counted. |
| 1 | **Uses the INHIBIT function.**<br>**$\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ signal is used to enable or prohibit the INHIBIT function.** |

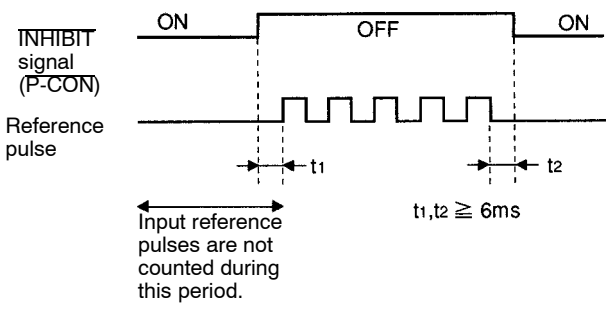
| $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ | Meaning |
|---|---|
| **OFF** | **Counts reference pulses.** |
| **ON** | **Prohibits the Servopack from counting reference pulses.**<br>**The motor remains in servo locked (clamped) status.** |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• Always set bit 2 of memory switch Cn-02 to 0.
If bit 2 is set to 1, the contact input speed control function is selected, and the INHIBIT function cannot be used. (The $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ signal is used for changing the motor rotation direction. For the contact input speed function, refer to *3.2.6 Using Contact Input Speed Control*.)

3) **Relationship between INHIBIT Signal and Reference Pulse**






## 3.2.11 Using the Reference Pulse Input Filter Selection Function

**Positions**

For position control only.

1) **Outline**

This function selects a reference pulse input filter inside the Servopack according to the output form of reference pulses from the host controller.

2) **How to Use Reference Pulse Input Filter**

Set the following memory switch according to the output form of reference pulses from the host controller:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-02 Bit F** | Reference Pulse Input Filter Selection Function | Factory Setting: 0 | For Position Control Only |

Sets the memory switch according to the output form (line driver or open collector) of reference pulses from the host controller.

| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Output form of reference pulses from host controller: Line driver output (maximum frequency of reference pulse: 450 kpps) |
| **1** | **Output form of reference pulses from host controller: Open collector output (maximum frequency of reference pulse: 200 kpps)** |

• For open collector output, the wire length must be as short as possible (maximum 3 m).



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.2.12 Using the Analog Monitor

1) The following two analog voltage monitor signals are output.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Output → TRQ-M 1CN-16** | Torque monitor | For Speed/Torque Control |
| **Output → VTG-M 1CN-17** | Speed monitor | |

TRQ-M : Torque monitor output (±3V/±100% torque)
VTG-M : Speed monitor output (±3V/±1000 r/min)

- As for the check terminals of the front panel:
  TMON is the same signal as TRQ-M
  VTG is the same signal as VTG-M

Signal ground for TMON and VTG is SG0V of check terminals.

The following memory switch is used to modify the signal specifications.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-02 Bit 6** | TRQ-M Specifications | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control |

| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Uses TRQ-M as the torque reference monitor output. |
| 1 | Uses TRQ-M as the speed reference monitor output. |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 3.3 Setting Up the Σ Servopack

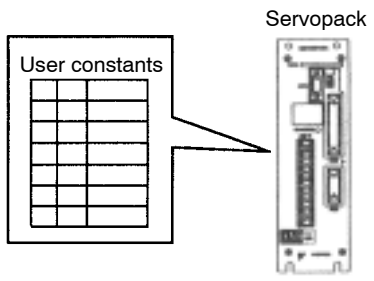
This section describes how to set user constants to operate the DR2 Servopack.


3.3.1 Setting User Constants . . . . . 103
3.3.2 Setting the Jog Speed . . . . . 104
3.3.3 Setting the Number of Encoder Pulses . . . . . 105
3.3.4 Setting the Motor Type . . . . . 106


## 3.3.1 Setting User Constants

1) Σ-series Servopacks provide many functions, and have parameters called “user constants” to allow the user to specify each function and perform fine adjustment.






Digital Operator is used to set user constants.

2) User constants are divided into the following two types.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1) Memory switch<br>Cn-01, Cn-02 | Each bit of this switch is turned ON or OFF to specify a function. |
| 2) User constant setting<br>Cn-03 and later | A numerical value such as a torque limit value or speed loop gain is set in this constant. |

• For Speed/Torque Control:

| User Constant | Name and Code | | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| Cn-01 | Memory switch | | Each bit number has a switch (ON/OFF). |
| Cn-02 | Memory switch | | |
| Cn-03 | VREFGN | Speed reference gain | User constant setting |
| Cn-.. | ... | ... | |
| Cn-.. | ... | ... | |
| Cn-2A | PULSNO2 | Number of external PG pulses | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• For Position Control:

| User Constant | Name and Code | | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| Cn-01 | Memory switch | | Each bit number has a switch (ON/OFF). |
| Cn-02 | Memory switch | | |
| Cn-04 | LOOPHZ | Speed loop gain | User constant setting |
| Cn-.. | ... | ... | |
| Cn-.. | ... | ... | |
| Cn-2A | PULSNO2 | Number of external PG pulses | |

3) For a list of user constants, refer to *Appendix D List of User Constants*.

Some user constants for speed/torque control and position control have different meanings. Refer to a list of user constants for each type.

4) For details of how to set user constants, refer to *4.1.5 Operation in User Constant Setting Mode*

## 3.3.2 Setting the Jog Speed

1) Use the following user constant to set or modify a motor speed when operating the Σ-series Servo from a Digital Operator:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-10** | JOGSPD<br>Jog Speed | Unit:<br>r/min | Setting Range: 0 to Maximum Speed | Factory Setting: 500 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

This constant is used to set a motor speed when the motor is operated using a Digital Operator.

Operation Using Digital Operator





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

### 3.3.3 Setting the Number of Encoder Pulses

1) To ensure that the Σ-series Servo System operates properly, set the type of the encoder to be used and the number of encoder pulses per revolution in the following user constants:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-02 Bit 9** | Encoder Type Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Set the encoder type according to the servomotor type to be used.

**After changing the memory switch setting, turn the power OFF, then ON.**

| Motor Type | Encoder Type | Preset Value |
|---|---|---|
| SGM-□□□31□<br>SGMP-□□□31□ | Incremental encoder | 0 |
| SGM-□□□W1□<br>SGMP-□□□W1□ | Absolute encoder | 1 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-11** | PULSNO Number of Encoder Pulses | Unit: Pulses Per Revolution | Setting Range: Number of Encoder Pulses | Factory Setting: 2048 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Set the number of encoder pulses according to the servomotor type to be used. If this user constant is set incorrectly, system operation cannot be guaranteed.

**After changing the user constant setting, turn the power OFF, then ON.**

| Motor Type | Number of Encoder Pulses Per Revolution | Preset Value |
|---|---|---|
| SGM-□□□31□<br>SGMP-□□□31□ | Incremental encoder: 2048 pulses per revolution | 2048 |
| SGM-□□□W1□<br>SGMP-□□□W1□ | Absolute encoder: 1024 pulses per revolution | 1024 |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.3.4 Setting the Motor Type

1) To ensure that the Σ-series Servo System operates properly, set the type of the servomotor to be used in the following user constant.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-02 Bit 8** | Motor Selection | Factory Setting:<br>DR2-□□□□: 0<br>DR2-□□□□P: 1 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Set this memory switch according to the servomotor type to be used (SGM or SGMP).
After changing the memory switch setting, turn the power OFF, then ON.
This makes the new setting valid.

| Motor Type | Preset Value |
|---|---|
| SGM-□□□□□□ | 0 |
| SGMP-□□□□□□ | 1 |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 3.4 Setting Stop Mode

This section describes how to stop the motor properly.

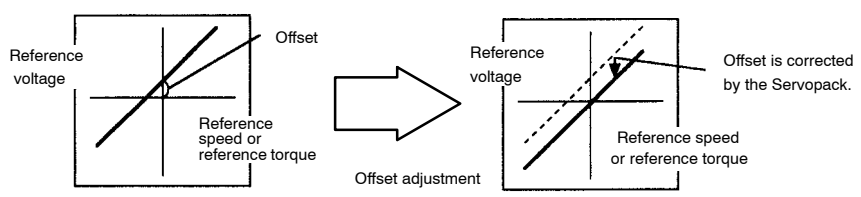

3.4.1 Adjusting Offset . . . . . 107
3.4.2 Using Dynamic Brake . . . . . 108
3.4.3 Using Zero-Clamp . . . . . 109
3.4.4 Using Holding Brake . . . . . 110


## 3.4.1 Adjusting Offset

1) "Why does not the motor stop?"

When 0 V is specified as reference voltage for Servopack for speed/torque control, the motor may rotate at a very slow speed and fail to stop. This happens when reference voltage from the host controller or external circuit has a slight reference offset (in mV units). If this offset is adjusted to 0 V, the motor will stop.

When reference voltage from the host controller or external circuit has an offset




2) The following two methods can be used to adjust the reference offset to 0 V.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1) Automatic adjustment of reference offset | Reference offset is automatically adjusted to 0 V. |
| 2) Manual adjustment of reference offset | Reference offset can be intentionally set to a specified value. |

**NOTE** If a position control loop is formed in the host controller, do not use automatic adjustment in 1. Always use manual adjustment in 2.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3) For detailed adjustment procedures, refer to the following sections.

| | Adjustment Method |
|---|---|
| 1) Automatic adjustment of reference offset | *4.2.4 Reference Offset Automatic Adjustment* |
| 2) Manual adjustment of reference offset | *4.2.5 Speed Reference Offset Manual AdjustmentMode* |

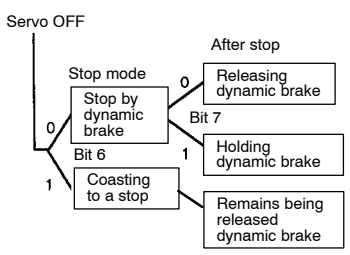
## 3.4.2 Using Dynamic Brake

1) To stop the servomotor by applying **dynamic brake (DB)**, set desired values in the following memory switch. If dynamic brake is not used, the servomotor will stop naturally due to machine friction.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01Bit 6** | How to Stop Motor When Servo is Turned OFF | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-01Bit 7** | Operation to Be Performed When Motor Stops After Servo is Turned OFF | Factory Setting: 1 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

The Servopack enters servo OFF status when:

- Servo ON input signal ($\overline{\text{S-ON}}$, 1CN-40) is turned OFF
- Servo alarm arises
- Main power is turned OFF




Specify how to stop the motor when one of the above events occurs during operation.

| | Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| Cn-01 bit 6 | 0 | Stops the motor by dynamic brake. |
| | 1 | Causes the motor to coast to a stop.<br>The motor power is OFF and stops due to machine friction. |

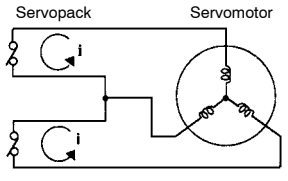
If dynamic brake stop mode is selected, specify the operation to be performed when the motor stops.

| | Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| Cn-01 bit 7 | 0 | Releases dynamic brake after the motor stops. |
| | 1 | Does not release dynamic brake even after the motor stop. |

TERMS

**Dynamic brake (DB)**

One of the general methods to cause a motor sudden stop. "Dynamic brake" suddenly stops a servomotor by shorting its electrical circuit.
This dynamic brake circuit is incorporated in the Servopack.





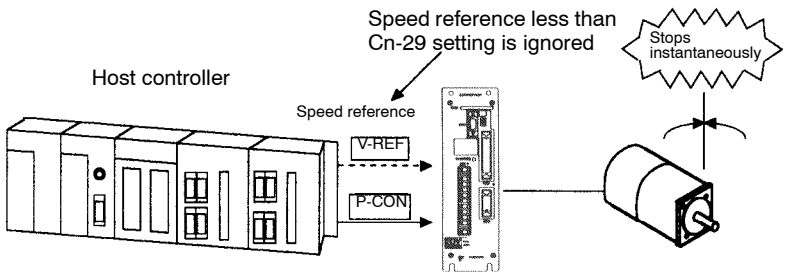

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.4.3 Using Zero-Clamp

**Speed/Torque**

1) The zero-clamp function is used for a system in which the host controller does not form a position loop by speed reference input.

   In other words, this function is used to cause the motor to stop and enter a servo locked status when the input voltage of speed reference V-REF is not 0 V. When the zero-clamp function is turned ON, an internal position loop is temporarily formed, causing the motor to be clamped within one pulse. Even if the motor is forcibly rotated by external force, it returns to the zero-clamp position.




2) Set the following memory switch so that input signal $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ can be used to enable or disable the zero-clamp function.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01Bit A** | Control Mode Selection | Factory Setting:0 | For Speed/Torque Control Only |
| **Cn-01Bit B** | Control Mode Selection | Factory Setting:0 | For Speed/Torque Control Only |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **→ Input $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ 1CN-41** | Proportional Control, etc. | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

| Cn-01 Setting | | Control Mode | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Bit B | Bit A | | |
| 0 | 1 | **Zero-clamp Speed Control**<br>This speed control allows the zero-clamp function to be set when the motor stops.<br>● A speed reference is input from V-REF (1CN-5).<br>● $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ (1CN-41) is used to turn the zero-clamp function ON or OFF.<br>$\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ (1CN-41) is open (OFF) → Turns zero-clamp function OFF<br>$\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ (1CN-41) is closed (ON) → Turns zero-clamp function ON<br>● Torque reference input T-REF (1CN-9) cannot be used. | Servopack<br>Speed reference V-REF (1CN-5)<br>Zero-clamp $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ (1CN-41)<br>**Zero-clamp is performed when the following two conditions are met:**<br>**$\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ signal is closed.**<br>**Motor speed is below the value set in Cn-29 (ZCLVL).** |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3) Set in the following user constant the motor speed level at which zero-clamp is to be performed:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-29** | ZCLVL Zero-Clamp Level | Unit: r/min | Setting Range: 0 to Maximum Speed | Factory Setting: 10 | For Speed Control Only |

If zero-clamp speed control is selected, set the motor speed level at which zero-clamp is to be performed.

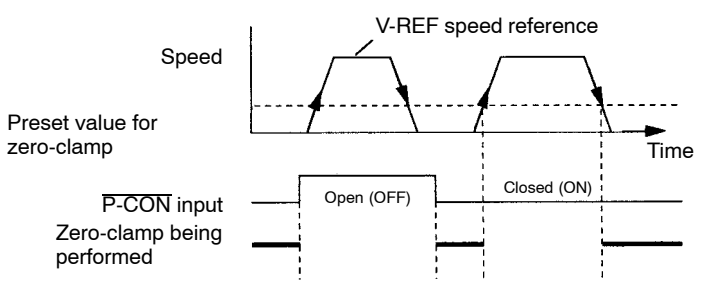
**Conditions for Zero-clamp**

Zero-clamp is performed when all the following conditions are met:

a) Zero-clamp speed control is selected. (Bits A and B of memory switch Cn-01 are set to 1 and 0, respectively.)

b) $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ (1CN-41) is turned ON (0 V).

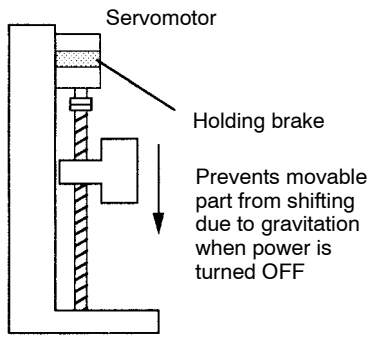
c) Motor speed drops below the preset value.




## 3.4.4 Using Holding Brake

1) **Outline**

Holding brake is useful when a servo drive is used to control a vertical axis. A servomotor with brake prevents the movable part from dropping due to gravitation when the system power is turned OFF.



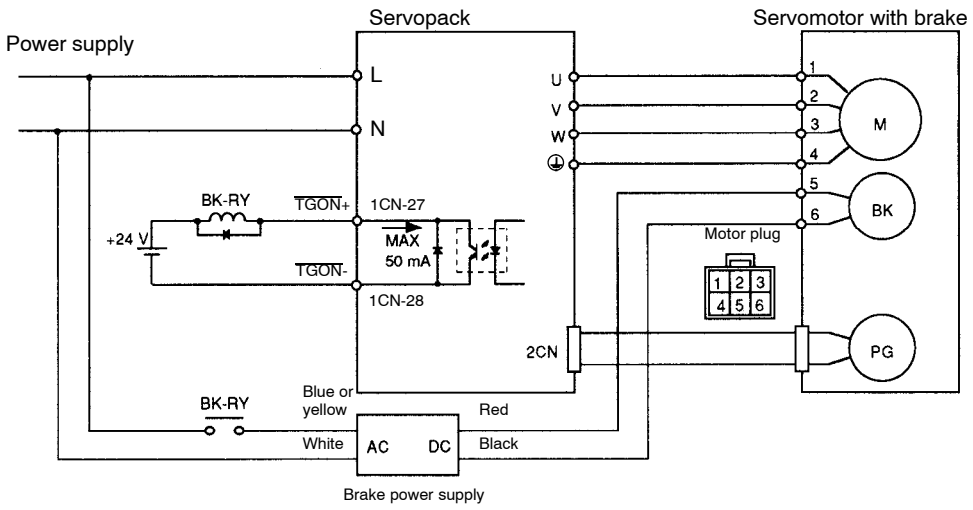

**NOTE** The built-in brake in Servomotor with brake is a de-energization operation type, which is used for holding purposes only and cannot be used for braking purposes. Use the holding brake only to retain a stopped motor. Brake torque is more than 100% of the rated motor torque.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) Use Servopack contact output-signal $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+, $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- and brake power supply to form a brake ON/OFF circuit.

An example of standard wiring is shown below.




BK-RY: Brake control relay

Brake power supply has two types (200 V, 100 V).

Set the following memory switch to select the brake interlock output.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01 Bit E** | Selection of $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+, $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- Signals | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Set bit E of Cn-01 to 1 to select the brake interlock output.

| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Uses the $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+, $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- signals as the running output. |
| **1** | **Uses the $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+, $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- signals as the brake interlock output.** |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Output → $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+ 1CN-27**<br>**Output → $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- 1CN-28** | Brake Interlock Output, etc. | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

This output signal controls the brake when a motor with brake is used. This signal terminal need not be connected when a motor without brake is used.

**Related User Constants**

| | |
|---|---|
| Cn-12 | Time delay from brake signal until servo OFF |
| Cn-15 | Speed level for brake signal output during operation |
| Cn-16 | Output timing of brake signal during motor operation |

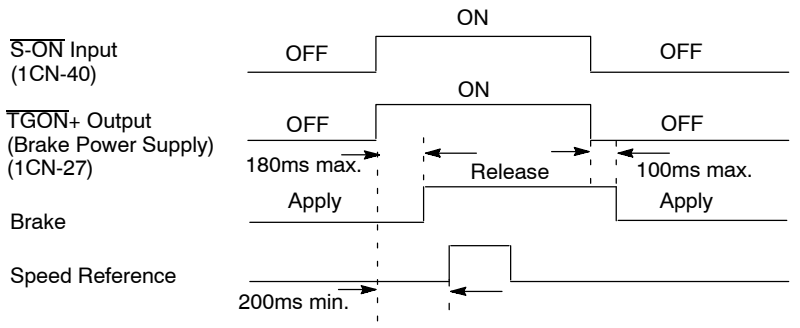
| | |
|---|---|
| **ON Status:**<br>Circuit between 1CN-27 and 1CN-28 is closed.<br>1CN-27 is at low level. | Releases the brake. |
| **OFF Status:**<br>Circuit between 1CN-27 and 1CN-28 is open.<br>1CN-27 is at high level. | Applies the brake. |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*3.4.4 Using Holding Brake cont.*

3) Between the brake is released and applied by brake power (TGON+) ON/OFF, time delay occurs as follows:



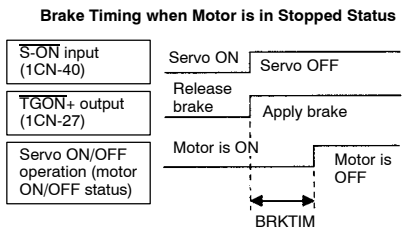

Min. 200ms is required between brake power ON (TGON+) and speed reference input. As for the brake holding timing at servo OFF, refer to 4) and 5) shown below.

4) If the machine moves slightly due to gravity when the brake is applied, set the following user constant to adjust brake ON (brake holding) timing:

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-12** | BRKTIM | Time delay from the time a brake signal is output until servo OFF status occurs | Unit: 10 ms | Setting Range: 0 to 50 | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

This user constant is used to set output timing of brake control signals TGON+ (1CN-27), TGON- (1CN-28) and servo OFF operation (motor output stop) when SGM/SGMP Servomotor with brake is used.
This user constant is not available for alarm occurrence and main power OFF.

**Brake Timing when Motor is in Stopped Status**




With the standard setting, the servo is turned OFF when TGON+ signal (brake operation) is output. The machine may move slightly due to gravitation. This movement depends on machine configuration and brake characteristics. If this happens, use this user constant to delay servo OFF timing to prevent the machine from moving.

**Set in this constant the brake ON timing used when the motor is in stopped status.**

**For brake ON timing during motor operation, use Cn-15 and Cn-16.**



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

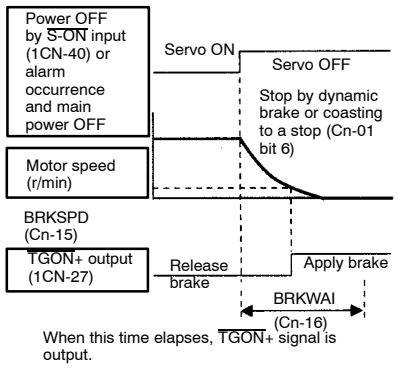
5) Set the following user constants to adjust brake ON timing so that holding brake is applied when the motor stops.

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-15** | BRKSPD | Speed Level at which Brake Signal Is Output during Motor Operation | Unit: r/min | Setting Range: 0 to Maximum Speed | Factory Setting: 100 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-16** | BRKWAI | Output Timing of Brake Signal during Motor Operation | Unit: 10 ms | Setting Range: 10 to 100 | Factory Setting: 50 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Cn-15 and Cn-16 are used for SGM/SGMP Servomotors with brake. Use these user constants to set brake timing used when the servo is turned OFF by input signal $\overline{\text{S-ON}}$ (1CN-40) or alarm occurrence during motor rotation.

Since brakes for SGM/SGMP Servomotors are designed as holding brakes, if brake is applied at motor running, brake generates excessive friction. Therefore, brake ON timing when the motor stops must be appropriate. Adjust the user constant settings while observing machine operation.

**Brake Timing when Motor is in Stopped Status**




- Conditions for $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+ signal (1CN-27) output during motor operation. The circuit between 1CN-27 and 1CN-28 is opened in either of the following situations.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Motor speed drops below the value set in Cn-15 (BRKSPD) after servo OFF occurs. |
| 2 | The time set in Cn-16 (BRKWAI) has elapsed since servo OFF occurred. |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 3.5 Running the Motor Smoothly

This section explains how to run the servomotor smoothly.

3.5.1 Using the Soft Start Function . . . . . 114
3.5.2 Using the Smoothing Function . . . . . 115
3.5.3 Adjusting Gain . . . . . 115
3.5.4 Adjusting Offset . . . . . 116
3.5.5 Setting the Torque Reference Filter Time Constant . . . . . 116



## 3.5.1 Using the Soft Start Function

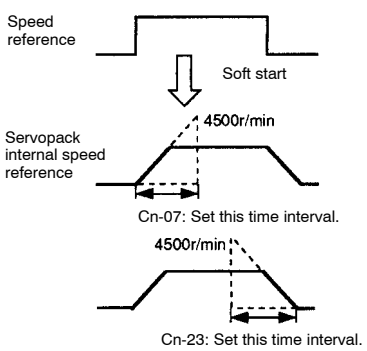
Speed/Torque

1) The soft start function adjusts progressive speed reference input inside the Servopack so that acceleration and deceleration can be as constant as possible. To use this function, set the following user constants.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-07** | SFSACC<br>Soft Start Time (Acceleration) | Unit:<br>ms | Setting Range:<br>0 to 10000 | Factory Setting:<br>0 | For Speed/Torque Control Only |
| **Cn-23** | SFSDEC<br>Soft Start Time (Deceleration) | Unit:<br>ms | Setting Range:<br>0 to 10000 | Factory Setting:<br>0 | For Speed/Torque Control Only |

In the Servopack, a speed reference is multiplied by the acceleration or deceleration value set in Cn-07 or Cn-23 to provide speed control.

Smooth speed control can be achieved when progressive speed references are input or when contact input speed control is used.




Set these user constants as follows.

Cn-07: Time interval from the time the motor starts until the maximum speed (4500 r/min) is reached

Cn-23: Time interval from the time the motor is running at the maximum speed (4500 r/min) until it stops



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.5.2 Using the Smoothing Function

**Positions**

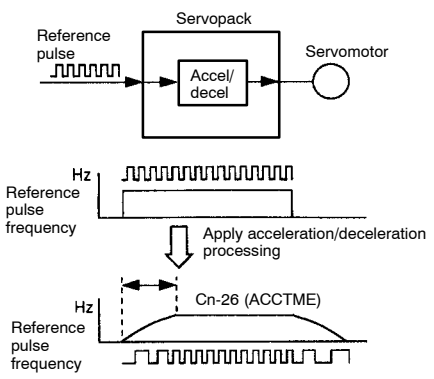
1) The smoothing function adjusts constant-frequency reference input inside the Servopack so that acceleration and deceleration can be as constant as possible. To use this function, set the following user constant.

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-26** | ACCTME | Position Reference Acceleration/Deceleration Time Constant (Smoothing) | Unit: 0.1 ms | Setting Range: 0 to 640 | Factory Setting: 0 | For Position Control Only |

This user constant is used for position control only.

This function performs acceleration/deceleration processing for input reference pulses (primary lag characteristics).

This function prevents the motor from running at progressive speeds in the following cases:




- When the host controller which outputs references cannot perform acceleration/deceleration processing
- When reference pulse frequency is too low
- When reference electronic gear ratio is too high (more than 10 times)

This function does not change the travel distance (number of pulses).

3

## 3.5.3 Adjusting Gain

1) If speed loop gain or position loop gain exceeds the allowable limit for the servo system including the machine to be controlled, the system will vibrate or become too susceptible. Under such conditions, smooth operation cannot be expected. Reduce each loop gain value to an appropriate value.

2) For servo gain adjustment, refer to the following section:

*3.6.2 Setting Servo Gain*



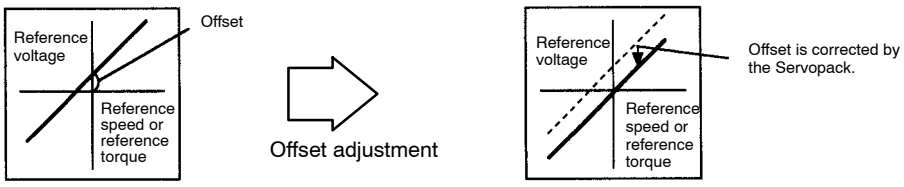
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.5.4 Adjusting Offset

Speed/Torque

1) If reference voltage from the host controller or external circuit has an offset in the vicinity of 0 V, smooth operation cannot be expected. Adjust the reference offset to 0 V.

**When Reference Voltage from Host Controller or External Circuit has an Offset**




2) The following two methods are available to adjust the reference offset to 0 V.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1) Automatic adjustment of reference offset | Reference offset is automatically adjusted. |
| 2) Manual adjustment of reference offset | Reference offset can be intentionally set to a specified value. |

**NOTE** If a position control loop is formed in the host controller, do not use automatic adjustment in 1). Always use manual adjustment in 2).

3) For detailed adjustment procedures, refer to the following sections:

| | **Adjustment Method** |
|---|---|
| 1) Automatic adjustment of reference offset | *4.2.4 Reference Offset Automatic Adjustment* |
| 2) Manual adjustment of reference offset | *4.2.5 Speed Reference Offset Manual AdjustmentMode* |

## 3.5.5 Setting the Torque Reference Filter Time Constant

1) If the machine causes vibration, possibly resulting from the servo drive, adjust the following filter time constant. Vibration may stop.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-17** | TRQFIL Torque Reference Filter Time Constant | Unit: 100 μs | Setting Range: 0 to 250 | Factory Setting: 4 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Cn-17 is a torque reference filter time constant for the DR2 Servopack. The smaller the value, the higher the torque control response. There is, however, a certain limit depending on machine conditions.

With the standard setting, the machine may cause vibration resulting from the servo drive. In this case, increase the constant setting. Vibration may stop. Vibration can be caused by incorrect gain adjustment, machine problems and so on.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Set the following memory switch to select the torque reference filter degree.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-02 Bit C** | Torque Reference Filter Degree | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Primary filter |
| 1 | Secondary filter |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 3.6 Minimizing Positioning Time

This section describes how to minimize positioning time.

3.6.1 Using Autotuning Function . . . . . 118
3.6.2 Setting Servo Gain . . . . . 118
3.6.3 Using Feed-forward Control . . . . . 120
3.6.4 Using Proportional Control . . . . . 120
3.6.5 Setting Speed Bias . . . . . 121
3.6.6 Using Mode Switch . . . . . 122



## 3.6.1 Using Autotuning Function

1) If speed loop gain and position loop gain for the servo system are not set properly, positioning may become slow. Techniques and experience are required to set these servo gain values according to machine configuration and machine rigidity.

2) Σ-series Servopacks have an autotuning function that automatically measures machine characteristics and sets the necessary servo gain values. With this function, even first-time servo users can easily perform tuning for servo gain. Servo gain values are set in user constants.

3) The following user constants can be automatically set by the autotuning function.

| User Constant | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Cn-04 | Speed loop gain |
| Cn-05 | Speed loop integration time constant |
| Cn-1A | Position loop gain |

4) For details of how to perform autotuning, refer to *4.2.3 Autotuning*

## 3.6.2 Setting Servo Gain

1) Check and reset the servo gain when:

   a) Automatically set servo gain values need to be checked after autotuning.

   b) Each servo gain value checked in a) is to be directly set for another Servopack.

   c) Response performance needs to be further enhanced after autotuning, or servo gain values need to be reset for a system with lower response performance.

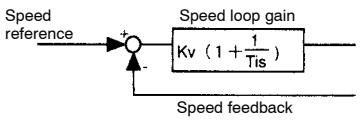


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) Set the following user constants related to speed loop as necessary.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-04** | LOOPHZ<br>Speed Loop Gain (Kv) | Unit:<br>Hz | Setting<br>Range: 1<br>to 2000 | Factory<br>Setting:<br>80 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-05** | PITIME<br>Speed Loop Integration Time Constant (Ti) | Unit:<br>0.01<br>ms | Setting<br>Range: 2<br>to 10000 | Factory<br>Setting:<br>2000 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Cn-04 and Cn-05 are a speed loop gain and an integration time constant for the Servopack, respectively.




The higher the speed loop gain value or the smaller the speed loop integration time constant value, the higher the speed control response. There is, however, a certain limit depending on machine characteristics.

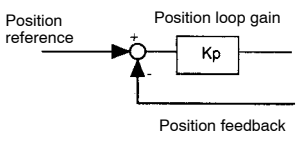
These user constants are automatically set by the autotuning function.

**The unit of speed loop integration time constant Cn-05 (Ti) can be changed to 0.01 ms.**

3) Set the following user constants related to position loop as necessary.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-1A** | POSGN<br>Position Loop Gain (Kp) | Unit:<br>1/s | Setting<br>Range: 1<br>to 500 | Factory<br>Setting:<br>40 | For Position Control Only |

This user constant is a position loop gain for the Servopack.




Increasing the position loop gain value provides position control with higher response and less error. However, there is a certain limit depending on machine characteristics.

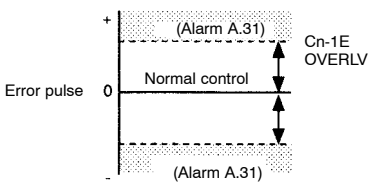
This user constant is automatically set by the autotuning function.

**Positions**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-1E** | OVERLV<br>Overflow | Unit: 256<br>References | Setting<br>Range: 1<br>to 32767 | Factory<br>Setting:<br>1024 | For Position Control Only |

This user constant is for position control only.

Set in this user constant the error pulse level at which a position error pulse overflow alarm (alarm A.31) is detected.




If the machine permits only a small position loop gain value to be set in Cn-1A, an overflow alarm may arise during high-speed operation. In this case, increase the value set in this user constant to suppress alarm detection.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

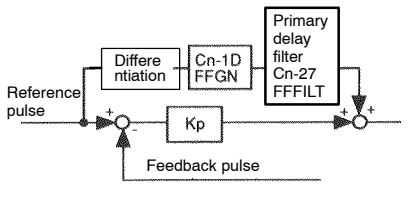
## 3.6.3 Using Feed-forward Control

**Positions**

Feed-forward control shortens positioning time. To use **feed-forward control**, set the following user constant.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-1D** | FFGN<br>Feed-forward Gain | Unit:<br>% | Setting Range: 0 to 100 | Factory Setting: 0 | For Position Control Only |
| **Cn-27** | FFFILT<br>Feed-forward Reference Filter | Unit:<br>100 μs | Setting Range: 0 to 640 | Factory Setting: 0 | For Position Control Only |

This user constant is for position control only.




This user constant is set to apply feed-forward frequency compensation to position control inside the Servopack.
Use this user constant to shorten positioning time. Too high a value may cause the machine to vibrate. For ordinary machines, set 80% or less in this constant.

## 3.6.4 Using Proportional Control

**Speed/Torque**

1) If both bits A and B of memory switch Cn-01 are set to 0 as shown below, input signal $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ serves as a PI/P control changeover switch for speed control loop.

- PI Control: Proportional/Integral control
- P Control: Proportional control

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01 Bit A** | Control Mode Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-01Bit B** | Control Mode Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

**TERMS**

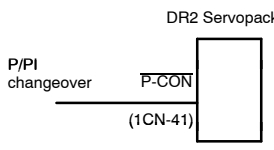
**Feed-forward control**

Control for making necessary corrections beforehand to prevent the control system from receiving the effects of disturbance.
Using feed-forward control increases effective servo gain, enhancing response performance.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

For speed/torque control only.

| Cn-01 Setting | | Control Mode | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Bit B | Bit A | | |
| 0 | 0 | • Signal $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ (1CN-41) is used to switch between P control and PI control.<br>$\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ (1CN-41) is open (OFF): PI control<br>$\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ (1CN-41) is closed (ON): P control<br>• Torque reference input T-REF (1CN-9) cannot be used. |  |

2) Proportional control can be used in the following two ways.

a) The host controller can selectively use P control mode for particular conditions only. This method can prevent the occurrence of overshoot and also shorten settling time. For particular conditions, refer to *3.6.6 Using Mode Switch*.

b) In the speed control mode, if PI control mode is used when the speed reference has a reference offset, the motor may rotate at a very slow speed and fail to stop even if 0 is specified as a speed reference. In this case, use P control mode to stop the motor.



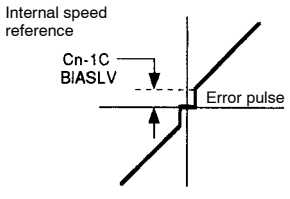
## 3.6.5 Setting Speed Bias

Positions

The settling time for positioning can be reduced by assigning bias to the speed reference output part in the Servopack. To assign bias, use the following constant.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-1C** | BIASLV<br>Bias | Unit:<br>r/min | Setting<br>Range: 0 to 450 | Factory<br>Setting: 0 | For Position Control Only |

This user constant is for position control only.




This user constant is set to assign an offset to a speed reference in the DR2 Servopack.

Use this constant to shorten settling time.

Set this user constant according to machine conditions.



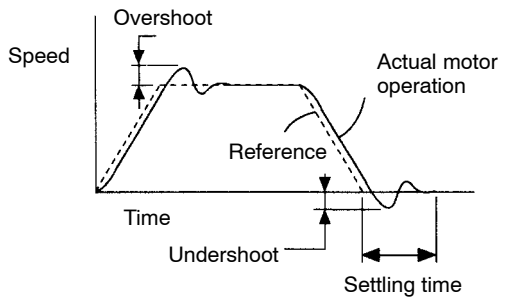
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.6.6 Using Mode Switch

1) Use the mode switch for the following purposes:

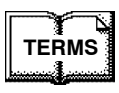
   a) To prevent overshoot during acceleration or deceleration (for speed control).

   b) To prevent undershoot during positioning in order to reduce settling time (for position control).




2) In other words, the mode switch is a function that automatically switches the speed control mode inside the Servopack **from PI control to P control** while certain conditions are being established.

**NOTE** The mode switch is used to fully utilize performance of a servo drive to achieve very high-speed positioning. The speed response waveform must be observed to adjust the mode switch.
For normal use, the speed loop gain and position loop gain set by autotuning provide sufficient speed/position control.
Even if overshoot or undershoot occurs, they can be suppressed by setting the acceleration/deceleration time constant for the host controller, the soft start time constants (Cn-07, Cn-23), or position reference accel/decel time constant (Cn-26) for the Servopack.




**From PI control to P control**

PI control means proportional/integral control and P control means proportional control. In short, switching “from PI control to P control” reduces effective servo gain, making the servo system more stable.



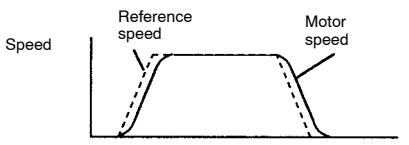
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3) Servopacks can use four types of mode switches (1 to 4). To select a mode switch, use the following memory switch. Note that the mode switch setting methods for speed/torque control and position control are slightly different.

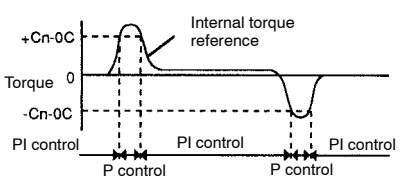
| For Speed/ Torque Control | | For Position Control | | | Mode Switch Setting | User Constant | Unit |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Memory Switch Cn-01 | | Memory Switch Cn-01 | | | | | |
| Bit D | Bit C | Bit D | Bit C | Bit B | | | |
| 1 | 1 | – | – | 1 | Does not use mode switch. | | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Uses torque reference as a detection point. (Standard setting) | Cn-0C | Percentage of rated torque: % |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | Uses speed reference as a detection point. | Cn-0D | Motor speed: r/min |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | Uses acceleration reference as a detection point. | Cn-0E | Acceleration reference inside the Servopack: 10 (r/min)/s |
| | | 1 | 1 | 0 | Uses error pulse as a detection point. | Cn-0F | Reference unit |

**When Torque Reference Is Used as a Detection Point of Mode Switch (Standard Setting)**

If a torque reference exceeds the torque value set in user constant Cn-0C, the speed loop switches to P control.

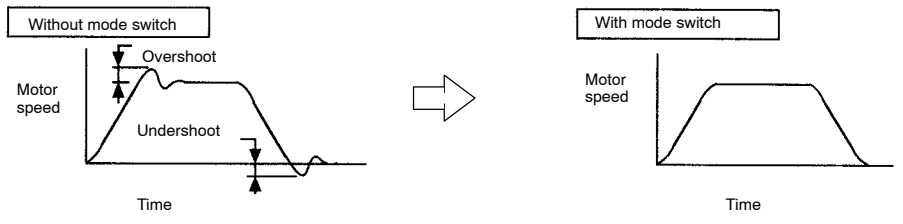



The DR2 Servopack is factory set to this standard mode (Cn-0C = 200).




**Example of Use:**

**If a mode switch is not used and PI control is always performed, torque may enter a saturation state during acceleration or deceleration, causing the motor speed to have overshoot or undershoot.**
**Using the mode switch suppresses torque saturation and prevents the motor speed from having overshoot and undershoot.**

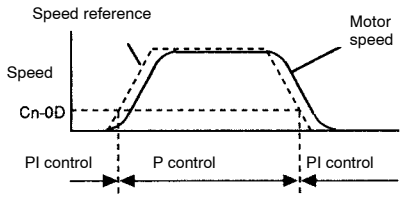





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

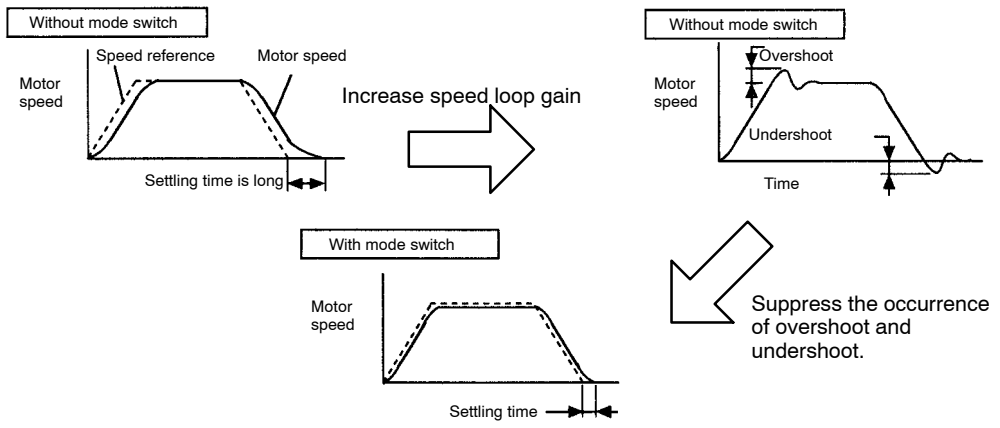
## When Speed Reference Is Used as a Detection Point of Mode Switch

If a speed reference exceeds the value set in user constant Cn-0D, the speed loop switches to P control.



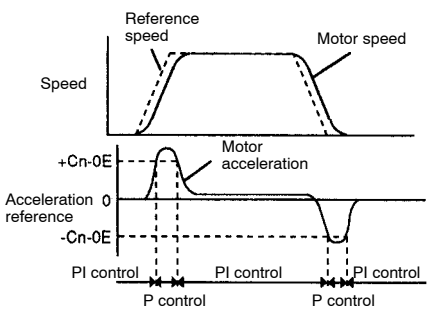

**Example of Use:**

**The mode switch is used to reduce settling time.**
**Generally, speed loop gain must be increased to reduce settling time. Using the mode switch suppresses the occurrence of overshoot and undershoot when speed loop gain is increased.**



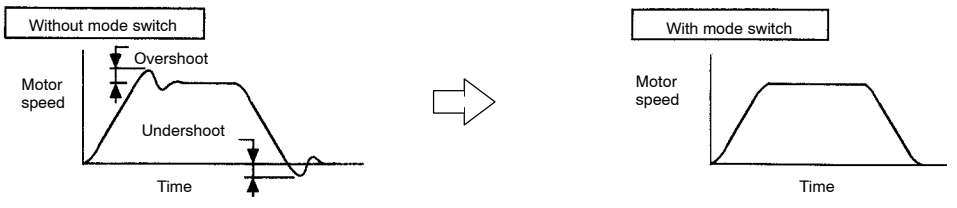

## When Acceleration Is Used as a Detection Point of Mode Switch

If motor acceleration exceeds the value set in user constant Cn-0E, the speed loop switches to P control.




**Example of Use:**

**If a mode switch is not used and PI control is always performed, torque may enter a saturation state during acceleration or deceleration, causing the motor speed to have overshoot or undershoot.**
**Using the mode switch suppresses torque saturation and prevents the motor speed from having overshoot and undershoot.**





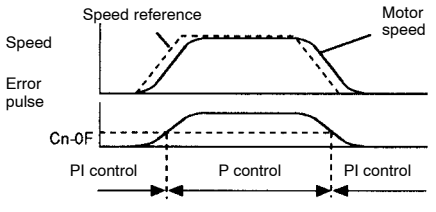

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**When Error Pulse Is Used as a Detection Point of Mode Switch**

Positions

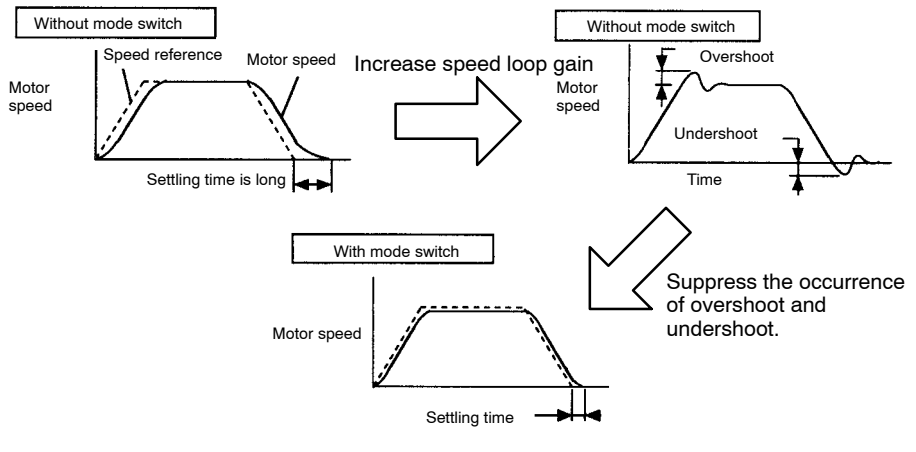
For position control only.

If an error pulse exceeds the value set in user constant Cn-0F, the speed loop switches to P control.




**Example of Use:**

**The mode switch is used to reduce settling time.**
**Generally, speed loop gain must be increased to reduce settling time. Using the mode switch suppresses the occurrence of overshoot and undershoot when speed loop gain is increased.**




3

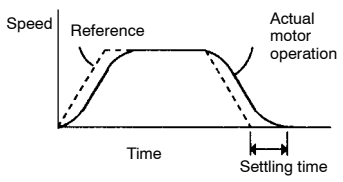
4) The user constants required to set each mode switch are summarized as follows.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01Bit B** | Mode Switch ON/OFF | Factory Setting: 0 | For Position Control Only |

Positions

For position control only.

This user constant is used to enable or disable the mode switch function.




Mode switch is used to reduce settling time and suppress undershoot when the motor stops. It switches PI control to P control when certain conditions are met.

| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Uses the mode switch function |
| 1 | Does not use the mode switch function |

The Servopack allows use of four different types of mode switch. To select a mode switch, set bits C and D of memory switch Cn-01.
For speed/torque control, bits C and D are used to enable or disable the mode switch function.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01 Bit C** | Mode Switch Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-01 Bit D** | Mode Switch Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Use the following user constants to set the mode switch to be used.

| **Memory Switch Cn-01** | | **Mode Switch Type** | | **User Constant for Setting Detection Point** |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Bit D** | **Bit C** | | | |
| 0 | 0 | Uses torque reference as a detection point. | | Cn-0C |
| 0 | 1 | Uses speed reference as a detection point. | | Cn-0D |
| 1 | 0 | Uses acceleration reference as a detection point. | | Cn-0E |
| 1 | 1 | For speed/ torque control | Does not use mode switch. | |
| | | For position control | Uses error pulse as a detection point. | Cn-0F |

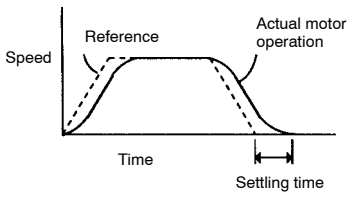
Mode switch is used to reduce settling time and suppress undershoot when the motor stops. It switches PI control to P control when certain conditions are met.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-0C** | TRQMSW | Mode Switch (Torque Reference) | Unit: % | Setting Range: 0 to 800 | Factory Setting: 200 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-0D** | REFMSW | Mode Switch (Speed Reference) | Unit: r/min | Setting Range: 0 to 4500 | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-0E** | ACCMSW | Mode Switch (Acceleration Reference) | Unit: 10 (r/min)/s | Setting Range: 0 to 3000 | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Cn-0F** | ERPMSW | Mode Switch (Error Pulse) | Unit: Refer-ence Unit | Setting Range: 0 to 10000 | Factory Setting: 0 | For Position Control Only |

Mode switch is used to reduce settling time and suppress undershoot when the motor stops. It switches PI control to P control when certain conditions are met.






The Servopack allows use of four different types of mode switch. To select a mode switch, set bits B, C and D of memory switch Cn-01.

| Memory Switch Cn-01 | | | Mode Switch Setting | User Constant | Unit |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bit D | Bit C | Bit B | | | |
| – | – | 1 | Does not use mode switch. | | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | Uses torque reference as a detection point. | Cn-0C | Percentage of rated torque: % |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | Uses speed reference as a detection point. | Cn-0D | Motor speed: r/min |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | Uses acceleration reference as a detection point. | Cn-0E | Acceleration reference inside the DR2 Servopack: 10 (r/min)/s |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | Uses error pulse as a detection point. | Cn-0F | Reference unit |

User constant Cn-0F is for position control only.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 3.7 Forming a Protective Sequence

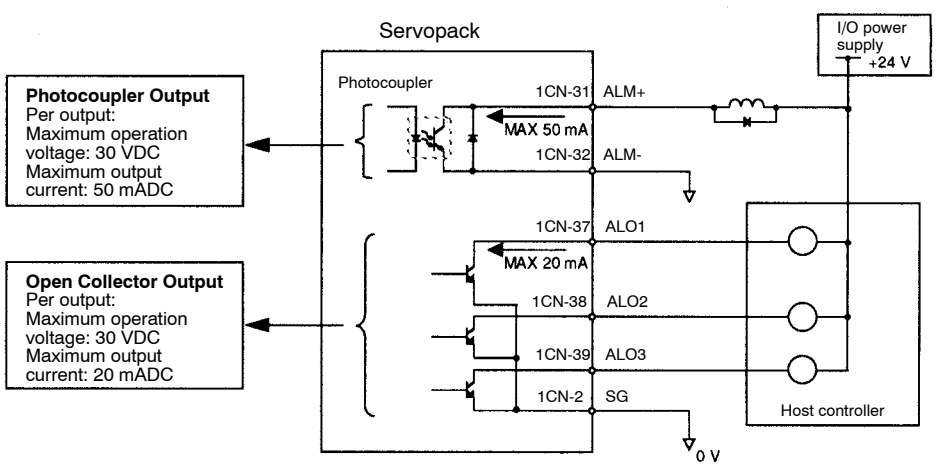
This section describes how to use I/O signals from the Servopack to form a protective sequence for safety purposes.

3.7.1 Using Servo Alarm Output and Alarm Code Output . . . . . 128
3.7.2 Using Servo ON Input Signal . . . . . 132
3.7.3 Using Positioning Complete Signal . . . . . 133
3.7.4 Using Speed Coincidence Output Signal . . . . . 134
3.7.5 Using Running Output Signal . . . . . 136
3.7.6 Using Servo Ready Output Signal . . . . . 138



## 3.7.1 Using Servo Alarm Output and Alarm Code Output

1) **Basic Wiring for Alarm Output Signals**




**Provide an external I/O power supply separately. There are no DC power available from Servopack for output signals.**



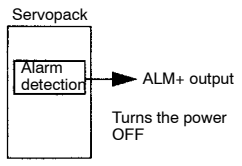
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) **Contact Output Signal ALM+, ALM-**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Output → ALM+ 1CN-31** | Servo Alarm Output | For Speed Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Output → ALM- 1CN-32** | Signal Ground for Servo Alarm Output | For Speed Torque Control and Position Control |

Signal ALM+ is output when the Servopack detects an alarm.

Form an external circuit so that this alarm output (ALM) turns the Servopack main power OFF.




| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ON status: | Circuit between 1CN-31 and 1CN-32 is closed. 1CN-31 is at low level. | Normal state |
| OFF status: | Circuit between 1CN-31 and 1CN-32 is open. 1CN-31 is at high level. | Alarm state |

Alarm codes ALO1, ALO2, and ALO3 are output to indicate each alarm type.

3) **Contact Output Signals ALO1, ALO2, and ALO3**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Output → ALO1 1CN-37** | Alarm Code Output | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Output → ALO2 1CN-38** | Alarm Code Output | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Output → ALO3 1CN-39** | Alarm Code Output | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
| **Output → SG 1CN-2** | Signal Ground for Alarm Code Output | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

These signals output an alarm code to indicate the type of an alarm detected by the Servopack.

Use these signals to display alarm codes at the host controller.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4) **Relationship between Alarm Display and Alarm Code Output**

Alarm Display and Alarm Code Output:

| Alarm Display | Alarm Code Output | | | Servo Alarm (ALM+) Output | Alarm Type | Alarm Description |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | | | |
| A.0*□ | × | × | × | × | User constant error | An absolute encoder error occurred or user constant is faulty. |
| A.10 | ○ | × | × | × | Overcurrent | Overcurrent flowed thorough the main circuit.<br>Servopack overheated. |
| A.20 | × | ○ | × | × | Fuse blown | Fuse of main circuit power supply is blown. |
| A.30 | ○ | ○ | × | × | Regenerative error | Failure of regenerative circuit |
| A.31 | ○ | ○ | × | × | Position error pulse overflow | The number of pulses in error counter has exceeded the preset value. |
| A.40 | × | × | ○ | × | Overvoltage or undervoltage | Main circuit DC voltage is overvoltage or undervoltage. |
| A.51 | ○ | × | ○ | × | Overspeed | Motor speed has exceeded the 110% of the maximum allowable speed. |
| A.70 | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | Overload | Motor and Servopack are overloaded. |
| A.8*□ | × | × | × | × | Absolute encoder error | Absolute encoder is faulty. |
| Ab1 | × | × | × | × | Reference input read error | Failure of analog voltage reference input read |
| AC*□ | ○ | × | ○ | × | Overrun Disconnection of PG signal line | Overrun occurred due to motor or encoder signal wiring faults.<br>Encoder signal line is disconnected. |

○ : Output transistor is ON
× : Output transistor is OFF
* : Displays an alarm category number.

For details, refer to *Appendix E List of Alarm Displays*.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Alarm Display | Alarm Code Output | | | Servo Alarm (ALM+) Output | Alarm Type | Alarm Description |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | | | |
| CPF00<br>CPF01 | Undefined | | | | Digital Operator transmission error | Communication error occurred between Digital Operator and Servopack. |
| A99 | × | × | × | ○ | No error | |

○ : Output transistor is ON
× : Output transistor is OFF
* : Displays an alarm category number.
For details, refer to *Appendix E List of Alarm Displays*.

5) When the servo alarm (ALM+) is output, eliminate the cause of the alarm and set the following $\overline{\text{ALMRST}}$ input signal at low level (0V) to reset the alarm state.

| → Input $\overline{\text{ALMRST}}$ 1CN-44 | Alarm Reset | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
|---|---|---|

This signal is used to reset the servo alarm state.

Alarm state can be reset using the Digital Operator.
Also, alarm state is reset at control power ON/OFF.

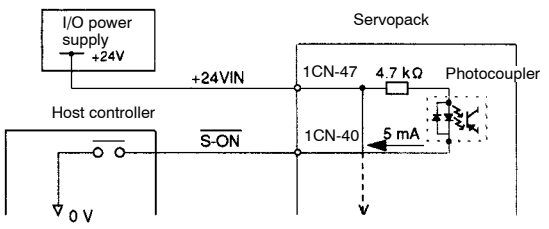
**When an alarm occurs, always eliminate the cause before resetting the alarm state. *6.2.1 Troubleshooting Problems with Alarm Display* describes how to troubleshoot the system when an alarm arises.**



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.7.2 Using Servo ON Input Signal

1) This section describes how to wire and use contact input signal "servo ON (S-ON)." Use this signal to forcibly turn the servomotor OFF from the host controller.




| → Input S-ON 1CN-40 | Servo ON | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
|---|---|---|

This signal is used to turn the motor ON or OFF.

| | |
|---|---|
| **ON: 1CN-40 is at low level** | Turns the motor ON. This is normal operation state. Motor is operated according to input signals. (called "servo ON state"). |
| **OFF: 1CN-40 is at high level** | Turns the motor OFF. This is inoperable state (called "servo OFF state").<br>If the servo is turned OFF during motor operation, the motor is decelerated to a stop by applying dynamic brake (standard setting).<br>This function can be selected by setting bits 6 and 7 of memory switch Cn-01. |

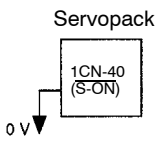
**NOTE** Do not use the S-ON signal to start or stop the motor. Always use an input reference to start and stop the motor.

2) If the S-ON signal is not to be used, set the following memory switch to 1:

| Cn-01 Bit 0 | Use of Servo ON Input Signal | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
|---|---|---|---|

This memory switch is used to enable or disable the servo ON input signal S-ON (1CN-40).

When external short-circuit wiring is omitted, set the memory switch to "1."




When S-ON is not used, this short-circuit wiring can be omitted.

| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Uses servo ON signal S-ON.<br>(When 1CN-40 is open, servo is OFF. When 1CN-14 is at 0 V, servo is ON.) |
| 1 | Does not use servo ON signal S-ON.<br>(Always servo is ON. Equivalent to shortcircuit 1CN-14 and 0V.) |

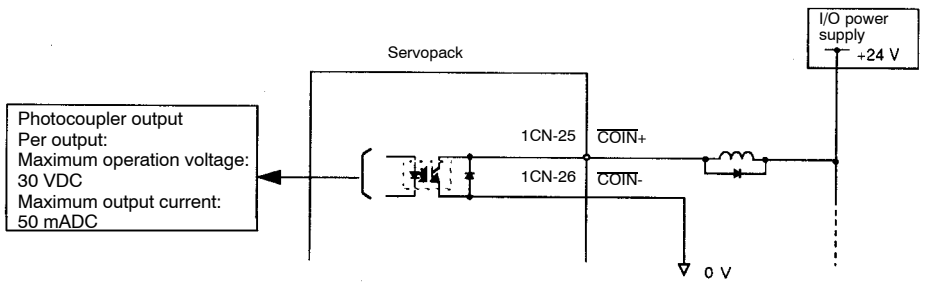


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.7.3 Using Positioning Complete Signal

**Positions**

1) This section describes how to wire and use contact output-signal “positioning complete output ($\overline{\text{COIN}}$).” This signal is output to indicate that servomotor operation is complete.

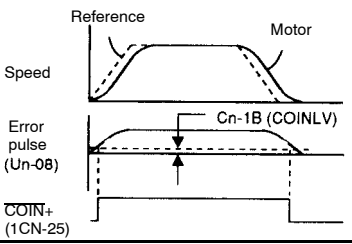



| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Output → $\overline{\text{COIN}}$+ 1CN-25** | Positioning Complete Output | For Position Control Only |
| **Output → $\overline{\text{COIN}}$- 1CN-26** | | |

3

For position control only.

This output signal indicates that motor operation is complete during position control. The host controller uses this signal as an interlock to confirm that positioning is complete.




| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ON status: | Circuit between 1CN-25 and 1CN-26 is closed.<br>1CN-25 is at low level. | Positioning is complete (position error is below the preset value). |
| OFF status: | Circuit between 1CN-25 and 1CN-26 is open.<br>1CN-25 is at high level. | Positioning is not complete (position error is over the preset value.) |

Preset Value: Cn-1B (positioning complete range)

2) Set the number of error pulses in the following user constant Cn-1B to adjust output timing of COIN (positioning complete output).

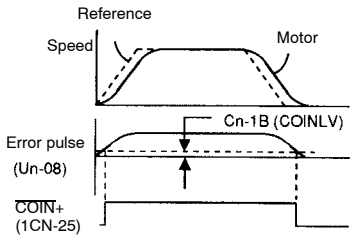


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-1B** | COINLV | Positioning Complete Range | Unit: Reference Unit | Setting Range: 0 to 250 | Factory Setting: 7 | For Position Control Only |

For position control only.

This user constant is used to set output timing of positioning complete signal ($\overline{\text{COIN}}$+, 1CN-25) to be output when motor operation is complete after a position reference pulse has been input.




Set the number of error pulses in terms of reference unit (the number of input pulses that is defined using the electronic gear function).

If too large a value is set in this user constant, error may become too small when the motor runs at a low speed, causing $\overline{\text{COIN}}$+ to be output continuously.

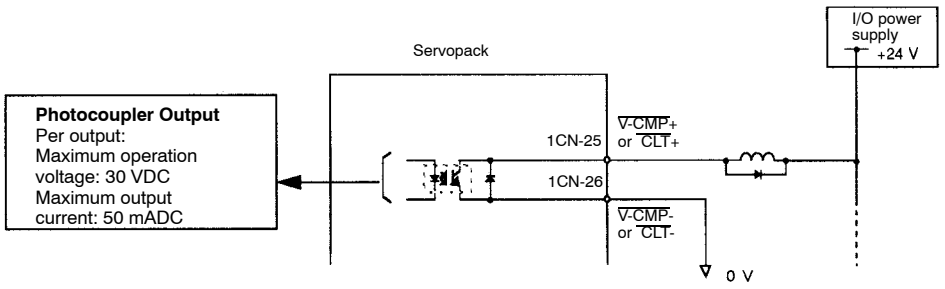
COINLV does not affect the final positioning accuracy.



## 3.7.4 Using Speed Coincidence Output Signal

**Speed/Torque**

1) This section describes how to wire and use contact output signal "speed coincidence outputs ($\overline{\text{LCT}}$+, $\overline{\text{CLT}}$-)." This signal is output to indicate that actual motor speed matches a reference speed. The host controller uses this signal as an interlock.



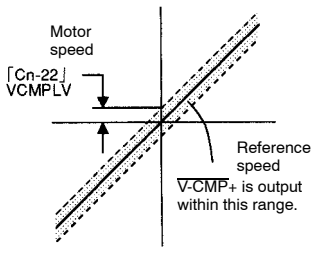



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Output → $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+ 1CN-25** | Speed Coincidence Output | For Speed/Torque Control Only |
| **Output → $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- 1CN-26** | Speed Coincidence Output | For Speed/Torque Control Only |

For speed/torque control only.

This output signal indicates that actual motor speed matches the input speed reference during speed control.




| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ON status: | Circuit between 1CN-25 and 1CN-26 is closed.<br>1CN-25 is at low level. | Actual motor speed matches the speed reference (speed difference is below the preset value). |
| OFF status: | Circuit between 1CN-25 and 1CN-26 is open.<br>1CN-25 is at high level. | Actual motor speed does not match the speed reference (speed difference is greater than the preset value). |

Preset value: Cn-22 (speed coincidence signal output width)

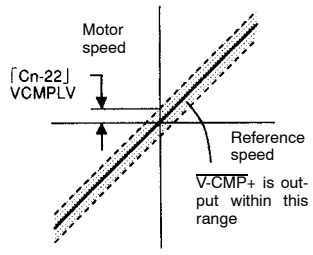
2) Set the following user constant to specify the output conditions for speed coincidence signal $\overline{\text{V-CMP}}$.

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-22** | VCMPLV | Speed Coincidence Signal Output Width | Unit: r/min | Setting Range: 0 to Max. Speed | Factory Setting: 10 | For Speed/Torque Control Only |

For speed/torque control only

Set the output conditions for speed coincidence signal $\overline{\text{V-CMP}}$+ (1CN-25).

$\overline{\text{V-CMP}}$+ signal is output when the difference between the reference speed and actual motor speed is not greater than the preset value.




Example: When preset value is 100 and reference speed is 2000 r/min.

$\overline{\text{V-CMP}}$+ is ON (circuit between 1CN-25 and 1CN-26 is closed) when the speed is between 1900 and 2100 r/min.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

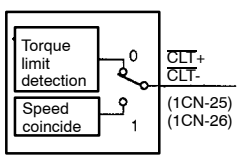
**Note** When output signals $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+ and $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- are used as the speed coincide output, set the following memory switch (Cn-01 bit4) to 1.

| Cn-01 Bit 4 | $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+, $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- Output Signals Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
|---|---|---|---|

Sets the output conditions for output signals $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+ (1CN-25) and $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- (1CN-26).

| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Uses $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+, $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- output signals as a torque limit output signal.<br>Refer to 3.1.3 for details. |
| 1 | **Uses $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+, $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- output signals as a speed coincide output signal.** |

Bit 4 of memory switch Cn-01

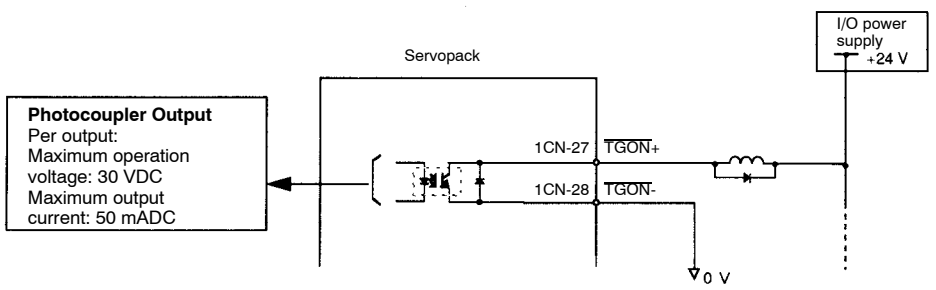



When $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+, $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- output signals are changed, the following bit data are also changed:

- Status indication mode bit data
- Monitor mode Un-05 bit 4

## 3.7.5 Using Running Output Signal

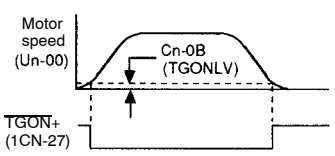
1) This section describes how to wire and use contact output signals $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+, $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- as a running output signal. This signal indicates that a servomotor is currently running.




| Output → $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+ 1CN-27<br>Output → $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- 1CN-28 | Running Output (Brake Interlock Output) | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
|---|---|---|

This output signal indicates that the motor is currently running.

It is used as an external interlock.






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ON status: | Circuit between 1CN-27 and 1CN-28 is closed.<br>1CN-27 is at low level. | Motor is running.<br>(Motor speed is greater than the preset value.) |
| OFF status: | Circuit between 1CN-27 and 1CN-28 is open.<br>1CN-27 is at high level. | Motor is stopped.<br>(Motor speed is below the preset value.) |

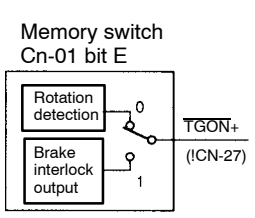
Preset value: Cn-0B (zero-speed level)

**Note** This function is changed to another function depending on the setting of bit E of memory switch Cn-01.

2) To use $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+, $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- as a running output signals, set the following memory switch to "0."

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01 Bit E** | $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+, $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- Output Signals Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

This memory switch is used to set output conditions for output signals $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+, $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- (1CN-27).




When $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+, $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- signals are changed, the following bit data are also changed:

- Status indication mode bit data
- Monitor mode Un-05 bit 4

| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| **0** | **Uses $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+, $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- as a running output signals.**<br>**$\overline{\text{TGON}}$+, $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- compare motor speed with the value set in Cn-0B (TGONLV).**<br>**Motor speed ≥ preset value** — **Closes circuit between 1CN-27 and 1CN-28.**<br>**Motor speed < preset value** — **Opens circuit between 1CN-27 and 1CN-28.** |
| 1 | **Uses $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+, $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- as a torque limit output signal.**<br>**For details, refer to 3.4.4.** |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3) Use the following user constant to specify the output conditions for running output signals $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+, $\overline{\text{TGON}}$-.

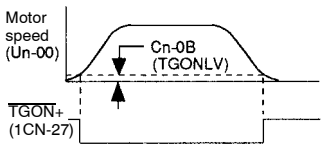
| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-0B** | TGONLV | Zero-Speed Level | Unit: r/min | Setting Range: 1 to Maximum Speed | Factory Setting: 20 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

This user constant is used to set the speed level at which the Servopack determines that the motor is running and then outputs a signal.

The following signals are output when motor speed exceeds the preset value. (The circuit between 1CN-27 and 1CN-28 is closed when motor speed exceeds the preset value.)

Signals are output when motor speed exceeds the preset value.

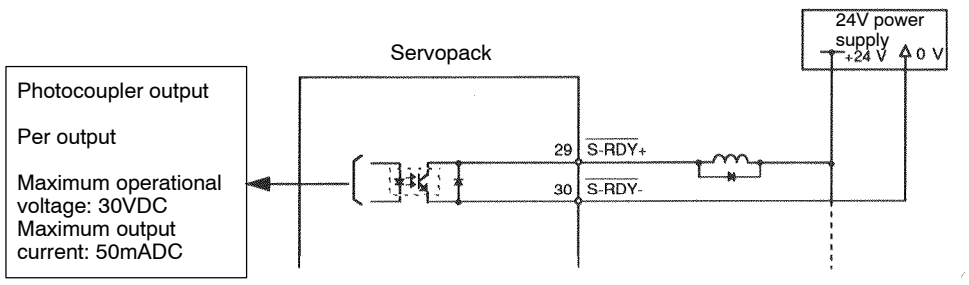
| |
|---|
| • $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+ (1CN-27)<br>• Status indication mode bit data<br>• Monitor mode Un-05 bit 4 |
| User Constant Setting:<br>Memory switch Cn-01 bit E = 0 |




## 3.7.6 Using Servo Ready Output

1) This section describes how to wire and use photocoupler output signal $\overline{\text{S-RDY}}$ (servo ready).

"Servo ready" means that the Servopack is not in servo alarm state when the main circuit is turned ON. For absolute encoder specifications, "servo ready" means that, in addition to the above, the SEN signal is at high level and the absolute encoder is also in ready state.
Also, alarm state is reset at control power ON/OFF.






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Output → $\overline{\text{S-RDY}}$ | Servo Ready Output | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |
|---|---|---|

This signal indicates that the Servopack is ready to receive servo ON signals.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ON status: | Circuit is closed or signal is at low level. | servo ready state |
| OFF status: | Circuit is open or signal is at high level. | Not in servo ready state |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 3.8 Special Wiring

This section describes special wiring methods including the one for noise control. Always refer to *3.8.1 Notes on Wiring* and *3.8.2 Wiring for Noise Control*, and refer to other sections as necessary.

3.8.1 Wiring Instructions . . . . . 140
3.8.2 Wiring for Noise Control . . . . . 142
3.8.3 Using More Than One Servo Drive . . . . . 147
3.8.4 Using Regenerative Units . . . . . 148
3.8.5 Using an Absolute Encoder . . . . . 151
3.8.6 Extending an Encoder Cable . . . . . 159
3.8.7 Using DR2 Servopack with High Voltage Line . . . . . 161
3.8.8 Connector Terminal Layouts . . . . . 163



## 3.8.1 Wiring Instructions

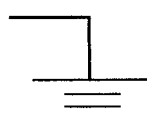
To ensure safe and stable operation, always refer to the following wiring instructions.

**NOTE** Always use the following cables for reference input and encoder wiring.

| | Cable Type | Yaskawa Drawing No. | Maximum Allowable Length |
|---|---|---|---|
| For reference input | Twisted-pair cables | – | 3 m (9.8 ft.) |
| For encoder | Multiconductor shielded twisted-pair cable | B9400064 (for incremental encoder)<br>DP8409123 (for absolute encoder) | 20 m (65.6 ft.) |

- Trim off the excess portion of the cable to minimize the cable length.

**NOTE** For a ground wire, use as thick a cable as possible.



- At least class 3 grounding (ground to 100 Ω or less) is recommended.
- Always use one-line grounding.
- If the motor is insulated from the machine, ground the motor directly.

**NOTE** Do not bend or apply tension to cables.

- Since the conductor of a signal cable is very thin (0.2 to 0.3 mm), handle it with adequate care.

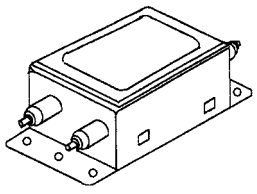


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**NOTE** Use a noise filter to prevent noise interference.
(For details, refer to the following *Caution*.)

- If the servo is to be used near private houses or may receive noise interference, install a noise filter on the input side of the power supply line. Since this Servopack is designed as an industrial device, it provides no mechanism to prevent noise interference.

Noise filter



**NOTE** To prevent malfunction due to noise, take the following actions:

- Position the input reference device and noise filter as close to the Servopack as possible.
- Always install a surge absorber circuit in the relay, solenoid and magnetic contactor coils.
- The distance between a power line (such as a power supply line or motor cable) and a signal line must be at least 30 cm (12 in). Do not put the power and signal lines in the same duct or bundle them together.

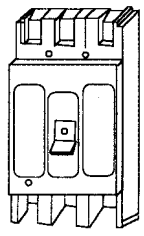
- Do not share the power supply with an electric welder or electrical discharge machine. When the Servopack is placed near a high-frequency oscillator, install a noise filter on the input side of the power supply line.

**Note** a) Since Servopack uses high-speed switching elements, signal lines may receive noise. To prevent this, always take the above actions.
b) For details of grounding and noise filters, refer to *3.8.2 Wiring for Noise Control*.

**NOTE** Use a molded-case circuit breaker (MCCB) or fuse to protect the power supply line from high voltage.

- This Servopack is directly connected to commercial power supply without a transformer. Always use an MCCB or fuse to protect the servo system from accidental high voltage.
- Select an appropriate MCCB or fuse according to the Servopack capacity and the number of Servopacks to be used as shown below.

MCCB





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**MCCB or Fuse for Each Power Capacity**

| Power Voltage | Servopack Type | Power Capacity Per Servopack (kVA) (see note 1) | Power Capacity Per MCCB or Fuse (A) (see note 2) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 200 V | DR2-A3A□ | 0.25 | 5 |
| | DR2-A5A□ | 0.3 | |
| | DR2-01A□ | 0.5 | |
| | DR2-02A□ | 0.75 | |
| | DR2-04A□ | 1.2 | 9 |
| | DR2-08A□ | 2.2 | 16 |
| 100 V | DR2-A3B□ | 0.25 | 5 |
| | DR2-A5B□ | 0.3 | |
| | DR2-01B□ | 0.5 | |
| | DR2-02B□ | 0.75 | 8 |
| | DR2-03B□ | 1.4 | 15 |



**Note** 1) Power capacity at rated load

2) Operating characteristics (25°C): 2 seconds or more for 200%, 0.01 second or more for 700%
When control circuit breaker and main circuit breaker are used separately, be aware of in-rush current (30 to 40A, for 5ms or less) flows at control power ON.

3) A fast-operating fuse cannot be used because the Servopack power supply is a capacitor input type. A fast-operating fuse may blow out when the power is turned ON.

## 3.8.2 Wiring for Noise Control

This noise control do not conform to the EMC instructions.
To adapt DR2 Servopack to EMC instructions, refer to *7 Measures to Satisfy the Requirements of EMC Instructions.*

1) **Example of Wiring for Noise Control**

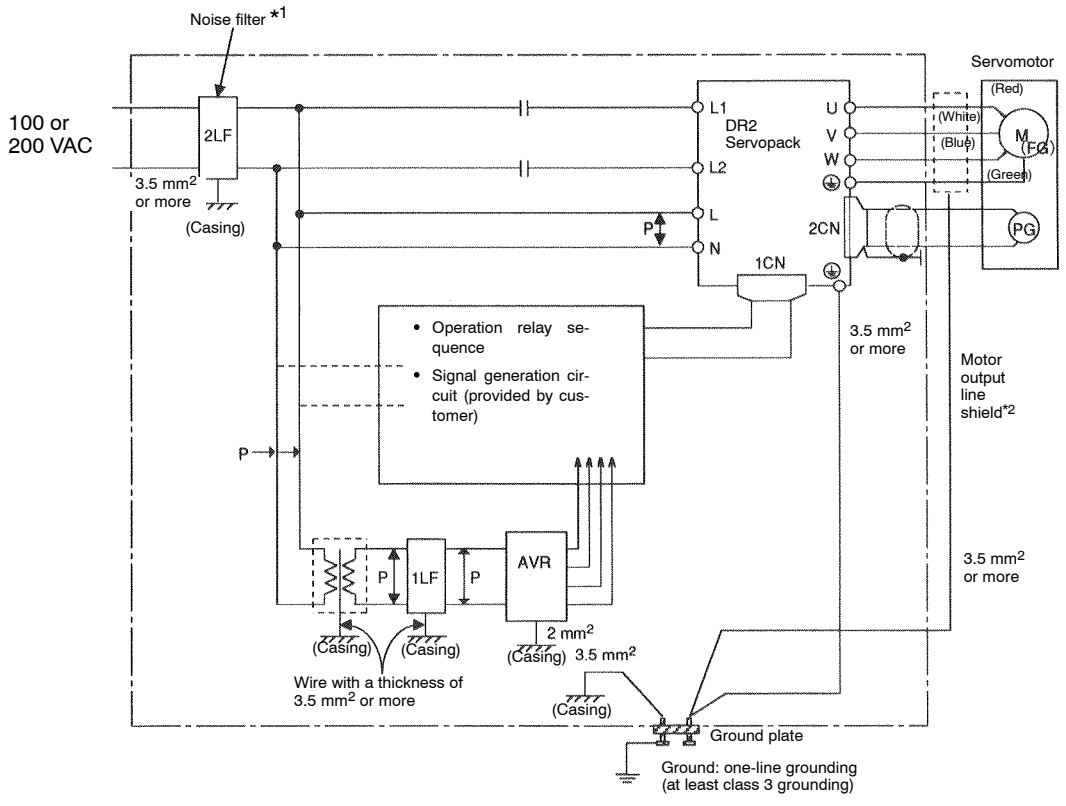
a) This Servopack uses high-speed switching elements in the main circuit. It may receive “switching noise” from these high-speed switching elements if wiring or grounding around the Servopack is not appropriate. To prevent this, always wire and ground the Servopack correctly.

b) This Servopack has a built-in microprocessor (CPU). To protect the microprocessor from external noise, install a noise filter in place.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

c) The following is an example of wiring for noise control.




* 1 When using a noise filter, always observe the following wiring instructions:

*2 Normally, motor output line shield is not required.

**Note** 1 For a ground wire to be connected to the casing, use a thick wire with a thickness of at least 3.5 mm$^2$ (preferably, plain stitch cooper wire).
However, be aware that max. connectable size of ground terminal ⏚ of Servopack is 2.5mm$^2$.

2 For wires indicated by P↕, use twisted-pair cables whenever possible.

2) **Correct Grounding**

• Always ground the motor ground terminal.

Always connect servomotor ground terminal FG (green) to the Servopack ground terminal ⏚. Be sure to ground the ground terminal ⏚.

• If the servomotor is grounded via the machine, a switching noise current will flow from the Servopack power unit through motor stray capacitance. The above grounding is required to prevent the adverse effects of switching noise.

• If the reference input line receives noise, do the following.

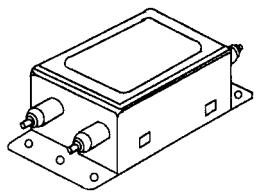


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Ground the 0 V line (such as SG-V and SG-T) of the reference input line. If the main circuit wiring for the motor is accommodated in a metal conduit, ground the conduit and its junction box. For all grounding, always use one-line grounding.

3) **Noise Filter Installation**

a) Use an inhibit type noise filter to prevent noise from the power supply line.

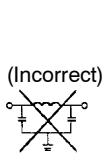


Install a noise filter on the power supply line for peripheral equipment as necessary.

The following table lists recommended noise filters for each Servopack type.



**Noise Filter Types**

| Power Voltage | Servopack Type | | Noise Filter Connection | Recommended Noise Filter | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Type | Specifications |
| 200 V | 30 W (0.04 HP) | DR2-A3A□ | (Correct)  (Incorrect)  | LF-205A | Single-phase 200 VAC, 5 A |
| | 50 W (0.07 HP) | DR2-A5A□ | | | |
| | 100 W (0.13 HP) | DR2-01A□ | | | |
| | 200 W (0.27 HP) | DR2-02A□ | | | |
| | 400 W (0.53 HP) | DR2-04A□ | | LF-210 | Single-phase 200 VAC, 10 A |
| | 750 W (1.01 HP) | DR2-08A□ | | LF-220 | Single-phase 200 VAC, 20 A |
| 100 V | 30 W (0.04 HP) | DR2-A3B□ | | LF-205A | Single-phase 200 VAC, 5 A |
| | 50 W (0.07 HP) | DR2-A5B□ | | | |
| | 100 W (0.13 HP) | DR2-01B□ | | | |
| | 200 W (0.27 HP) | DR2-02B□ | | LF-210 | Single-phase 200 VAC, 10 A |
| | 300 W (0.39 HP) | DR2-03B□ | | LF-220 | Single-phase 200 VAC, 20 A |

**Note** These noise filters are manufactured by Tokin Corp. and available from Yaskawa. For noise filters, contact your nearest Yaskawa sales representatives.

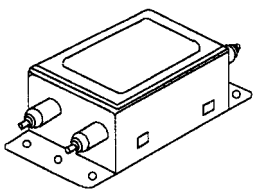


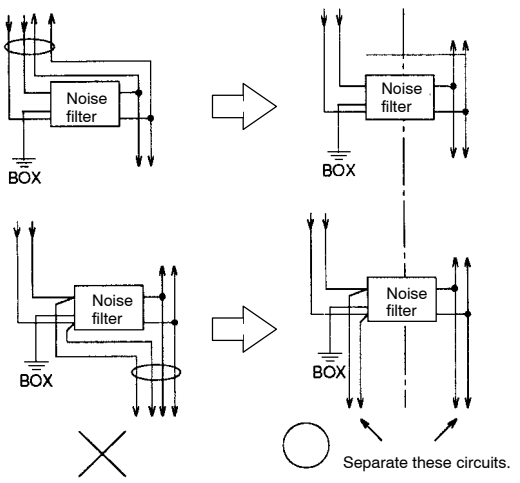
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

b) Always observe the following installation and wiring instructions. Incorrect use of a noise filter halves its benefits.

• Separate input lines from output lines.

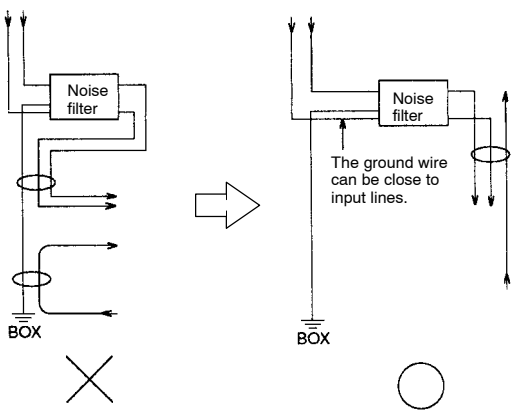
Do not put the input and output lines in the same duct or bundle them together.






• Separate the noise filter ground wire from the output lines.

Do not accommodate the noise filter ground wire, output lines and other signal lines in the same duct or bundle them together.





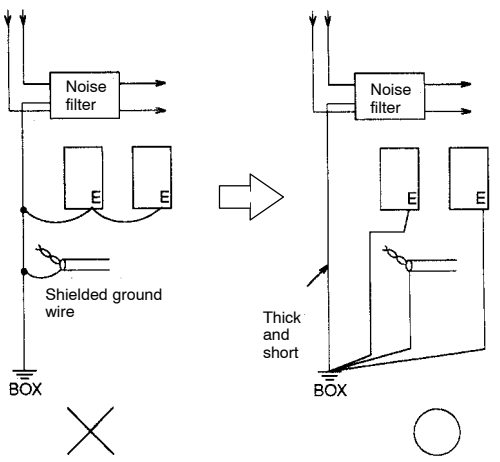

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*3.8.2 Wiring for Noise Control cont.*



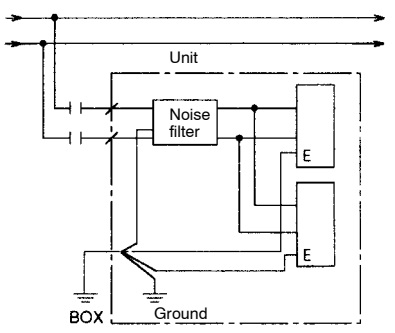
• Connect the noise filter ground wire directly to the ground plate.

Do not connect the noise filter ground wire to other ground wires.




• When grounding a noise filter inside a Unit.

If a noise filter is located inside a Unit, connect the noise filter ground wire and the ground wires from other devices inside the Unit to the ground plate for the Unit first, then ground these wires.



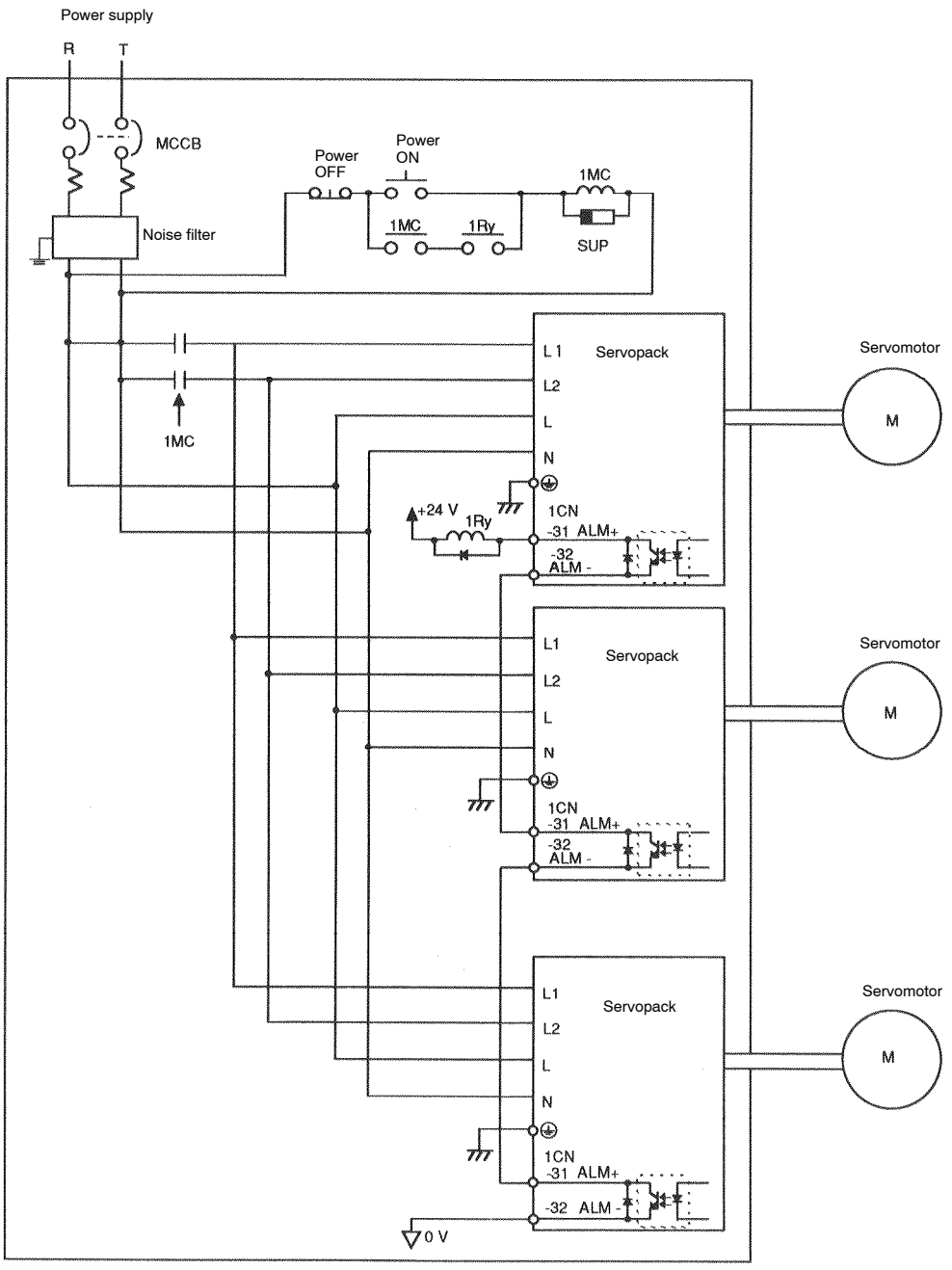



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.8.3 Using More Than One Servo Drive

### Example of Wiring More than One Servo Drive

**Note** Make sure to connect only one cable to power input terminals (L1, L2, L, N). Never connect more than one cables to one terminal.





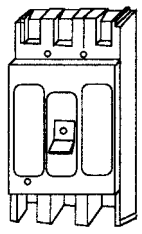



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

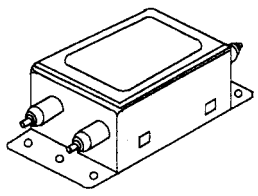
1) Connect the alarm output (ALM) terminals for the three Servopacks in series to enable alarm detection relay 1Ry to operate. This is because ALM is a logical complement output signal, so the output transistor is turned OFF when the system enters an alarm state.

2) Multiple servos can share a single MCCB or noise filter. Always select a MCCB or noise filter that has enough capacity for the total power capacity (load conditions) of those servos. For details, refer to page 142.

MCCB



Noise filter



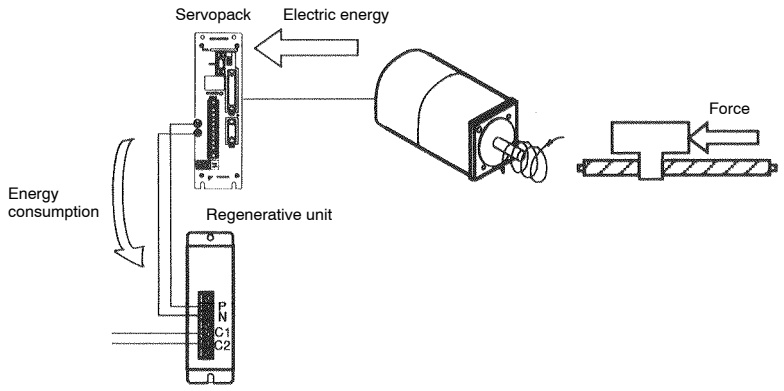


## 3.8.4 Using Regenerative Units

**Note** Regenerative unit can be applied only to 200V 30W to 200W (types DR2-A3A, A5A, 01A, 02A). For 200V 400W, 750W and all types of 100V, regenerative unit cannot be used.

1) **"What is a Regenerative Unit?"**

A regenerative unit is designed to safely consume electric energy that is generated when the servomotor is rotated by the load.






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) **"When is a Regenerative Unit Required?"**

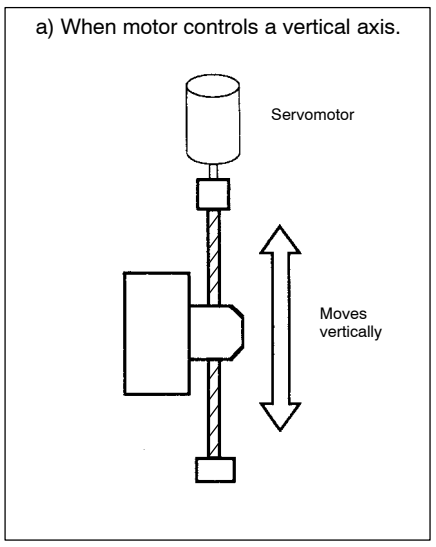
For general use, a generative unit is not required. In the following cases, however, the user must determine whether a regenerative unit is required or not:

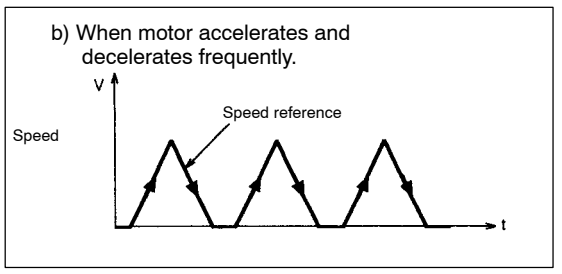
a) When the motor is used to control a vertical axis.

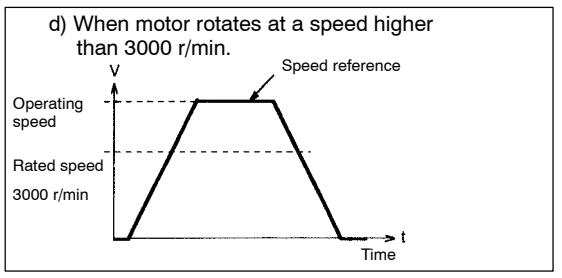
b) When the motor starts and stops frequently.

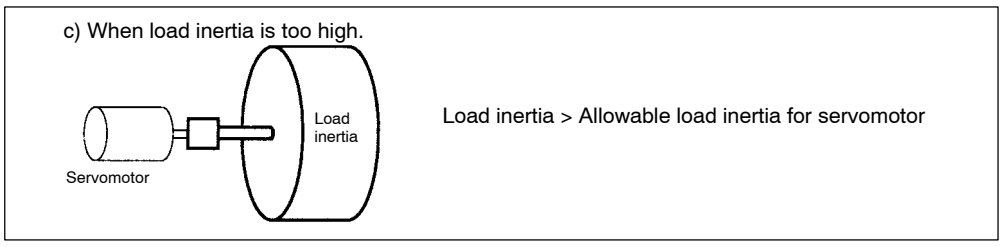
c) When load inertia exceeds the allowable load inertia on the motor side.

d) When the motor rotates at a speed higher than the rated speed (3000 r/min).




3) **"How can we Determine Whether a Regenerative Unit is Required or Not?"**

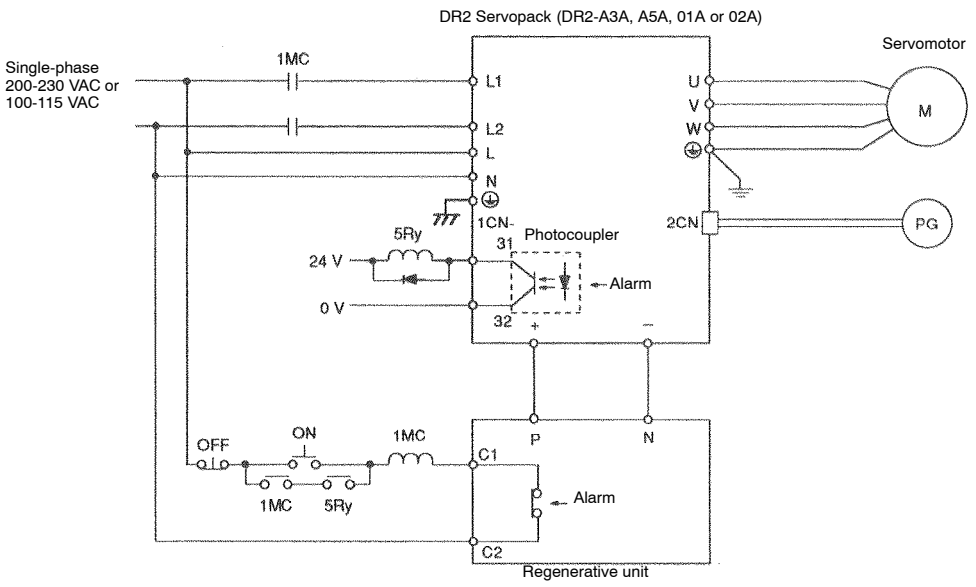
Using software "regenerative capacity check program" enables the user to easily determine whether a regenerative unit is required. This software is included as part of Yaskawa proprietary software "**AC servomotor sizing software**," which is supplied free of charge. Use this software as necessary.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4) **Connecting a Regenerative Unit**

The standard connection diagram for a regenerative unit is shown below.




a) A regenerative unit has the following fault detection functions:

- Detecting broken wiring in a regenerative resistor
- Detecting faults in a regenerative transistor
- Detecting overvoltage

b) When one of these fault detection functions operates, the internal alarm relay is actuated. Then, the circuit between output terminals C1 and C2 is opened.

c) Form a sequence so that the Servopack main power is turned OFF when the alarm relay is actuated.

d) Once the alarm relay is actuated, it takes two or three seconds until the system returns to the normal state. This time is required for the main capacitor inside the Servopack to discharge electricity.

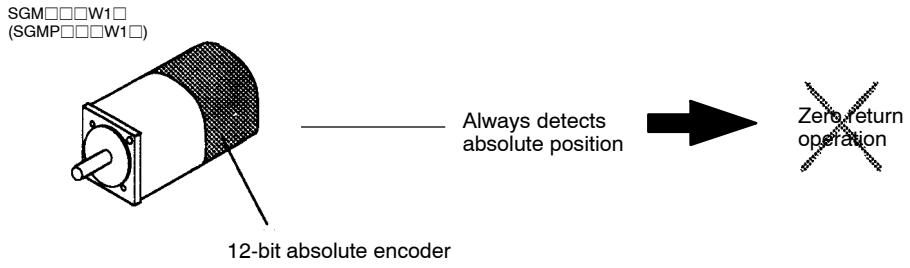


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.8.5 Using an Absolute Encoder

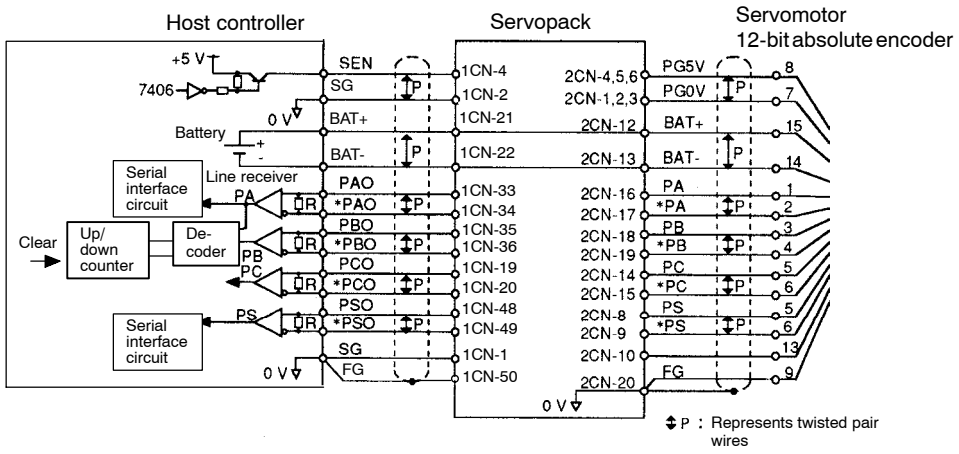
1) **Outline**

An absolute value detection system detects an absolute position of the machine even when the servo system is OFF. If such a system is to be formed in the host controller, use an SGM or SGMP Servomotor with absolute encoder. Consequently, automatic operation can be performed without zero return operation immediately after the power is turned ON.




2) **Standard Connection Diagram for a 12-bit Absolute Encoder Mounted on a Servomotor**

**• Interface Circuit**




Line Receiver Used: SN75175 or MC3486 manufactured by Texas Instruments Inc.
Termination Resistor R: 220 to 470 Ω

Normally, PAO serial data is used. In this case, PS serial interface is unnecessary.

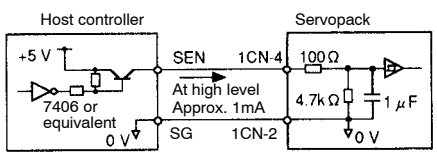


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*3.8.5 Using an Absolute Encoder cont.*

### SEN signal

**Electrical Specifications**



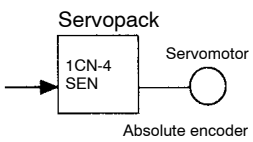

- A PNP transistor is recommended.
- Signal level High level: Min. 4 V
  Low level: Max. 0.7 V

- The SEN signal must be set at high level after at least three seconds after the power is turned ON.
- When the SEN signal is changed from low level to high level, +5 V is applied to the absolute encoder, and serial data and initial incremental pulses are transmitted.
- The motor is not turned ON until these operations are complete, regardless of the servo ON signal ($\overline{\text{S-ON}}$).

3) **Memory Switch to Determine Whether to Use Input Signal SEN**

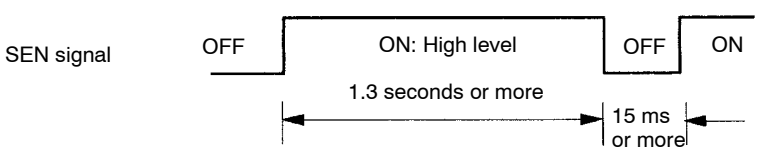
| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-01 Bit 1** | Use of SEN Input Signal | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

This memory switch is used to determine whether to use input signal SEN (1CN-4).
This memory switch is available for absolute encoders only (not for incremental encoders).




| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Uses SEN signal. |
| 1 | Does not use SEN signal. |

**NOTE** If the SEN signal is to be turned OFF, then ON again, it must remain at high level for at least 1.3 seconds before being turned OFF.




4) **Memory Switch to 1 to Select Absolute Encoder**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-02 Bit 9** | Encoder Type Selection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Sets the encoder type according to the servomotor type to be used.

**After changing the memory switch setting, turn the power OFF, then ON.**

| Motor Type | Number of Encoder Pulses Per Revolution | Preset Value |
|---|---|---|
| SGM-□□□31□<br>SGMP-□□□31□ | Incremental encoder: 2048 pulses per revolution | 0 |
| SGM-□□□W1□<br>SGMP-□□□W1□ | Absolute encoder: 1024 pulses per revolution | 1 |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Use the following user constant to set the number of pulses for the absolute encoder to be used:**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-11** | PULSNO<br>Number of Encoder Pulses | Unit:<br>P/R | Setting Range:<br>Number of Encoder Pulses | Factory Setting:<br>2048 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Sets the number of encoder pulses according to the servomotor type to be used. After changing this user constant setting, turn the power OFF, then ON. This makes the new setting valid.

| Motor Type | Number of Encoder Pulses Per Revolution | Preset Value |
|---|---|---|
| SGM-□□□31□<br>SGMP-□□□31□ | Incremental encoder: 2048 pulses per revolution | 2048 |
| SGM-□□□W1□<br>SGMP-□□□W1□ | Absolute encoder: 1024 pulses per revolution | 1024 |



5) **Using a Battery**

Use the following battery to enable the absolute encoder to store position information even when the power is turned OFF. Load the battery in the host controller and connect it to Servopack input terminals BAT and BAT0.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Recommended battery:**<br><br>**Lithium battery**<br>**Toshiba Battery ER6V C3 Type**<br>**3.6 V, 2000 mAH** | • Connect the battery securely to prevent contact faults resulting from environmental changes or aging.<br>• Battery voltage is not monitored inside the Servopack. Provide a battery voltage monitor circuit as necessary.<br>Minimum voltage: 2.8 V |

6) **Setting up Absolute Encoder**

a) Set up the absolute encoder in the following cases:

• When starting the machine for the first time

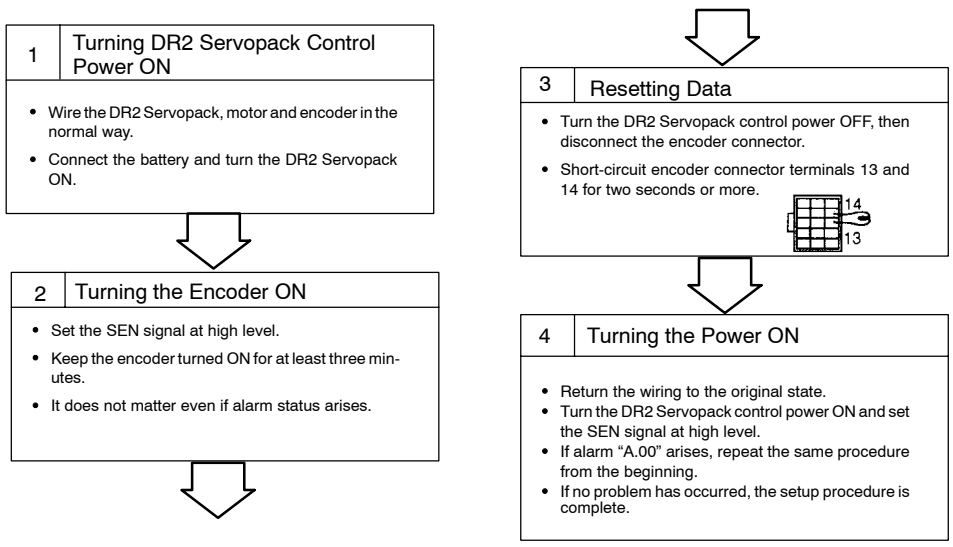
• When the absolute encoder is not connected to power supply or backup power supply (battery) for more than two days

**NOTE** Improper setup may cause malfunctions such as improper encoder operation and/or strain on the battery. Follow the setup procedure on the next page.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

b) The setup procedure is as follows:




**NOTE** Setting up the encoder sets the revolution count inside the encoder to 0.
After setting up the encoder, always reset the machine home position. Operating the machine without the home position being reset does not only damage the machine but may also cause an accident resulting in injury or death.

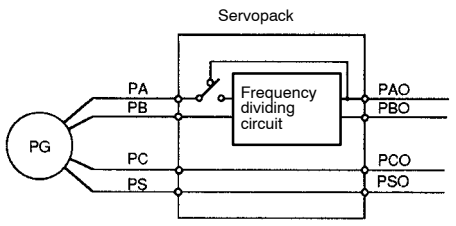
7) **Absolute Data Exchange Sequence**

The Servopack sends absolute data to the host controller when receiving output from a 12-bit absolute encoder. This data exchange sequence is described below.

Use the following detailed information when designing a host controller.

a) **Outline of Absolute Signal**

The 12-bit absolute encoder outputs PAO, PBO, PCO and PSO as shown on the right.




| Signal Name | Status | Contents |
|---|---|---|
| PAO | Initial state | Serial data<br>Initial incremental pulse |
| | Normal state | Incremental pulse |
| PBO | Initial state | Initial incremental pulse |
| | Normal state | Incremental pulse |
| PCO | Normal state | Home position pulse |
| PSO | Normal state | Rotation count serial data |

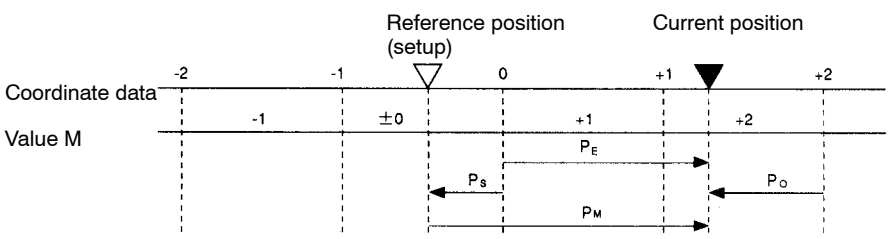


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

b) **Contents of Absolute Data**

Serial Data: Indicates how many turns the motor shaft has made from the reference position (position specified at setup).

Initial Incremental Pulse: Outputs pulses at the same pulse rate as when the motor shaft rotates from the home position to the current position at the maximum speed of 4900 r/min.




Absolute data $P_M$ can be determined using the following formula.

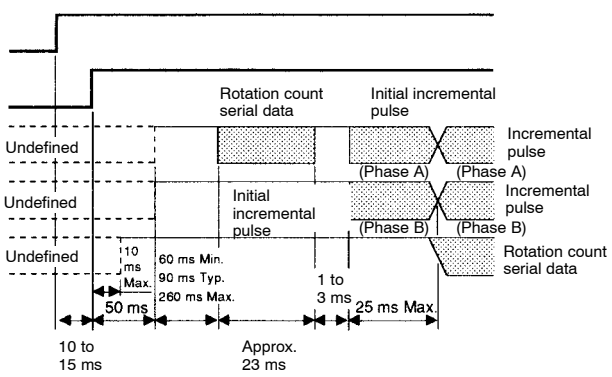
$P_E = M \times R + P_O$

$P_M = P_E - P_S$

| | |
|---|---|
| **$P_E$** | Current value read by encoder |
| **M** | Serial data (rotation count data) |
| **$P_O$** | Number of initial incremental pulses (Normally, this is a negative value) |
| **$P_S$** | Number of initial incremental pulses read at setup |
| **$P_M$** | Current value required for the customer system |
| **R** | Number of pulses per encoder revolution (pulse count after dividing, value of Cn-0A) |

c) **Absolute Data Transmitting Sequence**

(1) Set the SEN signal at high level.
(2) After 100 ms, set the system to serial data reception-waiting-state. Clear the incremental pulse up/down counter to zero.
(3) Receive eight bytes of serial data.
(4) The system enters a normal incremental operation state approximately 50 ms after the last serial data is received.





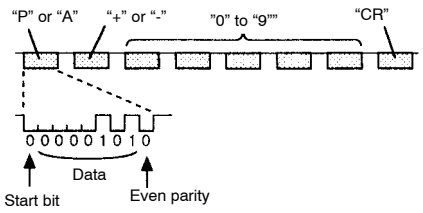

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*3.8.5 Using an Absolute Encoder cont.*

d) **Detailed Specifications of Each Signal**

• Specifications of PAO Serial Data:

The number of revolutions is output in five digits.

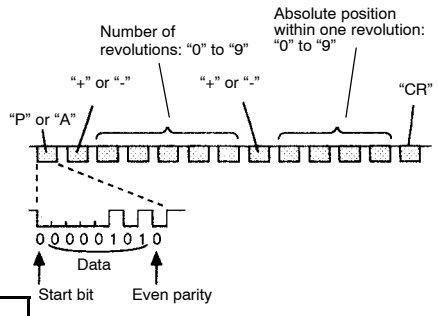



| | |
|---|---|
| Data transmission method | Start-stop synchronization (ASYNC) |
| Baud rate | 9600 |
| Start bit | 1 bit |
| Stop bit | 1 bit |
| Parity | Even number |
| Character code | ASCII 7-bit code |
| Data format | 8 characters. As shown on the right. |

- Data is P+00000 (CR) or P−00000 (CR) when the number of revolutions is zero.
- The maximum number of revolutions is ±99999. If this value is exceeded, it returns to 00000.

• Specifications of PSO Serial Data:

The number of revolutions and the absolute position within one revolution are always output in five and four digits, respectively. The transmission cycle is approximately 40 ms.

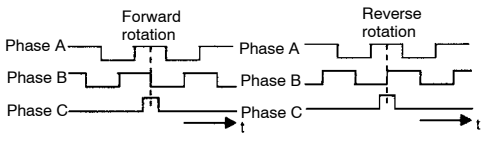



| | |
|---|---|
| Data transmission method | Start-stop synchronization (ASYNC) |
| Baud rate | 9600 |
| Start bit | 1 bit |
| Stop bit | 1 bit |
| Parity | Even number |
| Character code | ASCII 7-bit code |
| Data format | 13 characters. As shown on the right. |

- Absolute position data within one revolution is a value before frequency dividing. (4,096 pulses per revolution)
- Absolute position data increases during forward rotation (standard setting). (Not valid in reverse rotation mode)

• Incremental Pulse and Home Position Pulse:

Initial incremental pulses which provide absolute data are first divided by the frequency divider inside the Servopack and then output in the same way as normal incremental pulses.




- Note that phase C is not divided so its pulse width is narrower than phase A.

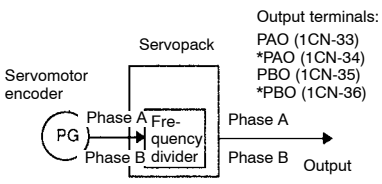


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• Use the following user constant to set the pulse dividing ratio.

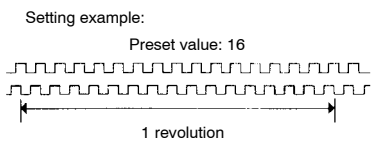
| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-0A** | PGRAT Dividing Ratio Setting | Unit: P/R | Setting Range: 16 to Number of Encoder Pulses | Factory Setting: 2048 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

Set the number of output pulses for PG output signals (PAO, *PAO, PBO and *PBO).




Pulses from motor encoder (PG) are divided by the preset number of pulses before being output.

The number of output pulses per revolution is set in this user constant. Set this value according to the reference unit of the machine or controller to be used.




The setting range varies according to the encoder used.

| Motor Type | Number of Encoder Pulses Per Revolution | Setting Range |
|---|---|---|
| SGM-□□□31□<br>SGMP-□□□31□ | Incremental encoder: 2048 pulses per revolution | 16 to 2048 |
| SGM-□□□W1□<br>SGMP-□□□W1□ | Absolute encoder: 1024 pulses per revolution | 16 to 1024 |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

8) **Alarm Display**

When a 12-bit absolute encoder is used, the following alarms are detected and displayed.

**List of Alarms**

| Alarm Type | Meaning | Digital Operator Display | PAO Serial Data | PSO Serial Data |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Backup Alarm | Indicates that backup voltage drop was detected. (This alarm helps maintain reliability of rotation count data.) | A.81 | ALM81. CR | ALARMOA BACK CR |
| Battery Alarm | Indicates that backup voltage drop was detected. (This alarm warns of battery replacement and disconnection.) | A.83 | ALM83. CR | ALARMOD BATT CR |
| Checksum Error | Indicates that an error was detected in memory data check. | A.82 | ALM82. CR | ALARMOB CHEC CR |
| Overspeed | Indicates that the motor was running at a speed exceeding 400 r/min when the encoder was turned ON. | A.85 | ALM85. CR | ALARMOP OVER CR |
| Absolute Error | Indicates that an error was detected in sensor check inside the encoder. | A.84 | ALM84. CR | ALARMOH ABSO CR |
| Backup/Battery Combination Alarm | | A.81 | ALM81. CR | ALARMOE BACK (BATT) CR |

**The SEN signal can be used to output alarm information from PAO and PSO as serial data. (This function is not available if the Servopack control power is turned OFF by the external circuit when an alarm occurs.)**

| SEN Signal | "H" Error detection "H" | "L": | "H" | "L" |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Digital Operator Display | or run / bb | A.80 Absolute encoder alarm (Details unknown) | A.8* Absolute encoder alarm (Alarm type identified) | |
| PAO Serial Data | Incremental pulse | ALM80. CR | ALARMO* CR | ALM8*. CR |
| PSO Serial Data | P±□□□□□, □□□□ CR | H±□□□□□, □□□□ CR and so on | (Undefined) | ALARMO* **** CR (Undefined) |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

9) **Absolute Encoder Home Position Error Detection**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-02 Bit 1** | Absolute Encoder Home Position Error Detection | Factory Setting: 0 | For Speed/Torque Control and Position Control |

This memory switch is used to specify whether to use **home position error detection** (alarm A.80) when an absolute encoder is used.

| Setting | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Detects a home position error. |
| 1 | Does not detect a home position error. |

Normally, set this memory switch to “0.”

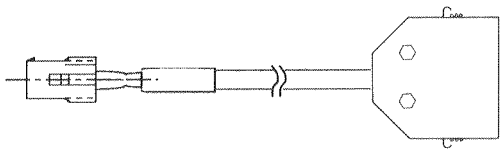
This memory switch has no significance when an incremental encoder is used.



## 3.8.6 Extending an Encoder Cable

1) Both incremental and absolute encoders have a standard encoder cable (maximum 20 meters (65.6 ft.)). If a longer cable is required, prepare an extension cable as described below. The maximum allowable cable length is 50 meters (164 ft.).

a) 3-meter (19.8 ft.) Cable with Connectors:



- For incremental encoder: DP9320082-1
- For absolute encoder: DP9320084-1

TERMS

**Home position error detection**

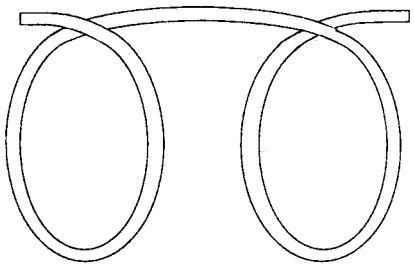
This function detects an encoder count error resulting from noise. It checks the number of pulses per motor revolution, and outputs a home position error alarm if that number is incorrect.
If the absolute encoder detects an error, it inverts phase C and notifies the Servopack of the error. In this case, this “home position error detection” function also works.



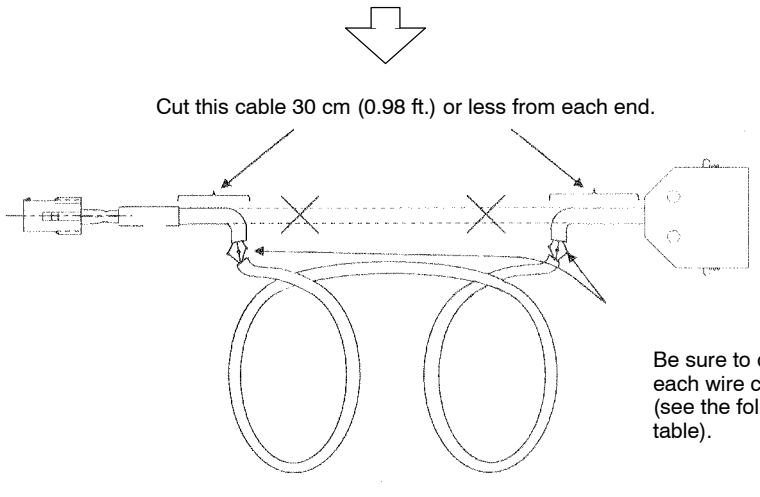
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

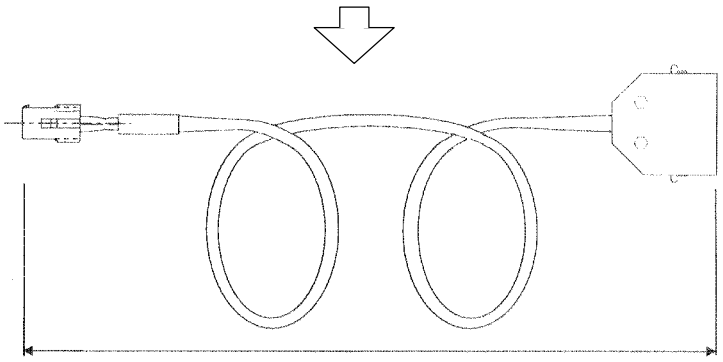
*3.8.6 Extending an Encoder Cable cont.*

b) 50-meter (164 ft.) Extension Cable:



- For both incremental and absolute encoders: DP8409179






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) Connect cables of the same color to each other as shown in the table below. Note that wiring for incremental and absolute encoders is different.

| Signal Name | Color and Wire Size of Cable with Connectors | | Color and Wire Size of 50-meter Extension Cable (DP8409179) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| PG5V | Red | AWG22 | Red | AWG16 |
| PG0V | Black | AWG22 | Black | AWG16 |
| FG | Green/Yellow | AWG22 | Green/Yellow | AWG16 |
| PA | Blue | AWG26 | Blue | AWG26 |
| *PA | White/Blue | AWG26 | White/Blue | AWG26 |
| PB | Yellow | AWG26 | Yellow | AWG26 |
| *PB | White/Yellow | AWG26 | White/Yellow | AWG26 |
| PC | Green | AWG26 | Green | AWG26 |
| *PC | White/Green | AWG26 | White/Green | AWG26 |
| PS | Violet | AWG26 | Purple | AWG26 |
| *PS | White/Green | AWG26 | White/Green | AWG26 |
| RESET | White/Gray | AWG26 | White/Gray | AWG26 |
| BAT | Orange | AWG26 | Orange | AWG26 |
| BAT0 | White/Orange | AWG26 | White/Orange | AWG26 |

Only the absolute encoder can be connected.



## 3.8.7 Using DR2 Servopack with High Voltage Line

1) DR2 Servopacks are divided into single-phase 200 V and single-phase 100 V types according to supply voltage.

If, however, three-phase 400 VAC class (400 V, 440 V) power supply must be used, prepare the following power transformer (for single-phase).

| <Primary side> | | <Secondary side> |
|---|---|---|
| 1) 400 or 440 VAC | → | 200 VAC |
| 2) 400 or 440 VAC | → | 100 VAC |



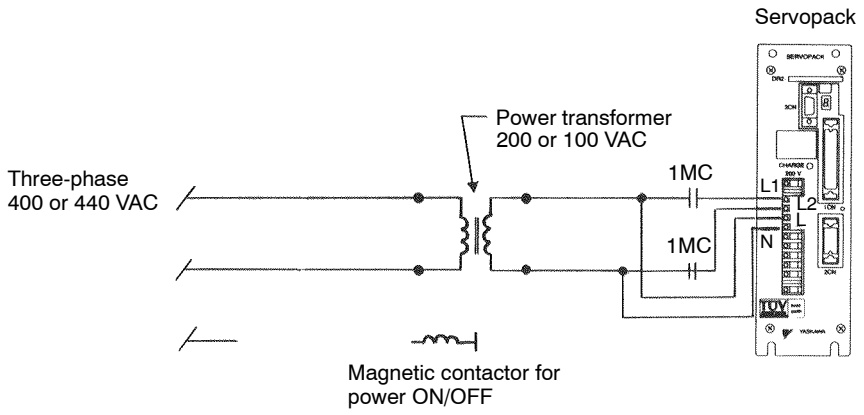
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) Select appropriate power transformer capacity according to the following table.

| Supply Voltage | Servopack Type | Power Supply Capacity Per DR2 Servopack (kVA) (see note) |
|---|---|---|
| 200 V | DR2-A3A□ | 0.25 |
| | DR2-A5A□ | 0.3 |
| | DR2-01A□ | 0.5 |
| | DR2-02A□ | 0.75 |
| | DR2-04A□ | 1.2 |
| | DR2-08A□ | 2.2 |
| 100 V | DR2-A3B□ | 0.25 |
| | DR2-A5B□ | 0.3 |
| | DR2-01B□ | 0.5 |
| | DR2-02B□ | 0.75 |
| | DR2-03B□ | 1.4 |

**Note** At rated load.

3) When 400V class supply voltage is used:






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 3.8.8 Connector Terminal Layouts

This section describes connector terminal layouts for Servopacks, Servomotors and Digital Operator.

### 1) Servopack Connectors for Speed/Torque and Position Control

**1CN Terminal Layout**

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 50 | FG | Frame Ground | | | | 18 | PL3 | Open Collector Reference Power Supply |
| 49 | *PSO | Line Driver output Phase-S | | | | 17 | VTG-M | Speed Monitor |
| 48 | PSO | | 32 | ALM- | Servo Alarm Output | 16 | TRQ-M | Torque Monitor |
| 47 | +24V IN | External Input Power Supply | 31 | ALM+ | | 15 | CLR | Error Counter Clear Input |
| 46 | $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ | Reverse Current Limit ON Input | 30 | $\overline{\text{S-RDY-}}$ | Servo Ready Output | 14 | *CLR | |
| 45 | $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ | Forward Current Limit ON Input | 29 | $\overline{\text{S-RDY+}}$ | | 13 | PL2 | Open Collector Reference Power Supply |
| 44 | $\overline{\text{ALM-RST}}$ | Alarm Reset Input | 28 | $\overline{\text{TGON-}}$ | TGON Output Signal | 12 | *SIGN | Reference Sign Input |
| 43 | N-OT | Reverse Running Prohibit Input | 27 | $\overline{\text{TGON+}}$ | | 11 | SIGN | |
| 42 | P-OT | Forward Running Prohibit Input | 26 | $\overline{\text{CLT}}$ ($\overline{\text{COIN-}}$) | Current Limit Detection Output | 10 | SG | GND |
| 41 | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ | P Control Input | 25 | $\overline{\text{CLT}}$ ($\overline{\text{COIN+}}$) | | 9 | T-REF | Torque Reference Input |
| 40 | $\overline{\text{S-ON}}$ | Servo ON Input | 24 | -15V | Speed/Torque Reference Power Supply | 8 | *PULS | Reference Pulse Input |
| 39 | ALO3 | Alarm Code Output, Open Collector Output | 23 | +15V | | 7 | PULS | |
| 38 | ALO2 | | 22 | BAT- | Battery - | 6 | SG | GND |
| 37 | ALO1 | | 21 | BAT+ | Battery + | 5 | V-REF | Speed Reference Input |
| 36 | *PBO | Line Driver Output Phase-B | 20 | *PCO | Line Driver Output Phase-C | 4 | SEN | SEN Signal Input |
| 35 | PBO | | 19 | PCO | | 3 | PL1 | Open Collector Reference Power Supply |
| 34 | *PAO | Line Driver Output Phase-A | | | | 2 | SG | GND |
| 33 | PAO | | | | | 1 | SG | |

- **Servopack Side** Connector type: MR-50RFA4 (manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)
- **Cable Side** Connector type: MR-50M (Soldering type, manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)
  MRP-50M01 (Caulking type, manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)
  Connector case type: MR-50L (manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*3.8.8 Connector Terminal Layouts cont.*

**2CN Terminal Layout**

· For Incremental Encoder

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 14 | PC | | | 1 | PG0V |
| 15 | *PC | 8 | | 2 | PG0V |
| 16 | PA | 9 | | 3 | PG0V |
| 17 | *PA | 10 | | 4 | PG5V |
| 18 | PB | 11 | | 5 | PG5V |
| 19 | *PB | 12 | | 6 | PG5V |
| 20 | FG | 13 | | 7 | DIR |

· For 12-bit Absolute Encoder

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 14 | PC | | | 1 | PG0V |
| 15 | *PC | 8 | PS | 2 | PG0V |
| 16 | PA | 9 | *PS | 3 | PG0V |
| 17 | *PA | 10 | RESET | 4 | PG5V |
| 18 | PB | 11 | | 5 | PG5V |
| 19 | *PB | 12 | BAT | 6 | PG5V |
| 20 | FG | 13 | BAT0 | 7 | DIR |

- **Servopack Side** Connector type: MR-20RMA4 (manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)
- **Cable Side** Connector type: MR-20F (Soldering type, manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)
  MRP-20F01 (Caulking type, manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)
  Connector case type: MR-20L (manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd. )



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

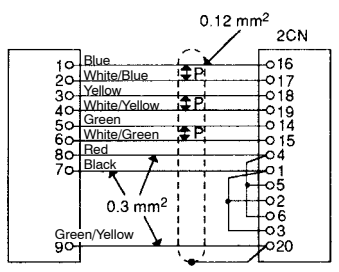
### 2) Connectors for Incremental Encoder

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Channel A output | Blue |
| 2 | Channel $\overline{A}$ output | Blue/Black |
| 3 | Channel B output | Yellow |
| 4 | Channel $\overline{B}$ output | Yellow/Black |
| 5 | Channel C output | Green |
| 6. | Channel $\overline{C}$ output | Green/Black |
| 7 | 0 V (power supply) | Gray |
| 8 | +5 V (power supply) | Red |
| 9 | Frame ground (FG) | Orange |



**Items to be Prepared by Customer**
(Manufactured by AMP)
Cap: 172161-1
Socket: 170361-1 (chain type) or
170365-1 (loose type)




**Items to be Prepared by Customer**
Case:
MR-20L
(manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)

Connector:
soldering type: MR-20F
Caulking type: MRP-20F01
(manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)





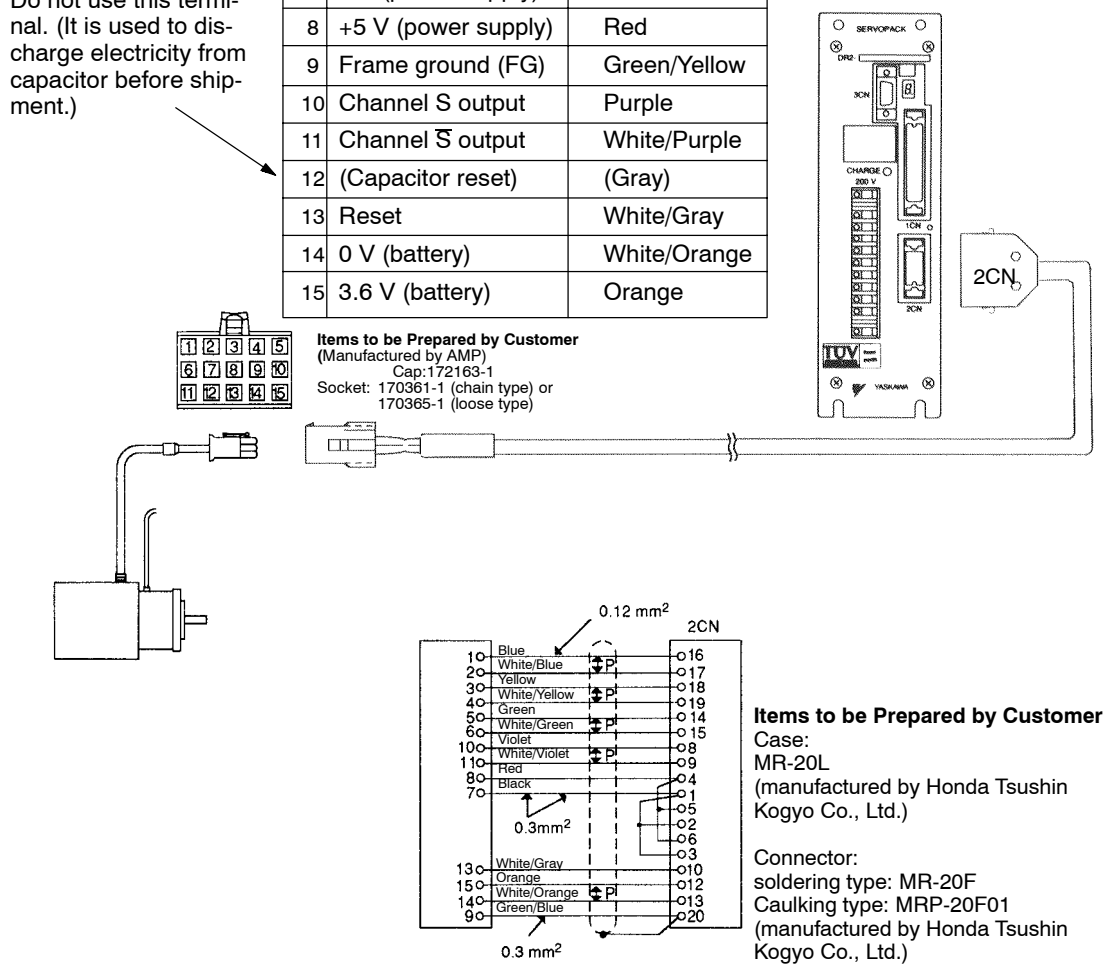
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*3.8.8 Connector Terminal Layouts cont.*

### 3) Connectors for Absolute Encoder

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Channel A output | Blue |
| 2 | Channel $\overline{A}$ output | White/Blue |
| 3 | Channel B output | Yellow |
| 4 | Channel $\overline{B}$ output | White/Yellow |
| 5 | Channel Z output | Green |
| 6 | Channel $\overline{Z}$ output | White/Green |
| 7 | 0 V (power supply) | Black |
| 8 | +5 V (power supply) | Red |
| 9 | Frame ground (FG) | Green/Yellow |
| 10 | Channel S output | Purple |
| 11 | Channel $\overline{S}$ output | White/Purple |
| 12 | (Capacitor reset) | (Gray) |
| 13 | Reset | White/Gray |
| 14 | 0 V (battery) | White/Orange |
| 15 | 3.6 V (battery) | Orange |

Do not use this terminal. (It is used to discharge electricity from capacitor before shipment.)




**Items to be Prepared by Customer**
(Manufactured by AMP)
Cap:172163-1
Socket: 170361-1 (chain type) or
170365-1 (loose type)

**Items to be Prepared by Customer**
Case:
MR-20L
(manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)

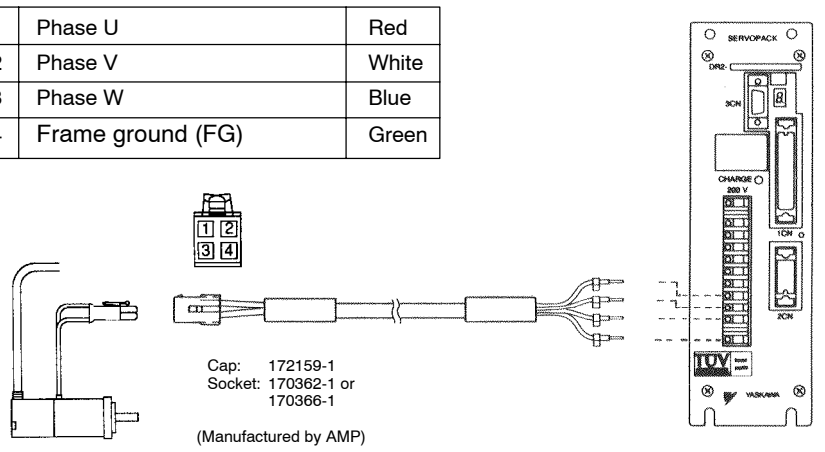
Connector:
soldering type: MR-20F
Caulking type: MRP-20F01
(manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

### 4) Connectors and Terminals for Standard-type Motor without Brake

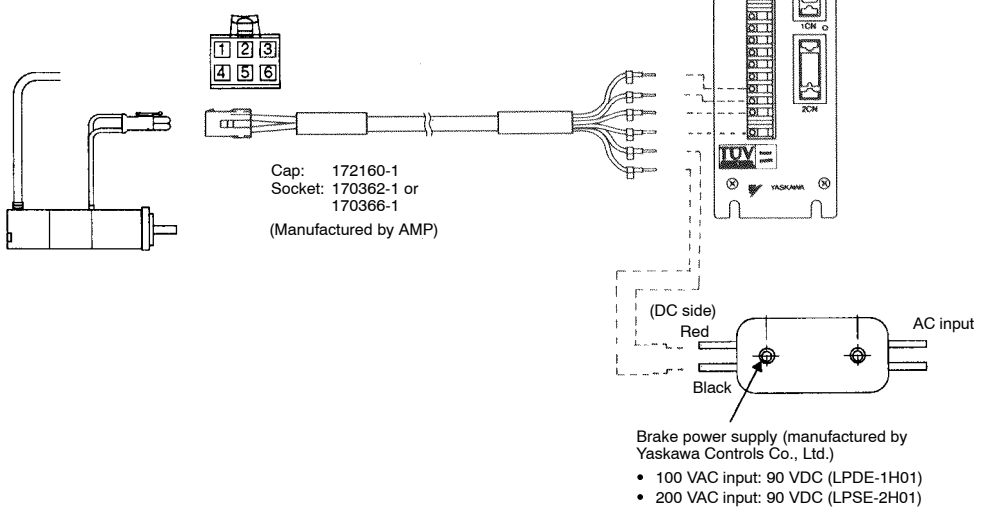
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Phase U | Red |
| 2 | Phase V | White |
| 3 | Phase W | Blue |
| 4 | Frame ground (FG) | Green |






### 5) Connectors and Terminals for Motor with Brake

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Phase U | Red |
| 2 | Phase V | White |
| 3 | Phase W | Blue |
| 4 | Frame ground (FG) | Green |
| 5 | Brake terminal | Black |
| 6 | Brake terminal | Black |



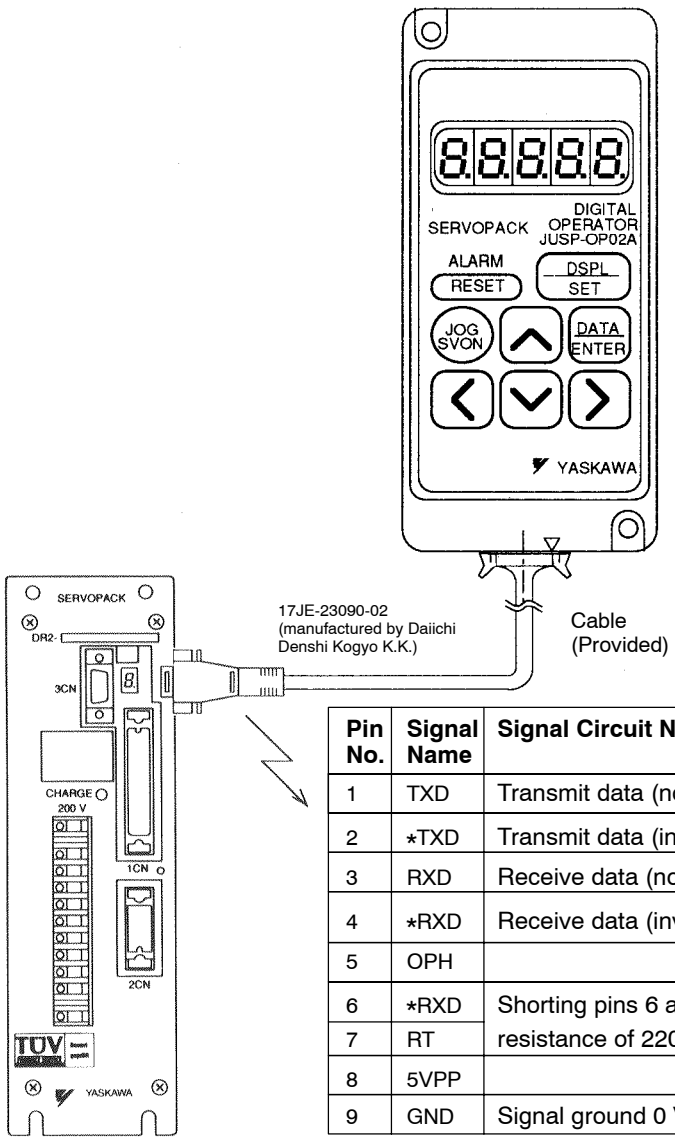



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*3.8.8 Connector Terminal Layouts cont.*

### 6) Connectors for Digital Operator

• JUSP-OP02A-1 (Hand-held Type)




| Pin No. | Signal Name | Signal Circuit Name | Signal Direction |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | TXD | Transmit data (non-inversion side) | P ← S |
| 2 | *TXD | Transmit data (inversion side) | P ← S |
| 3 | RXD | Receive data (non-inversion side) | P → S |
| 4 | *RXD | Receive data (inversion side) | P → S |
| 5 | OPH | | # |
| 6 | *RXD | Shorting pins 6 and 7 produces a terminal resistance of 220 Ω between RXD and *RXD. | |
| 7 | RT | | |
| 8 | 5VPP | | # |
| 9 | GND | Signal ground 0 V | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# USING THE DIGITAL OPERATOR 4

This chapter describes the basic operation of the digital operator and the convenient features it offers.
All constant settings and motor operations are possible by simple, convenient, operation.
Operate the digital operator as you read through this chapter.


**4.1 Basic Operations . . . . . 170**
4.1.1 Connecting the Digital Operator . . . . . 170
4.1.2 Resetting Servo Alarms . . . . . 171
4.1.3 Basic Functions and Mode Selection . . . . . 172
4.1.4 Operation in Status Display Mode . . . . . 173
4.1.5 Operation in User Constant Setting Mode . . . . . 176
4.1.6 Operation in Monitor Mode . . . . . 179

**4.2 Using the Functions . . . . . 183**
4.2.1 Operation in Alarm Trace-back Mode . . . . . 183
4.2.2 Operation Using the Digital Operator . . . . . 186
4.2.3 Autotuning . . . . . 188
4.2.4 Reference Offset Automatic Adjustment . . . . . 195
4.2.5 Speed Reference Offset Manual Adjustment Mode . . . . . 197
4.2.6 Clearing Alarm Trace-back Data . . . . . 200
4.2.7 Checking Motor Type . . . . . 201
4.2.8 Checking Software Version . . . . . 201






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 4.1 Basic Operations

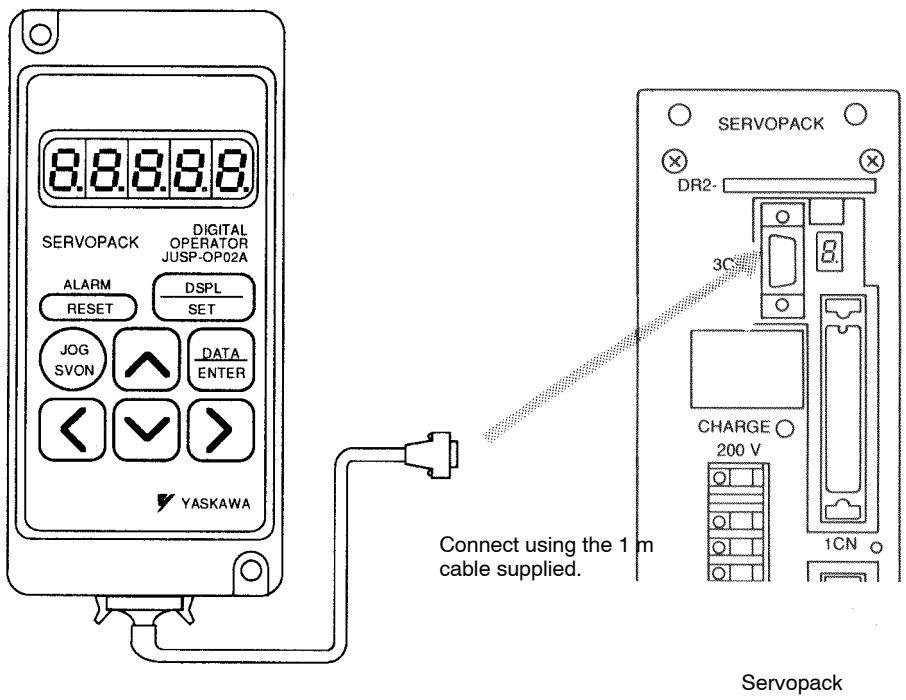
This section describes the basic operations using the Digital Operator.

4.1.1 Connecting the Digital Operator . . . . . 170
4.1.2 Resetting Servo Alarms . . . . . 171
4.1.3 Basic Functions and Mode Selection . . . . . 172
4.1.4 Operation in Status Display Mode . . . . . 173
4.1.5 Operation in User Constant Setting Mode . . . . . 176
4.1.6 Operation in Monitor Mode . . . . . 179

## 4.1.1 Connecting the Digital Operator

The applicable Digital Operator type is JUSP-OP02A-1 (Hand-held Type) .
Hand-held type is connected to the Servopack as shown below.

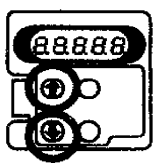
JUSP-OP02A-1 (Hand-held Type)




Servopack

- The Digital Operator connector can be connected or disconnected while the Servopack power is ON.

**Note** Mount type digital operator (JUSP-OP03A) cannot be used.



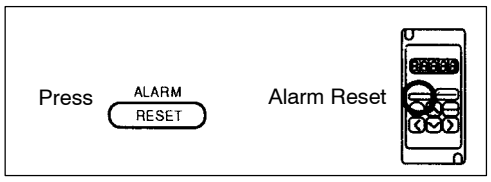
Type: JUSP-OP03A



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

### 4.1.2 Resetting Servo Alarms

Servo alarms can be reset using the Digital Operator. (Servo alarms can also be reset by the 1CN-44, $\overline{\text{ALMRST}}$ input signal. Refer to 3.7.1 for details.)




**NOTE** After an alarm occurs, remove the cause of the alarm before resetting it. Refer to *Section 6.2 Troubleshooting* to determine and remedy the cause of an alarm.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 4.1.3 Basic Functions and Mode Selection

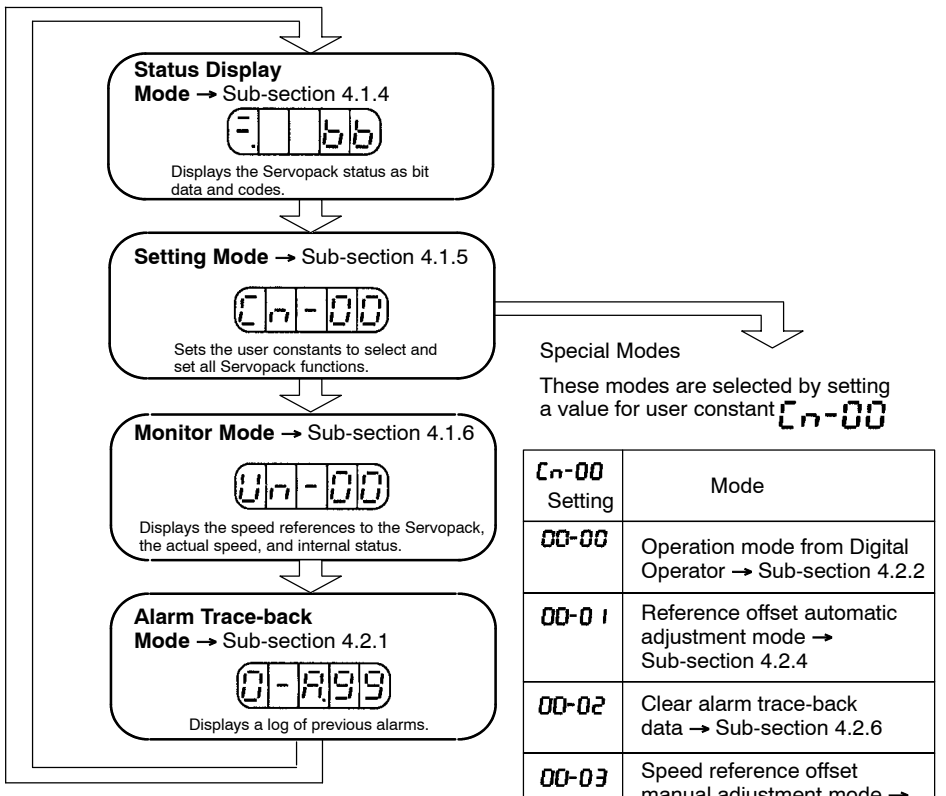
Digital Operator operation allows status display, user constant setting, operating reference, and auto-tuning operations.

Basic Mode Selection
The four basic modes are listed below. Each time the mode key is pressed, the next mode in the sequence is selected.

JUSP-OP02A-1



Press the DSPL SET key to switch the mode.




Special Modes

These modes are selected by setting a value for user constant Cn-00

| Cn-00 Setting | Mode |
|---|---|
| 00-00 | Operation mode from Digital Operator → Sub-section 4.2.2 |
| 00-01 | Reference offset automatic adjustment mode → Sub-section 4.2.4 |
| 00-02 | Clear alarm trace-back data → Sub-section 4.2.6 |
| 00-03 | Speed reference offset manual adjustment mode → Sub-section 4.2.5 |
| 00-04 | Motor-type check mode → Sub-section 4.2.7 |
| 00-05 | Auto-tuning mode → Sub-section 4.2.3 |
| 00-06 | Software-version check mode → Sub-section 4.2.8 |

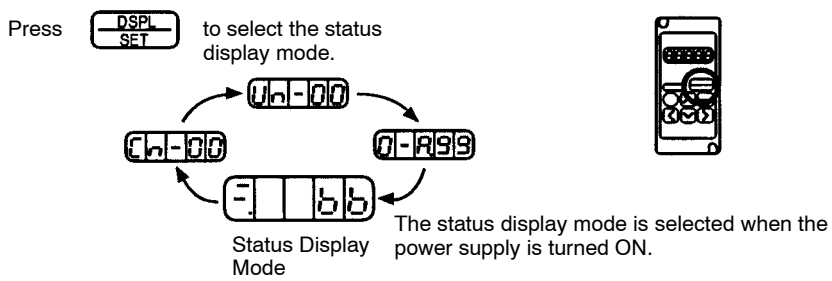


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

### 4.1.4 Operation in Status Display Mode

The status display mode displays the Servopack status as bit data and codes.

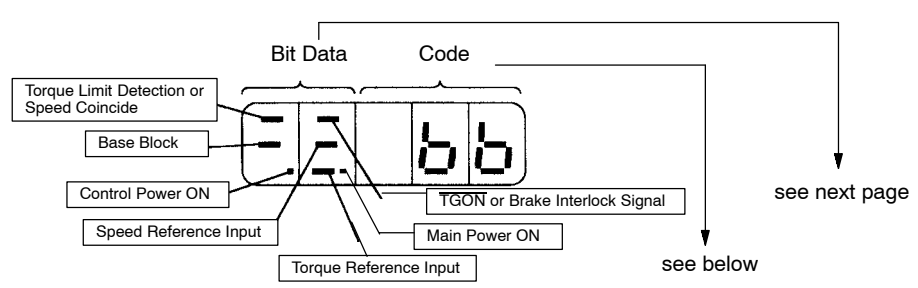
• Selecting Status Display Mode




Keys to the status display are shown below. Note that the display differs between the speed/torque control and position control.

**Speed/Torque**

**For Speed/Torque Control**




| Code | Status |
|---|---|
| bb | Base block<br>Servo OFF (motor power OFF) |
| run | Run<br>Servo ON (motor power ON) |
| Pot | Forward Rotation Prohibited (P-OT)<br>1CN-42 (P-OT) OFF. See Cn-01 Bit 2 (page 55). |
| not | Reverse Rotation Prohibited (N-OT)<br>1CN-43 (N-OT) OFF. See Cn-01 Bit 3 (page 55). |
| A.00 | Alarm Status<br>Displays the alarm number. See the table of alarms on page 185. |
| A.02 | |
| ≀ | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*4.1.4 Operation in Status Display Mode cont.*

| Bit Data | Description |
|---|---|
| Control Power ON | Lit when Servopack control power ON. Not lit when Servopack control power OFF. |
| Main Power ON | Lit when Servopack main circuit power ON. Not lit when Servopack main circuit power OFF. |
| Base Block | Lit for base block. not lit at servo ON. |
| Torque Limit Detection or Speed Coincide<br>(Selected by Cn-01 bit 4) | Lit if Servopack internal torque reference exceeds preset value.<br>Not lit if Servopack internal torque reference is below preset value.<br>Preset value: Set in Cn-08, -09 (max. torque is standard setting)<br>Cn-18 is preset value during 1CN-45 ($\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ ) input.<br>Cn-19 is preset value during 1CN-46 ($\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ ) input.<br>(100% of rated torque are standard setting for Cn-18, Cn-19)<br>Not lit during torque control.<br>Lit if motor speed reaches speed reference. Otherwise, not lit. |
| $\overline{\text{TGON}}$ or Brake Interlock Signal (selected by Cn-01 Bit E) | Lit if motor speed exceeds preset value.<br>Not lit if motor speed is below preset value.<br>Preset value: Set in Cn-0B (20 r/min is factory setting) |
| | When brake interlock is ON, between 1CN-27 and -28 is closed and 1CN-27 is Low level, lit when brake is releaded.<br>When brake interlock is OFF, between 1CN-27 and -28 is open and 1CN-27 is High level, not lit when brake operates. |
| Speed Reference Input | Lit if input speed reference exceeds preset value.<br>Not lit if input speed reference is below preset value.<br>Specified value: Set in Cn-0B (20 r/min is factory setting) |
| Torque Reference Input | Lit if input torque reference exceeds preset value.<br>Not lit if input torque reference is below preset value.<br>Preset value: Set in Cn-0B (10% rated torque is standard setting) |

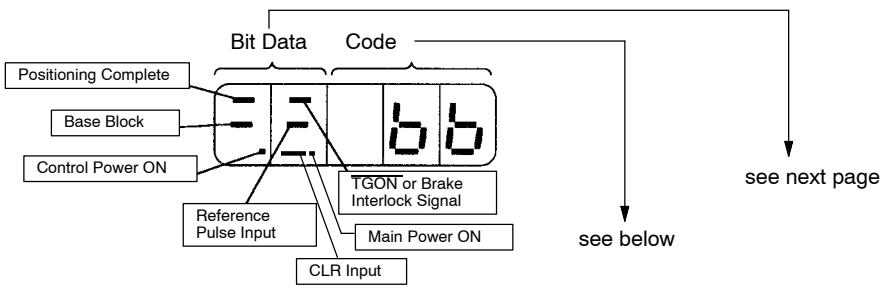




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Positions**

### For Position Control




| Code | Status |
|---|---|
| bb | Base block<br>Servo OFF |
| run | Run<br>Servo ON |
| Pot | Forward Rotation Prohibited<br>1CN-42 (P-OT) OFF. See Cn-01 Bit 2 (page 55). |
| not | Reverse Rotation Prohibited<br>1CN-43 (N-OT) OFF. See Cn-01 Bit 3 (page 55). |
| A.00 | Alarm Status<br>Displays the alarm number. See the table of alarms on page 185. |
| A.02 | |
| ≀ | |

4



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Bit Data | Description |
|---|---|
| Control Power ON | Lit when Servopack control power ON. Not lit when Servopack control power OFF. |
| Main Power ON | Lit when Servopack main circuit power ON. Not lit when Servopack main circuit power OFF. |
| Base Block | Lit for base block. Not lit at servo ON. |
| Positioning Complete | Lit if error between position reference and actual motor position is below preset value.<br>Not lit if error between position reference and actual motor position exceeds preset value.<br>Preset value: Set in Cn-1B (1 pulse is standard setting) |
| TGON or Brake Interlock Signal (selected by Cn-01 Bit E) | Lit if motor speed exceeds preset value.<br>Not lit if motor speed is below preset value.<br>Preset value: Set in Cn-0B (20 r/min is standard setting) |
| | When brake interlock is ON, between 1CN-27 and -28 is closed and 1CN-27 is Low level, lit when brake is releaded.<br>When brake interlock is OFF, between 1CN-27 and -28 is open and 1CN-27 is High level, not lit when brake operates. |
| Reference Pulse Input | Lit if reference pulse is input.<br>Not lit if no reference pulse is input. |
| CLR Input | Lit when clear signal is input.<br>Not lit when clear signal is not input. |



## 4.1.5 Operation in User Constant Setting Mode

1) Two types of user constant are used

a) Constant Settings (Cn-03 to Cn-23)
b) Memory Switches (Cn-01, Cn-02)

The setting method is different for each type.
The Servopack offers a large number of functions, which are selected and adjusted by the user constant settings.
The constant settings (Cn-03 to Cn-23) allow setting of a constant within a fixed range.
The memory switches (Cn-01, Cn-02) allow the required functions to be selected.
Refer to *Appendix D List of User Constant Settings.*

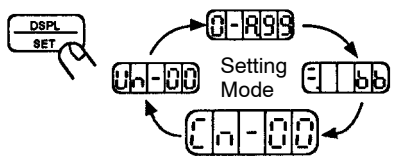


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

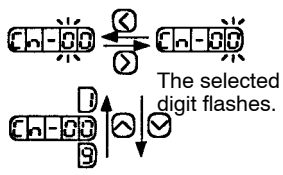
### 2) Using the Setting Mode for Constant Settings (Cn-03 to Cn-23)

The constant settings (Cn-03 to Cn-23) allow setting of a constant. Check the permitted range of the constant in *Appendix D List of User Constant Settings*, before changing the data. The example below shows how to change user setting Cn-15 from 100 to 85.

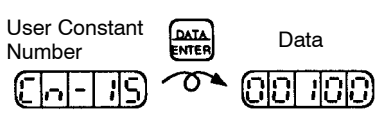
1) Press DSPL SET to select the user constant setting mode.



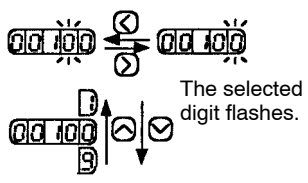

2) Select the user constant number to set.
   Press the ◁ and ▷ keys to select the digit.
   Press the △ and ▽ keys to change the value.




3) Press DATA ENTER to display the current data for the user constant selected at step 2.



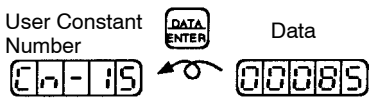

4) Set the required data.
   Press the ◁ and ▷ keys to select the digit.
   Press the △ and ▽ keys to change the value.




5) Press DATA ENTER to store the data.




6) Press DATA ENTER once more to display the user constant number again.




7) Repeat steps 2 to 6 as often as required.

- Refer to *Appendix D List of User Constant Settings*.

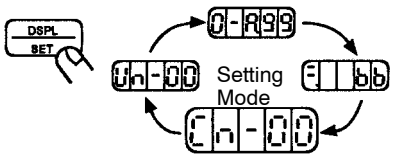


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

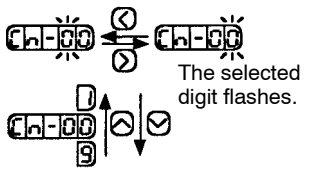
3) **Using the Setting Mode for Memory Switches (Cn-01, Cn-02)**

**Turn the bits of the memory switches ON and OFF** to select the functions required. The example below shows how to turn ON Bit 4 of memory switch Cn-01.

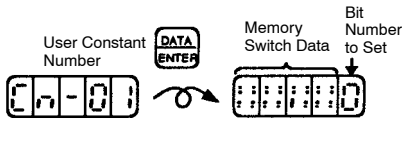
1) Press DSPL SET to select the user constant setting mode.



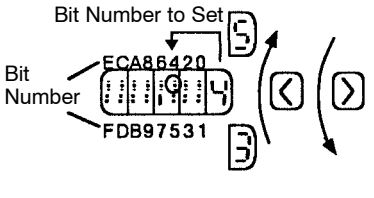

2) Select the user constant number to set.
   Press the ◁ and ▷ keys to select the digit.
   Press the △ and ▽ keys to change the value.



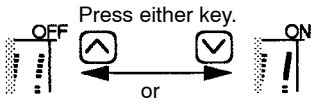

3) Press DATA ENTER to display the current data for the memory switch selected at step 2.




4) Press the ◁ and ▷ keys to select the bit number to set.

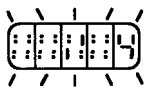



5) Press the △ and ▽ keys to set the memory switch data ON or OFF for the bit number.




6) Repeat steps 4 and 5 as often as required.

7) Press DATA ENTER to store the data.

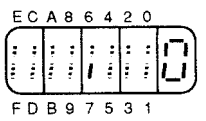


The stored data flashes.

**TERMS**

**Turning Bits ON and OFF**

Memory switches use bits, not numbers, to select functions.
Sixteen bits are available (1 to 9 and A to E). Select the required functions by turning the appropriate bit ON (function ON) or OFF (function OFF).

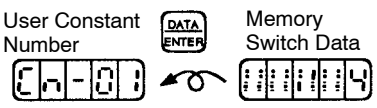



: = OFF
I = ON



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

8) Press DATA ENTER once more to display the user constant number again.




- Refer to *Appendix D List of User Constant Settings*.

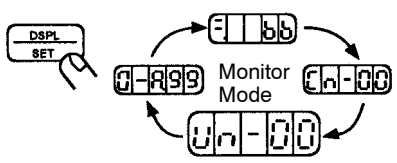
## 4.1.6 Operation in Monitor Mode

1) The monitor mode allows the reference values input into the Servopack, I/O signal status, and Servopack internal status to be monitored.
The monitor mode can be set during motor operation.

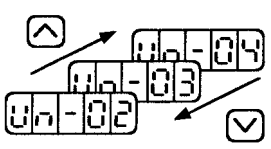
2) **Using the Monitor Mode**

The example below shows how to display 1500, the contents of monitor number Un-00.

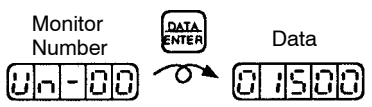
1) Press DSPL SET to select the monitor mode



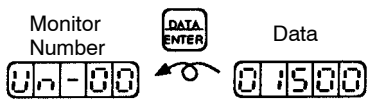

2) Press the ^ and v keys to select the monitor number to display.



3) Press DATA ENTER to display the data for the monitor number selected at step 2.




4) Press DATA ENTER once more to display the monitor number again.






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*4.1.6 Operation in Monitor Mode cont.*

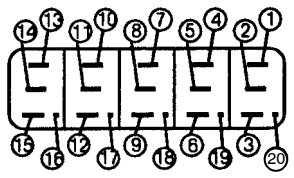
3) Keys to Monitor Mode Display are shown below. Note that the display differs between the speed/torque control and position control types.

Speed/Torque

**For Speed/Torque Control**

| Monitor Number | Monitor Display |
|---|---|
| Un-00 | Actual motor speed<br>Units: r/min |
| Un-01 | Input speed reference<br>Units: r/min |
| Un-02 | Internal torque reference Units: %<br>(with respect to rated torque) |
| Un-03 | Number of pulses from motor U-phase edge<br>Units: pulses |
| Un-04 | Electrical angle<br>Units: 0.1deg |
| Un-05 | Internal status bit display → |

Internal Status Bit Display




see below

| Bit # | Description | | Related I/O Signal, User Constant |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Servo alarm | | 1CN-31(ALM) |
| 2 | Dynamic brake ON | | |
| 3 | Reverse rotation mode | | Cn-02 Bit 0, 2CN-7(DIR) |
| 4 | During motor rotation or brake interlock signal | | 1CN-27 ($\overline{\text{TG-ON}}$), status display mode |
| 5 | Torque limit or speed coincide | | 1CN-25 ($\overline{\text{V-CMP}}$), status display mode |
| 6 | Mode switch ON | | |
| 7 | During forward torque limit | Or contact input speed control | 1CN-45 ($\overline{\text{P-CL}}$) |
| 8 | During reverse torque limit | | 1CN-46 ($\overline{\text{N-CL}}$) |
| 9 | Motor power ON | | |
| 10 | A-phase | | 2CN-33(PA), 2CN-34(∗PA) |
| 11 | B-phase | | 2CN-35(PB), 2CN-36(∗PB) |
| 12 | C-phase | | 2CN-19(PC), 2CN-20(∗PC) |
| 13 | U-phase | | Only when incremental encoder is used. |
| 14 | V-phase | | Only when incremental encoder is used. |
| 15 | W-phase | | Only when incremental encoder is used. |
| 16 | Servo ON | | 1CN-40 ($\overline{\text{S-ON}}$) , Cn-01 Bit 0 |
| 17 | P operation, zero clamp, or rotation direction input | | 1CN-41 ($\overline{\text{P-CON}}$) , Cn-01 Bit A, B, Cn-02 Bit 2 |
| 18 | Forward overtravel | | 1CN-42 (P-OT), Cn-01 Bit 2 |
| 19 | Reverse overtravel | | 1CN-43 (N-OT), Cn-01 Bit 3 |
| 20 | SEN signal input | | 1CN-4 (SEN) |

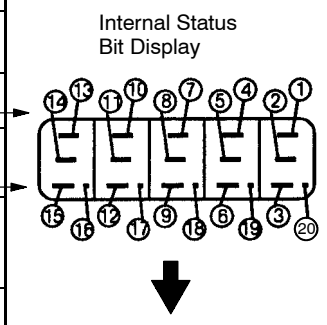


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Positions

## For Position Control

| Monitor Number | Monitor Display |
|---|---|
| Un-00 | Actual motor speed Units: r/min |
| Un-02 | Internal torque reference<br>Units: %<br>(with respect to rated torque) |
| Un-03 | Number of pulses from motor U-phase edge<br>Units: pulses |
| Un-04 | Electrical angle<br>Units: 0.1deg |
| Un-05 | Internal status bit display |
| Un-06 | Internal status bit display |
| Un-08 | Positional error<br>Units: x1 reference unit (Cn-02 Bit E = 0)<br>x100 reference unit (Cn-02 Bit E = 1) |
| Un-09 | Reference pulse counter value<br>Units: Reference unit<br>Displays 0 to 65535 |




| Monitor # | Bit # | Description | | Related I/O Signal, User Constant |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Un-05 | 1 | Servo alarm | | 1CN-31 (ALM) |
| | 2 | Dynamic brake ON | | |
| | 3 | Reverse rotation mode | | Cn-02 Bit 0, 2CN-7 (DIR) |
| | 4 | During motor rotation or brake interlock signal | | 1CN-27 ($\overline{\text{TG-ON}}$), status display mode |
| | 5 | Positioning complete | | 1CN-25 ($\overline{\text{COIN}}$) , status display mode |
| | 6 | Mode switch ON | | |
| | 7 | During forward torque limit | Or contact input speed control | 1CN-45 ($\overline{\text{P-CL}}$) |
| | 8 | During reverse torque limit | | 1CN-46 ($\overline{\text{N-CL}}$) |
| | 9 | Motor power ON | | |
| | 10 | A-phase | | 2CN-33(PA), 2CN-34(∗PA) |
| | 11 | B-phase | | 2CN-35(PB), 2CN-36(∗PB) |
| | 12 | C-phase | | 2CN-19(PC), 2CN-20(∗PC) |
| | 13 | U-phase | | Only when incremental encoder is used. |
| | 14 | V-phase | | Only when incremental encoder is used. |
| | 15 | W-phase | | Only when incremental encoder is used. |
| | 16 | Servo ON | | 1CN-40 ($\overline{\text{S-ON}}$), Cn-01 Bit 0 |
| | 17 | P operation or rotation direction input | | 1CN-41 ($\overline{\text{P-CON}}$) |
| | 18 | Forward overtravel | | 1CN-42 (P-OT), Cn-01 Bit 2 |
| | 19 | Reverse overtravel | | 1CN-43 (N-OT), Cn-01 Bit 3 |
| | 20 | Not used | | |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*4.1.6 Operation in Monitor Mode cont.*

| Monitor # | Bit # | Description | Related I/O Signal, User Constant |
|---|---|---|---|
| Un-06 | 1 | Input reference pulse | 1CN-1 (PLUS), 1CN-2(∗PULS) |
| | 2 | Input pulse sign | 1CN-3(SIGN), 1CN-4 (∗SIGN) |
| | 3 | Error counter clear input | 1CN-5 ($\overline{\text{CLR}}$), 1CN-6(∗CLR) |
| | 4 to 12 | Not used. | |
| | 13 | Full-closed Phase-A | 4CN-2 (FA), 4CN-3 (∗FA) |
| | 14 | Full-closed Phase-B | 4CN-4 (FB), 4CN-5 (∗FB) |
| | 15 | Full-closed Phase-C | 4CN-6 (FC), 4CN-7 (∗FC) |
| | 16 to 20 | Not used. | |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

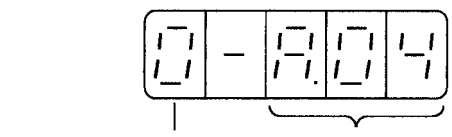
# 4.2 Using the Functions

This section describes how to use the basic operations described in section 1 to operate and adjust the motor.


4.2.1 Operation in Alarm Trace-back Mode . . . . . 183
4.2.2 Operation Using the Digital Operator . . . . . 186
4.2.3 Autotuning . . . . . 188
4.2.4 Reference Offset Automatic Adjustment . . . . . 195
4.2.5 Speed Reference Offset Manual Adjustment Mode . . . . . 197
4.2.6 Clearing Alarm Trace-back Data . . . . . 200
4.2.7 Checking Motor Type . . . . . 201
4.2.8 Checking Software Version . . . . . 201


## 4.2.1 Operation in Alarm Trace-back Mode

1) The alarm trace-back mode displays up to ten alarms which occurred previously. By allowing confirmation of what alarm occurred when, it is a useful aid to speed up trouble-shooting.




**NOTE** The alarm trace-back data is not cleared on alarm reset or when the Servopack power is turned OFF. This does not adversely affect operation.
The data is cleared using the special mode: Clear alarm trace-back data.
Refer to sub-section *4.2.6* for details.

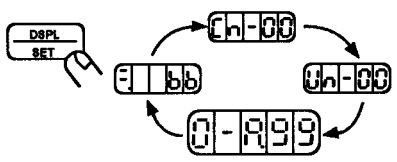


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*4.2.1 Operation in Alarm Trace-back Mode cont.*

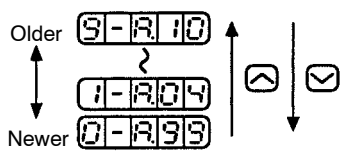
2) Using the Alarm Trace-back Mode
Follow the procedure below to determine which alarms occurred previously.

1) Press DSPL SET to select the alarm trace-back mode.



Alarm Trace-back Mode

2) Press the ∧ and ∨ keys to scroll the alarm sequence numbers up and down and display information on previous alarms. The higher the left-hand digit (alarm sequence number), the older the alarm data.




4



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3) The table below lists the alarms displayed in the alarm trace-back mode.

| Displayed Alarm Code | Description |
|---|---|
| A.00 | Absolute data error |
| A.02 | User constant breakdown |
| A.04 | User constant setting error |
| A.10 | Overcurrent |
| A.20 | Blown fuse |
| A.30 | Regenerative error |
| A.31 | Position error pulse overflow (for position control only) |
| A.40 | Overvoltage |
| A.51 | Overspeed |
| A.70 | Overload |
| A.80 | Absolute encoder error |
| A.81 | Absolute encoder back-up error |
| A.82 | Absolute encoder checksum error |
| A.83 | Absolute encoder battery error |
| A.84 | Absolute encoder data error |
| A.85 | Absolute encoder overspeed |
| A.b1 | Reference input read error |
| A.C1 | Servo overrun detected (This function prevents (or minimizes) overrun.) |
| A.C2 | Encoder output phase error<br>Incremental encoder initial pulse error |
| A.C3 | Encoder A-, B-phase disconnection |
| A.C4 | Encoder C-phase disconnection |
| A.C6 | External PG A-, B-phase disconnection |
| A.C7 | External PG C-phase disconnection |
| A.99 | Not an alarm. Reset by alarm reset or Servopack power ON. |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The following are operator-related alarms which are not recorded by alarm trace-back.

| | |
|---|---|
| CPF00 | Digital Operator transmission error 1 |
| CPF01 | Digital Operator transmission error 2 |

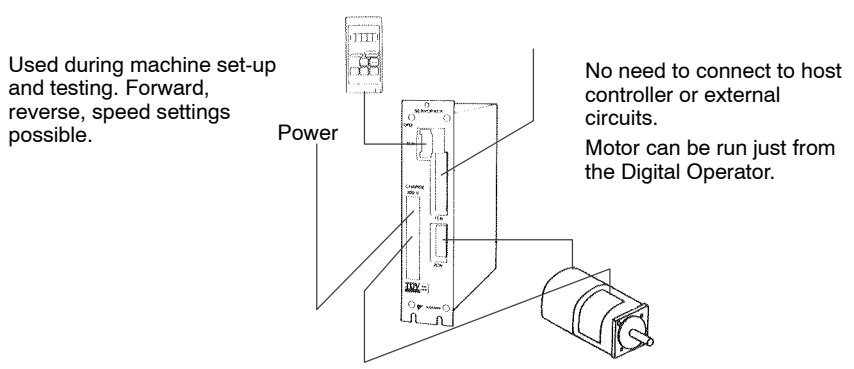
- Refer to the troubleshooting procedures when an alarm occurs, described in section 6.2.

## 4.2.2 Operation Using the Digital Operator

**Simple Motor Check**

Operation from the Digital Operator allows the Servopack to run the motor. This allows rapid checking of basic operations during machine set-up and testing, without the trouble of connecting a host controller.

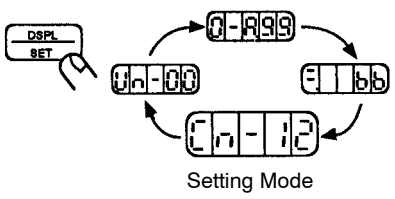





1) **Operation Using the Digital Operator**

Use the following procedure to operate the motor from the Digital Operator

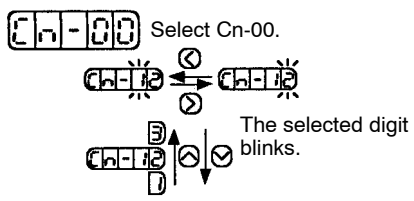
1) Press DSPL SET to select the user constant setting mode.






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

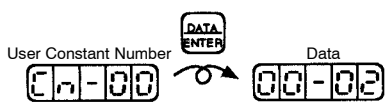
2) Select the user constant number Cn-00. (User constant Cn-00 is selected when the power is turned ON.)



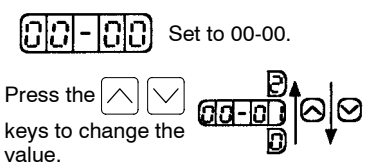

Press the ⟨ and ⟩ keys to select the digit.

Press the ∧ and ∨ keys to change the value.

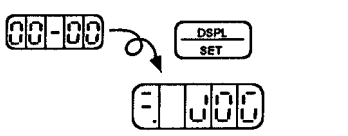
3) Press DATA ENTER to display the current data for the user constant Cn-00.




4) Press the ∧ and ∨ keys to change the data to 00. (This user constant is set to 00 when the power is turned ON.)

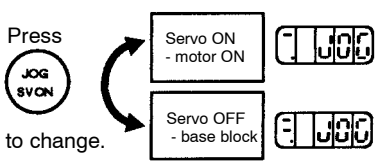



5) Press DSPL SET to set the Digital Operator in operation mode. Operation is now possible under Digital Operator control.



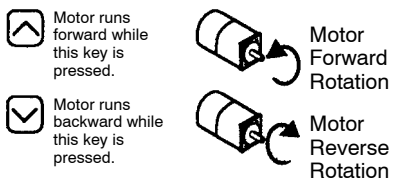

6) Press JOG SVON to set the servo ON status (motor power turned ON).

**Select Servo ON/Servo OFF**



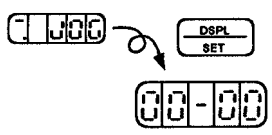

7) Press the ∧ and ∨ keys to operate the motor.

**Motor Forward/Reverse Rotation**

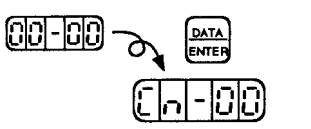



8) Press DSPL SET to revert to 00-00. This sets the servo OFF status (motor power turned OFF).

(Alternatively, press JOG SVON to set the servo OFF status.)




9) Press DATA ENTER to return to the setting mode display. This disables operation under Digital Operator control.







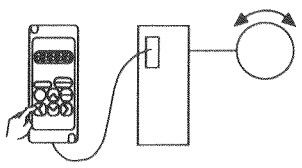

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) **Changing Motor Speed**

The motor speed for operation under Digital Operator control can be changed with a following user constant.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Cn-10** | JOGSPD Jog Speed | Unit: r/min | Setting Range: 0 to MAX. Speed | Factory Setting: 500 | For Speed/ Torque Control and Position Control |

Set the motor speed (JOG speed) in this user constant when motor is operated using the digital operator.



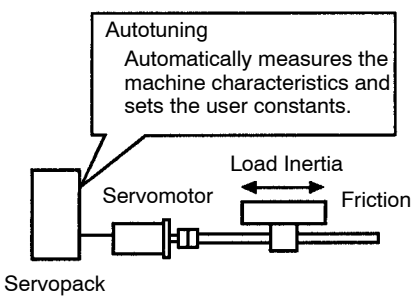
Set the motor speed (JOG speed) in this user constant when motor is operated using the digital operator.

For details about setting the motor speed, refer to *4.1.5 Operation in User Constant Setting Mode* and *Appendix D List of User Constants*.

## 4.2.3 Autotuning

**No experience required to achieve optimum settings.**

The Servopack contains a built-in autotuning function to automatically measure the machine characteristics and set the user constants.
Servo drives normally require tuning to match the machine configuration and rigidity. This tuning requires a great deal of experience and is difficult for a person unfamiliar with the tuning procedure.
However, autotuning allows even totally inexperienced people to easily complete the tuning.




Autotuning is similar to auto-focus for a camera.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3) User Constants Automatically Settable with Autotuning

| Speed/Torque | Speed/torque control |
|---|---|

| Cn-04 | Speed loop gain |
|---|---|
| Cn-05 | Speed loop integration time constant |

| Positions | Position control |
|---|---|

| Cn-04 | Speed loop gain |
|---|---|
| Cn-05 | Speed loop integration time constant |
| Cn-1A | Position loop gain |

Once autotuning has been completed, the autotuning procedure can be omitted for subsequent machines, providing the machine specifications remain unchanged.
It is sufficient to directly set the user constants for subsequent machines.
The **machine rigidity** can be selected from one of seven levels.

**NOTE**
- Conduct autotuning with the motor attached to the machine.
  Make sure that the machine is ready for operation and take sufficient safety precautions when operating the machine.
- Make sure that the $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ signal is OFF (PI control is selected) before starting autotuning.
- Before conducting autotuning, make sure that setting of user constant Cn-10 is 500 (factory setting).
- Make sure that the speed control mode is set to PI control before starting autotuning.
  If the mode switch is used, PI control automatically switches to P control above a set operating level (PI control to P control switching level), even if the $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ signal is OFF.
  If the mode switch is used, follow operation a) or operation b) below before starting autotuning.

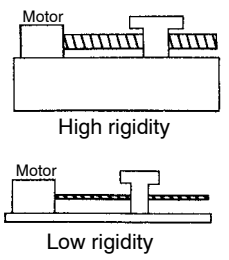
a) Set the user constants to disable the mode switch.
   Speed control: Set both Cn-01 Bit C and Bit D to 1.
   Position control: Set both Cn-01 Bit B to 1.

b) Increase the operating level, such that P control is not selected.
   In practice, set the operating level as shown in the table below.

TERMS

**Machine Rigidity**

The machine rigidity is one of the machine characteristics related to servo control. Set the servo to high response for a machine, such as a machine tool, with high rigidity, and to low response for a machine, such as a robot, with low rigidity.






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*4.2.3 Autotuning cont.*

| Operating Level | User Constant Setting |
|---|---|
| Torque reference | Cn-0C to maximum torque |
| Speed reference | Cn-0D to a preset value exceeding Cn-10 |
| Acceleration | Cn-0E to the maximum value: 3000 |
| Error pulse | Cn-0F to the maximum value: 10000 |

Select the operating level using Bit C and Bit D of Cn-01.

Refer to *3.6.6 using mode switch* for details of the mode switch function.



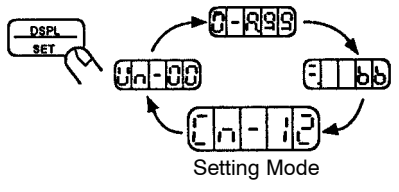


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4) **Using Autotuning**

Follow the procedure below to run autotuning.

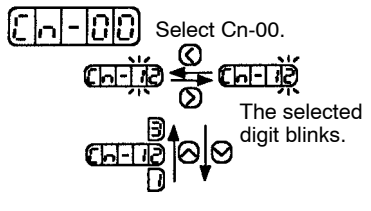
1) Press DSPL SET to select the user constant setting mode.



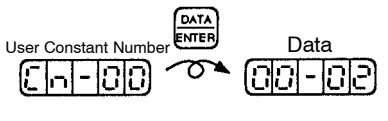

2) Select the user constant number Cn-00. (User constant Cn-00 is selected when the power is turned ON.)

Press the ◁ and ▷ keys to select the digit.

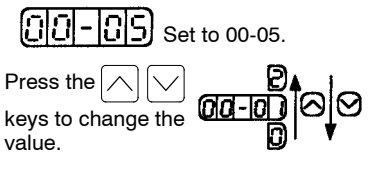
Press the △ and ▽ keys to change the value.



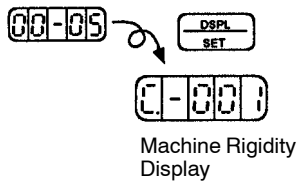

3) Press DATA ENTER to display the current data for the user constant Cn-00.



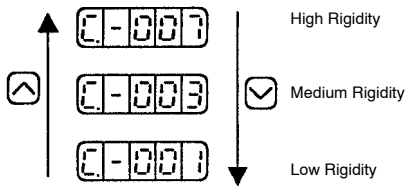

4) Press the △ and ▽ keys to change the data to 05.



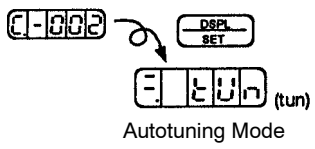

5) Press DSPL SET to display the machine rigidity.




6) Press the △ and ▽ keys to select the machine rigidity. If the actual rigidity is unknown, select medium rigidity.




7) Press DSPL SET to select autotuning mode.



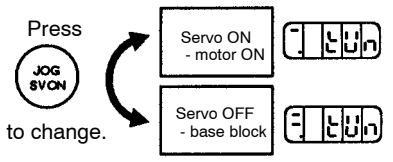



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*4.2.3 Autotuning cont.*

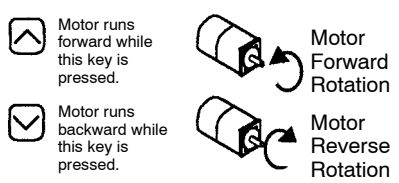
8) Press JOG SVON to set the servo ON status.

**Select Servo ON/Servo OFF**

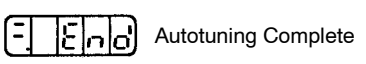



9) Press the ∧ and ∨ keys to operate the motor.

**Motor Forward/Reverse Rotation**



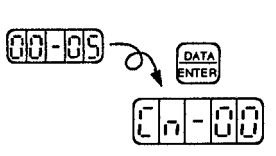

10) When autotuning is complete, the END message is displayed, as shown to the right.
Servo OFF status is automatically selected. If Servo ON/Servo OFF is selected by a signal from an external contact, turn this signal OFF.




11) Release the ∧ and ∨ keys to revert to the 00-05 display.



12) Press DATA ENTER to return to the setting mode display. This ends the autotuning operation.




- Refer to sub-section 3) on page 192 for the precautions relating to autotuning.

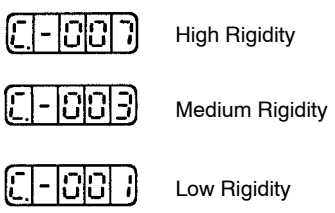
4

5) **Precautions Relating to Autotuning**

a) Speed Setting During Autotuning
The motor speed during autotuning is set by user constant Cn-10. Set to 500 r/min., which is the factory setting. Autotuning may be unsuccessful if this value is set too low.

The motor runs intermittently while the ∧ or ∨ key is held down. The motor does not rotate continuously.

b) **Machine Rigidity Selection**
Select the machine rigidity as described below. If the actual rigidity is unknown, select medium rigidity.






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• If the Machine Resonates

At servo ON when the JOG SVON key is pressed or when the motor is operated by pressing the ⌃ or ⌄ key, machine resonance indicates an inappropriate machine rigidity setting.
Follow the procedure below to correct the machine rigidity setting, and run autotuning once more.

(1) Press the DSPL SET key to cancel autotuning.

(2) Press the DSPL SET key once more to enter the machine rigidity setting mode. Reduce the setting by one.

• If Autotuning Does Not End

Failure of autotuning to end [F] [End], is caused by an inappropriate machine rigidity setting. Follow the procedure below to correct the machine rigidity setting, and run autotuning once more.

(1) Press the DSPL SET key to cancel autotuning.

(2) Press the DSPL SET key once more to enter the machine rigidity setting mode. Increase the setting by one.

Autotuning may not end for machines with large play or extremely low rigidity. In these cases, use conventional manual adjustment.





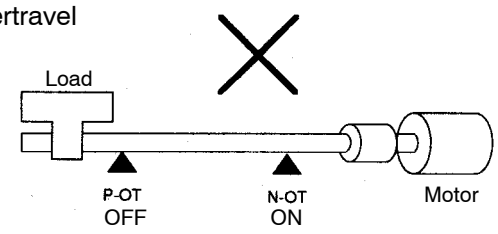
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*4.2.3 Autotuning cont.*

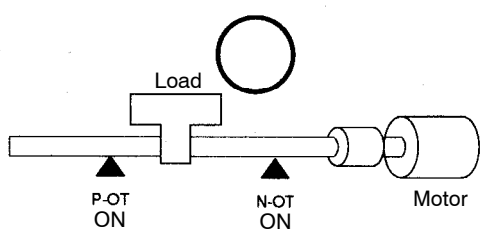
c) Input Signals

- The OT signal and SEN signal (absolute encoder only) are enabled during autotuning. Input the OT signal and SEN signal (absolute encoder only) during autotuning. To conduct autotuning without inputting these signals, set user constant Cn-01 Bits 1, 2, and 3 to 1.

- Autotuning is not possible during overtravel (P-OT or N-OT signal OFF).




- Conduct autotuning when no overtravel has occurred (both P-OT and N-OT signal ON).



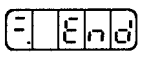

- Set the $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ signal OFF during autotuning.

- If the mode switch is used, take one of the steps below before running autotuning.

(1) Cancel the mode switch.

(2) Set the mode switch operating level to a high level.

Refer to page 122 for details about setting the mode switch.

- If using the $\overline{\text{S-ON}}$ signal to set the servo ON status, display  before turning ON the $\overline{\text{S-ON}}$ signal.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

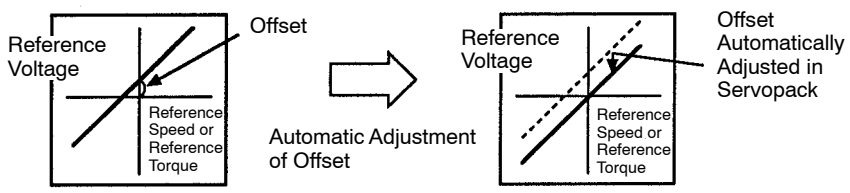
### 4.2.4 Reference Offset Automatic Adjustment

Speed/Torque

1) Why Does Reference Offset Occur?
Using a speed/torque control, the motor may rotate slowly when the reference voltage is intended to be 0 V.
This occurs when the host controller or external circuit has a small offset (measured in mV) in the reference voltage.

Automatic Adjustment of Reference Voltage
The reference offset automatic adjustment mode automatically measures the offset and adjusts the reference voltage. It adjusts both speed and torque references.

The following diagram illustrates automatic adjustment of an offset in the reference voltage from the host controller or external circuit.




2) After completion of offset automatic adjustment, the amount of offset is stored in the Servopack.
The amount of offset can be checked in the speed reference offset manual adjustment mode. Refer to sub-section 4.2.5 for details.



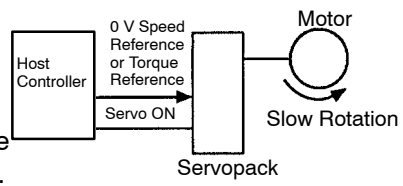


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

### 3) Using the Reference Offset Automatic Adjustment Mode

Follow the procedure below to automatically adjust the reference offset.

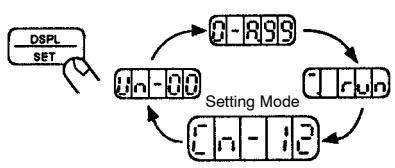
1) Follow the procedure below to set the motor into operating mode.



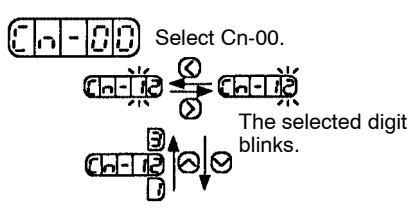

(1) Input the (intended) 0 V reference voltage from the host controller or external circuit.

(2) Then, turn ON the servo ON (1CN-40, $\overline{\text{S-ON}}$) signal.

2) Press DSPL SET to select the user constant setting mode.



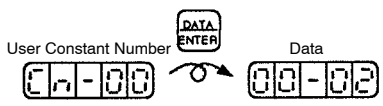

3) Select the user constant number Cn-00. (User constant Cn-00 is selected when the power is turned ON.)



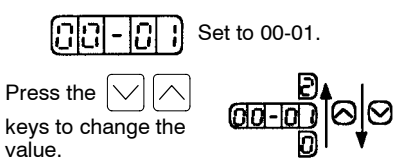

Press the ◁ and ▷ keys to select the digit.

Press the △ and ▽ keys to change the value.

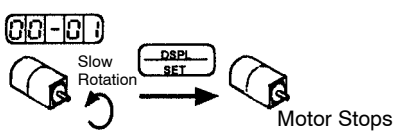
4) Press DATA ENTER to display the current data for the user constant Cn-00.



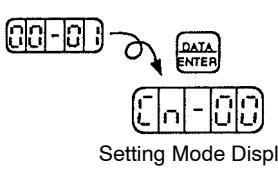

5) Press the ▽ and △ keys to change the data to 01.




6) Press DSPL SET to automatically adjust the reference offset. The motor rotation stops.




7) Press DATA ENTER to return to the setting mode display. This ends reference offset automatic adjustment.





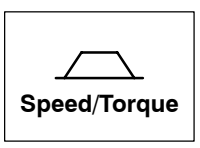

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4) **The reference offset automatic adjustment mode cannot be used** where a position loop is formed with the host controller and the error pulses are zeroed when servo lock is stopped.

   In this case, use the speed reference offset manual adjustment mode. Refer to sub-section 4.2.5 for details.

   Zero-clamp speed control is available to force the motor to stop during zero speed reference. Refer to sub-section 3.4.3 for details.

### 4.2.5 Speed Reference Offset Manual Adjustment Mode




1) Speed reference offset manual adjustment is available for the speed/torque control. It is very convenient in the following situations:

   • If a position loop is formed with the host controller and the error pulses are zeroed when servo lock is stopped.

   • To deliberately set the offset to some value.

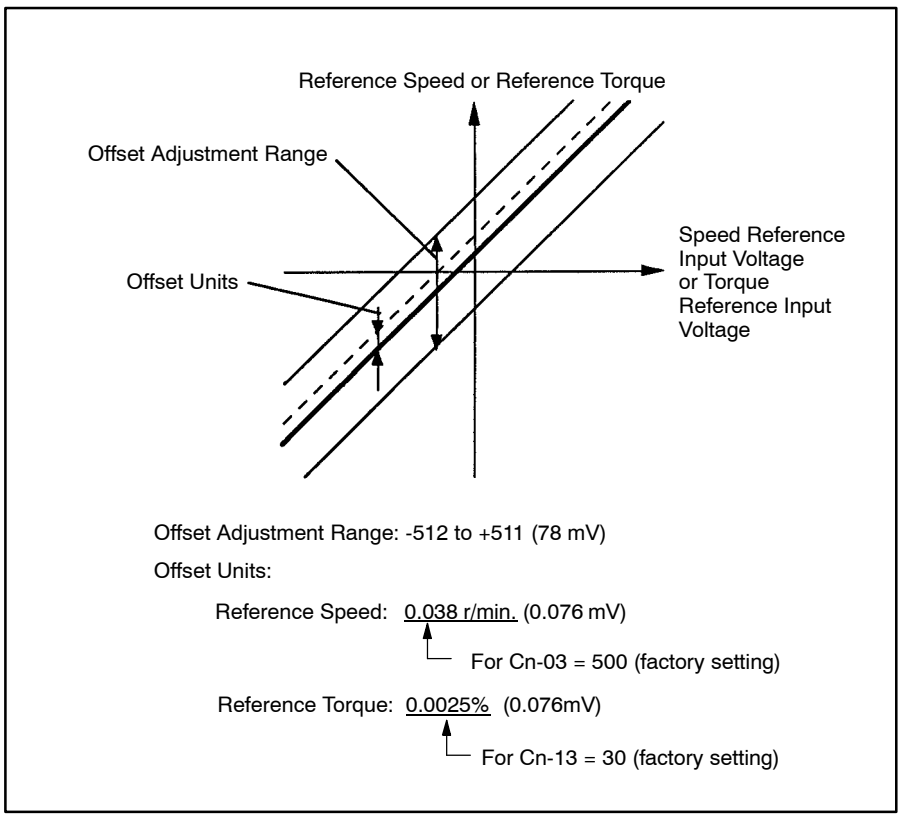
   This mode can also be used to check the data set in the reference offset automatic adjustment mode.
   In principle, this mode operates in the same way as the reference offset automatic adjustment mode, except that the amount of offset is directly input during the adjustment.
   The offset can be set for speed references only.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Offset Adjustment Range and Setting Units are as follows:




Offset Adjustment Range: -512 to +511 (78 mV)

Offset Units:

Reference Speed: 0.038 r/min. (0.076 mV)

For Cn-03 = 500 (factory setting)

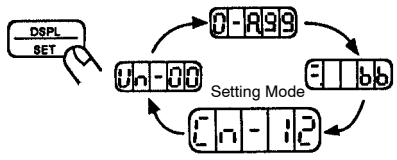
Reference Torque: 0.0025% (0.076mV)

For Cn-13 = 30 (factory setting)



2) Follow the procedure below to manually adjust the reference voltage.

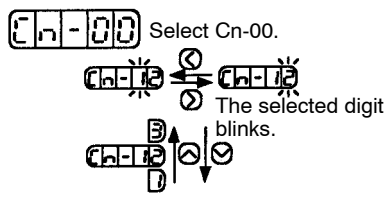
1) Press DSPL SET to select the user constant setting mode.



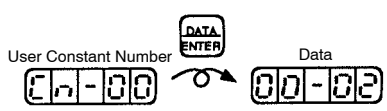

2) Select the user constant number Cn-00. (User constant Cn-00 is selected when the power is turned ON.)

Press the ◁ and ▷ keys to select the digit.

Press △ and ▽ keys to change the value.



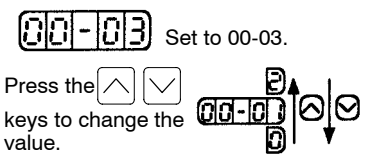

3) Press DATA ENTER to display the current data for the user constant Cn-00.





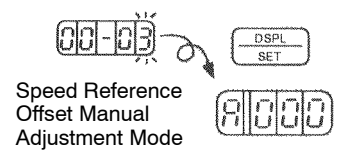

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4) Press the ∧ and ∨ keys to change the data to 03.



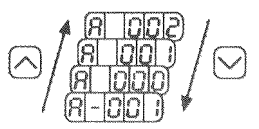

5) Press DSPL/SET to select the speed reference offset manual adjustment mode.

(The amount of speed reference offset is displayed.)

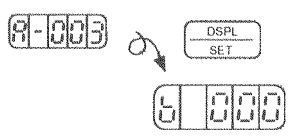



6) Press the ∧ and ∨ keys to adjust the amount of offset.

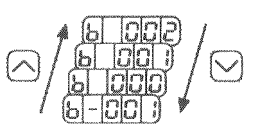
(Adjust the speed references.)



7) Press DSPL/SET to enter the torque reference offset manual adjustment mode.
(The amount of torque reference offset is displayed.)



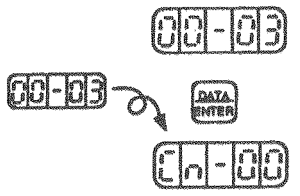

8) Press the ∧ and ∨ keys to adjust the amount of offset.
(Adjust the torque references.)



9) Press DSPL/SET to return to the user constant data display.




10) Press DATA/ENTER to return to the setting mode display. This ends the reference offset manual adjustment.







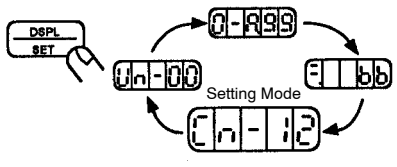

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 4.2.6 Clearing Alarm Trace-back Data

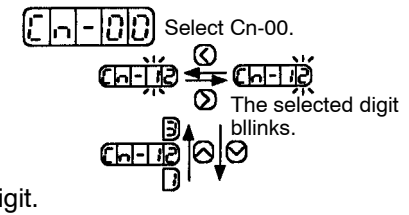
1) This procedure clears the alarm history, which stores the alarms occurring in the Servopack. Each alarm in the alarm history is set to A99, which is not an alarm code. Refer to *4.2.1 Operation in Alarm Trace-back Mode* for details.

2) Follow the procedure below to clear the alarm trace-back data.

1) Press DSPL SET to select the user constant setting mode.



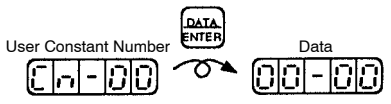

2) Select the user constant number Cn-00. (User constant Cn-00 is selected when the power is turned ON.)



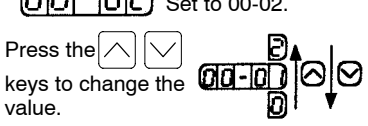

Press the ◁ and ▷ keys to select the digit.

Press the △ and ▽ keys to change the value.

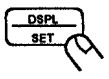
3) Press DATA ENTER to display the current data for the user constant Cn-00.




4) Press the △ and ▽ keys to change the data to 02.

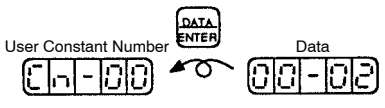



5) Press DSPL SET to clear the alarm trace-back data.




Clear the alarm trace-back data.

6) Press DATA ENTER to return to the user constant data display.



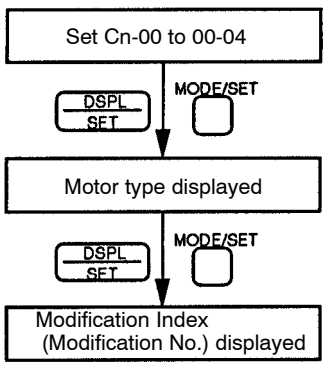



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

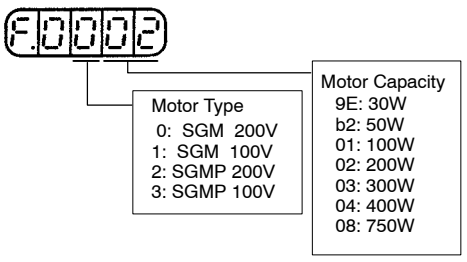
## 4.2.7 Checking Motor Type

1) Set Cn-00 to 00-04 to select the motor-type check mode.
   This mode is used for maintenance and is not normally used by the customer.

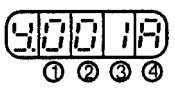
Operation




Motor Type Display




Modification Index (Modification No.) Display




Hexadecimal Display

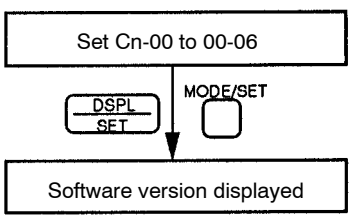
$① \times 16^3 + ② \times 16^2 + ③ \times 16 + ④$ = Modification index (Modification No.)

4

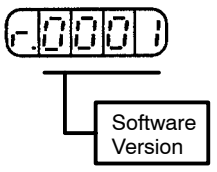
## 4.2.8 Checking Software Version

1) Set Cn-00 to 00-06 to select the software-version check mode.
   This mode is used for maintenance and is not normally used by the customer.

Operation




Software Version Display






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 5 SERVO SELECTION AND DATA SHEETS

This chapter describes how to select Σ-Series servo drives and peripheral devices.
The section also presents the specifications and dimensional drawings required for selection and design.
Choose and carefully read the relevant sections of this chapter.


**5.1 Selecting a Σ-Series Servo . . . . . 205**
5.1.1 Selecting a Servomotor . . . . . 205
5.1.2 Selecting a Servopack . . . . . 212
5.1.3 Digital Operator . . . . . 216

**5.2 SGM Servomotor . . . . . 217**
5.2.1 Ratings and Specifications . . . . . 217
5.2.2 Mechanical Characteristics . . . . . 230

**5.3 Servopack Ratings and Specifications . . . . . 233**
5.3.1 Ratings and Specifications . . . . . 233
5.3.2 Power Consumption . . . . . 238
5.3.3 Overload Characteristics . . . . . 239
5.3.4 Starting Time and Stopping Time . . . . . 240
5.3.5 Load Inertia . . . . . 241
5.3.6 Overhanging Loads . . . . . 246

**5.4 Σ-Series Dimensional Drawings . . . . . 247**
5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings . . . . . 247
5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings (TÜV approved, conforming to the machine instructions) . . . 289
5.4.3 Servopack Dimensional Drawings . . . . . 329
5.4.4 Digital Operator Dimensional Drawing . . . . . 334

**5.5 Selecting Peripheral Devices . . . . . 335**
5.5.1 Selecting Peripheral Devices . . . . . 335
5.5.2 Order List . . . . . 341






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**5.6 Specifications and Dimensional Drawings of Peripheral Devices . . . . . 349**
5.6.1 Cable Specifications and Peripheral Devices . . . . . 349
5.6.2 Motor Cables . . . . . 355
5.6.3 Connector Kits . . . . . 358
5.6.4 Brake Power Supply . . . . . 363
5.6.5 Encoder Cables . . . . . 365
5.6.6 Battery for Absolute Encoder . . . . . 371
5.6.7 1CN Connector . . . . . 371
5.6.8 Circuit Breaker . . . . . 373
5.6.9 Noise Filter . . . . . 374
5.6.10 Magnetic Contactor . . . . . 375
5.6.11 Surge Suppressor . . . . . 376
5.6.12 Regenerative Unit . . . . . 376
5.6.13 Variable Resistor for Speed Setting . . . . . 379
5.6.14 Encoder Signal Converter Unit . . . . . 379
5.6.15 Cables for Connecting PC and Servopack . . . . . 381
5.6.16 4CN Connector . . . . . 385





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 5.1 Selecting a Σ-Series Servo

This section describes how to select the Σ-Series Servomotor, Servopack, and Digital Operator.

5.1.1 Selecting a Servomotor . . . . . 205
5.1.2 Selecting a Servopack . . . . . 212
5.1.3 Digital Operator . . . . . 216

## 5.1.1 Selecting a Servomotor

1) The selection of an SGM or SGMP Servomotor matched to the servo system in which it is used is based on the servomotor type, that is, the seven alphanumeric characters after “SGM-” or “SGMP-”, described below. The numbers (1) to (6) below correspond to the numbers in the flowchart for Servomotor selection on the following pages.



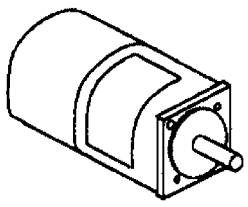


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

SGM- 01 A/V 3 1 2 □

Σ-Series
SGM: SGM Servomotor
SGMP: SGMP Servomotor
(cube type)

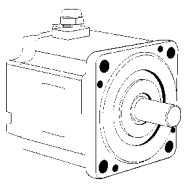
1) Rated output (motor capacity)
(Type SGM only)
A3: 30W (0.04HP) A5: 50W (0.07HP)
(Types SGM and SGMP)
01: 100W (0.13HP) 02: 200W (0.27HP)
03: 300W (0.40HP) 04: 400W (0.53HP)
08: 750W (1.01HP)



SGM type

2) Supply voltage
A: 200V B: 100V
V: 200V W: 100V
(V and W are EN Standard application)

U: 200V L: 100V
(U and L are UL Standard application)



SGMP type

3) Encoder specification
3: 2048 P/R incremental encoder
W: 12-bit absolute encoder (Available upon special request)
S: 15-bit absolute encoder
4: 2000 P/R incremental encoder

4) Design revision order

5) Shaft specification
2: Straight without key
4: Straight with key

6) Options
B: with brake S: with shaft seal
D: with brake and shaft seal
P: drip-proofed

Flowchart for Servomotor selection

| | Selected motor type |
|---|---|
| Example | SGM- 0 2 B W 1 4 B |
| Axis 1 | SGM-□□□□□□□ |
| Axis 2 | SGM-□□□□□□□ |
| Axis 3 | SGM-□□□□□□□ |
| Axis 4 | SGM-□□□□□□□ |
| Axis 5 | SGM-□□□□□□□ |
| • • • | • • • • • • • |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) The actual selection of the SGM or SGMP Servomotor is conducted according to the flowchart in the next page.

   If an SGMP Servomotor is selected, replace SGM with SGMP. SGMP Servomotors are available from 100W (0.13HP) to 750W (1.01HP). A 1500W (2.01HP) type also exists but the DR2 Servopack can handle up to 750W (1.01HP).

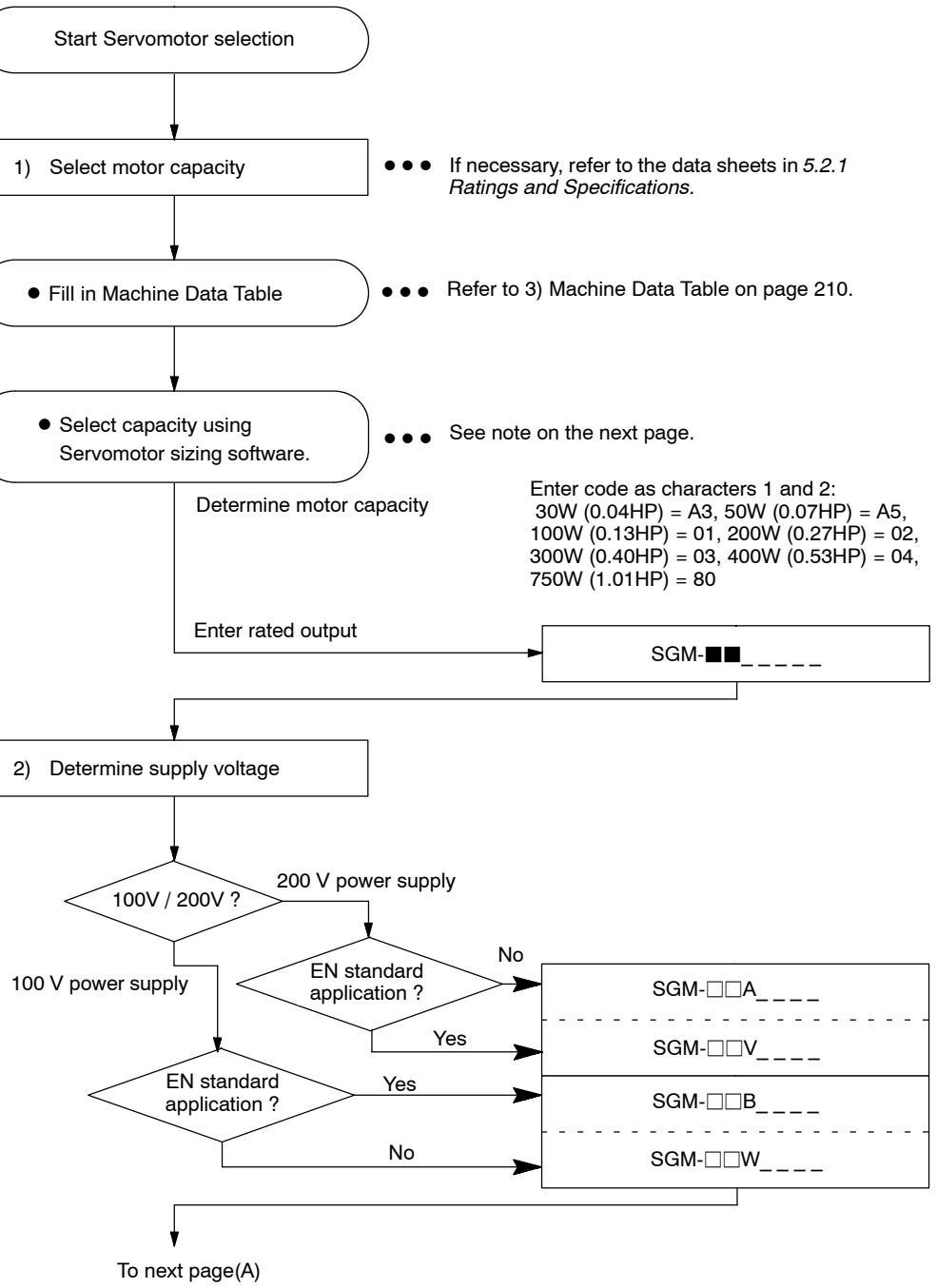




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

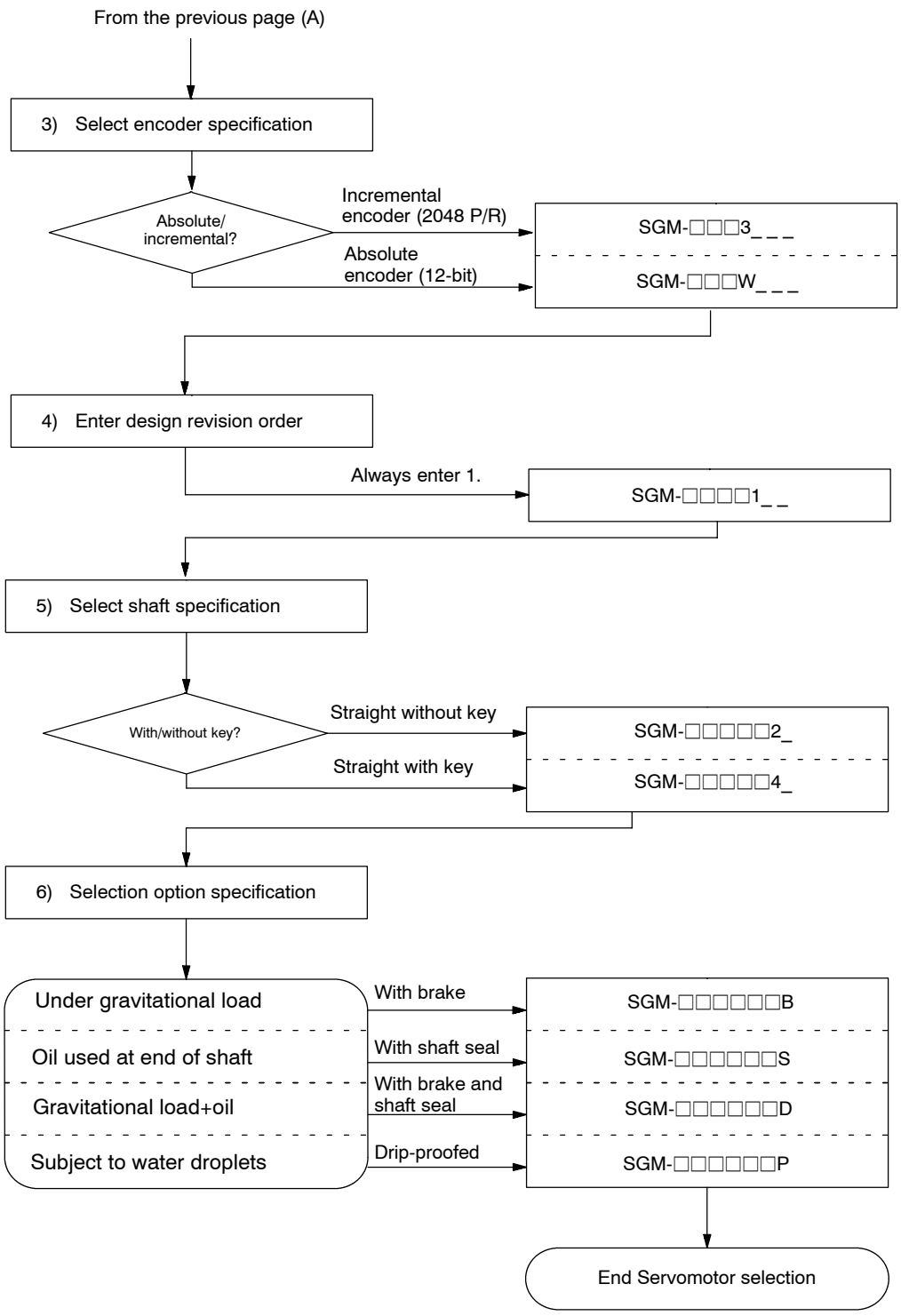
*5.1.1 Selecting a Servomotor cont.*

## Flowchart for Servomotor Selection






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com




**Note** Consult Yaskawa sales representative for sizing or sizing software.



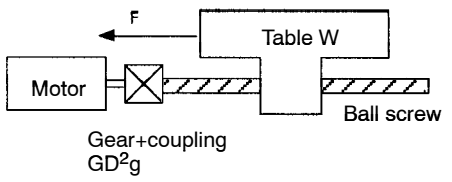
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.1.1 Selecting a Servomotor cont.*

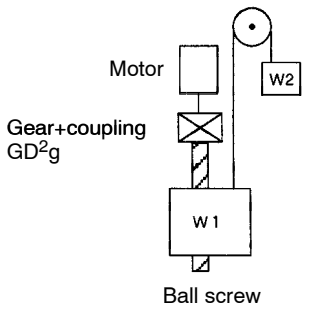
3) Machine Data Table

Fill out the machine data table below as an aid to selecting the drive system. When the machine data table is complete, use the servomotor sizing software to select the motor capacity.

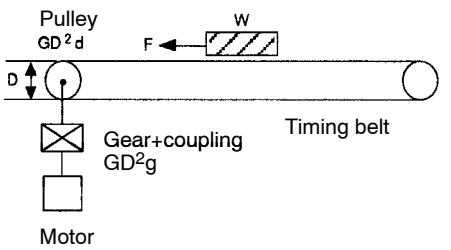
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **1) Ball Screw Horizontal Axis** | | |
| Load mass | W | ——kg (lb) |
| Thrust | F | ——kg (lb) |
| Coefficient of friction | μ | —— |
| Overall efficiency | η | —— |
| Gear ratio | R (= Nm/Nl) | —— |
| Gear+coupling | $GD^2g$ | ——kg·cm² (lb·in².) |
| Ball screw pitch | P | ——mm (in.) |
| Ball screw diameter | D | ——mm (in.) |
| Ball screw length | L | ——mm (in.) |



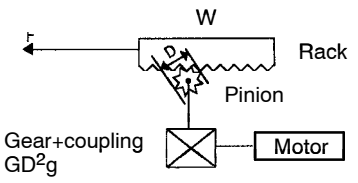

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **2) Ball Screw Vertical Axis** | | |
| Load mass | $W_1$ | ——kg (lb) |
| Counterweight | $W_2$ | ——kg (lb) |
| Coefficient of friction | μ | —— |
| Overall efficiency | η | —— |
| Gear ratio | R (= Nm/Nl) | —— |
| Gear+coupling | $GD^2g$ | ——kg·cm² (lb·in².) |
| Ball screw pitch | P | ——mm (in.) |
| Ball screw diameter | D | ——mm (in.) |
| Ball screw length | L | ——mm (in.) |




| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **3) Timing Belt** | | |
| Load mass | W | ——kg (lb) |
| Thrust | F | ——kg (lb) |
| Coefficient of friction | μ | —— |
| Overall efficiency | η | —— |
| Gear ratio | R (= Nm/Nl) | —— |
| Gear+coupling | $GD^2g$ | ——kg·cm² (lb·in².) |
| Pulley | $GD^2d$ | ——kg·cm² (lb·in².) |
| Pulley diameter | D | ——mm (in.) |

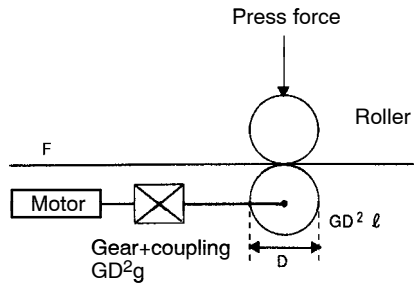
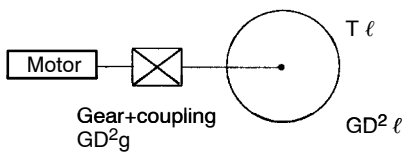
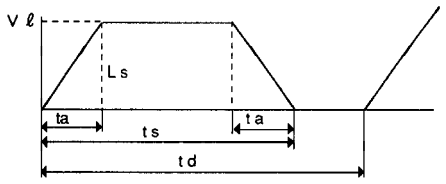



| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **4) Rack and Pinion** | | |
| Load mass | W | ——kg (lb) |
| Thrust | F | ——kg (lb) |
| Coefficient of friction | μ | —— |
| Overall efficiency | η | —— |
| Gear ratio | R (= Nm/Nl) | —— |
| Gear+coupling | $GD^2g$ | ——kg·cm² (lb·in².) |
| Pinion diameter | D | ——mm (in.) |
| Pinion thickness | t | ——mm (in.) |






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **5) Roll Feeder** | | | |
| Load GD² | GD²ℓ | ——kg·cm² (lb·in².) |  |
| Tension | F | ——kg (lb) | |
| Press force | P | ——kg (lb) | |
| Roller diameter | D | ——mm (in.) | |
| Coefficient of friction | μ | —— | |
| Overall efficiency | η | —— | |
| Gear ratio | R (= Nm/Nl) | —— | |
| Gear+coupling | GD²g | ——kg·cm² (lb·in².) | |
| **6) Rotor** | | | |
| Load GD² | GD²ℓ | ——kg·cm² (lb·in².) |  |
| Load torque | Tℓ | ——kg·cm² (lb·in².) | |
| Overall efficiency | η | —— | |
| Gear ratio | R (= Nm/Nl) | —— | |
| Gear+coupling | GD²g | ——kg·cm² (lb·in².) | |
| **7) Others** | | | |
| Load GD² | GD²ℓ | ——kg·cm² (lb·in².) | |
| Load torque | Tℓ | ——kg·cm² (lb·in².) | |
| Motor speed | Nm | ——r/min | |
| DUTY | td | ——s | |
| Positioning time | ts | ——s | |
| Accel/decel time | ta | ——s | |
| ● Duty cycle | | | |
| DUTY | td | ——s |  |
| Positioning distance | Ls | ——mm (in.) | |
| Moving member speed | Vℓ | ——m/min | |
| Positioning time | ts | ——s | |
| Accel/decel time | ta | ——s | |
| Enter either Vℓ or ts. If both are entered, specify priority. | | | |
| ● Operating environment | Operating temperature<br>Other | | |







5



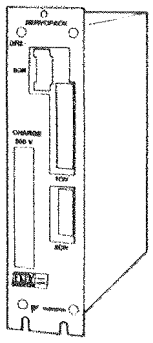
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.1.2 Selecting a Servopack

1) The selection of a DR2 Servopack matched to the servo system in which it is used is based on the Servopack type, that is, the four to six alphanumeric characters after “DR2-”, described below. The numbers 1) to 5) below correspond to the numbers in the flowchart for Servopack selection on the following pages.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com



DR2 - 01 A C P - F

Σ-Series
DR2: DR2 Servopack

1) Rated output
A3: 30W (0.04HP) A5: 50W (0.07HP)
01: 100W (0.13HP) 02: 200W (0.27HP)
03: 300W (0.40HP) 04: 400W (0.53HP)
08: 750W (1.01HP)

2) Supply voltage
A: 200V B: 100V

3) Model
C: Speed/torque/position control

4) Factory setting of applicable motor type*
Blank: SGM Servomotor
P: SGMP Servomotor

5) Option
Blank: Semi-closed loop specifications (standard)
F: Full-closed loop specifications

Flowchart for Servopack selection

| | Selected Servopack type |
|---|---|
| Example | DR2 - 0 2 B S - |
| Axis 1 | DR2-□□□□□-□ |
| Axis 2 | DR2-□□□□□-□ |
| Axis 3 | DR2-□□□□□-□ |
| Axis 4 | DR2-□□□□□-□ |
| Axis 5 | DR2-□□□□□-□ |
| • • • | • • • • • • |

* The applicable motor type (SGM/SGMP) can be changed by setting the user constants.

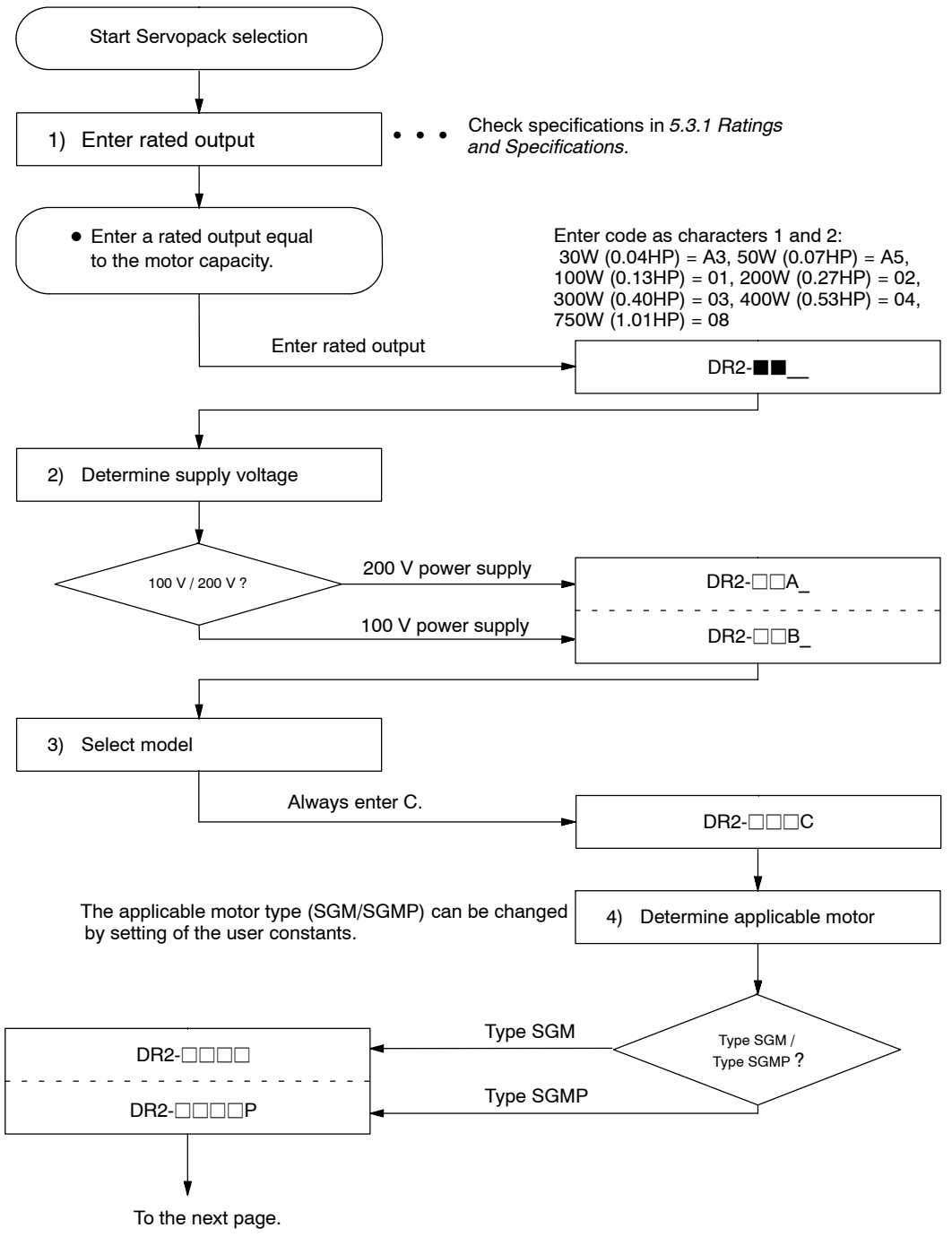




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

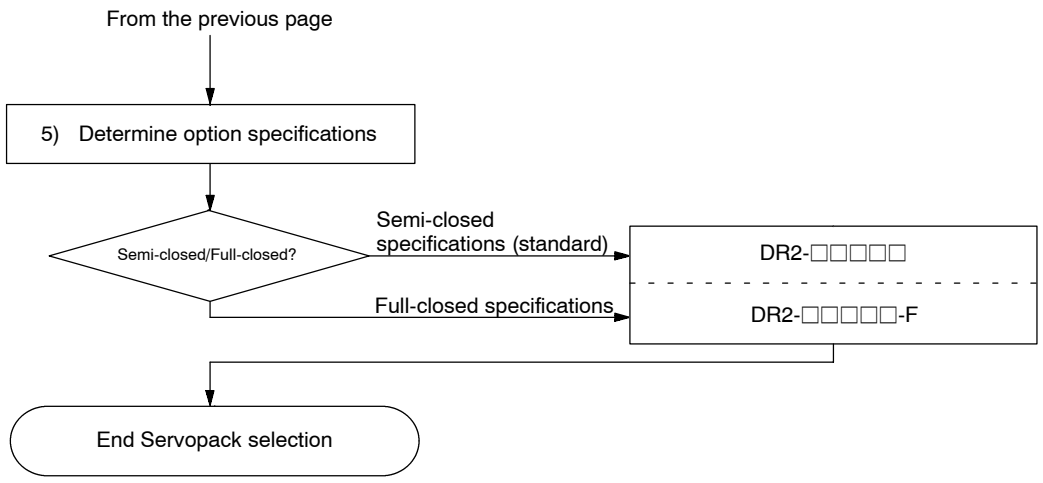
2) The actual selection of the DR2 Servopack is conducted according to the following flowchart.

**Flowchart for Servopack Selection**






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com



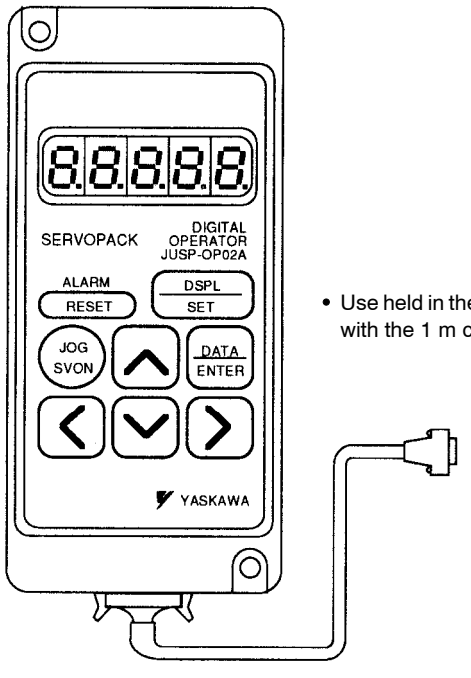





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.1.3 Digital Operator

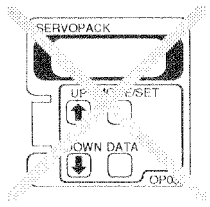
1) Use the following digital operator (hand-held type) for operation.




- Use held in the hand while connected with the 1 m cable supplied.

JUSP-OP02A-1 (Hand-held Type)

**Note** Mount type digital operator (JUSP-OP03A) cannot be used for DR2 Servopack.




JUSP-OP03A (Mount Type)

☞ Instead of digital operator, also personal computer (IBM PC) can be used to monitor or set the user constants.
For details, refer to the manual ”Operation Manual for Personal Computer Monitoring Software”
(Manual No. SIE-S800-15.5).



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.2 SGM Servomotor

This section presents tables of ratings and specifications for SGM and SGMP Servomotors. Refer to these tables when selecting a Servomotor.

5.2.1 Ratings and Specifications . . . . . 217
5.2.2 Mechanical Characteristics . . . . . 230

### 5.2.1 Ratings and Specifications

1) The ratings and specifications of SGM and SGMP Servomotors are shown below. Refer to them as required when selecting a Servomotor.

2) Ratings and Specifications of 200-VAC SGM Servomotors

| | |
|---|---|
| Time rating: | continuous |
| Heat resistance class: | Class B (Class A for UL spec. type SGM-□U) |
| Vibration class: | 15μm or below |
| Withstand voltage: | 1500 VAC |
| Insulation resistance: | 500 VDC 10MΩ min. |
| Enclosure: | totally enclosed, self-cooled |
| Ambient temperature: | 0 to 40°C |
| Ambient humidity: | 20% to 80% (non-condensing) |
| Excitation: | permanent magnet |
| Drive method: | direct drive |
| Mounting: | flange method |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.2.1 Ratings and Specifications cont.*

| SGM Servomotor | | A3A A3V | A5A A5V | 01A 01V | 02A 02V | 04A 04V | 08A 08V |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Rated Output*1 | W (HP) | 30 (0.04) | 50 (0.07) | 100 (0.13) | 200 (0.27) | 400 (0.53) | 750 (1.01) |
| Rated Torque*1 *2 | N·m | 0.095 | 0.159 | 0.318 | 0.637 | 1.27 | 2.39 |
| | (oz·in) | (13.5) | (22.6) | (45.1) | (90.1) | (181) | (338) |
| Instantaneous Peak Torque*1 | N·m | 0.29 | 0.48 | 0.96 | 1.91 | 3.82 | 7.1 |
| | (oz·in) | (40.5) | (67.7) | (135) | (270) | (542) | (1010) |
| Rated Curent*1 | A (rms) | 0.42 | 0.6 | 0.87 | 2.0 | 2.6 | 4.4 |
| Instantaneous Max Current*1 | A (rms) | 1.3 | 1.9 | 2.8 | 6.0 | 8.0 | 13.9 |
| Rated Speed*1 | r/min | 3000 | | | | | |
| Instantaneous Max Speed*1 | r/min | 4500 | | | | | |
| Torque Constant*1 | N·m/A (rms) | 0.255 | 0.286 | 0.408 | 0.355 | 0.533 | 0.590 |
| | (oz·in/A) (rms) | (36.2) | (40.5) | (57.8) | (50.2) | (75.5) | (83.5) |
| Moment of Inertia [$J_M$] | $kg·m^2 \times 10^{-4}$ | 0.021 | 0.026 | 0.040 | 0.123 | 0.191 | 0.671 |
| | $(oz·in·s^2 \times 10^{-3})$ | (0.288) | (0.368) | (0.576) | (1.74) | (2.70) | (9.52) |
| Rated Power Rate*1 | kW/s | 4.36 | 9.63 | 25.4 | 32.8 | 84.6 | 85.1 |
| Rated Angular Acceleration*1 | $rad/s^2$ | 45200 | 61200 | 79500 | 51800 | 666000 | 35600 |
| Inertia Time Constant | ms | 1.5 | 0.9 | 0.5 | 0.4 | 0.3 | 0.3 |
| Inductive Time Constant | ms | 1.5 | 1.8 | 1.9 | 5.4 | 6.4 | 13 |

5

*1 These items and torque-motor speed characteristics quoted in combination with a DR2 Servopack at an armature winding temperature of 100°C. Other values quoted at 20°C. All values typical at power voltage 200V.

*2 Rated torques are continuous allowable torque values at 40°C with a 250 x 250 x 6 (mm) (9.84 x 9.84 x 0.24 (in.)) heat sink attached.

**NOTE** The ratings and specifications above refer to a standard Servomotor.

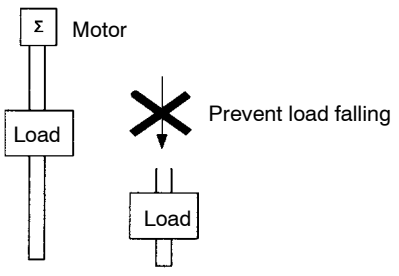
Add the numerical values below to the moment of inertia values in the table for a motor fitted with **a holding brake** and/or a 12-bit absolute encoder.

Other specifications will also change slightly.

TERMS

**Holding Brake**

The holding brake is automatically applied to the motor shaft to prevent the load falling in vertical axis applications when the motor power supply is turned off or fails. It is only to hold the load and cannot be used for stopping motor.






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Item | Type | SGM– | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | A3A A3V | A5A A5V | 01A 01V | 02A 02V | 04A 04V | 08A 08V |
| Holding brake | $kg{\cdot}m^2\times10^{-4}$ | 0.0085 | | | 0.058 | | 0.14 |
| | $(oz{\cdot}in{\cdot}s^2\times10^{-3})$ | (0.120) | | | (0.816) | | (1.98) |
| 12-bit absolute encoder | $kg{\cdot}m^2\times10^{-4}$ | 0.025 | | | | | |
| | $(oz{\cdot}in{\cdot}s^2\times10^{-3})$ | (0.352) | | | | | |

### Electrical Specifications of the Holding Brake

a) SGM Type (Rated Voltage: 90 VDC) . . Standard

| Motor Model | Motor Capacity (W) | Holding Brake Specifications | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Capacity (W) | Holding Torque (kg-cm) | Coil Resistance (Ω at 20°C) | Rated Current (A at 20°C) |
| SGM-A3□□□□ | 30 | 6 | 2.0 | 1350 | 0.067 |
| SGM-A5□□□□ | 50 | 6 | 2.0 | 1350 | 0.067 |
| SGM-01□□□□ | 100 | 6 | 3.5 | 1350 | 0.067 |
| SGM-02□□□□ | 200 | 6.5 | 15 | 1246 | 0.072 |
| SGM-04□□□□ | 400 | 6.5 | 15 | 1246 | 0.072 |
| SGM-08□□□□ | 750 | 6 | 25 | 1350 | 0.067 |

b) SGM Type (Rated Voltage: 24 VDC) . . Semi-standard

| Motor Model | Motor Capacity (W) | Holding Brake Specifications | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Capacity (W) | Holding Torque (kg-cm) | Coil Resistance (Ω at 20°C) | Rated Current (A at 20°C) |
| SGM-A3□□□□ | 30 | 6 | 2.0 | 96 | 0.25 |
| SGM-A5□□□□ | 50 | 6 | 2.0 | 96 | 0.25 |
| SGM-01□□□□ | 100 | 6 | 3.5 | 96 | 0.25 |
| SGM-02□□□□ | 200 | 6.5 | 15 | 89 | 0.27 |
| SGM-04□□□□ | 400 | 6.5 | 15 | 89 | 0.27 |
| SGM-08□□□□ | 750 | 6 | 25 | 96 | 0.25 |



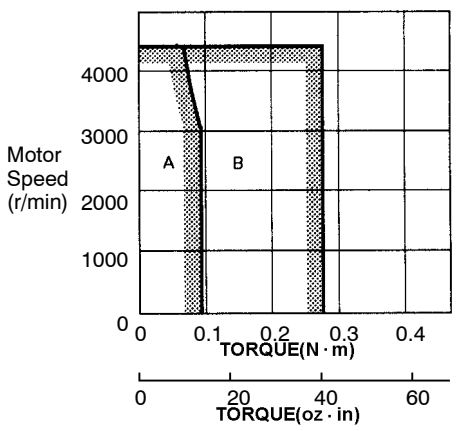


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

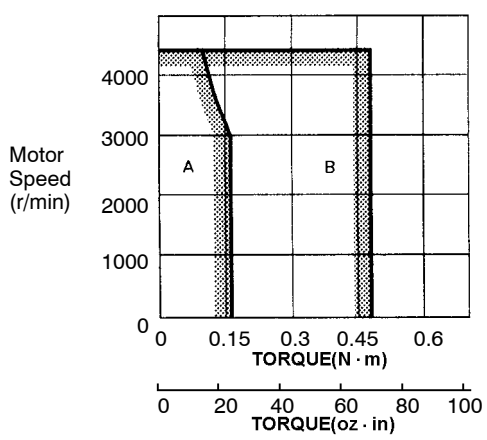
*5.2.1 Ratings and Specifications cont.*

3) 200-VAC SGM Servomotor Torque-Motor Speed Characteristics

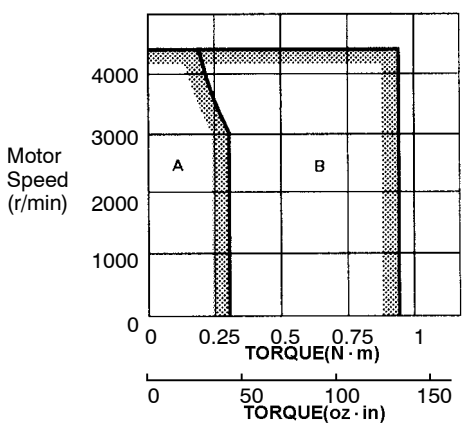
• SGM-A3A (V)



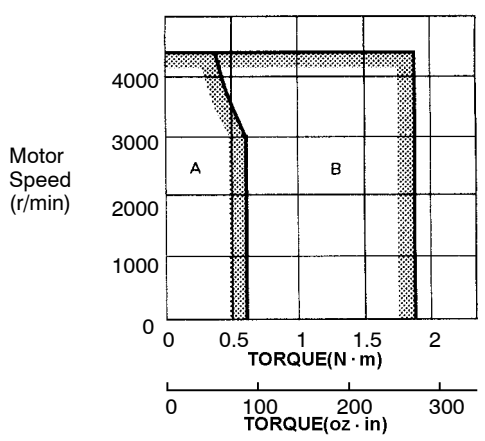

• SGM-A5A (V)



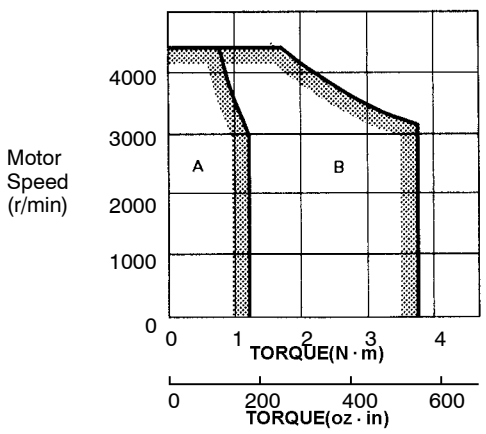

• SGM-01A (V)



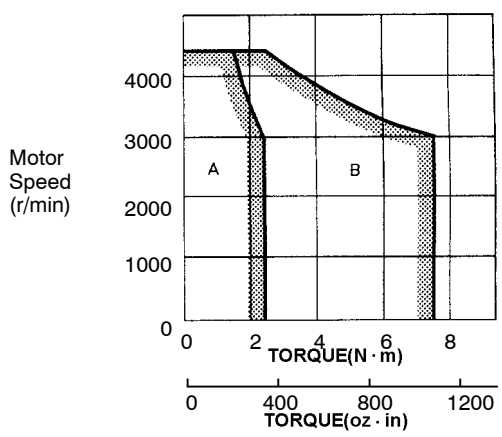

• SGM-02A (V)




• SGM-04A (V)




• SGM-08A (V)




A: Continuous Duty Zone
B: Intermittent Duty Zone



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4) Ratings and Specifications of 200-VAC SGMP Servomotors

| | |
|---|---|
| Time rating: | continuous |
| Heat resistance class: | Class B (Class A for UL spec. type SGMP-□U) |
| Vibration class: | 15μm or below |
| Withstand voltage: | 1500 VAC |
| Insulation resistance: | 500 VDC 10MΩ min. |
| Enclosure: | totally enclosed, self-cooled |
| Ambient temperature: | 0 to 40°C |
| Ambient humidity: | 20% to 80% (non-condensing) |
| Excitation: | permanent magnet |
| Drive method: | direct drive |
| Mounting: | flange method |

| SGMP Servomotor | | | 01A<br>01V | 02A<br>02V | 04A<br>04V | 08A<br>08V |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Rated Output *1 | | W (HP) | 100 (0.13) | 200 (0.27) | 400 (0.54) | 750 (1.01) |
| Rated Torque *1 *2 | | N·m | 0.318 | 0.637 | 1.27 | 2.39 |
| | | (oz·in) | (45.1) | (90.1) | (181) | (338) |
| Instantaneous Peak Torque *1 | | N·m | 0.96 | 1.91 | 3.82 | 7.1 |
| | | (oz·in) | (135) | (270) | (542) | (1010) |
| Rated Current *1 | | A (rms) | 0.89 | 2.0 | 2.6 | 4.1 |
| Instantaneous Peak Current *1 | | A (rms) | 2.8 | 6.0 | 8.0 | 13.9 |
| Rated Rotation Speed *1 | | r/min | 3000 | | | |
| Max. Rotation Speed *1 | | r/min | 4500 | | | |
| Torque Constant *1 | | N·m/A (rms) | 0.392 | 0.349 | 0.535 | 0.641 |
| | | oz·in/A (rms) | 55.5 | 49.4 | 75.8 | 91.0 |
| Moment of Inertia | Incremental encoder, no holding brake | (=$GD^2_M/4$) $kg·m^2×10^{-4}$ | 0.065 | 0.209 | 0.347 | 2.11 |
| | | $(oz·in·s^2×10^{-3})$ | (0.917) | (2.96) | (4.92) | (29.9) |
| | Incremental encoder, with holding brake | (=$GD^2_M/4$) $kg·m^2×10^{-4}$ | 0.103 | 0.307 | 0.445 | 2.52 |
| | | $(oz·in·s^2×10^{-3})$ | (1.46) | (4.35) | (6.31) | (35.7) |
| | Absolute encoder, no holding brake | (=$GD^2_M/4$) $kg·m^2×10^{-4}$ | 0.090 | 0.234 | 0.372 | 2.14 |
| | | $(oz·in·s^2×10^{-3})$ | (1.27) | (3.31) | (5.27) | (30.3) |
| | Absolute encoder, with holding brake | (=$GD^2_M/4$) $kg·m^2×10^{-4}$ | 0.128 | 0.332 | 0.470 | 2.55 |
| | | $(oz·in·s^2×10^{-3})$ | (1.81) | (4.70) | (6.66) | (36.1) |
| Rated Power Rate *1 | | kW/s | 15.7 | 19.4 | 46.8 | 26.9 |
| Rated Angular Acceleration *1 | | $rad/s^2$ | 49200 | 30500 | 36700 | 11300 |
| Inertia Time Constant | | ms | 0.7 | 0.6 | 0.4 | 0.7 |
| Inductive Time Constant | | ms | 3.7 | 7.4 | 8.5 | 18 |

*1 These items and torque-motor speed characteristics quoted in combination with a DR2 Servopack at an armature winding temperature of 100°C. Other values quoted at 20°C. All values typical at power voltage 200V.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*2 Rated torques are continuous allowable torque values at 40°C with an attached heat sink as specified below.

Heat sink dimensions 01A, 02A, 04A . 250×250×6(mm), (9.84×9.84×0.24 (in.))
08A . . . . . 300×300×12(mm),(11.81×11.81×0.47(in.))

**Electrical Specifications of the Holding Brake**

a) SGMP Type (Rated Voltage: 90 VDC) . . . . . Standard

| Motor Model | Motor Capacity (W) | Holding Brake Specifications | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Capacity (W) | Holding Torque (kg-cm) | Coil Resistance (Ω at 20°C) | Rated Current (A at 20°C) |
| SGMP-01□□□□ | 100 | 6 | 5.0 | 1555 | 0.062 |
| SGMP-02□□□□ | 200 | 5 | 10 | 1573 | 0.056 |
| SGMP-04□□□□ | 400 | 7.6 | 20 | 1062 | 0.085 |
| SGMP-08□□□□ | 750 | 7.5 | 37 | 1083 | 0.083 |

b) SGMP Type (Rated Voltage: 24 VDC) . . . . . Semi-standard

| Motor Model | Motor Capacity (W) | Holding Brake Specifications | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Capacity (W) | Holding Torque (kg-cm) | Coil Resistance (Ω at 20°C) | Rated Current (A at 20°C) |
| SGMP-01□□□□ | 100 | 6 | 5.0 | 114 | 0.23 |
| SGMP-02□□□□ | 200 | 5 | 10 | 116 | 0.21 |
| SGMP-04□□□□ | 400 | 7.6 | 20 | 89 | 0.29 |
| SGMP-08□□□□ | 750 | 7.5 | 37 | 77 | 0.31 |

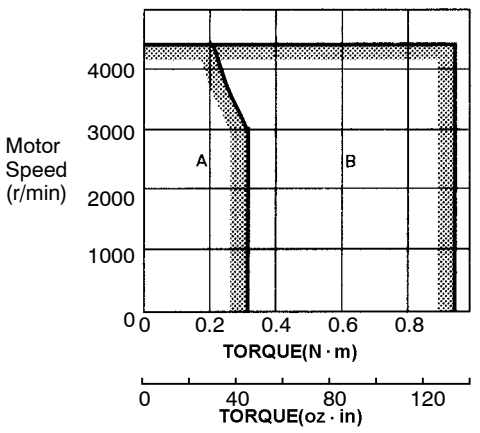




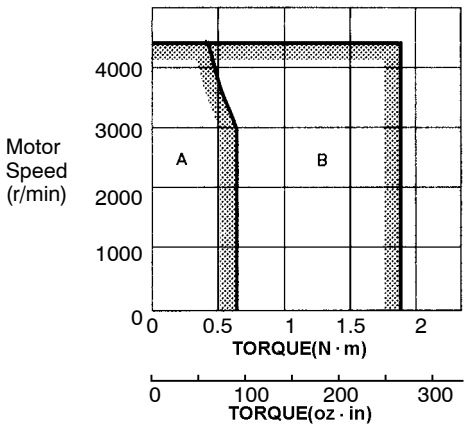
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5) 200-VAC SGMP Servomotor Torque-Motor Speed Characteristics

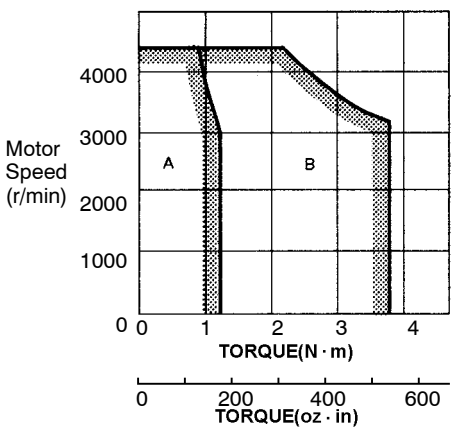
• SGMP-01A (V)



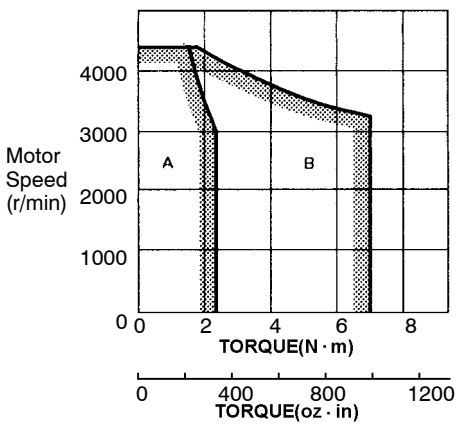

• SGMP-02A (V)




• SGMP-04A (V)




• SGMP-08A (V)




A: Continuous Duty Zone
B: Intermittent Duty Zone





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.2.1 Ratings and Specifications cont.*

6) Ratings and Specifications of 100-VAC SGM Servomotors

| | |
|---|---|
| Time rating: | continuous |
| Heat resistance class: | Class B (Class A for UL spec. type SGM-□U) |
| Vibration class: | 15μm or below |
| Withstand voltage: | 1500 VAC |
| Insulation resistance: | 500 VDC 10MΩ min. |
| Enclosure: | totally enclosed, self-cooled |
| Ambient temperature: | 0 to 40°C |
| Ambient humidity: | 20% to 80% (non-condensing) |
| Excitation: | permanent magnet |
| Drive method: | direct drive |
| Mounting: | flange method |

| SGM Servomotor | | A3B<br>A3W | A5B<br>A5W | 01B<br>01W | 02B<br>02W | 03B<br>03W |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Rated Output *1 | W (HP) | 30 (0.04) | 50 (0.07) | 100 (0.13) | 200 (0.27) | 300 (0.40) |
| Rated Torque *1 *2 | N·m | 0.095 | 0.159 | 0.318 | 0.637 | 0.95 |
| | (oz·in) | (13.5) | (22.6) | (45.1) | (90.1) | (135.0) |
| Instantaneous Peak Torque *1 | N·m | 0.29 | 0.48 | 0.96 | 1.91 | 3.72 |
| | (oz·in) | (40.5) | (67.7) | (135) | (270) | (527.7) |
| Rated Current *1 | A (rms) | 0.63 | 0.9 | 2.2 | 2.7 | 3.7 |
| Instantaneous Peak Current *1 | A (rms) | 2.0 | 2.9 | 7.1 | 8.4 | 14.8 |
| Rated Rotation Speed *1 | r/min | 3000 | | | | |
| Max. Rotation Speed *1 | r/min | 4500 | | | | |
| Torque Constant *1 | N·m/A (rms) | 0.168 | 0.194 | 0.156 | 0.255 | 0.279 |
| | oz·in/A (rms) | (23.8) | (27.5) | (22.1) | (36.1) | (39.6) |
| Moment of Inertia | (=$GD^2_M/4$)<br>$kg·m^2 \times 10^{-4}$ | 0.021 | 0.026 | 0.040 | 0.123 | 0.191 |
| | ($oz·in·s^2 \times 10^{-3}$) | (0.288) | (0.368) | (0.576) | (1.74) | (2.71) |
| Rated Power Rating *1 | kW/s | 4.36 | 9.63 | 25.4 | 32.8 | 47.3 |
| Rated Angular Acceleration *1 | $rad/s^2$ | 45200 | 61200 | 79500 | 51800 | 49700 |
| Inertia Time Constant | ms | 1.6 | 0.9 | 0.6 | 0.4 | 0.3 |
| Inductive Time Constant | ms | 1.3 | 1.6 | 1.6 | 5.7 | 5.3 |

*1 These items and torque-motor speed characteristics quoted in combination with a DR2 Servopack at an armature winding temperature of 100°C. Other values quoted at 20°C. All values typical at power voltage 100V.

*2 Rated torques are continuous allowable torque values at 40°C with a 250 x 250 x 6 (mm) (9.84 x 9.84 x 0.24 (in.)) heat sink attached.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**NOTE** The ratings and specifications above refer to a standard Servomotor.

Add the numerical values below to the moment of inertia values in the table for a motor fitted with a holding brake and/or a 12-bit absolute encoder.

Other specifications will also change slightly.

| Item \ Type | | SGM- | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | A3B | A5B | 01B | 02B | 03B |
| Holding brake | $kg \cdot m^2 \times 10^{-4}$ | 0.0085 | | | 0.058 | |
| | $(oz \cdot in \cdot s^2 \times 10^{-3})$ | 0.12 | | | 0.82 | |
| 12-bit absolute encoder | $kg \cdot m^2 \times 10^{-4}$ | 0.025 | | | | |
| | $(oz \cdot in \cdot s^2 \times 10^{-3})$ | 0.36 | | | | |

### Electrical Specifications of the Holding Brake

a) SGM Type (Rated Voltage: 90 VDC) . . Standard

| Motor Model | Motor Capacity (W) | Holding Brake Specifications | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Capacity (W) | Holding Torque (kg-cm) | Coil Resistance (Ω at 20°C) | Rated Current (A at 20°C) |
| SGM-A3□□□□ | 30 | 6 | 2.0 | 1350 | 0.067 |
| SGM-A5□□□□ | 50 | 6 | 2.0 | 1350 | 0.067 |
| SGM-01□□□□ | 100 | 6 | 3.5 | 1350 | 0.067 |
| SGM-02□□□□ | 200 | 6.5 | 15 | 1246 | 0.072 |
| SGM-03□□□□ | 400 | 6.5 | 15 | 1246 | 0.072 |

b) SGM Type (Rated Voltage: 24 VDC) . . Semi-standard

| Motor Model | Motor Capacity (W) | Holding Brake Specifications | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Capacity (W) | Holding Torque (kg-cm) | Coil Resistance (Ω at 20°C) | Rated Current (A at 20°C) |
| SGM-A3□□□□ | 30 | 6 | 2.0 | 96 | 0.25 |
| SGM-A5□□□□ | 50 | 6 | 2.0 | 96 | 0.25 |
| SGM-01□□□□ | 100 | 6 | 3.5 | 96 | 0.25 |
| SGM-02□□□□ | 200 | 6.5 | 15 | 89 | 0.27 |
| SGM-03□□□□ | 400 | 6.5 | 15 | 89 | 0.27 |

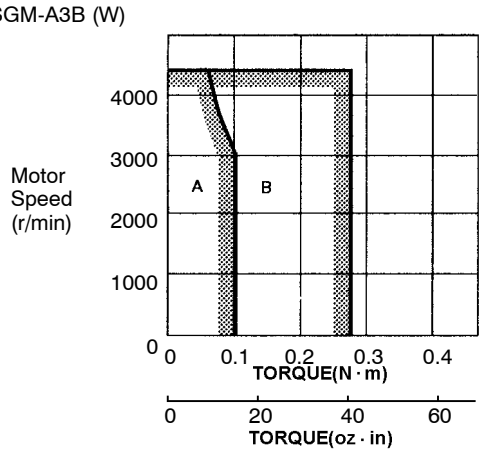


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

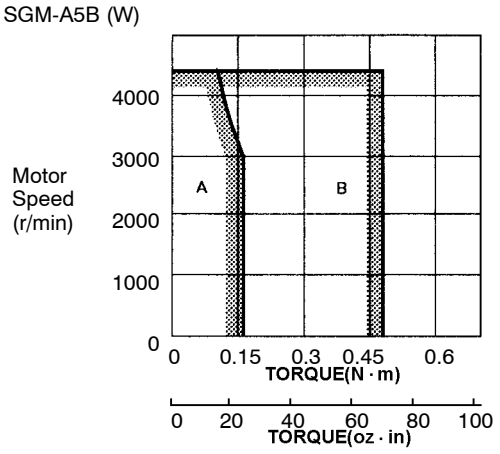
*5.2.1 Ratings and Specifications cont.*

7) 100-VAC SGM Servomotor Torque-Motor Speed Characteristics

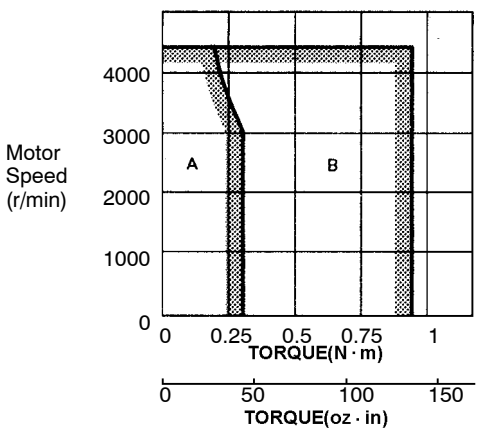
• SGM-A3B (W)



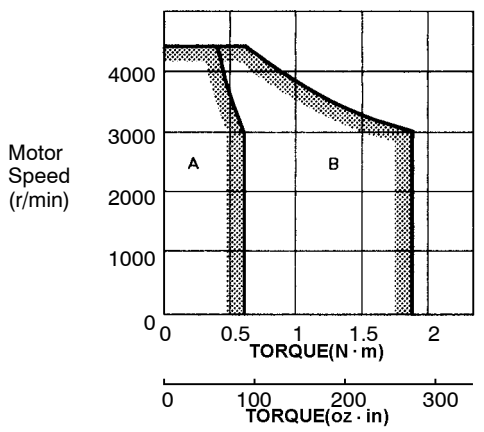

• SGM-A5B (W)



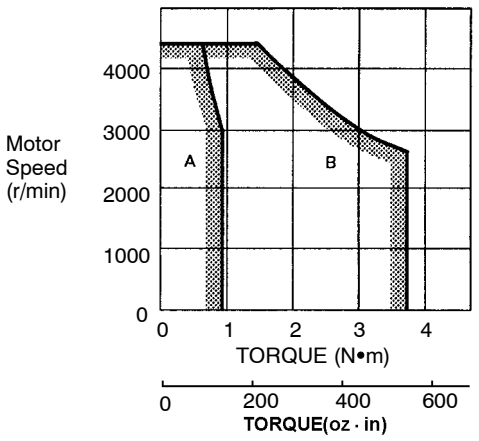

• SGM-01B (W)




• SGM-02B (W)




• SGM-03B (W)




A: Continuous Duty Zone
B: Intermittent Duty Zone



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

8) Ratings and Specifications of 100-VAC SGMP Servomotors

| | |
|---|---|
| Time rating: | continuous |
| Heat resistance class: | Class B (Class A for UL spec. type SGMP-□U) |
| Vibration class: | 15μm or below |
| Withstand voltage: | 1500 VAC |
| Insulation resistance: | 500 VDC 10MΩ min. |
| Enclosure: | totally enclosed, self-cooled |
| Ambient temperature: | 0 to 40°C |
| Ambient humidity: | 20% to 80% (non-condensing) |
| Excitation: | permanent magnet |
| Drive method: | direct drive |
| Mounting: | flange method |

| SGMP Servomotor | | | 01B<br>01W | 02B<br>02W | 03B<br>03W |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Rated Output*1 | | W (HP) | 100 (0.13) | 200 (0.27) | 300 (0.40) |
| Rated Torque*1 *2 | | N·m | 0.318 | 0.637 | 0.955 |
| | | (oz·in) | (45.1) | (90.1) | (135) |
| Instantaneous Peak Torque*1 | | N·m | 0.96 | 1.91 | 2.86 |
| | | (oz·in) | (135) | (270) | (406) |
| Rated Current*1 | | A (rms) | 2.2 | 2.7 | 4.3 |
| Instantaneous Peak Current*1 | | A (rms) | 7.1 | 8.4 | 13.9 |
| Rated Rotation Speed*1 | | r/min | 3000 | | |
| Max. Rotation Speed*1 | | r/min | 4500 | | |
| Torque Constant*1 | | N·m/A (rms) | 0.160 | 0.258 | 0.246 |
| | | oz·in/A (rms) | 22.8 | 36.5 | 34.9 |
| Moment of Inertia | Incremental encoder, no holding brake | (=$GD^2_M/4$) $kg·m^2×10^{-4}$ | 0.065 | 0.209 | 0.347 |
| | | ($oz·in·s^2×10^{-3}$) | (0.917) | (2.96) | (4.92) |
| | Incremental encoder, with holding brake | (=$GD^2_M/4$) $kg·m^2×10^{-4}$ | 0.103 | 0.307 | 0.445 |
| | | ($oz·in·s^2×10^{-3}$) | (1.46) | (4.35) | (6.31) |
| | Absolute encoder, no holding brake | (=$GD^2_M/4$) $kg·m^2×10^{-4}$ | 0.090 | 0.234 | 0.372 |
| | | ($oz·in·s^2×10^{-3}$) | (1.27) | (3.31) | (5.27) |
| | Absolute encoder, with holding brake | (=$GD^2_M/4$) $kg·m^2×10^{-4}$ | 0.128 | 0.332 | 0.470 |
| | | ($oz·in·s^2×10^{-3}$) | (1.81) | (4.70) | (6.66) |
| Rated Power Rate*1 | | kW/s | 15.7 | 19.4 | 26.3 |
| Rated Angular Acceleration*1 | | $rad/s^2$ | 49200 | 30500 | 27500 |
| Inertia Time Constant | | ms | 0.8 | 0.7 | 0.4 |
| Inductive Time Constant | | ms | 3.6 | 6.3 | 8.5 |

*1 These items and torque-motor speed characteristics quoted in combination with a DR2 Servopack at an armature winding temperature of 100°C. Other values quoted at 20°C. All values typical at power voltage 100V.

*2 Rated torques are continuous allowable torque values at 40°C with a 250 x 250 x 6 (mm) (9.84 x 9.84 x 0.24 (in.)) heat sink attached.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.2.1 Ratings and Specifications cont.*

### Electrical Specifications of the Holding Brake

a) SGMP Type (Rated Voltage: 90 VDC) . . . . . Standard

| Motor Model | Motor Capacity (W) | Holding Brake Specifications | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Capacity (W) | Holding Torque (kg-cm) | Coil Resistance (Ω at 20°C) | Rated Current (A at 20°C) |
| SGMP-01□□□□ | 100 | 6 | 5.0 | 1555 | 0.062 |
| SGMP-02□□□□ | 200 | 5 | 10 | 1573 | 0.056 |
| SGMP-04□□□□ | 400 | 7.6 | 20 | 1062 | 0.085 |
| SGMP-08□□□□ | 750 | 7.5 | 37 | 1083 | 0.083 |
| SGMP-15□□□□ | 1500 | 10 | 73 | 832 | 0.11 |

b) SGMP Type (Rated Voltage: 24 VDC) . . . . . Semi-standard

| Motor Model | Motor Capacity (W) | Holding Brake Specifications | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Capacity (W) | Holding Torque (kg-cm) | Coil Resistance (Ω at 20°C) | Rated Current (A at 20°C) |
| SGMP-01□□□□ | 100 | 6 | 5.0 | 114 | 0.23 |
| SGMP-02□□□□ | 200 | 5 | 10 | 116 | 0.21 |
| SGMP-04□□□□ | 400 | 7.6 | 20 | 89 | 0.29 |
| SGMP-08□□□□ | 750 | 7.5 | 37 | 77 | 0.31 |
| SGMP-15□□□□ | 1500 | 10 | 73 | 58 | 0.42 |

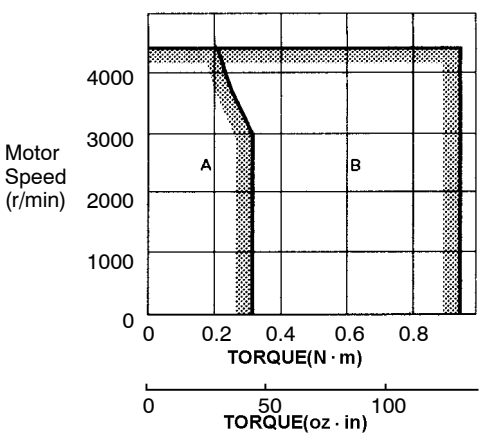




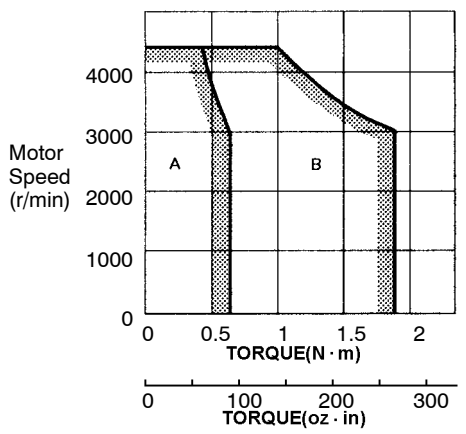
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

### 9) 100-VAC SGMP Servomotor Torque-Motor Speed Characteristics

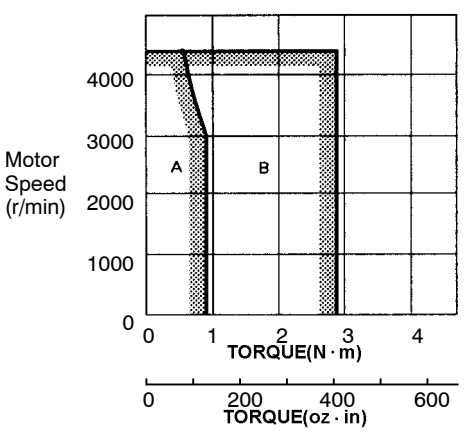
• SGMP-01B (W)




• SGMP-02B (W)




• SGMP-03B (W)




A: Continuous Duty Zone
B: Intermittent Duty Zone



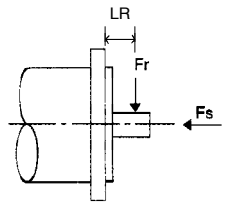
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.2.2 Mechanical Characteristics

1) Allowable Radial Load, Allowable Thrust Load

The output shaft allowable loads for SGM and SGMP Servomotor are shown below.

Conduct mechanical design such that the thrust loads and radial loads do not exceed the values stated below.

| Servomotor Type | Allowable Radial Load Fr [N(lb)] | Allowable Thrust Load Fs [N(lb)] | LR mm (in.) | Reference Diagram |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| SGM-A3 | 68 (15) | 54 (12) | 20 (0.82) |  |
| SGM-A5 | 68 (15) | 54 (12) | 20 (0.82) | |
| SGM-01 | 78 (17) | 54 (12) | 20 (0.82) | |
| SGM-02 | 245 (55) | 74 (16) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGM-03 | 245 (55) | 74 (16) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGM-04 | 245 (55) | 74 (16) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGM-08 | 392 (88) | 147 (33) | 35 (1.43) | |
| SGMP-01 | 78 (17) | 49 (11) | 20 (0.82) | |
| SGMP-02 | 245 (55) | 68 (15) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGMP-03 | 245 (55) | 68 (15) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGMP-04 | 245 (55) | 68 (15) | 25 (1.02) | |
| SGMP-08 | 392 (88) | 147 (33) | 35 (1.43) | |



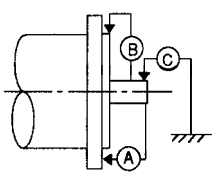
**Note** The radial load and thrust load limit values are the sum of the loads generated by the motor torque and the external loads applied to the shaft.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) Mechanical Tolerance

The tolerances of the SGM and SGMP Servomotor output shaft and installation are shown in the table below.

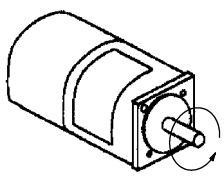
| Tolerance (T.I.R.) | | Reference Diagram |
|---|---|---|
| Perpendicularity between flange face and output shaft (A) | 0.04mm (0.0016in.) |  |
| Mating concentricity of flange O.D. (B) | 0.04mm (0.0016in.) | |
| Run-out at end of shaft (C) | 0.02mm (0.00079in.) | |



**Note** T.I.R. = Total Indicator Reading

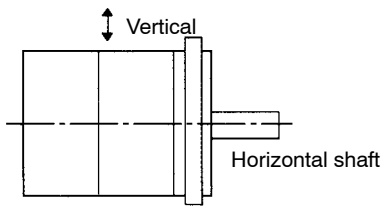
3) Direction of Motor Rotation

Positive rotation of the servomotor is counter-clockwise, viewing from the load.



4) Impact Resistance

Mount the servomotor with the axis horizontal. The servomotor must withstand the following vertical impacts.

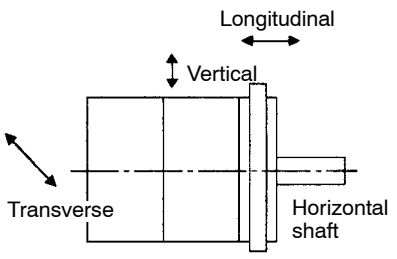



- Impact Acceleration: 98 $m/s^2$ (10 G)
- Number of Impacts: 2

**NOTE** In SGM and SGMP Servomotors, an accurate detector is attached to the shaft at the opposite end from the load.
Avoid applying impacts directly to the shaft as these may damage the detector.

5) Vibration Resistance

Mount the servomotor with the axis horizontal. The servomotor must withstand the following vibration accelerations in three directions: vertical, transverse, and longitudinal.

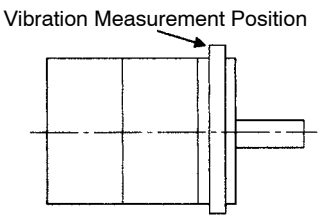



- Vibration Acceleration: 24.5 $m/s^2$ (2.5 G)



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

6) Vibration Class




The SGM and SGMP Servomotors meet the following **vibration class** at rated speed.

- Vibration Class: 15μm or below



TERMS

**Vibration Class**

Vibration class 15μm or below indicates that the total amplitude of vibration of the motor alone, running at rated speed, does not exceed 15μm.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 5.3 Servopack Ratings and Specifications

This section presents tables of DR2 Servopack ratings and specifications separately for speed/torque control and for position control.


5.3.1 Ratings and Specifications . . . . . 233
5.3.2 Power Consumption . . . . . 238
5.3.3 Overload Characteristics . . . . . 239
5.3.4 Starting Time and Stopping Time . . . . . 240
5.3.5 Load Inertia . . . . . 241
5.3.6 Overhanging Loads . . . . . 246


## 5.3.1 Ratings and Specifications

1) The ratings and specifications of the DR2 Servopack are shown below. Refer to them as required when selecting a Servopack.
Refer to the specifications listed for combination with the appropriate type of Servomotor.

2) Ratings and Specifications of DR2 Servopack **for Speed/Torque Control**

| Voltage | | | 200 VAC | | | | | | 100 VAC | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Servopack Type DR2- | | | A3AC | A5AC | 01AC | 02AC | 04AC | 08AC | A3BC | A5BC | 01BC | 02BC | 03BC |
| Max. Applicable Motor Capacity W (HP) | | | 30 (0.04) | 50 (0.07) | 100 (0.13) | 200 (0.27) | 400 (0.53) | 750 (1.01) | 30 (0.04) | 50 (0.07) | 100 (0.13) | 200 (0.27) | 300 (0.40) |
| Combined Specifications | Motor | Type | A3A□ | A5A□ | 01A□ | 02A□ | 04A□ | 08A□ | A3B□ | A5B□ | 01B□ | 02B□ | 03B□ |
| | | Motor Capacity W (HP) | 30 (0.04) | 50 (0.07) | 100 (0.13) | 200 (0.27) | 400 (0.53) | 750 (1.01) | 30 (0.04) | 50 (0.07) | 100 (0.13) | 200 (0.27) | 300 (0.40) |
| | | Rated/Max. Motor Speed | 3000/4500 r/min | | | | | | 3000/4500 r/min | | | | |
| | | Applicable encoder | Incremental encoder 2048 P/R, absolute encoder 1024 P/R | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Allowable Load Inertia*1 $J_L$ $kg \cdot m^2 \times 10^{-4}$ $(oz \cdot in \cdot s^2 \times 10^{-3})$ **SGM (Upper)/ SGMP (Lower)** | 0.63 (8.80) | 0.78 (11.0) | 1.20 (17.0) | 3.69 (52.2) | 5.73 (81.1) | 20.1 (284.6) | 0.63 (8.80) | 0.78 (11.0) | 1.20 (17.0) | 3.69 (52.2) | 5.73 (81.1) |
| | | | – | – | 1.95 (27.6) | 6.27 (88.8) | 10.41 (147.4) | 18.5 (262.0) | – | – | 1.95 (27.6) | 6.27 (88.8) | 10.41 (147.4) |
| | Max. Output Current | | 1.3 | 1.9 | 2.8 | 6.0 | 8.0 | 13.9 | 2.0 | 2.9 | 7.1 | 8.4 | 14.8 |
| | Continuous Output Current A (rms)*9 | | 0.42 | 0.60 | 0.87 (0.89) | 2.0 | 2.6 | 4.4 (4.1) | 0.63 | 0.90 | 2.2 | 2.7 | 3.7 (4.3) |
| | Max. Output Current A (rms) | | 1.3 | 1.9 | 2.8 | 6.0 | 8.0 | 13.9 | 2.0 | 2.9 | 7.1 | 8.4 | 14.8 |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.3.1 Ratings and Specifications cont.*

| Voltage | | | 200 VAC | | | | | | 100 VAC | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Servopack Type DR2- | | | A3AC | A5AC | 01AC | 02AC | 04AC | 08AC | A3BC | A5BC | 01BC | 02BC | 03BC |
| Max. Applicable Motor Capacity W (HP) | | | 30 (0.04) | 50 (0.07) | 100 (0.13) | 200 (0.27) | 400 (0.53) | 750 (1.01) | 30 (0.04) | 50 (0.07) | 100 (0.13) | 200 (0.27) | 300 (0.40) |
| Basic Specifications | Power Supply (Main/control circuit) | | Single-phase 200 to 230 VAC+10% to −15%, 50/60Hz | | | | | | Single-phase 100 to 115 VAC+10% to −15%*2, 50/60Hz | | | | |
| | Control Method | | Single-phase, full-wave rectification IGBT-PWM (sine-wave driven) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Feedback | | Incremental encoder 2048 P/R, absolute encoder 1024 P/R | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Location | Ambient Temp. | 0 to +55°C*3 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Storage Temp. | −20 to +85°C | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Ambient/Storage Humidity | 90% or less (non-condensing) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Vibration/Shock Resistance | 0.5/2G | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Structure | | Rack-mounted*7 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Approx. Mass kg (lb) | | 2.5 (5.51) | | | | 3.7 (8.16) | | 2.5 (5.51) | | | 3.7 (8.16) | |
| Performance | Speed Control Range*4 | | 1:5000 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Speed Regulation*5 | Load Regulation | 0% to 100%:0.01% max. (at rated speed) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Voltage Regulation | +10% to -15%: 0.01% max. (at rated speed) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Temperature Regulation | 25±25°C: ±0.2% max. (at rated speed) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Frequency Characteristics | | 250 Hz (at $J_L=J_M$) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Torque Control (Repeatability) | | ±2.0% | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Accel/Decel Time Setting | | 0 to 10 s | | | | | | | | | | |
| Input Signal | Speed Reference | Rated Reference Voltage | ±6 VDC (positive motor rotation with positive reference) at rated speed (factory setting)<br>Variable setting range: ±2 to ±10 VDC at rated torque | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Input Impedance | Approx. 30kΩ | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Circuit Time Constant | Approx. 330μs | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Torque Reference | Rated Reference Voltage | ±3 VDC (positive motor rotation with positive reference) at rated speed (factory setting)<br>Variable setting range: ±1 to ±10 VDC at rated torque | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Input Impedance | Approx. 30kΩ | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Circuit Time Constant | Approx. 330μs | | | | | | | | | | |
| I/O Signals | Position Output | Output Form | A-, B-, C-phase line driver*8 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Frequency Dividing Ratio | (16 to N) /N (N=2048, 1024)*6 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Sequence Input | | Servo ON, P drive (or motor forward/reverse by torque control, zero-clamp drive reference, or internal setting speed), forward run stop (P-OT), reverse run stop (N-OT), current limit + selection (or internal speed selection), current limit − selection (or internal speed selection), alarm reset | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Sequence Output | | Torque limit detection (or speed coincidence) , motor running output (or external brake interlock), servo ready, servo alarm, 3-bit alarm codes | | | | | | | | | | |
| Dynamic Brake | | | Operated at main power OFF, servo alarm or overtravel. | | | | | | | | | | |
| External Regenerative Unit | | | Required when exceeding the allowable load inertia*1 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Overtravel | | | Dynamic brake stop at P-OT or N-OT or deceleration stop | | | | | | | | | | |
| Protective Functions | | | Overcurrent, overload, overvoltage, overspeed, reference input read error, overrun prevention, origin error, CPU error, encoder error, fuse blown | | | | | | | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | |
|---|---|
| Indicators | Power (green LED) and status/alarm (red, 7-segment LEDs) |
| | Digital operator: status/alarm (red, 7-segment LEDs ×5) |
| Others | Torque control, zero clamp operation (position loop stop}, soft start/stop, speed coincidence, brake interlock signal output, reverse run connection, JOG run, auto-tuning |

*1 Allowable load inertia ranges require no optional regenerative unit (applicable to 200V 30W to 200W) or external regenerative resistor (applicable to 100V 200W, 300W or 200V 400W, 750W). Values are when motor speed is 3000r/min max. If load inertias exceed these ranges, restrict the operation or use a regenerative unit (applicable to 200V 30W to 200W) or external regenerative resistor (applicable to 100V 200W, 300W or 200V 400W, 750W).
For details, refer to *5.3.5 Load Inertia.*

*2 Supply voltage should not exceed 230 V + 10% (253 V) or 115 V + 10% (127 V). A step-down transformer is required if the voltage should exceed these values.

*3 Use within the ambient temperature range. When enclosed in a box, the internal temperatures must not exceed the ambient temperature range.

*4 The lowest speed of the speed control range is the speed at which the motor does not stop under 100% load.

*5 Speed regulation is defined as follows:

$$\text{Speed regulation} = \frac{\text{No-load-speed} - \text{Full-load-speed}}{\text{Rated speed}} \times 100\%$$

The motor speed may change due to voltage variations or amplifier drift and changes in processing resistance due to temperature variation.
These ratios of the speed changes to the rated speed represent the speed regulation due to voltage and temperature variations.

*6 N is the number of encoder pulses.

*7 Base mount can be available as an option (DR2-□□Y7).

*8 Open collector output can be available as an option (DR2-□□Y1).

*9 Values in parenthesis show SGMP type Servomotor.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.3.1 Ratings and Specifications cont.*

3) Ratings and Specifications of DR2 Servopack **for Position Control**

| Voltage | | | 200 VAC | | | | | | 100 VAC | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Servopack Type DR2- | | | A3AC | A5AC | 01AC | 02AC | 04AC | 08AC | A3BC | A5BC | 01BC | 02BC | 03BC |
| Max. Applicable Motor Capacity W (HP) | | | 30 (0.04) | 50 (0.07) | 100 (0.13) | 200 (0.27) | 400 (0.53) | 750 (1.01) | 30 (0.04) | 50 (0.07) | 100 (0.13) | 200 (0.27) | 300 (0.40) |
| Combined Specifications | Motor | Type | A3A□ | A5A□ | 01A□ | 02A□ | 04A□ | 08A□ | A3B□ | A5B□ | 01B□ | 02B□ | 03B□ |
| | | Motor Capacity W (HP) | 30 (0.04) | 50 (0.07) | 100 (0.13) | 200 (0.27) | 400 (0.53) | 750 (1.01) | 30 (0.04) | 50 (0.07) | 100 (0.13) | 200 (0.27) | 300 (0.40) |
| | | Rated/ Max. Motor Speed | 3000/4500 r/min | | | | | | 3000/4500 r/min | | | | |
| | | Applicable encoder | Incremental encoder 2048 P/R, absolute encoder 1024 P/R | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Allowable Load Inertia*1 $J_L$ $kg \cdot m^2 \times 10^{-4}$ $(oz \cdot in \cdot s^2 \times 10^{-3})$ | 0.63 (8.80) | 0.78 (11.0) | 1.20 (17.0) | 3.69 (52.2) | 5.73 (81.1) | 20.1 (284.6) | 0.63 (8.80) | 0.78 (11.0) | 1.20 (17.0) | 3.69 (52.2) | 5.73 (81.1) |
| | | **SGM (Upper)/ SGMP (Lower)** | – | – | 1.95 (27.6) | 6.27 (88.8) | 10.41 (147.4) | 18.5 (262.0) | – | – | 1.95 (27.6) | 6.27 (88.8) | 10.41 (147.4) |
| Combined Specifications | Continuous Output Current*7 | | 0.42 | 0.6 | 0.87 (0.89) | 2.0 | 2.6 | 4.4 (4.1) | 0.63 | 0.90 | 2.2 | 2.7 | 3.7 (4.3) |
| | Max. Output Current | | 1.3 | 1.9 | 2.8 | 6.0 | 8.0 | 13.9 | 2.0 | 2.9 | 7.1 | 8.4 | 14.8 |
| Basic Specifications | Power Supply (Main/control circuit) | | Single-phase 200 to 230 VAC, +10% to –15%, 50/60 Hz*2 | | | | | | Single-phase 100 to 115 VAC*2, +10% to –15%, 50/60 Hz | | | | |
| | Control Method | | Single-phase, full-wave rectification IGBT-PWM (sine-wave driven) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Feedback | | Incremental encoder 2048 P/R, absolute encoder 1024 P/R | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Location | Ambient Temp. | 0 to 55°C*3 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Storage Temp. | –20°C to +85°C | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Ambient/Storage Humidity | 90% or less (with no condensation) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Vibration/Shock Resistance | 0.5/2G | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Structure | | Rack-mounted*5 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Approx. Mass kg (lb) | | 2.5 (5.51) | | | | 3.7 (8.16) | | 2.5 (5.51) | | | 3.7 (8.16) | |
| Performance | Bias Setting | | 0 to 450 r/min. (Setting resolution: 1 r/min.) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Feed Forward Compensation | | 0 to 100% (Setting resolution: 1%) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Position Complete Width Setting | | 0 to 250 reference units.<br>Reference unit: minimum unit of position data which moves load | | | | | | | | | | |
| Input Signal | Reference Pulse | Type | SIGN + PULSE train, 90° phase difference 2-phase pulse, (A-phase+B-phase), CCW pulse+CW pulse | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Pulse Form | Line driver (+5 V level), open collector (+5 V or +12 V level) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Pulse Frequency | 0 to 450 kpps | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Control Signal | | CLEAR (input pulse form identical to reference pulse) | | | | | | | | | | |
| I/O Signals | Position Output | Output Form | A-, B-, C-phase line driver*6 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Frequency Dividing Ratio | (16 to N) /N (N=2048, 1024)*4 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Sequence Input | | Servo ON, P drive (or motor forward/reverse by internal speed setting), forward run stop (P-OT), reverse run stop (N-OT), alarm reset, current limit + selection (or internal speed selection), current limit – selection (or internal speed selection) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Sequence Output | | Positioning complete, motor running output (or external brake interlock), servo ready, servo alarm, 3-bit alarm codes | | | | | | | | | | |
| Dynamic Brake | | | Operated at main power OFF, servo alarm or overtravel. | | | | | | | | | | |
| External Regenerative Unit | | | Required when exceeding the allowable load inertia | | | | | | | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | |
|---|---|
| Overtravel | Dynamic brake stop at P-OT or N-OT or deceleration stop |
| Protective Functions | Overcurrent, overload, overvoltage, overspeed, overrun prevention, origin error, CPU error, encoder error, overflow, fuse blown, undervoltage |
| Indicators | Power (green LED) and status/alarm (red, 7-segment LEDs) |
| | Digital operator: status/alarm (red, 7-segment LEDs ×5) |
| Others | Brake interlock signal output, reverse run connection, JOG run, electronic gear, auto-tuning |

*1 Allowable load inertia ranges require no optional external regenerative unit (applicable to 200V 30W to 200W) or external regenerative resistor (applicable to 100V 200W, 300W or 200V 400W, 750W). Values are when motor speed is 3000r/min max. If load inertias exceed these ranges, restrict the operation or use a regenerative unit (applicable to 200V 30W to 200W) or external regenerative resistor (applicable to 100V 200W, 300W or 200V 400W, 750W).
For details, refer to *5.3.5 Load Inertia.*

*2 Supply voltage should not exceed 230 V + 10% (253 V) or 115 V + 10% (127 V). A step-down transformer is required if the voltage should exceed these values.

*3 Use within the ambient temperature range. When enclosed in a box, the internal temperatures must not exceed the ambient temperature range.

*4 N is the number of encoder pulses.

*5 Base mount can be available as an option (DR2-□□Y7).

*6 Open collector output can be available as an option (DR2-□□Y1).

*7 Values in parenthesis show SGMP type Servomotor.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.3.2 Power Consumption

| Servopack Type DR2- | | Output Current (Effective Value) A | Power Loss W | | | <Total> Power Loss W |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Main Circuit | Regenerative Resistor | Control Circuit | |
| Supply Voltage 200V | A3A□ (30W-0.04HP) | 0.42 | 2.9 | – | 13 | 15.9 |
| | A5A□ (50W-0.07HP) | 0.6 | 4.2 | | | 17.2 |
| | 01A□ (100W-0.13HP) | 0.87 | 6.3 | | | 19.3 |
| | 02A□ (200W-0.27HP) | 2.0 | 14.5 | | | 27.5 |
| | 04A□ (400W-0.53HP) | 2.6 | 22.2 | 6 | | 41.2 |
| | 08A□ (750W-1.01HP) | 4.4 | 36.1 | | | 55.1 |
| Supply Voltage 100V | A3B□ (30W-0.04HP) | 0.63 | 2.9 | – | | 15.9 |
| | A5B□ (50W-0.07HP) | 0.90 | 4.4 | | | 17.4 |
| | 01B□ (100W-0.13HP) | 2.2 | 12.0 | | | 25.0 |
| | 02B□ (200W-0.27HP) | 2.7 | 16.2 | 6 | | 35.2 |
| | 03B□ (300W-0.40HP) | 3.7 | 20.1 | | | 39.1 |

**Note** Power loss of regenerative resistor shows the allowable loss. If this value is exceeded, remove the built-in regenerative resistor inside the Servopack and install a resistor externally. Before installing an external regenerative resistor, contact your Yaskawa representative.

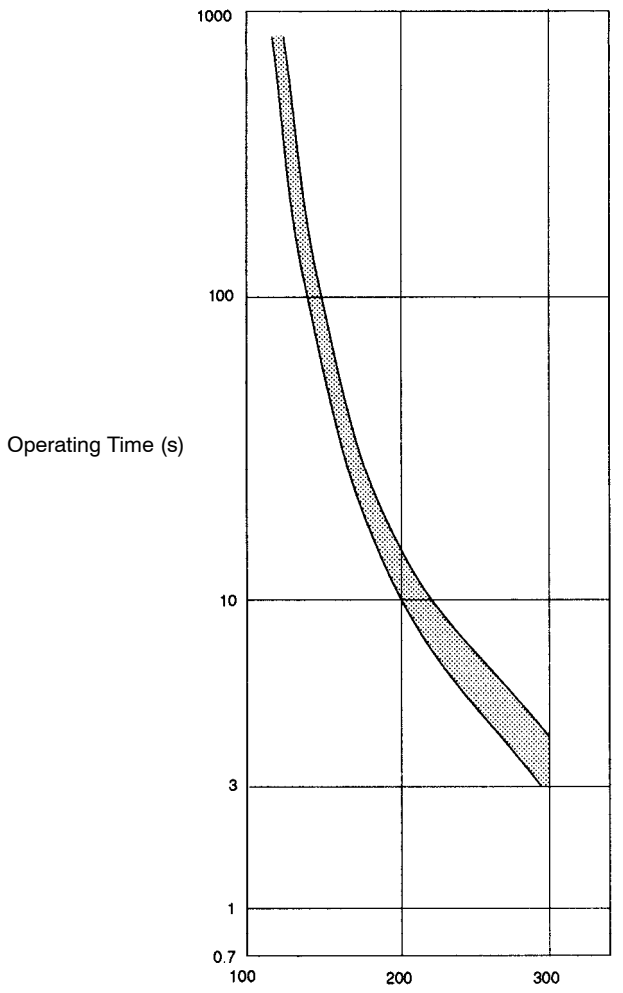


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

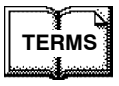
## 5.3.3 Overload Characteristics

The Servopack has a built-in overload protective function to protect the Servopack and Servomotor from overload. Therefore, the Servopack allowable power is limited by the overload protective function, as shown below.

The overload detection level is quoted under **hot start** conditions at a motor ambient temperature of 40°C.




Overload Characteristics




**Hot Start**

Indicates that both Servopack and Servomotor have run long enough at rated load to be thermally saturated.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

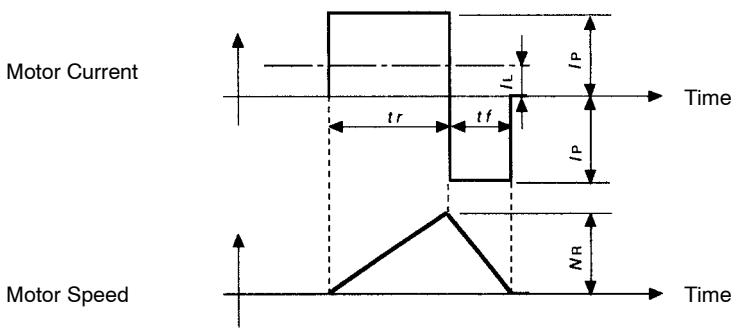
## 5.3.4 Starting Time and Stopping Time

1) The motor starting time (tr) and stopping time (tf) under constant load are calculated by the following formulas. The motor viscous torque and friction torque are ignored.

Starting Time: $tf = 104.7 \times \frac{N_R (J_M + J_L)}{K_t \cdot I_R (\alpha - \beta)}$ [ms]

Stopping Time: $tf = 104.7 \times \frac{N_R (J_M + J_L)}{K_t \cdot I_R (\alpha + \beta)}$ [ms]

$N_R$: Motor rated speed (r/min.)
$J_M$: Motor moment of inertia ($kg \cdot m^2 = lb \cdot in \cdot s^2$) . . . ($GD^2_M/4$)
$J_L$: Load converted to shaft moment of inertia ($kg \cdot m^2$) . . ($GD^2_L/4$)
$K_t$: Motor torque constant ($N \cdot m/A = lb \cdot in/A$)
$I_R$: Motor rated current (A)
$\alpha = I_P/I_R$: Accel/decel current coefficient
[where $I_P$ is accel/decel current (accel/decel current is $\alpha$ times the motor rated current) (A)]
$\beta = I_L/I_R$]: Load current coefficient
[$I_L$]: Load torque equivalent current (load current is $\beta$ times the motor rated current) (A)]




Motor Current (size) - Motor Speed Timing Chart

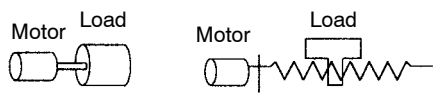


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

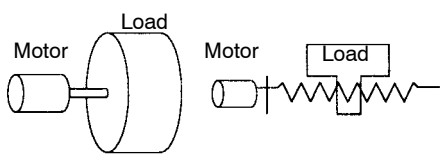
## 5.3.5 Load Inertia

1) The larger the load inertia becomes, the worse the movement response of the load. The size of the load inertia [$J_L$] allowable when using a Servomotor depends on the motor capacity, as shown in the diagrams below.

• Small Load Inertia




• Large Load Inertia



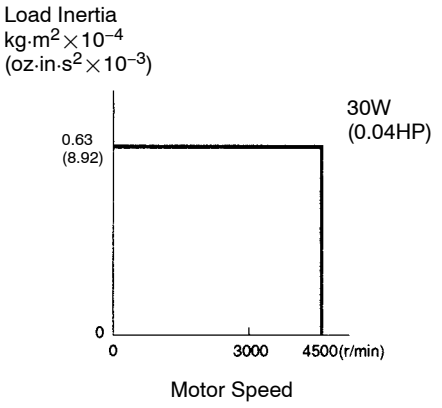


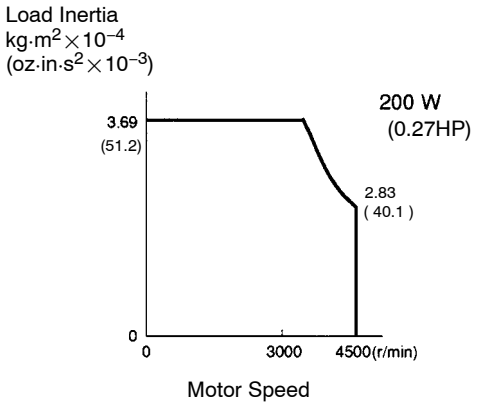


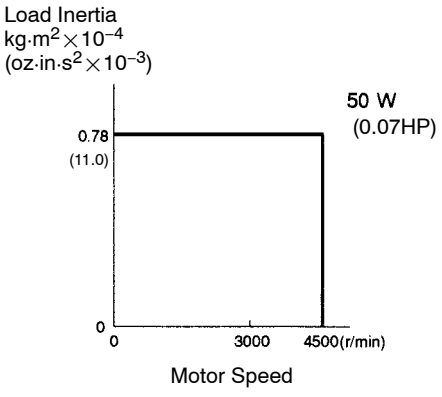

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

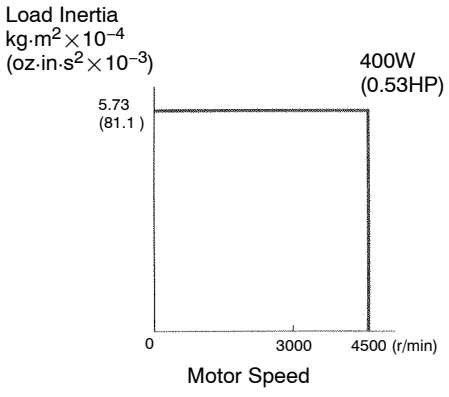
*5.3.5 Load Inertia cont.*

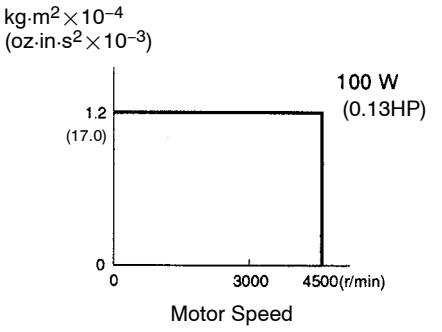
a) SGM Servomotors
200-VAC Servomotors with incremental encoder

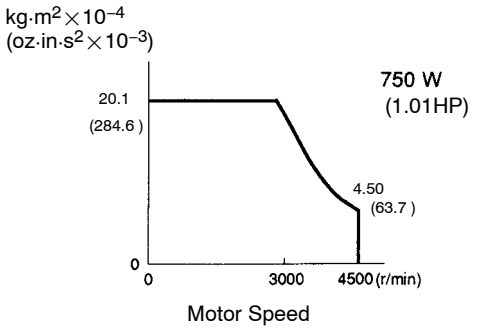


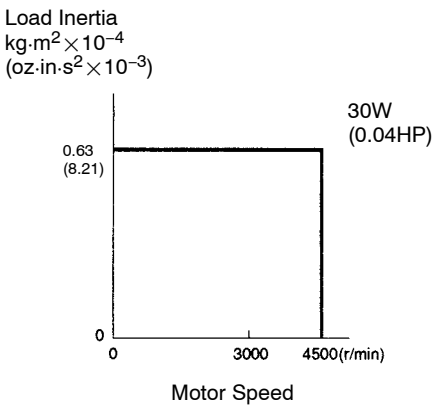

**Note** 1 The above diagrams represent deceleration under maximum torque. Applying an acceleration/deceleration curve to the reference allows operation outside the range of the diagrams. (That is, characteristics change according to pattern of operation and load )conditions.

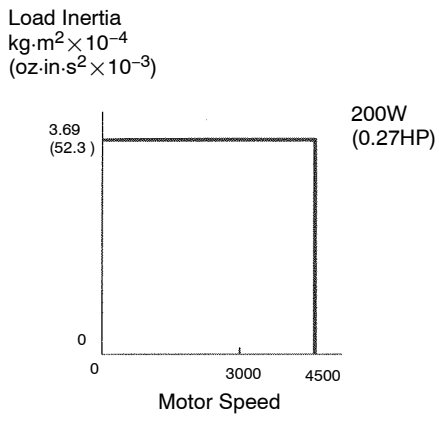
2 As for 400W and 750W types, make sure not to perform frequent accel/decel, since regenerativeresistor is incorporated inside the Servopack.

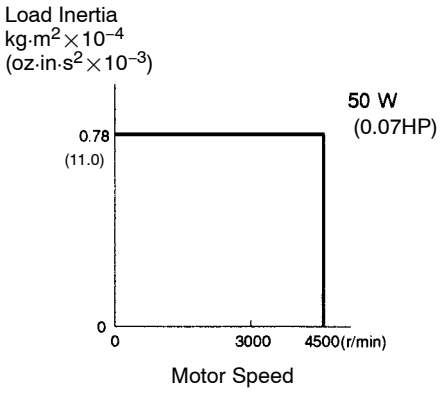


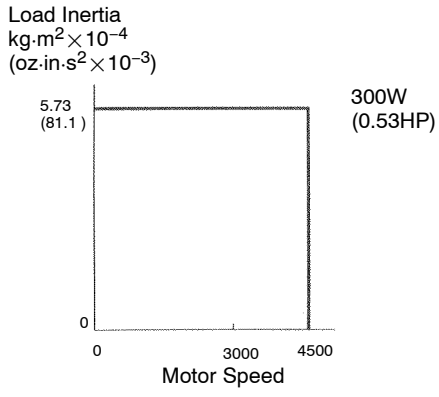
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

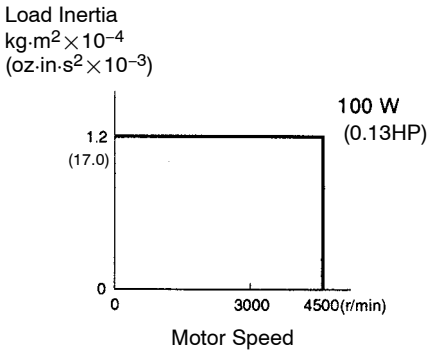
b) SGM Servomotors
100-VAC Servomotors with incremental encoder



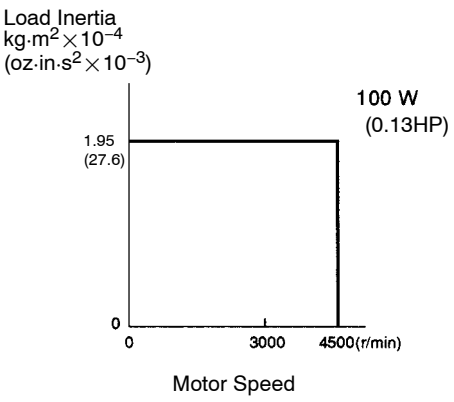

**Note** 1 The above diagrams represent deceleration under maximum torque. Applying an acceleration/deceleration curve to the reference allows operation outside the range of the diagrams. (That is, characteristics change according to pattern of operation and load conditions).
2 As for 200W and 300W types, make sure not to perform frequent accel/decel, since regenerative resistor is incorporated inside the Servopack.

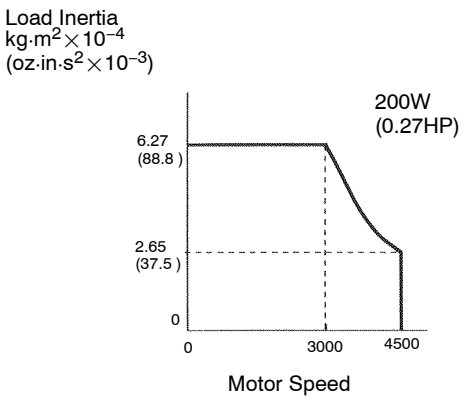


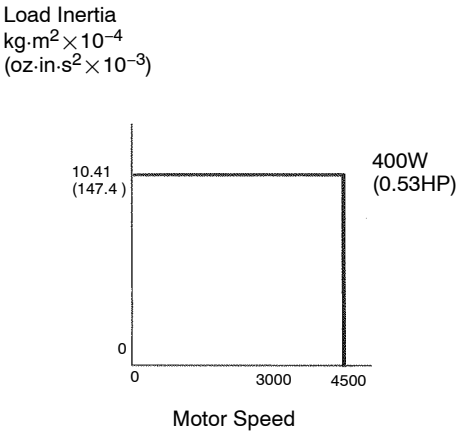
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

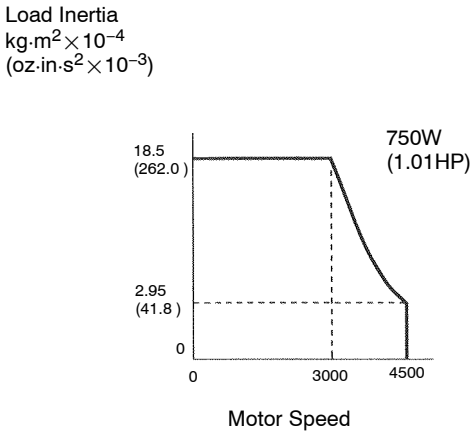
*5.3.5 Load Inertia cont.*

c) SGMP Servomotors
200-VAC Servomotors with incremental encoder



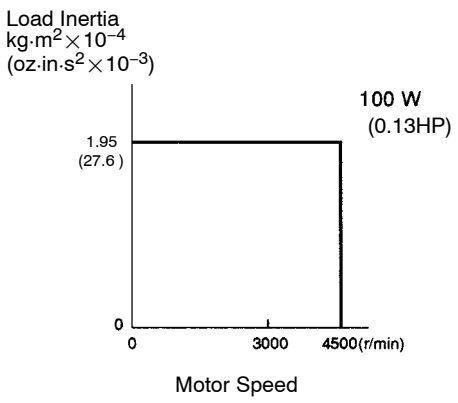



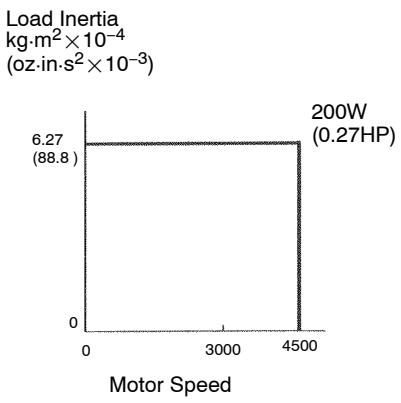

**Note** 1 Diagrams above represent deceleration under maximum torque. Applying an acceleration/deceleration curve to the reference allows operation outside the range of the diagrams. (That is, the characteristics change according to pattern of operation and load conditions).
2 As for 400W and 750W types, make sure not to perform frequent accel/decel, since regenerative resistor is incorporated inside the Servopack.

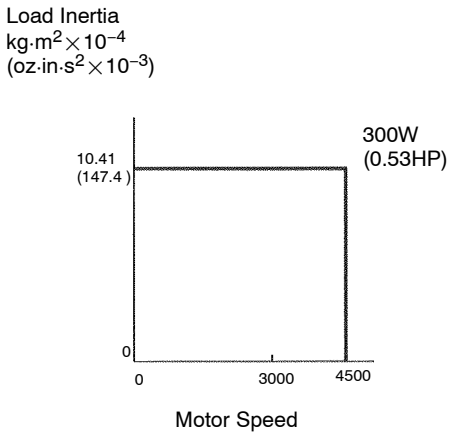


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

d) SGMP Servomotors
100-VAC Servomotors with incremental encoder




5

**Note** 1 Diagrams above represent deceleration under maximum torque. Applying an acceleration/deceleration curve to the reference allows operation outside the range of the diagrams. (That is, the characteristics change according to pattern of operation and load conditions).
2 As for 200W and 300W types, make sure not to perform frequent accel/decel, since regenerative resistor is incorporated inside the Servopack.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) An overvoltage alarm is likely during deceleration if the load inertia exceeds the range of the diagrams. Take one of the countermeasures below.

   a) Reduce the torque limit value.

   b) Reduce the deceleration rate.

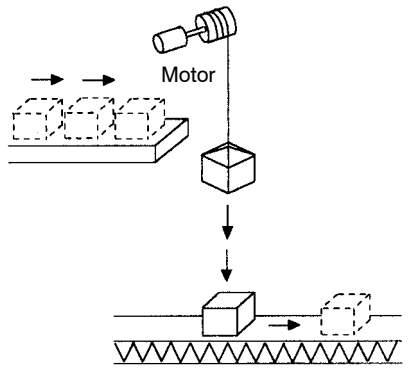
   c) Reduce the maximum speed used.

   d) Add a regenerative unit (applicable to 200V 30W to 200W) or external regenerative resistor (applicable to 100V 200W, 300W or 200V 400W, 750W).

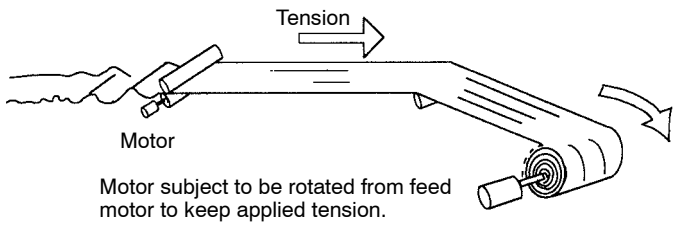
## 5.3.6 Overhanging Loads

1) A Servomotor may not be operated under an overhanging load, that is a load which tends to continually rotate the motor.
   Under an overhanging load (e.g. when the direction of the torque applied by the motor is opposite from the direction of shaft rotation), the Servopack regenerative brake is applied continuously and the regenerative energy of the load may exceed the allowable range and damage the Servopack.
   The regenerative brake capacity of the DR2 Servopack is rated for short-time operation, approximately equivalent to the deceleration stopping time.

   • Overhanging Load Example 1: Motor drive for vertical axis, using no counterweight




   • Overhanging Load Example 2: Tension control drive






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 5.4 Σ-Series Dimensional Drawings

This section presents dimensional drawings of the Σ-Series Servomotor, Servopack, and Digital Operator.


5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings . . . . . 247
5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings (TÜV approved, conforming to the machine instructions) . . . . . 289
5.4.3 Servopack Dimensional Drawings . . . . . 329
5.4.4 Digital Operator Dimensional Drawing . . . . . 334


## 5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings

1) The dimensional drawings of the SGM Servomotors are broadly grouped into the following four categories.

   a) Incremental encoder, no brake (from page 248)

   b) Incremental encoder, with brake (from page 253)

   c) Absolute encoder, no brake (from page 258)

   d) Absolute encoder, with brake (from page 264)



Motor capacities are available as 30 W (0.04 HP), 50 W (0.07 HP), 100 W (0.13 HP), 200 W (0.27 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.53 HP), 750 W (1.01 HP). These are grouped into three categories, as follows:

- 30W (0.04 HP), 50W (0.07 HP), 100W (0.13 HP)
- 200W (0.27 HP), 300W (0.40 HP), 400W (0.53 HP)
- 750W (1.01 HP)

- **As for the dimensional drawings of SGMP servomotors, see from the page 269 on.**
- **As for the dimensional drawings of TÜV approved SGM servomotors, see from the page 289 on.**
- **As for the dimensional drawings of TÜV approved SGMP servomotors, see from the page 309 on.**

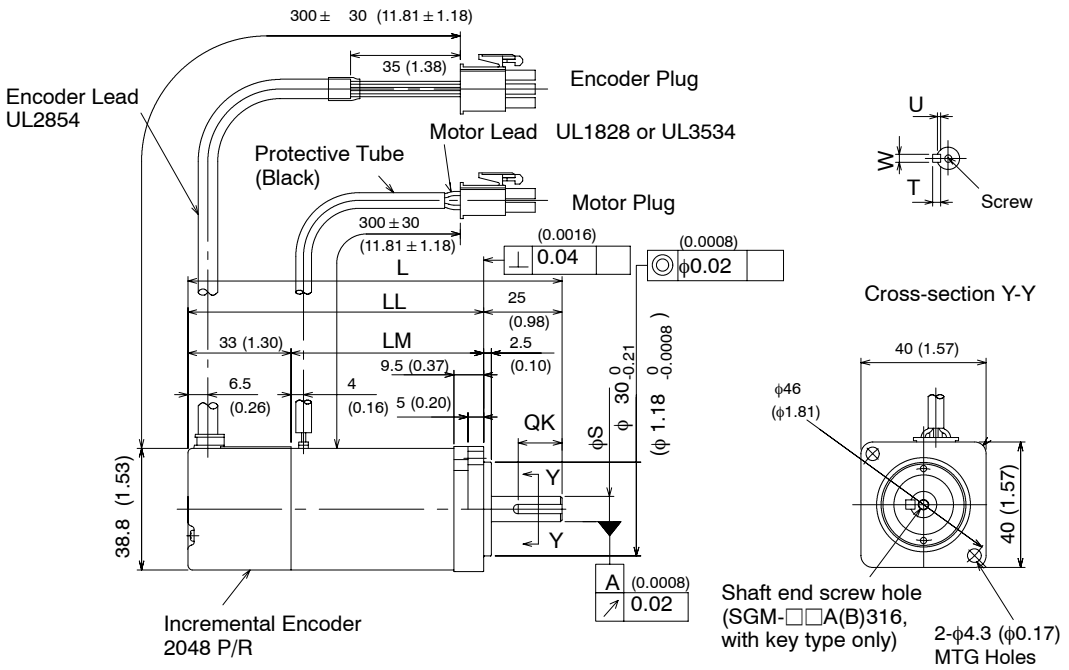


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

(1) SGM Servomotor
Incremental encoder, no brake (Type SGM-□□□31□)

• 30W (0.04 HP), 50W (0.07 HP),100W (0.13 HP)




| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | S | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A3A312 | 94.5 (3.72) | 69.5 (2.74) | 36.5 (1.44) | 6 (0.24) | No key | | | | – | 30 (0.04) | 0.3 (0.66) | 68 (15.3) | 54 (12.1) |
| A3B312 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3A314 | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A3B314 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3A316 | | | | | | | | | M2.5 depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A3B316 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5A312 | 102.0 (4.02) | 77.0 (3.03) | 44.0 (1.73) | 6 (0.24) | No key | | | | – | 50 (0.07) | 0.4 (0.88) | | |
| A5B312 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5A314 | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A5B314 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5A316 | | | | | | | | | M2.5 depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A5B316 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01A312 | 119.5 (4.70) | 94.5 (3.72) | 61.5 (2.42) | 8 (0.31) | No key | | | | – | 100 (0.13) | 0.5 (1.10) | 78 (17.5) | |
| 01B312 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01A314 | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01B314 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01A316 | | | | | | | | | M3 depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01B316 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

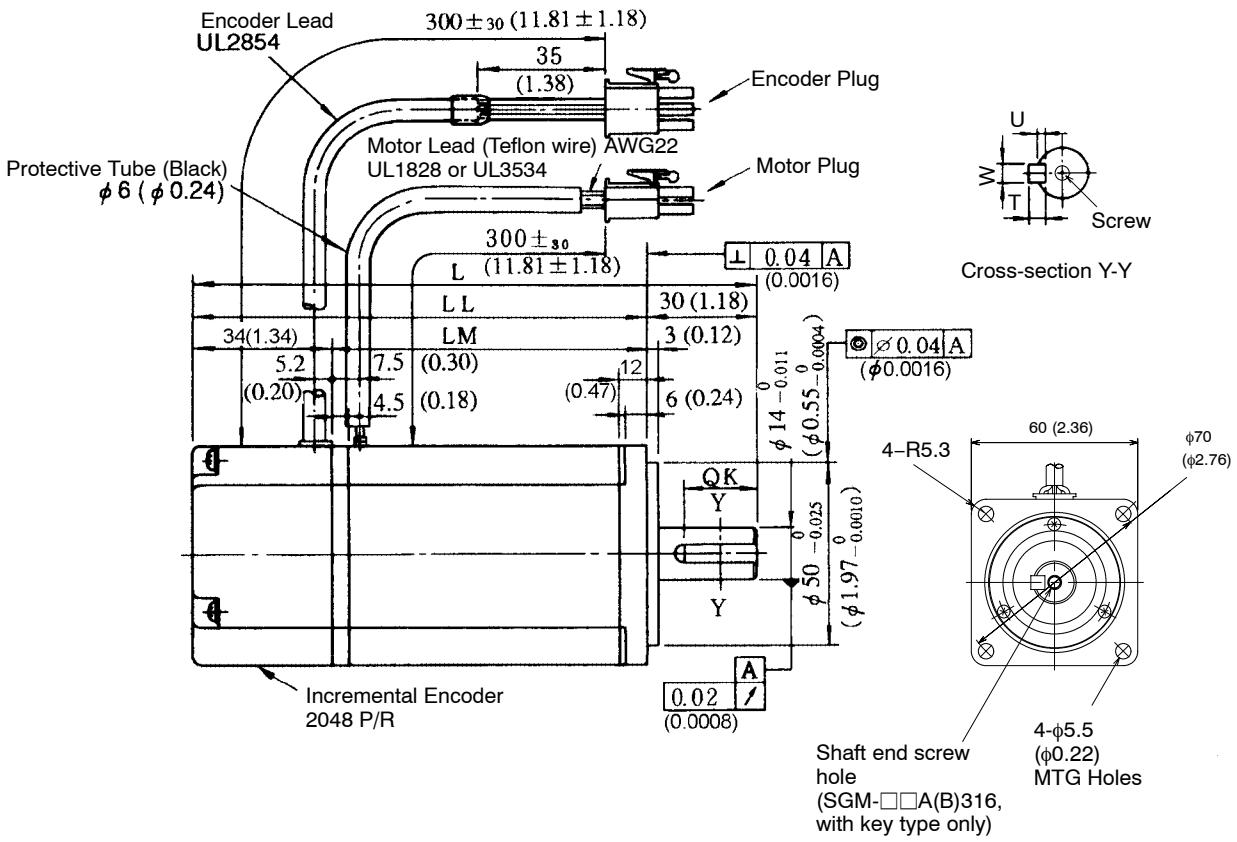
**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “A3A(B)314”, “A3A(B)316”, “A5A(B)314”, “A5A(B)316” “01A(B)314” and “01A(B)316” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

• 200 W (0.27 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.53 HP)








Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02A312 | 126.5 (4.98) | 96.5 (3.80) | 62.5 (2.46) | No key | | | | – | 200 (0.27) | 1.1 (2.43) | 245 (55.1) | 74 (16.6) |
| 02B312 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02A314 | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02B314 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02A316 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 02B316 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 03B312 | 154.5 (6.08) | 124.5 (4.90) | 90.5 (3.56) | No key | | | | – | 300 (0.40) | 1.7 (3.75) | | |
| 03B314 | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03B316 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 04A312 | 154.5 (6.08) | 124.5 (4.90) | 90.5 (3.56) | No key | | | | – | 400 (0.53) | 1.7 (3.75) | | |
| 04A314 | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04A316 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “02A(B)314”, “02A(B)316” “03B314”, “03B316”, “04A314” and “04A316” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

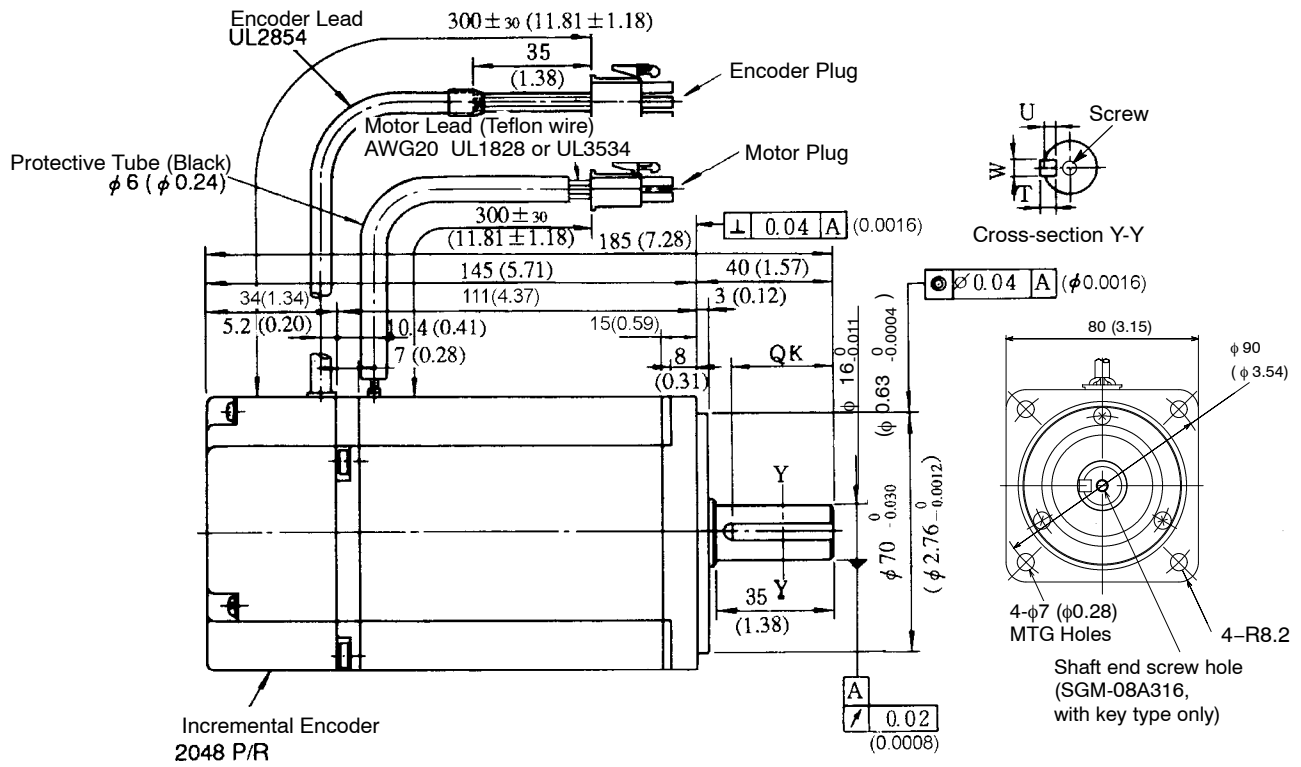
4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98 in.) from the motor mounting surface.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

- 750 W (1.01 HP)




| Type SGM- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08A312 | No key | | | | – | 750 (1.01) | 3.4 (7.50) | 392 (88.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08A314 | 30 (1.18) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 08A316 | | | | | M5, depth 8(0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification.

3) “08A314” and “08A316” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38 in.) from the motor mounting surface.



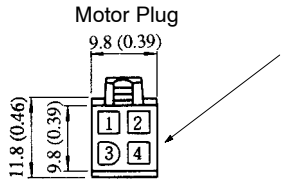


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 30 W (0.04 HP) to 750 W (1.01 HP)

Motor Plug

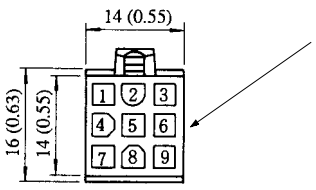



Plug : 172167-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170360-1 or 170364-1
(170359-1 or 170363-1: 30, 50, or 100 W only)
Connected to
Cap: 172159-1
Socket: 170362 -1 or 170366-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green |

Encoder Plug




Plug: 172169-1 (Made by AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170363-1
Connected to
Cap :172161-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Incremental Encoder Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | Blue/Black |
| 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | Yellow/Black |
| 5 | C channel output | Green |
| 6 | $\overline{C}$ channel output | Green/Black |
| 7 | 0V (power supply) | Gray |
| 8 | +5V (power supply) | Red |
| 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Orange |

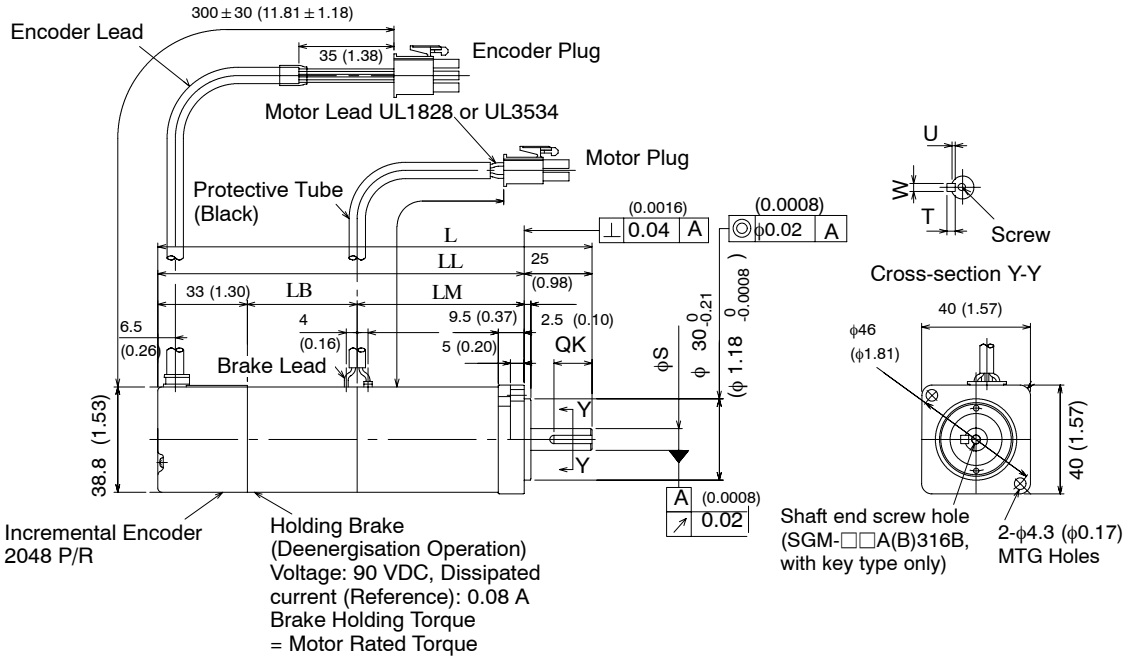




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

(2) SGM Servomotor
Incremental encoder, with brake (Type SGM-□□□31□B)

• 30W (0.04 HP), 50W (0.07 HP), 100W (0.13 HP)




| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | LB | S | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A3A312B | 126.0 (4.96) | 101.0 (3.98) | 36.5 (1.44) | 31.5 (1.24) | 6 (0.24) | No key | | | | – | 30 (0.04) | 0.6 (1.32) | 68 (15.3) | 54 (12.1) |
| A3B312B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3A314B | | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A3B314B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3A316B | | | | | | | | | | M2.5, depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A3B316B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5A312B | 133.5 (5.26) | 108.5 (4.27) | 44.0 (1.73) | 31.5 (1.24) | 6 (0.24) | No key | | | | – | 50 (0.07) | 0.7 (1.54) | | |
| A5B312B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5A314B | | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A5B314B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5A316B | | | | | | | | | | M2.5, depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A5B316B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01A312B | 160.0 (6.30) | 135.0 (5.31) | 61.5 (2.42) | 40.5 (1.59) | 8 (0.31) | No key | | | | – | 100 (0.13) | 0.8 (1.76) | 78 (17.5) | |
| 01B312B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01A314B | | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01B314B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01A316B | | | | | | | | | | M3, depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01B316B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

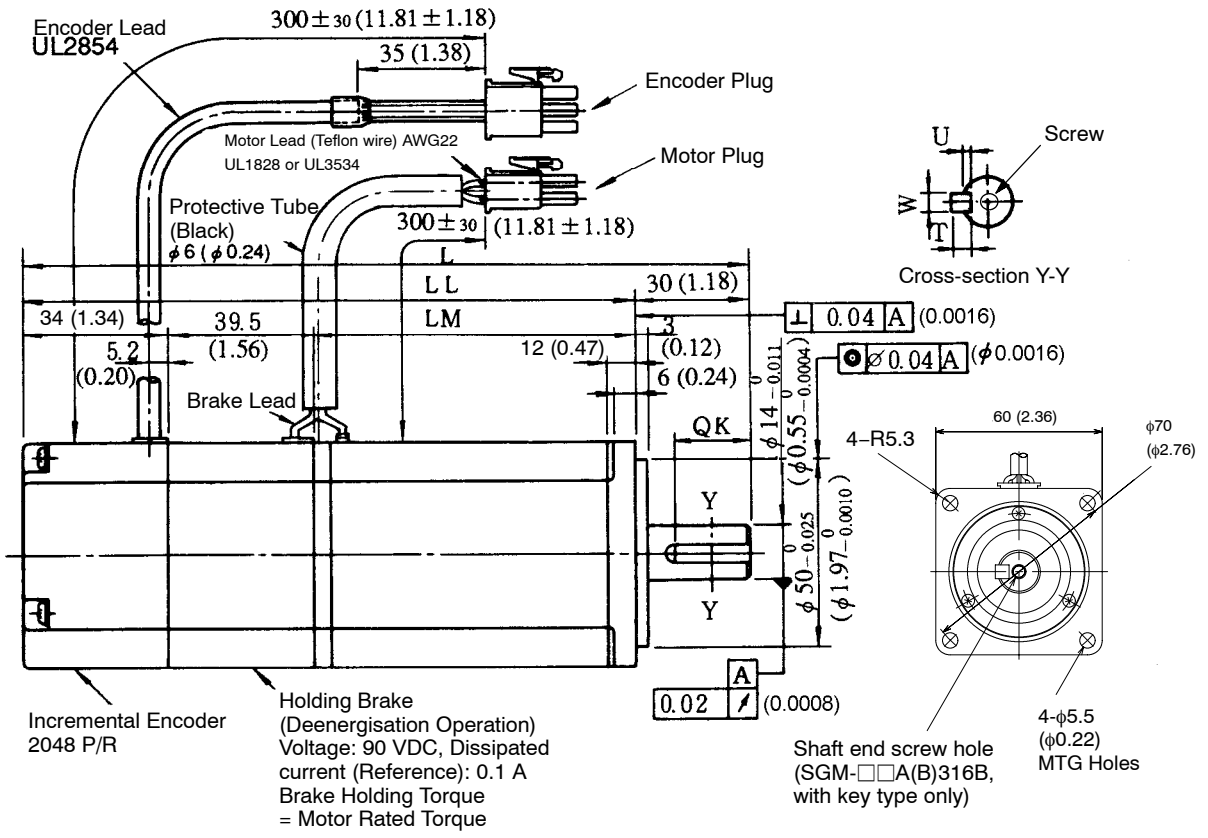
2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “A3A(B)314B”, “A3A(B)316B”, “A5A(B)314B”, “A5A(B)316B”, “01A(B)314B” and “01A(B)316B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

• 200 W (0.53 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.27 HP)






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02A312B | 166.0 (6.54) | 136.0 (5.35) | 62.5 (2.46) | No key | | | | – | 200 (0.27) | 1.6 (3.53) | 245 (55.1) | 74 (16.6) |
| 02B312B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02A314B | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02B314B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02A316B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 02B316B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 03B312B | 194.0 (7.64) | 164.0 (6.46) | 90.5 (3.56) | No key | | | | – | 300 (0.40) | 2.2 (4.85) | | |
| 03B314B | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03B316B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 04A312B | | | | No key | | | | – | 400 (0.53) | | | |
| 04A314B | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04A316B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “02A(B)314B”, “02A(B)316B”, “03B314B”, “03B316B”, “04A314B” and “04A316B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

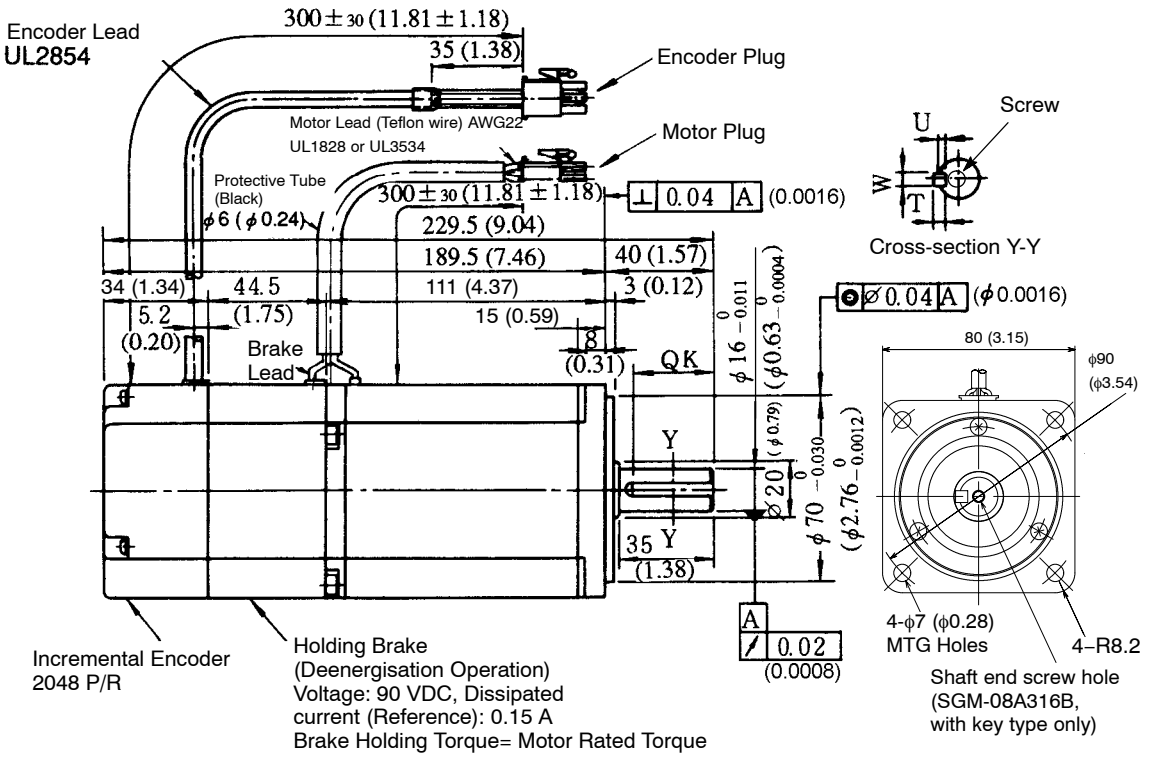




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

• 750 W (1.01 HP)




| Type SGM- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08A312B | No key | | | | – | 750 (1.01) | 4.3 (9.48) | 392 (88.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08A314B | 30 (1.18) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 08A316B | | | | | | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification.

3) “08A314B” and “08A316B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

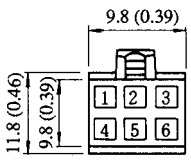
5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 30 W (0.04 HP) to 750 W (1.01 HP)

Motor Plug

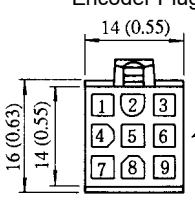



Plug : 172168-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170360-1 or 170364-1
(17359-1 or 170363-1: 30, 50, or 100 W only)
Connected to
Cap: 172160-1
Socket: 170362 -1 or 170366-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green/Yellow |
| 5 | Brake terminal | Red |
| 6 | Brake terminal | Black |

Encoder Plug




Plug: 172169-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170363-1
Connected to
Cap :172161-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Incremental Encoder Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | Blue/Black |
| 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | Yellow/Black |
| 5 | C channel output | Green |
| 6 | $\overline{C}$ channel output | Green/Black |
| 7 | 0V (power supply) | Gray |
| 8 | +5V (power supply) | Red |
| 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Orange |



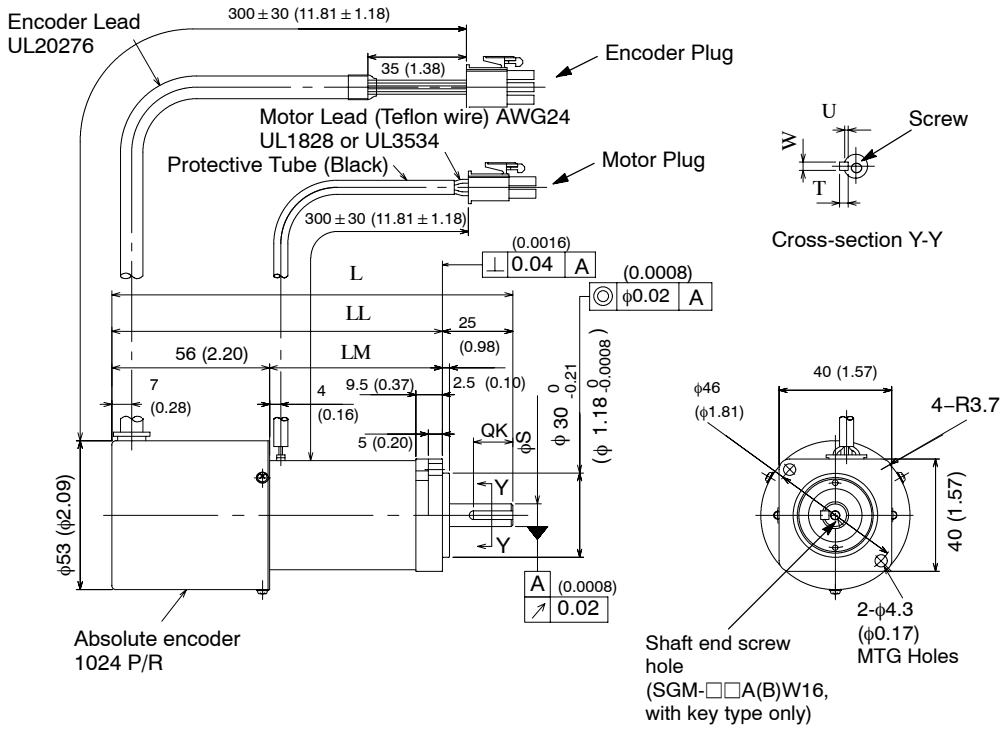


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

(3) SGM Servomotor
Absolute encoder, no brake (Type SGM-□□□W1□)

• 30 W (0.04 HP), 50 W (0.07 HP), 100 W (0.13 HP)




| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | S | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A3AW12 | 117.5 (4.63) | 92.5 (3.64) | 36.5 (1.44) | 6 (0.24) | No key | | | | --- | 30 (0.04) | 0.45 (0.99) | 68 (15.3) | 54 (12.1) |
| A3BW12 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3AW14 | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A3BW14 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3AW16 | | | | | | | | | M2.5, depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A3BW16 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5AW12 | 125.0 (4.92) | 100.0 (3.94) | 44.0 (1.73) | 6 (0.24) | No key | | | | --- | 50 (0.07) | 0.55 (1.21) | | |
| A5BW12 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5AW14 | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A5BW14 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5AW16 | | | | | | | | | M2.5, depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A5BW16 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01AW12 | 142.5 (5.61) | 117.5 (4.63) | 61.5 (2.42) | 8 (0.31) | No key | | | | --- | 100 (0.13) | 0.65 (1.43) | 78 (17.5) | |
| 01BW12 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01AW14 | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01BW14 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01AW16 | | | | | | | | | M3, depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01BW16 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Note**

1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “A3A(B)W14”, “A3A(B)W16”, “A5A(B)W14”, “A5A(B)W16”, “01A(B)W14” and “01A(B)W16” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

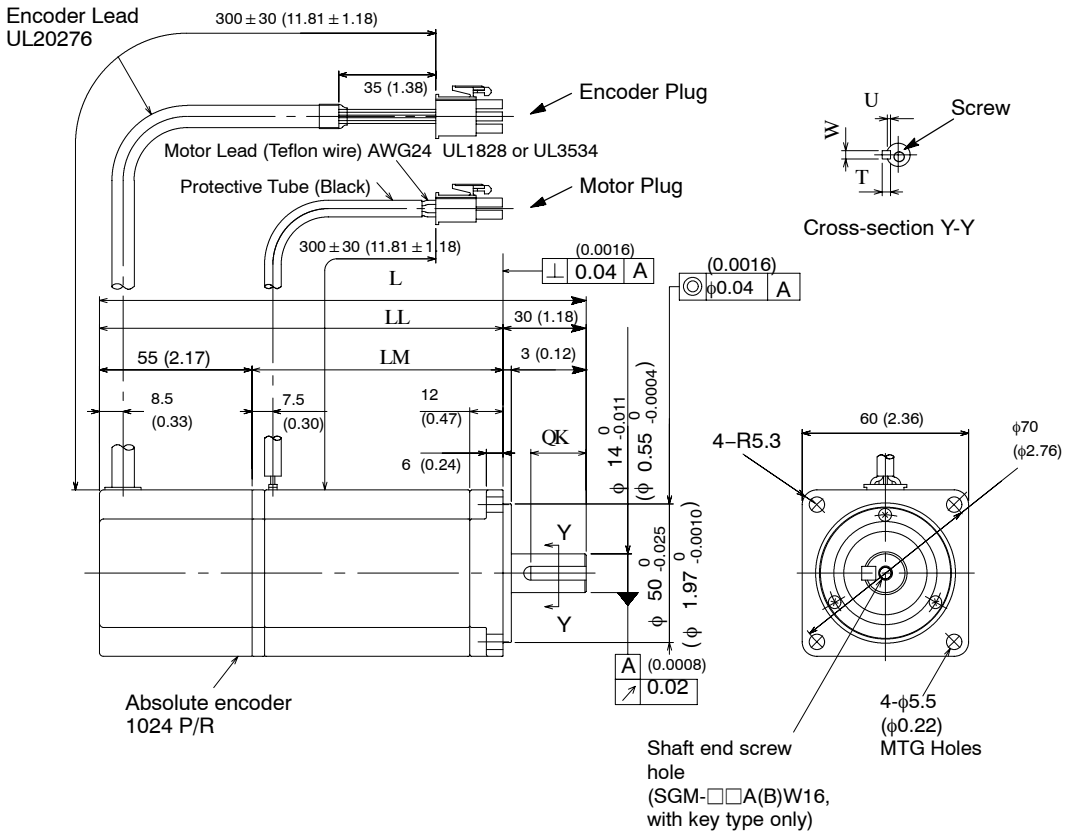




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

• 200 W (0.27 HP), 300W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.53 HP)




| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02AW12 | 147.5 (5.81) | 117.5 (4.63) | 62.5 (2.46) | No key | | | | – | 200 (0.27) | 1.2 (2.65) | 245 (55.1) | 74 (16.6) |
| 02BW12 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02AW14 | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02BW14 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02AW16 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 02BW16 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 03BW12 | 175.5 (6.91) | 145.5 (5.73) | 90.5 (3.56) | No key | | | | – | 300 (0.40) | 1.8 (3.97) | | |
| 03BW14 | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03BW16 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 04AW12 | | | | No key | | | | – | 400 (0.53) | | | |
| 04AW14 | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04AW16 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Note** 1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “02A(B)W14”, “02A(B)W16”, “03BW14” “03BW16”, “04AW14” and “04AW16” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

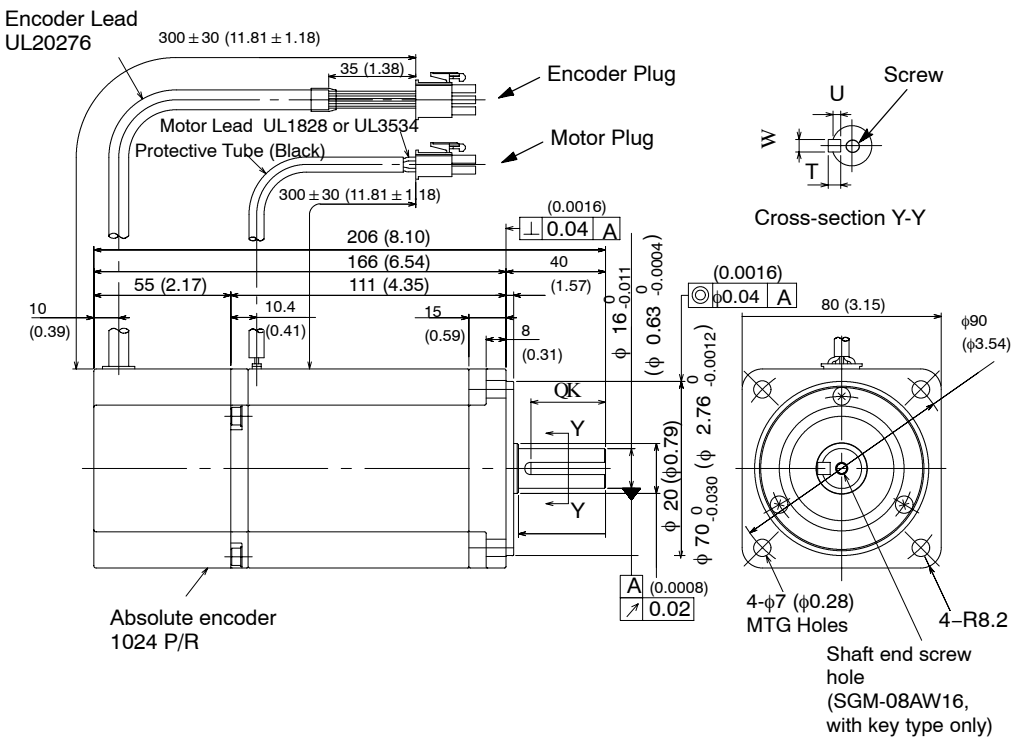




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

• 750 W (1.01 HP)




| Type SGM- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08AW12 | No key | | | | – | 750 (1.01) | 3.5 (7.72) | 392 (88.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08AW14 | 30 (1.18) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 08AW16 | | | | | | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification.

3) “08AW14” and “08AW16” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38 in.) from the motor mounting surface.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 30 W (0.04 HP) to 750 W (1.01 HP)

Motor Plug

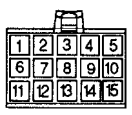



Plug : 172167-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170360-1 or 170364-1
(17359-1 or 170363-1: 30, 50, or 100 W only)
Connected to
Cap: 172159-1
Socket: 170362 -1 or 170366-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green/Yellow |

Encoder Plug




Plug: 172171-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170363-1
Connected to
Cap :172163-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Incremental Encoder Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | White/Blue |
| 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | White/Yellow |
| 5 | Z channel output | Green |
| 6 | $\overline{Z}$ channel output | White/Green |
| 7 | 0 V (power supply) | Gray |
| 8 | +5 V (power supply) | Red |
| 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Orange |
| 10 | S channel output | Purple |
| 11 | $\overline{S}$ channel output | White/Purple |
| * (12) | (Capacitor reset) | (Gray) |
| 13 | Reset | White/Gray |
| 14 | 0V(battery) | White/Orange |
| 15 | 3.6V(battery) | Orange |

* Terminal to discharge capacitor for product dispatch. Do not use.



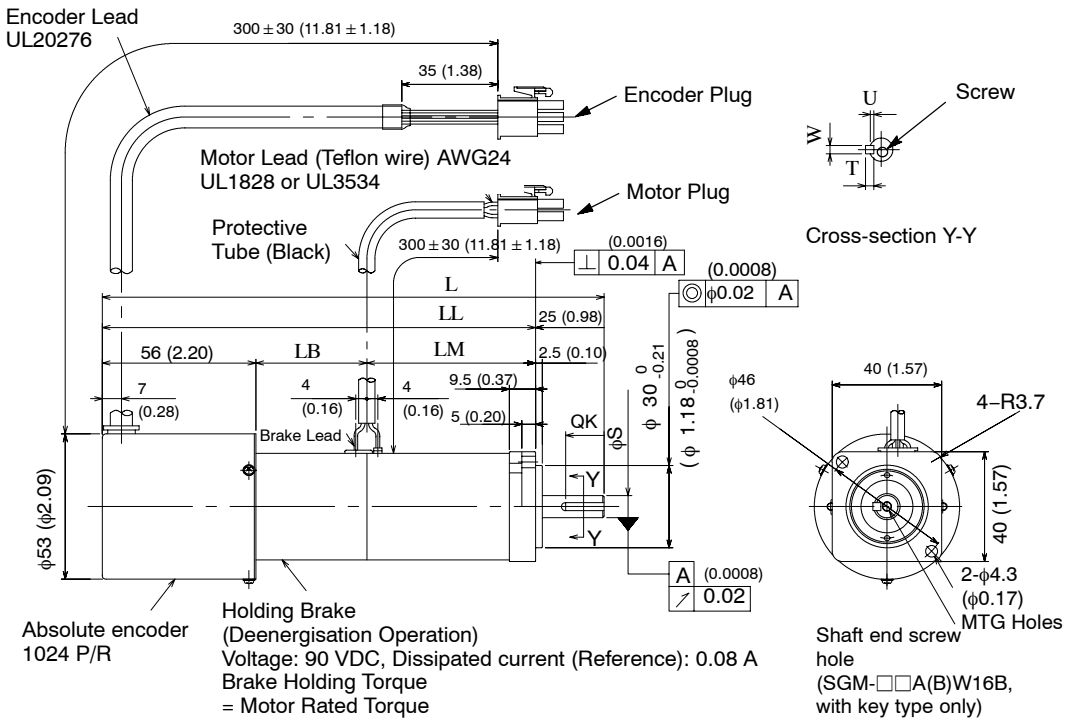


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

(4) SGM Servomotor
Absolute encoder, with brake (Type SGM-□□□W1□B)

• 30 W (0.04 HP), 50 W (0.07 HP), 100 W (0.13 HP)




| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | LB | S | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A3AW12B | 149.0 (5.87) | 124.0 (4.88) | 36.5 (1.44) | 31.5 (1.24) | 6 (0.24) | No key | | | | – | 30 (0.04) | 0.75 (1.65) | 68 (15.3) | 54 (12.1) |
| A3BW12B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3AW14B | | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A3BW14B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3AW16B | | | | | | | | | | M2.5, depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A3BW16B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5AW12B | 156.5 (6.16) | 131.5 (5.18) | 44.0 (1.73) | | | No key | | | | – | 50 (0.07) | 0.85 (1.87) | | |
| A5BW12B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5AW14B | | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A5BW14B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5AW16B | | | | | | | | | | M2.5, depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A5BW16B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01AW12B | 183.0 (7.20) | 158.0 (6.22) | 61.5 (2.42) | 40.5 (1.59) | 8 (0.31) | No key | | | | – | 100 (0.13) | 0.95 (2.09) | 78 (17.5) | |
| 01BW12B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01AW14B | | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01BW14B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01AW16B | | | | | | | | | | M3, depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01BW16B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Note**

1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

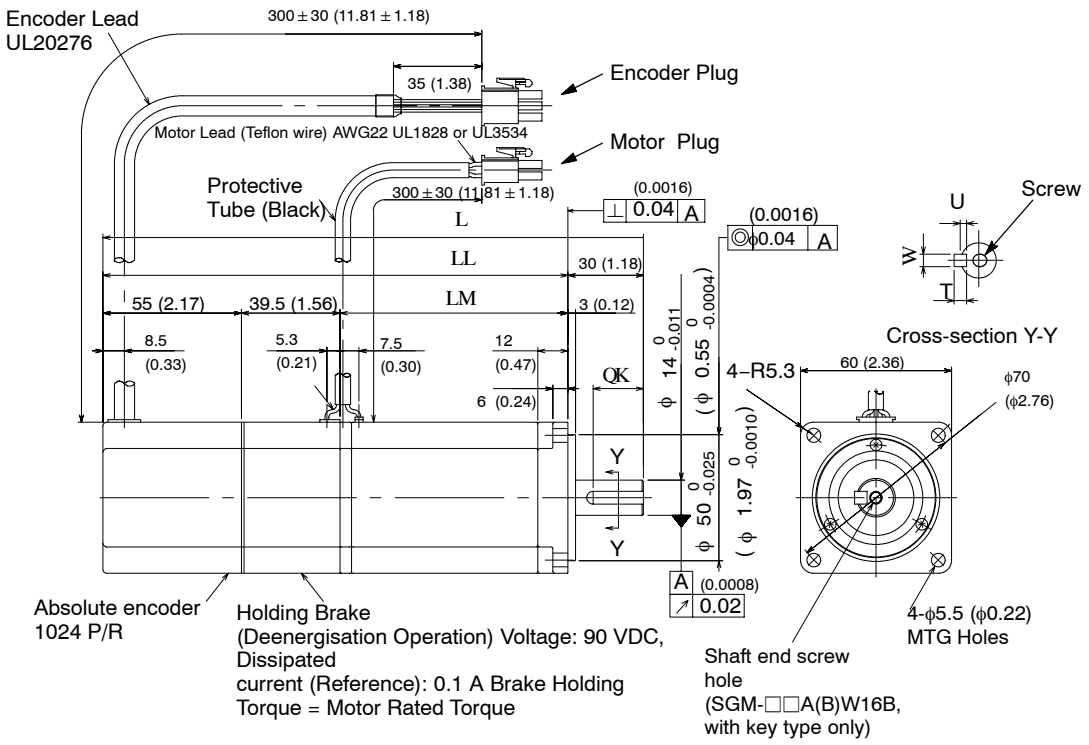
2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “A3A(B)W14B”, “A3A(B)W16B”, “A5A(B)W14B”, “A5A(B)W16B”, “01A(B)W14B” and “01A(B)W16B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

• 200 W (0.27 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.53 HP)








Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02AW12B | 187.0 (7.36) | 157.0 (6.18) | 62.5 (2.46) | No key | | | | – | 200 (0.27) | 1.7 (3.75) | 245 (55.1) | 74 (16.6) |
| 02BW12B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02AW14B | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02BW14B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02AW16B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 02BW16B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 03BW12B | 215.0 (8.46) | 185.0 (7.28) | 90.5 (3.56) | No key | | | | – | 300 (0.40) | 2.3 (5.07) | | |
| 03BW14B | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03BW16B | | | | | | | 5 (0.20) | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 04AW12B | | | | No key | | | | – | 400 (0.53) | | | |
| 04AW14B | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04AW16B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “02A(B)W14B”, “02A(B)W16B”, “03BW14B”, “03BW16B”, “04AW14B” and “04AW16B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

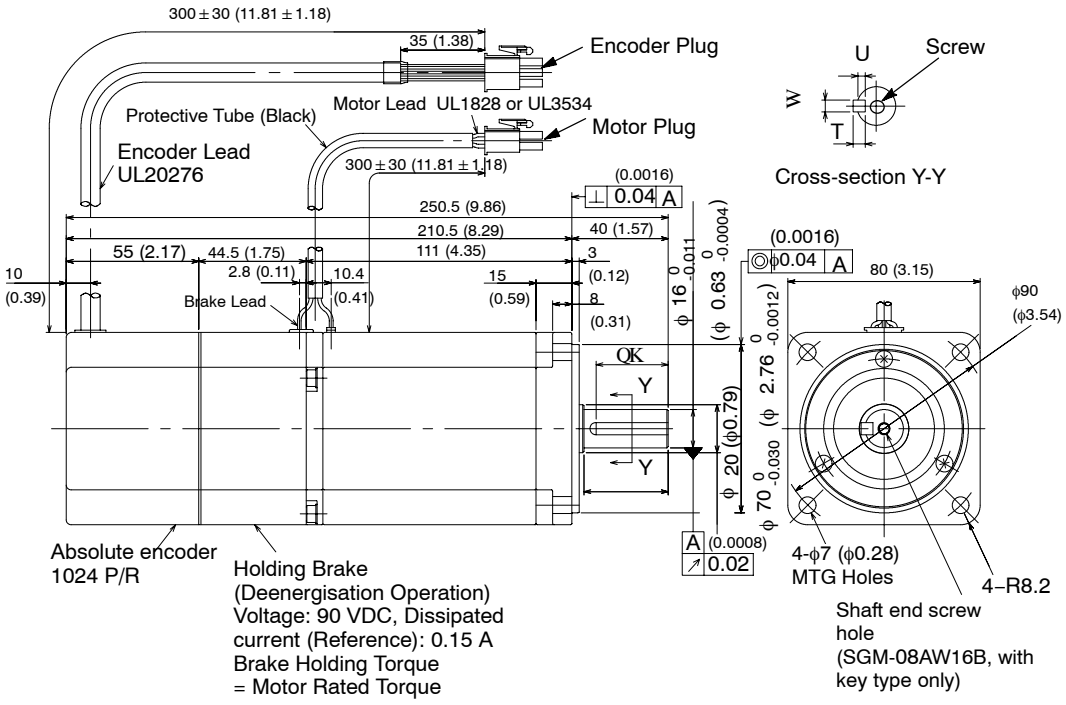
4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• 750 W (1.01 HP)




| Type SGM- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions (lb) | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08AW12B | No key | | | | – | 750 (1.01) | 4.5 (9.92) | 392 (88.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08AW14B | 30 (1.18) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 08AW16B | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note**

1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification.

3) “08AW14B” and “08AW16B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

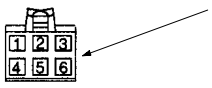


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 30 W (0.04 HP) to 750 W (1.01 HP)

Motor Plug

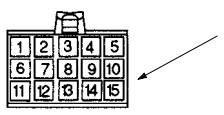



Plug : 172168-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170360-1 or 170364-1
(17359-1 or 170363-1: 30, 50, or 100 W only)
Connected to
Cap: 172160-1
Socket: 170362 -1 or 170366-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green/Yellow |
| 5 | Brake terminal | Red |
| 6 | Brake terminal | Black |

Encoder Plug




Plug: 172171-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170363-1
Connected to
Cap :172163-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Incremental Encoder Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | White/Blue |
| 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | White/Yellow |
| 5 | Z channel output | Green |
| 6 | $\overline{Z}$ channel output | White/Green |
| 7 | 0 V (power supply) | Black |
| 8 | +5 V (power supply) | Red |
| 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Green/Yellow |
| 10 | S channel output | Purple |
| 11 | $\overline{S}$ channel output | White/Purple |
| * (12) | (Capacitor reset) | (Gray) |
| 13 | Reset | White/Gray |
| 14 | 0V(battery) | White/Orange |
| 15 | 3.6V(battery) | Orange |

* Terminal to discharge capacitor for product dispatch. Do not use.

5



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) The dimensional drawings of the SGMP Servomotors are broadly grouped into the following four categories.

a) Incremental encoder, no brake (from page 270)

b) Incremental encoder, with brake (from page 275)

c) Absolute encoder, no brake (from page 280)

d) Absolute encoder, with brake (from page 284)

Motor capacities are available as 100 W (0.13 HP), 200 W (0.27 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP) , 400 W (0.53 HP), 750 W (1.01 HP). These are grouped into three categories, as follows:

- 100W (0.13 HP)
- 200W (0.27 HP), 300W (0.40 HP), 400W (0.53 HP)
- 750W (1.01 HP)

- **As for the dimensional drawings of SGM servomotors, see from page 247 on.**
- **As for the dimensional drawings of TÜV approved SGM servomotors, see from the page 289 on.**
- **As for the dimensional drawings of TÜV approved SGMP servomotors, see from the page 309 on.**



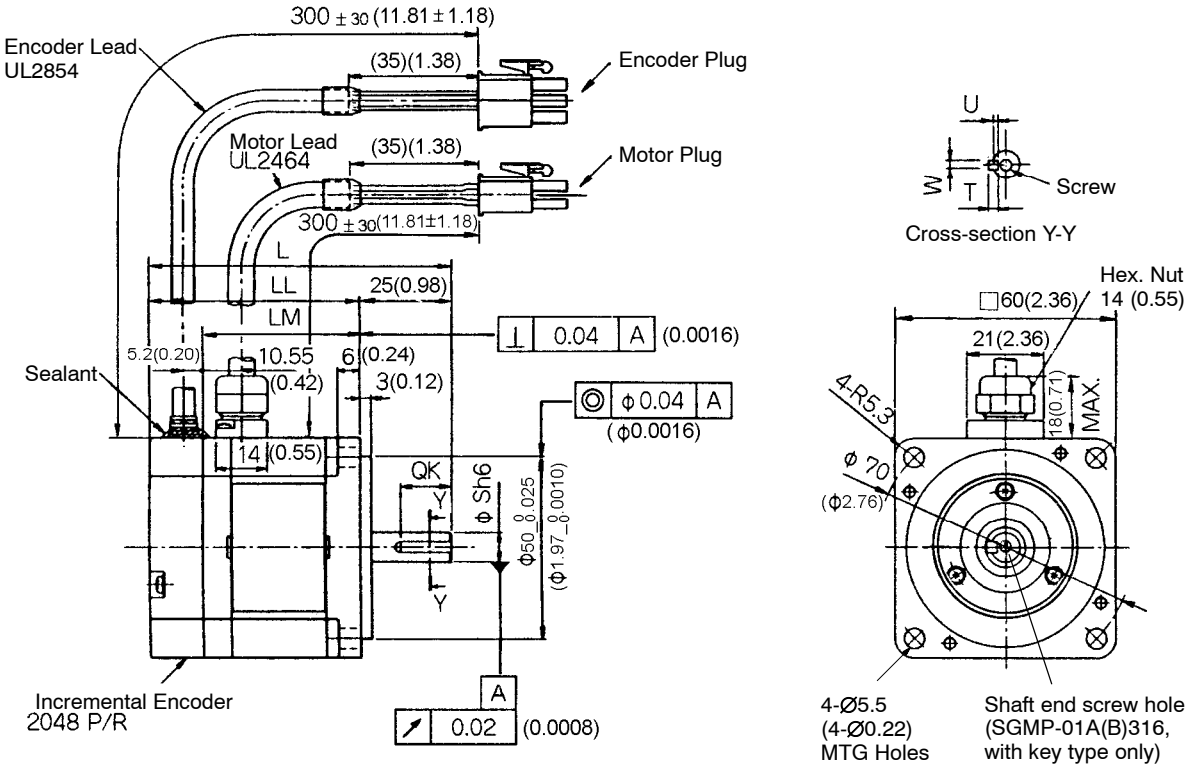


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

(1) SGMP Servomotor
Incremental encoder, no brake (Type SGM-□□□31□)

• 100 W (0.13 HP)




| Type SGMP- | L | LL | LM | S | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 01A312 | 82 (3.23) | 57 (2.24) | 42.5 (1.67) | 8 (0.31) | No key | | | | --- | 100 (0.13) | 0.7 (1.54) | 78 (17.5) | 49 (11.0) |
| 01B312 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01A314 | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01B314 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01A316 | | | | | | | | | M3, depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01B316 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

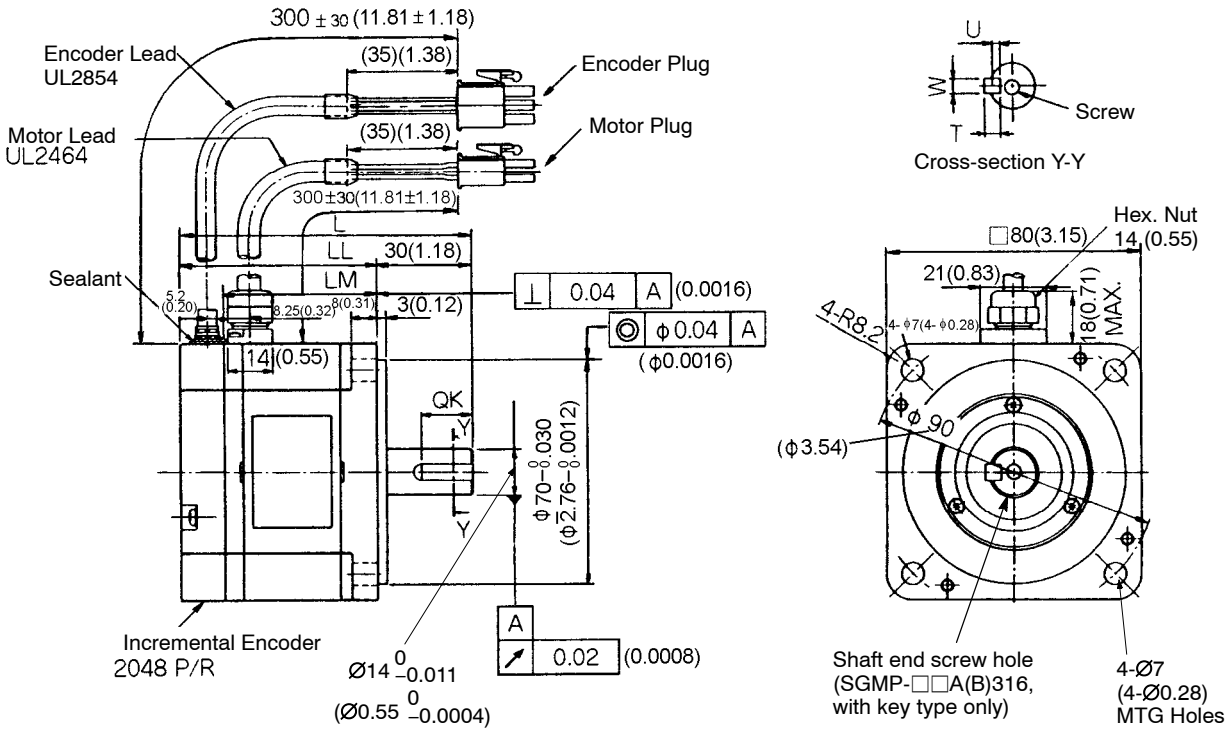
2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “01A(B)314” and “01A(B)316” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) Conforms to “IP55” protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

• 200 W (0.27 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.53 HP)






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

| Type SGMP- | L | LL | LM | QK | U | W | T | Screw di-mensions | Out-put W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02A312 | 92 (3.62) | 62 (2.44) | 48.1 (1.89) | No key | | | | --- | 200 (0.27) | 1.4 (3.09) | 245 (55.1) | 68 (15.3) |
| 02B312 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02A314 | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02B314 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02A316 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 02B316 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 03B312 | 112 (4.41) | 82 (3.23) | 68.1 (2.68) | No key | | | | --- | 300 (0.40) | 2.1 (4.63) | | |
| 03B314 | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03B316 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 04A312 | | | | No key | | | | --- | 400 (0.53) | | | |
| 04A314 | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04A316 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “02A(B)314”, “02A(B)316”, “04A314”, “04A316”, “03B314”, and 03B316 have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

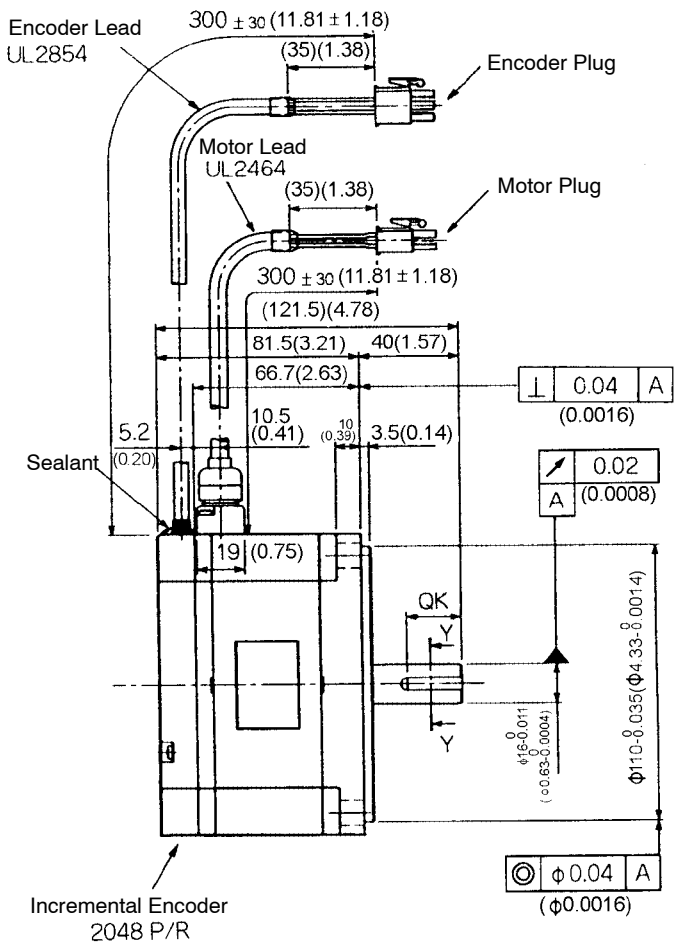
4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

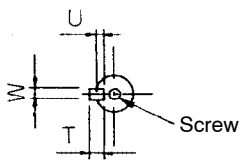
5) Conforms to “IP55” protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).



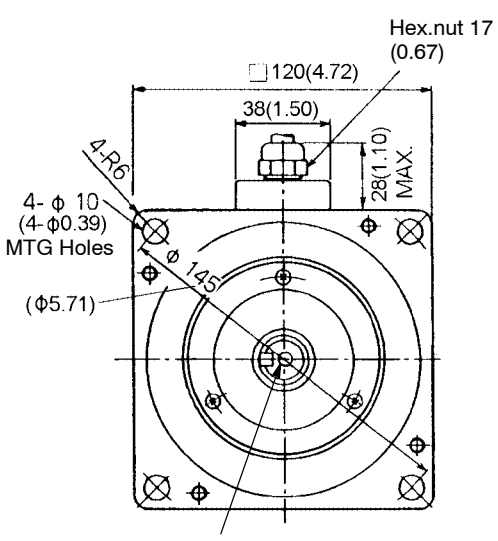
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• 750 W (1.01 HP)




Cross-section Y-Y




| Type SGMP- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08A312 | No key | | | | --- | 750 (1.01) | 4.2 (9.26) | 392 (88.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08A314 | 22 (0.87) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 08A316 | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note**

1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification.

3) “08A314” and “08A316” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 100 W (0.13HP) to 750 W (1.01HP))

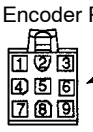
Motor Plug




Plug : 172167-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170360-1 or 170364-1

Connected to
Cap 172159-1
Socket 170362-1 or 170366-1

Encoder Plug




Plug: 172169-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170363-1

Connected to
Cap :172161-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green/Yellow |

Incremental Encoder Wiring Specifications

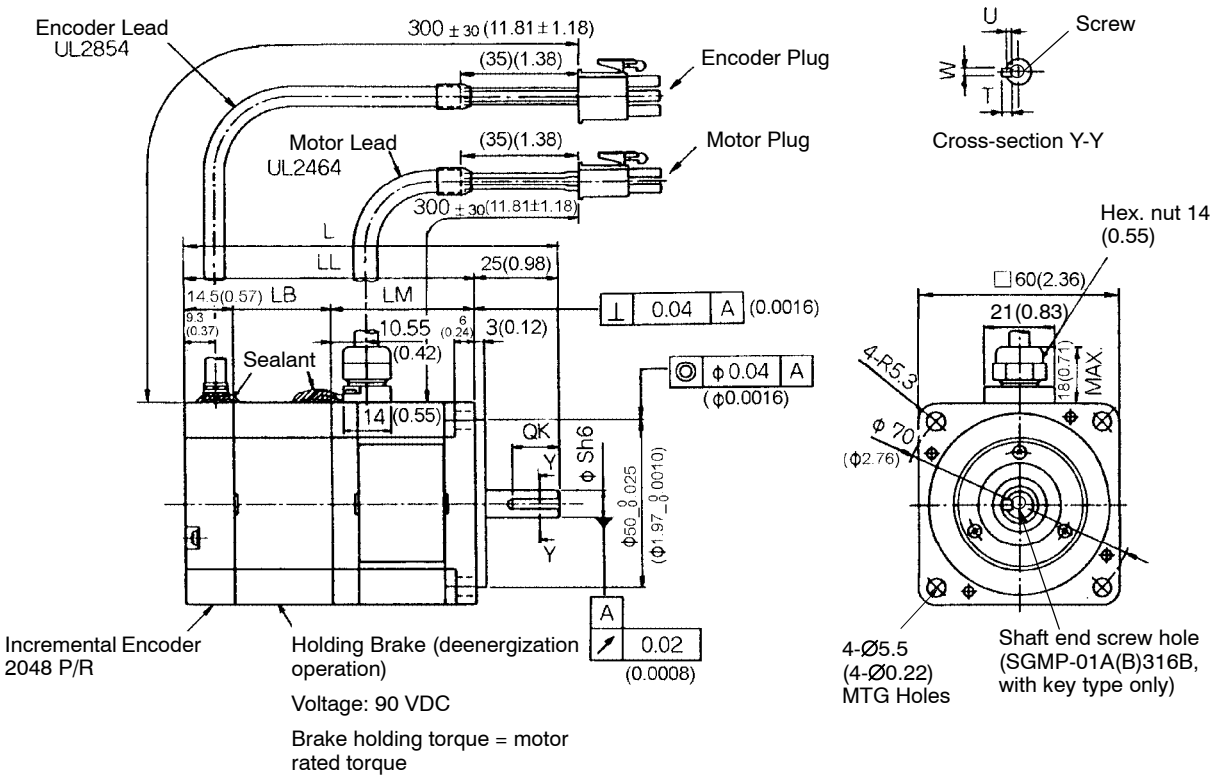
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | Blue/Black |
| 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | Yellow/Black |
| 5 | C channel output | Green |
| 6 | $\overline{C}$ channel output | Green/Black |
| 7 | 0 V (power supply) | Gray |
| 8 | +5 V (power supply) | Red |
| 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Orange |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

(2) SGMP Servomotor
Incremental encoder, with brake (Type SGMP-□□□31□B)

• 100 W (0.13HP)




| Type SGMP- | L | LL | LM | LB | S | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 01A312B | 111 (4.37) | 86 (3.39) | 42.5 (1.67) | 29 (1.14) | 8 (0.31) | No key | | | | --- | 100 (0.13) | 0.9 (1.98) | 78 (17.5) | 49 (11.0) |
| 01B312B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01A314B | | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01B314B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01A316B | | | | | | | | | | M3, depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01B316B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100V specification.

3) “01A(B)314B” and “01A(B)316B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.





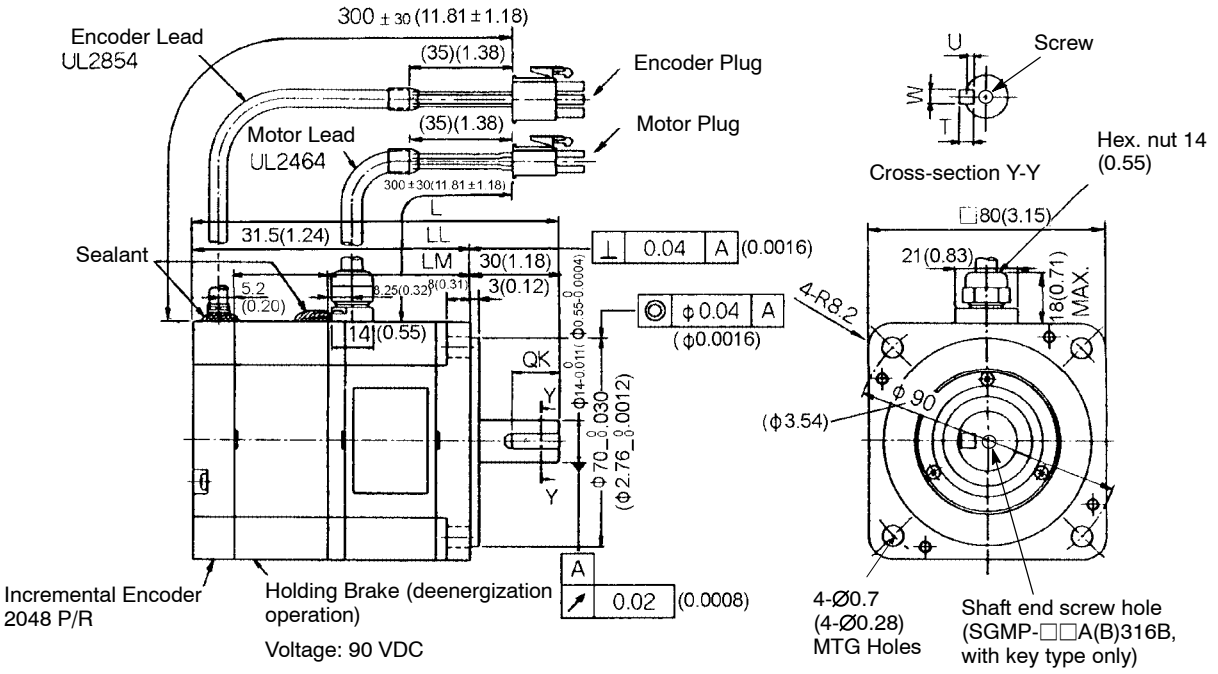
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

6) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

• 200 W (0.27HP), 300W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.53HP)






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Type SGMP- | L | LL | LM | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02A312B | 123.5 (4.86) | 93.5 (3.68) | 48.1 (1.89) | No key | | | | --- | 200 (0.27) | 1.9 (4.19) | 245 (55.1) | 68 (15.3) |
| 02B312B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02A314B | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02B314B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02A316B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 02B316B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 03B312B | 143.5 (5.65) | 113.5 (4.47) | 68.1 (2.68) | No key | | | | --- | 300 (0.40) | 2.6 (5.73) | | |
| 03B314B | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03B316B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 04A312B | | | | No key | | | | --- | 400 (0.53) | | | |
| 04A314B | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04A316B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100V specification.

3) “02A(B)314B”, “02A(B)316B”, “03B314B” “03B316B” “04A314B” and “04A316B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

6) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

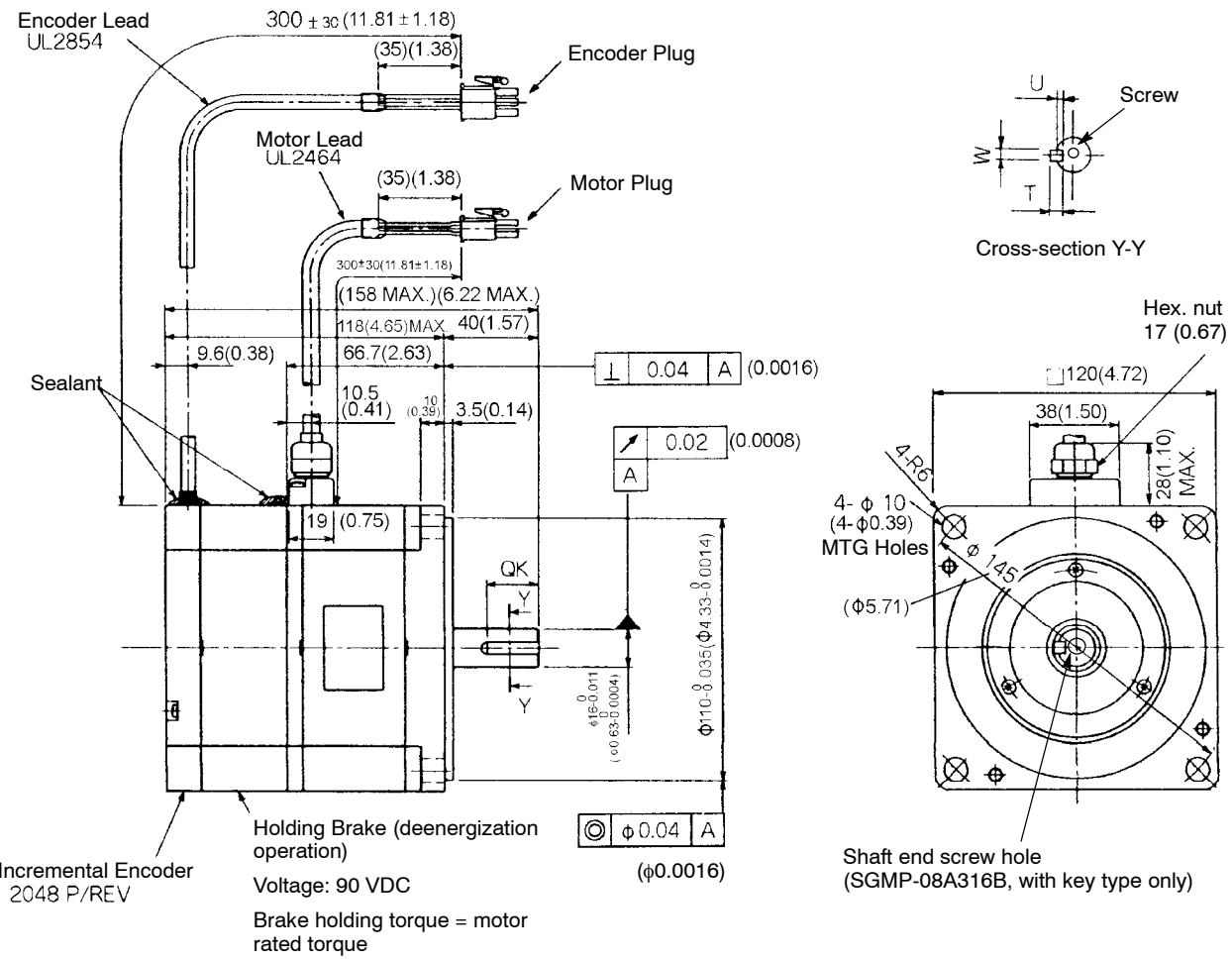




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

• 750 W (1.01HP)




| Type SGMP- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimen-sions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08A312B | No key | | | | – | 750 (1.01) | 6.1 (13.45) | 392 (88.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08A314B | 22 (0.87) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 08A316B | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification.

3) “08A314B” and “08A316B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision).
A straight key is supplied.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

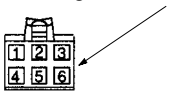
4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

6) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 100 W (0.13 HP) to 750 W (1.01 HP))

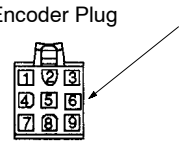
Motor Plug




Plug : 172168-1 (AMP)
Pin 170360-1 or 170364-1

Connected to
Cap 172160-1
Socket 170362-1 or 170366-1

Encoder Plug




Plug: 172169-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170366-1

Connected to
Cap :172161-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green/Yellow |
| 5 | Brake terminal | Black |
| 6 | Brake terminal | Black |

Incremental Encoder Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | Blue/Black |
| 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | Yellow/Black |
| 5 | C channel output | Green |
| 6 | $\overline{C}$ channel output | Green/Black |
| 7 | 0 V (power supply) | Gray |
| 8 | +5 V (power supply) | Red |
| 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Orange |



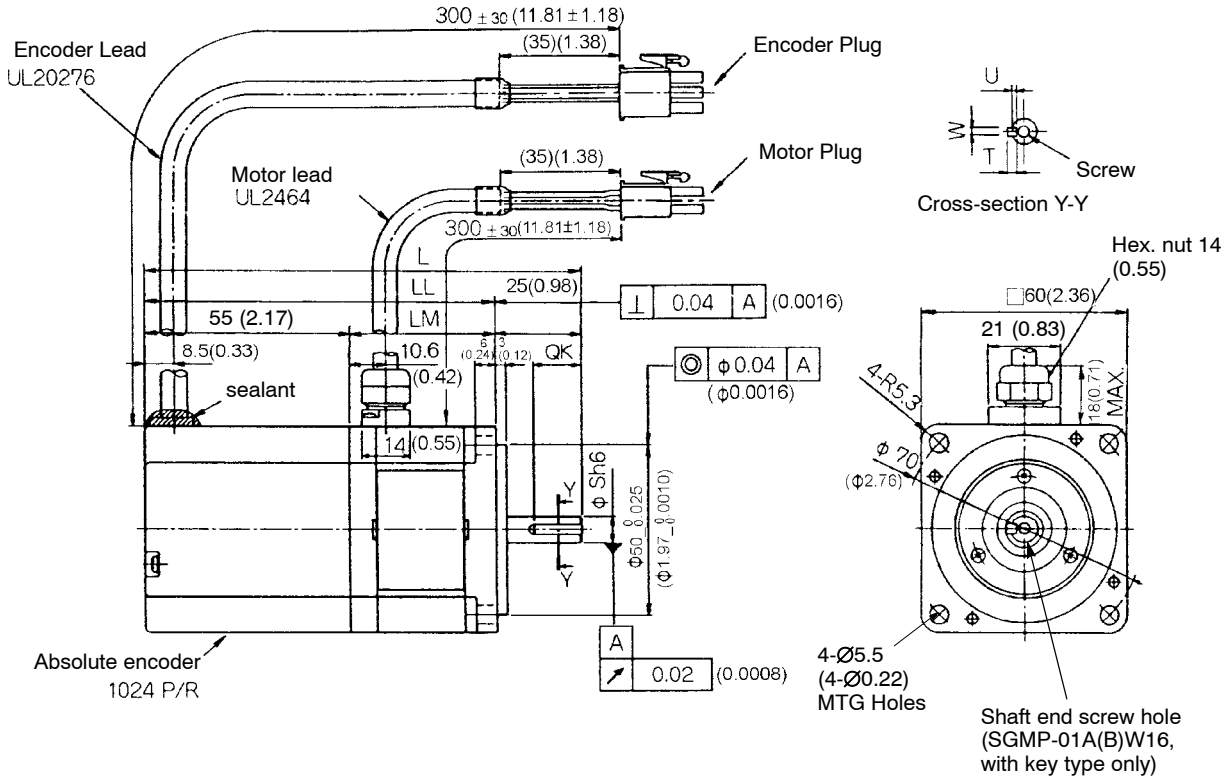


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

(3) SGMP Servomotor
Absolute encoder, no brake (Type SGMP-□□□W1□)

• 100 W (0.13HP)




| Type SGMP- | L | LL | LM | S | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 01AW12 | 122.5 (4.82) | 97.5 (3.84) | 42.5 (1.67) | 8 (0.31) | No key | | | | --- | 100 (0.13) | 0.9 (1.98) | 78 (17.5) | 49 (11.0) |
| 01BW12 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01AW14 | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01BW14 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01AW16 | | | | | | | | | M3, depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01BW16 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

**Note**

1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “01A(B)W14” and “01A(B)W16” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

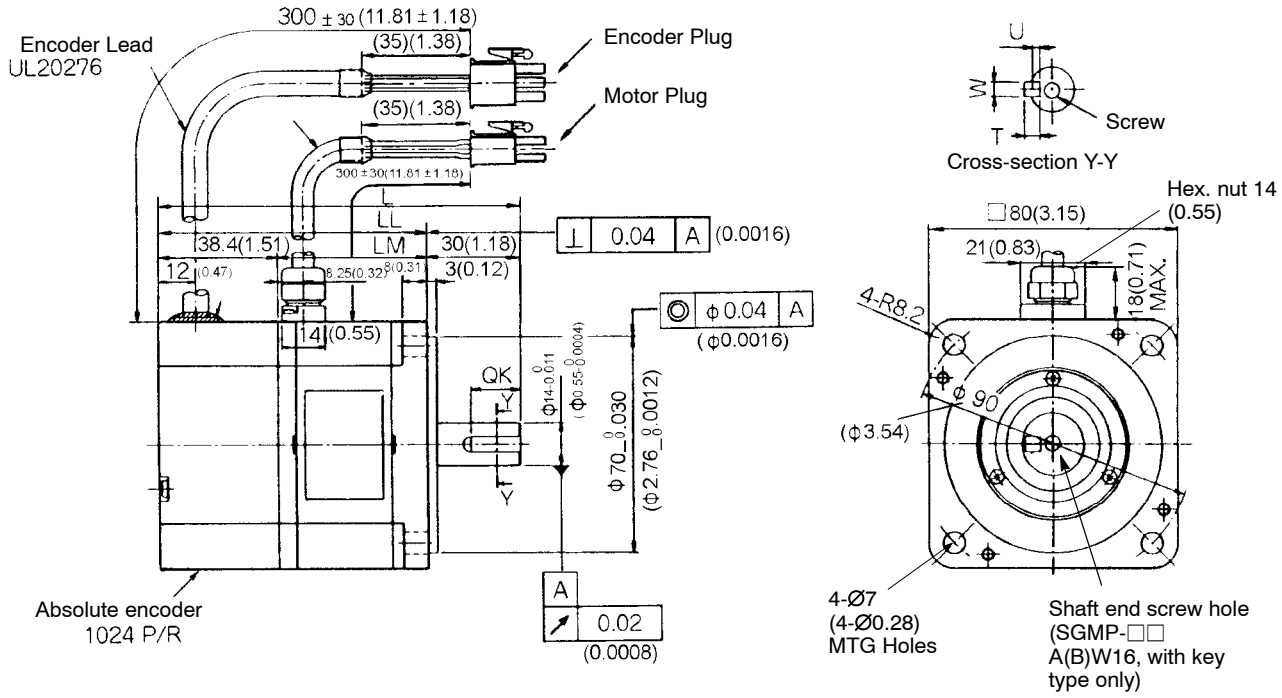
4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• 200 W (0.27 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP) (100 V only), 400 W (0.53HP) (200 V only)




| Type SGMP- | L | LL | LM | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02AW12 | 116.5 (4.59) | 86.5 (3.41) | 48.1 (1.89) | No key | | | | --- | 200 (0.27) | 1.6 (3.53) | 245 (55.1) | 68 (15.3) |
| 02BW12 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02AW14 | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02BW14 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02AW16 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 02BW16 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 03BW12 | 136.5 (5.37) | 106.5 (4.19) | 68.1 (2.68) | No key | | | | --- | 300 (0.40) | 2.3 (5.07) | | |
| 03BW14 | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03BW16 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 04AW12 | | | | No key | | | | --- | 400 (0.53) | | | |
| 04AW14 | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04AW16 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100 V specification.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

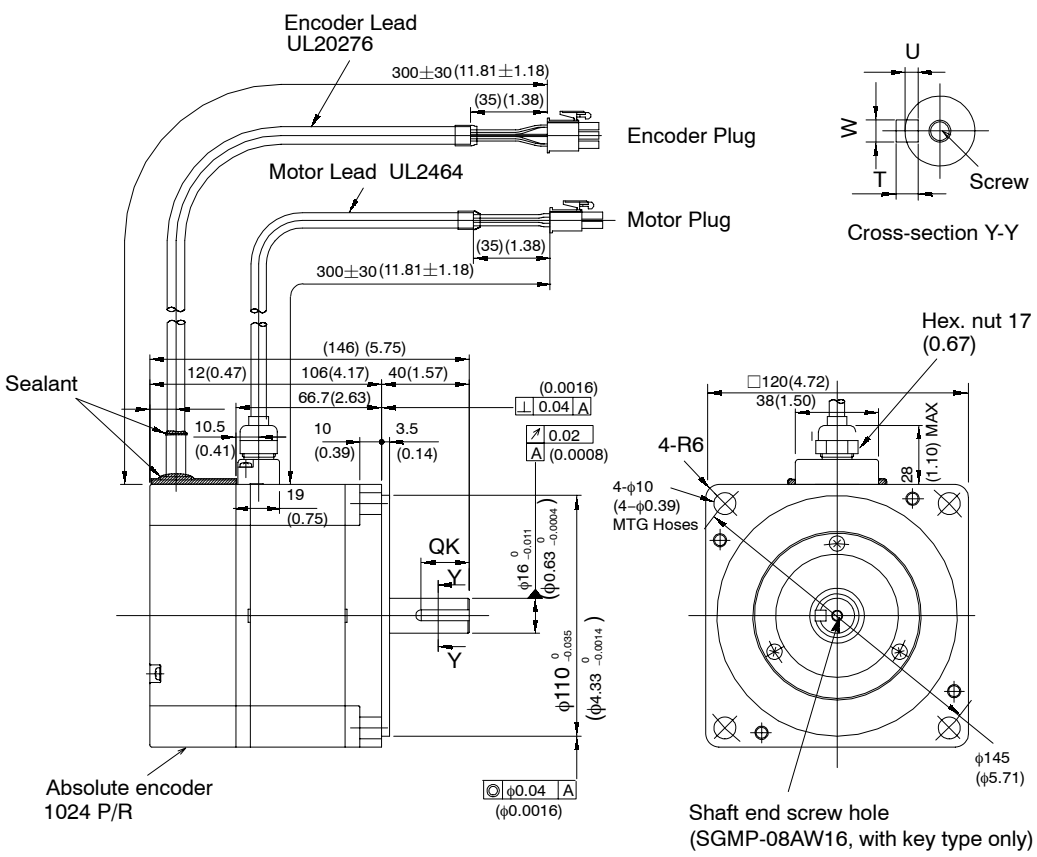
*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

3) “02A(B)W14”, “02A(B)W16”, “03BW14”, “03BW16”, “04AW14”, and “04AW16” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

• 750 W (1.01HP)




| Type SGMP- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08AW12 | No key | | | | – | 750 (1.01) | 4.8 (10.58) | 392 (88.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08AW14 | 22 (0.87) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 08AW16 | | | | | | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Note**

1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification.

3) “08AW14” and “08AW16” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

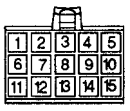
• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 100 W (0.13 HP) to 750 W (1.01 HP))

Motor Plug




Plug : 172167-1 (AMP)
Pin 170360-1 or 170364-1
Connected to
Cap 172159-1
Socket 170362-1 or 170366-1

Encoder Plug




Plug: 172171-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170363-1
Connected to
Cap :172163-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green/Yellow |

Absolute Encoder Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | White/Blue |
| 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | White/Yellow |
| 5 | Z channel output | Green |
| 6 | $\overline{Z}$ channel output | White/Green |
| 7 | 0 V (power supply) | Black |
| 8 | +5 V (power supply) | Red |
| 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Green/Yellow |
| 10 | S channel output | Purple |
| 11 | $\overline{S}$ channel output | White/Purple |
| * (12) | (Capacitor reset) | (Gray) |
| 13 | Reset | White/Gray |
| 14 | 0V(battery) | White/Orange |
| 15 | 3.6V(battery) | Orange |

* Terminal to discharge capacitor for product dispatch. Do not use.





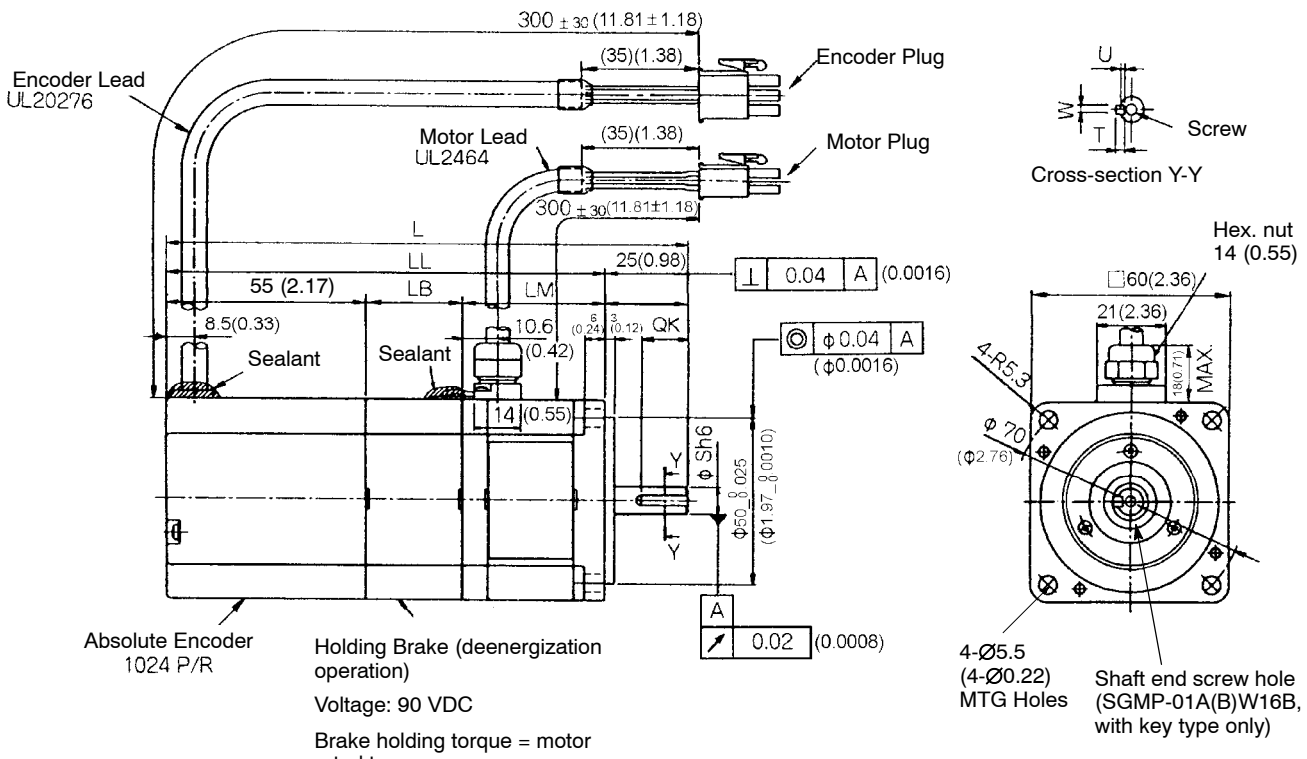
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

(4) SGMP Servomotor

Absolute encoder, with brake (Type SGMP-□□□W1□B)

• 100 W (0.13 HP)




| Type SGMP- | L | LL | LM | LB | S | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 01AW12B | 151.5 (5.96) | 126.5 (4.98) | 42.5 (1.67) | 29 (1.14) | 8 (0.31) | No key | | | | --- | 100 (0.13) | 1.2 (2.65) | 78 (17.5) | 49 (11.0) |
| 01BW12B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01AW14B | | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01BW14B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01AW16B | | | | | | | | | | M3, depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01BW16B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Note**

1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “01A(B)W14B” and “01A(B)W16B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

6) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

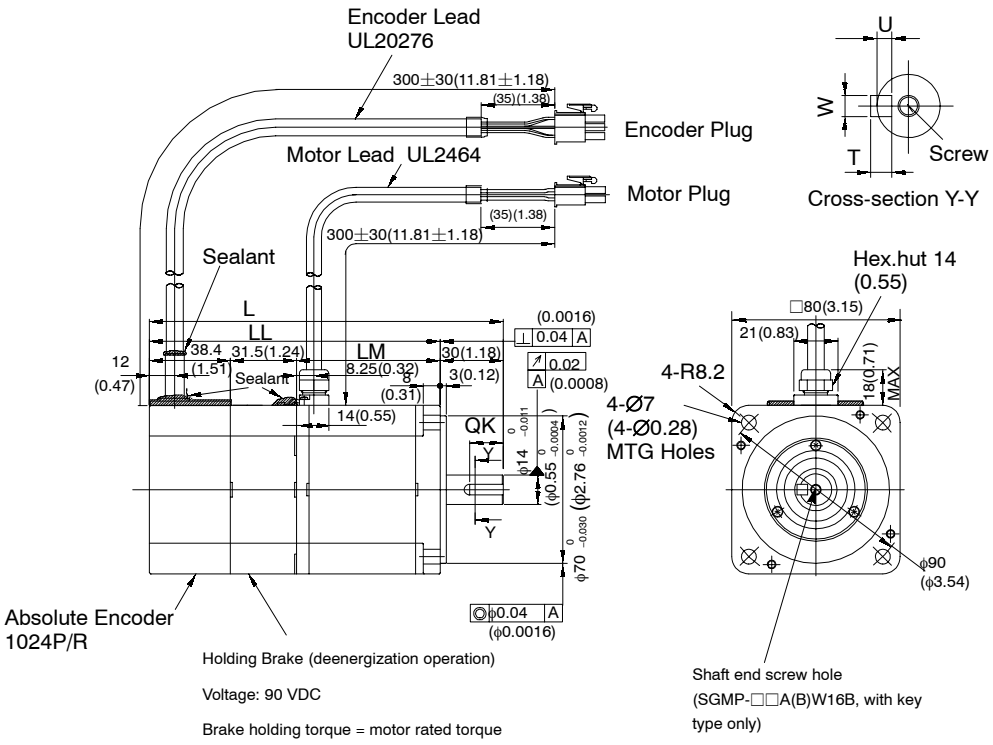




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

• 200 W (0.27 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.53 HP)




| Type SGMP- | L | LL | LM | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02AW12B | 148 (5.83) | 118 (4.65) | 48.1 (1.89) | No key | | | | --- | 200 (0.27) | 2.3 (5.07) | 245 (55.1) | 68 (15.3) |
| 02BW12B | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02AW14B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02BW14B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 02AW16B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02BW16B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 03BW12B | 168 (6.61) | 138 (5.43) | 68.1 (2.68) | No key | | | | --- | 300 (0.40) | 3.0 (6.61) | | |
| 03BW14B | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03BW16B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 04AW12B | | | | No key | | | | --- | 400 (0.53) | | | |
| 04AW14B | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04AW16B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification, and type “B” indicates 100 V specification.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

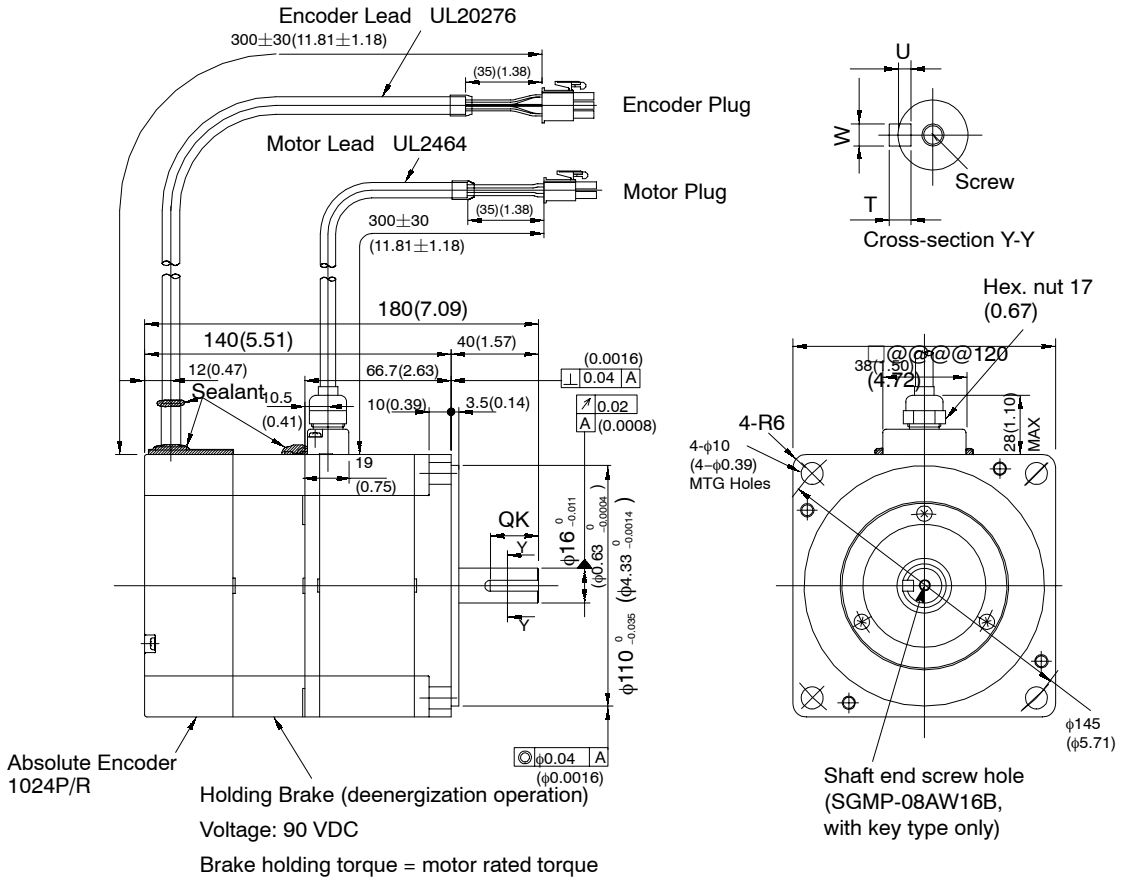
3) "02A(B)W14B", "02A(B)W16B", "03BW14B", "03BW16B", "04AW14B" and "04AW16B" have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

6) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

• 750 W (1.01 HP)




| Type SGMP- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08AW12B | No key | | | | – | 750 (1.01) | 6.2 (13.67) | 392 (88.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08AW14B | 22 (0.87) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 08AW16B | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.1 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

**Note**

1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “A” indicates 200 V specification.

3) “08AW14B” and “08AW16B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38 in) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

6) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 100W (0.13 HP) to 750 W (1.01 HP))

Motor Plug



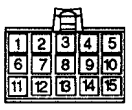

Plug : 172168-1 (AMP)
Pin 170360-1 or 170364-1(1 to 4pin)
170359-1 or 170363 (5 to 6 pin)
(17360-1 or 17364-1:only 750W)

Connected to
Cap 172160-1
Socket 170362-1 or 170366-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green/Yellow |
| 5 | Brake terminal | Black |
| 6 | Brake terminal | Black |

Encoder Plug




Plug: 172171-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170363-1

Connected to
Cap :172163-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Absolute Encoder Wiring Specifications

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| | 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | White/Blue |
| | 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| | 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | White/Yellow |
| | 5 | Z channel output | Green |
| | 6 | $\overline{Z}$ channel output | White/Green |
| | 7 | 0 V (power supply) | Black |
| | 8 | +5 V (power supply) | Red |
| | 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Green/Yellow |
| | 10 | S channel output | Purple |
| | 11 | $\overline{S}$ channel output | White/Purple |
| * | (12) | (Capacitor reset) | (Gray) |
| | 13 | Reset | White/Gray |
| | 14 | 0V(battery) | White/Orange |
| | 15 | 3.6V(battery) | Orange |

* Terminal to discharge capacitor for product dispatch. Do not use.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings (TÜV approved, conforming to the machine instructions)

1) The dimensional drawings of TÜV approved SGM Servomotors (conforming to the machine instructions) are broadly grouped into the following four categories.

   a) Incremental encoder, no brake (from page 290)

   b) Incremental encoder, with brake (from page 294)

   c) Absolute encoder, no brake (from page 299)

   d) Absolute encoder, with brake (from page 304)

   Motor capacities are available as 30 W (0.04 HP), 50 W (0.07 HP), 100 W (0.13 HP), 200 W (0.27 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.53 HP), 750 W (1.01 HP). These are grouped into three categories, as follows:

   • 30W (0.04 HP), 50W (0.07 HP), 100W (0.13 HP)

   • 200W (0.27 HP), 300W (0.40 HP), 400W (0.53 HP)

   • 750W (1.01 HP)

   **• As for the dimensional drawings of SGM servomotors, see from the page 247 on.**

   **• As for the dimensional drawings of SGMP servomotors, see from the page 269 on.**

   **• As for the dimensional drawings of TÜV approved SGMP servomotors, see from the page 309 on.**

   All drawings conform to the machine instructions. As for the motor drawings conforming to the EMC instructions, encoder plug and its accessories are different. For details, contact your Yaskawa representative.



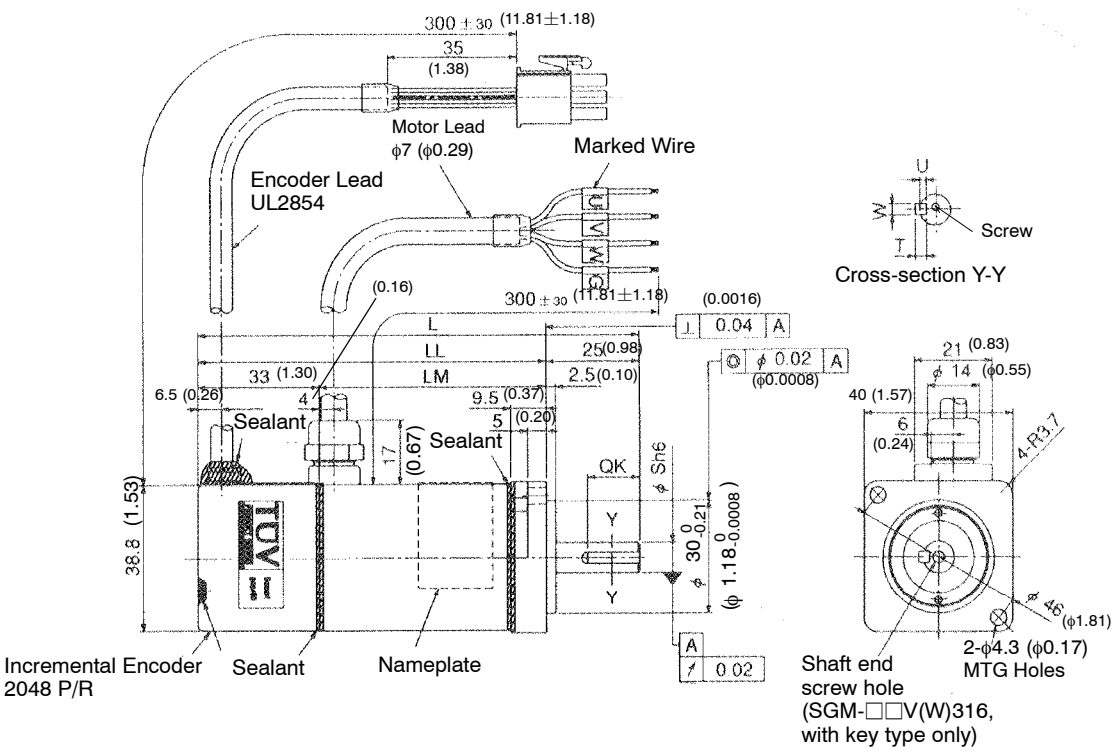


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

(1) TÜV approved (conforming to the machine instructions) SGM Servomotor Incremental encoder, no brake (Type SGM-□□□31□)

• 30W (0.04 HP), 50W (0.07 HP),100W (0.13 HP)




| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | S | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A3V312 | 94.5 (3.72) | 69.5 (2.74) | 36.5 (1.44) | 6 (0.24) | No key | | | | – | 30 (0.04) | 0.3 (0.66) | 68 (15.3) | 54 (12.1) |
| A3W312 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3V314 | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A3W314 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3V316 | | | | | | | | | M2.5 depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A3W316 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5V312 | 102.0 (4.02) | 77.0 (3.03) | 44.0 (1.73) | 6 (0.24) | No key | | | | – | 50 (0.07) | 0.4 (0.88) | | |
| A5W312 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5V314 | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A5W314 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5V316 | | | | | | | | | M2.5 depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A5W316 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01V312 | 119.5 (4.70) | 94.5 (3.72) | 61.5 (2.42) | 8 (0.31) | No key | | | | – | 100 (0.13) | 0.5 (1.10) | 78 (17.5) | |
| 01W312 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01V314 | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01W314 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01V316 | | | | | | | | | M3 depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01W316 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

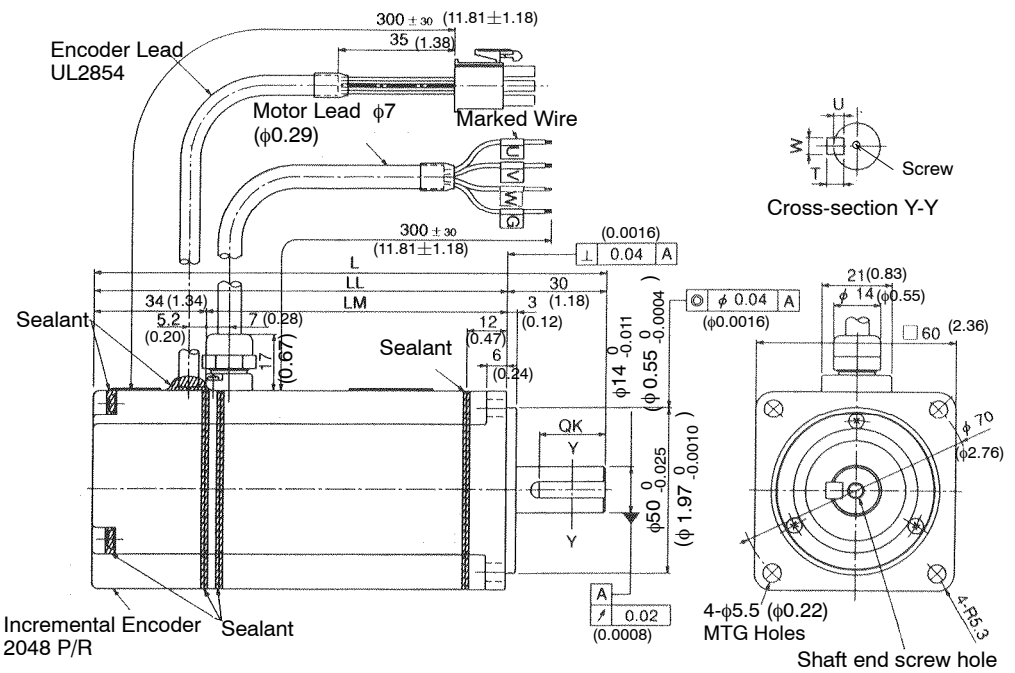
**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and type “W” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “A3V(W)314”, “A3V(W)316”, “A5V(W)314”, “A5V(W)316”, “01V(W)314” and “01V(W)316” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

• 200 W (0.27 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.53 HP)




| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02V312 | 126.5 (4.98) | 96.5 (3.80) | 62.5 (2.46) | No key | | | | – | 200 (0.27) | 1.1 (2.43) | 245 (55.1) | 74 (16.6) |
| 02W312 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02V314 | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02W314 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02V316 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 02W316 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 03W312 | 154.5 (6.08) | 124.5 (4.90) | 90.5 (3.56) | No key | | | | – | 300 (0.40) | 1.1 (2.43) | | |
| 03W314 | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03W316 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 04V312 | | | | No key | | | | – | 400 (0.53) | | | |
| 04V314 | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04V316 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

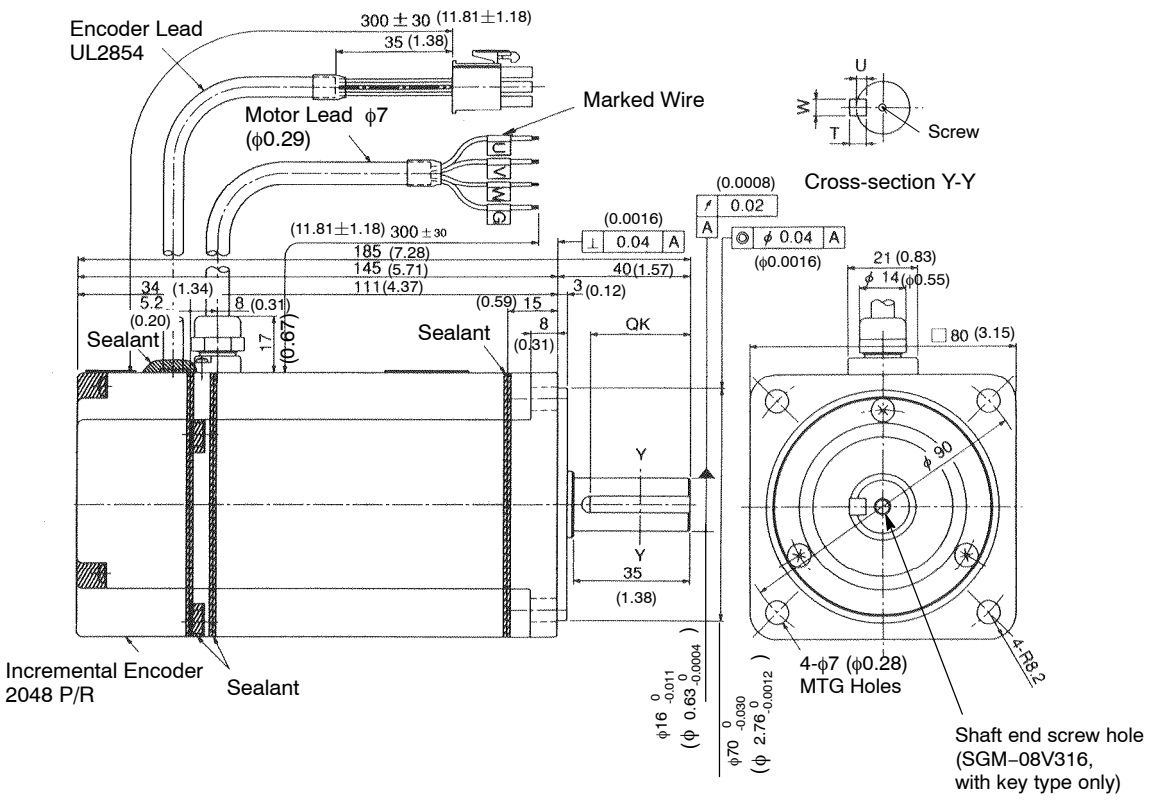
**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and type “W” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “02V(W)314”, “02V(W)316”, “03W314”, “03W316”, “04V314” and “04V316” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

- 750 W (1.01 HP)




| Type SGM- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08V312 | No key | | | | – | 750 (1.01) | 3.4 (7.50) | 392 (88.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08V314 | 30 (1.18) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 08V316 | | | | | M5, depth 8(0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification.



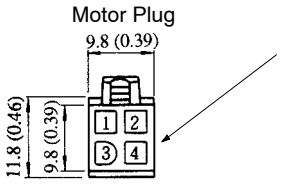
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3) “08V314” and “08V316” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 30 W (0.04 HP) to 750 W (1.01 HP)

Motor Plug

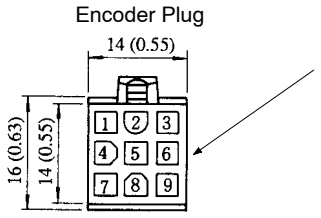



Plug : 172167-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170360-1 or 170364-1
(170359-1 or 170363-1: 30, 50, or 100 W only)
Connected to
Cap: 172159-1
Socket: 170362 -1 or 170366-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green |

Encoder Plug




Plug: 172169-1 (Made by AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170363-1
Connected to
Cap :172161-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Incremental Encoder Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | Blue/Black |
| 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | Yellow/Black |
| 5 | C channel output | Green |
| 6 | $\overline{C}$ channel output | Green/Black |
| 7 | 0 V (power supply) | Gray |
| 8 | +5 V (power supply) | Red |
| 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Orange |



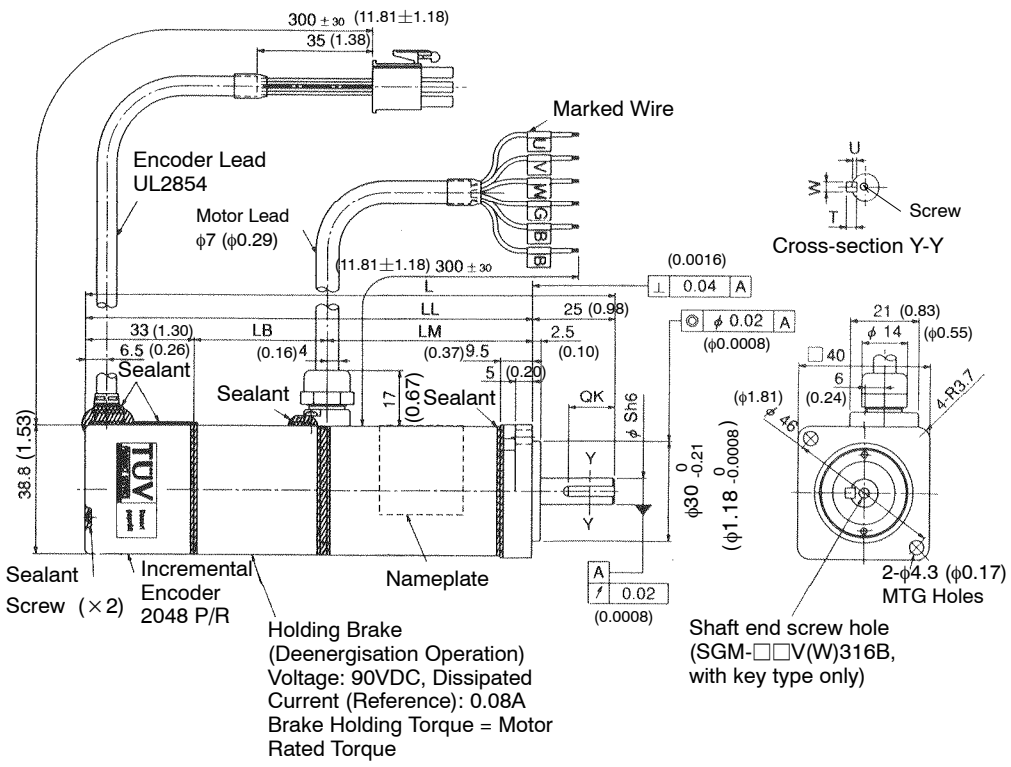


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

(2) TÜV approved (conforming to the machine instructions) SGM Servomotor Incremental encoder, with brake (Type SGM-□□□31□B)

• 30W (0.04 HP), 50W (0.07 HP), 100W (0.13 HP)




| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | LB | S | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A3V312B | 126.0 (4.96) | 101.0 (3.98) | 36.5 (1.44) | 31.5 (1.24) | 6 (0.24) | No key | | | | – | 30 (0.04) | 0.6 (1.32) | 68 (15.3) | 54 (12.1) |
| A3W312B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3V314B | | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A3W314B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3V316B | | | | | | | | | | M2.5, depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A3W316B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5V312B | 133.5 (5.26) | 108.5 (4.27) | 44.0 (1.73) | 31.5 (1.24) | 6 (0.24) | No key | | | | – | 50 (0.07) | 0.7 (1.54) | | |
| A5W312B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5V314B | | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A5W314B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5V316B | | | | | | | | | | M2.5, depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A5W316B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01V312B | 160.0 (6.30) | 135.0 (5.31) | 61.5 (2.42) | 40.5 (1.59) | 8 (0.31) | No key | | | | – | 100 (0.13) | 0.8 (1.76) | 78 (17.5) | |
| 01W312B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01V314B | | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01W314B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01V316B | | | | | | | | | | M3, depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01W316B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

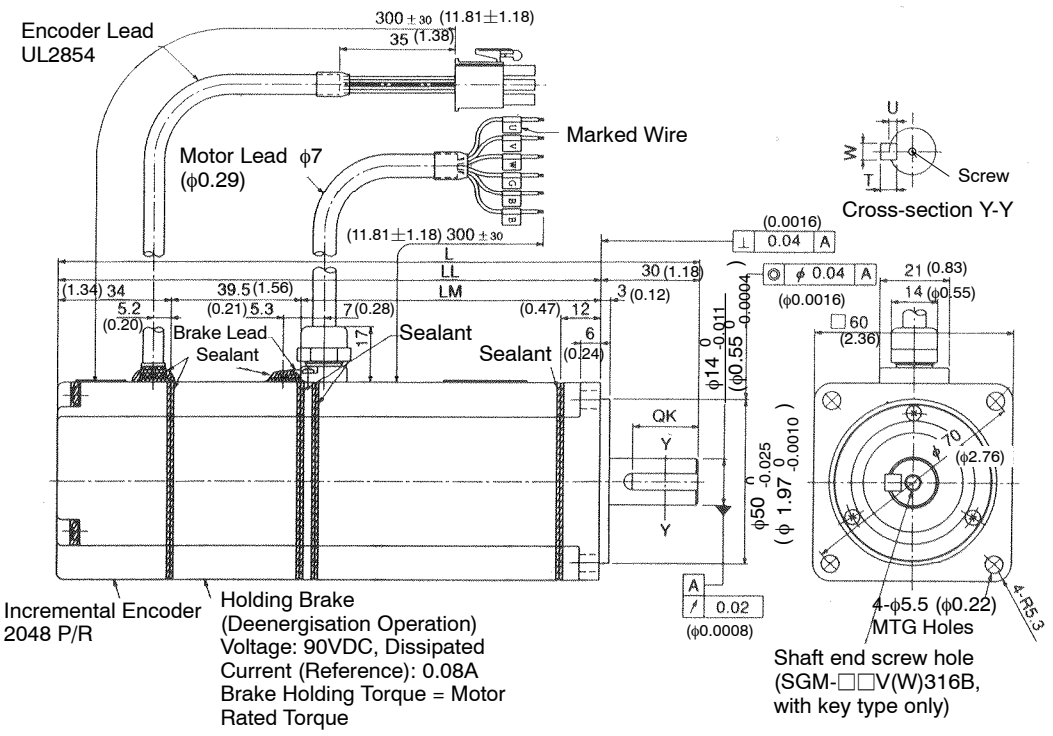
2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and type “W” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “A3V(W)314B”, “A3V(W)316B”, “A5V(W)314B”, “A5V(W)316B”, “01V(W)314B” and “01V(W)316B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

• 200 W (0.53 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.27 HP)






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | QK | U | W | T | Screw diminsions | Out-put W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allow-able radial load N (lb) | Allow-able thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02V312B | 166.0 (6.54) | 136.0 (5.35) | 62.5 (2.46) | No key | | | | – | 200 (0.27) | 1.6 (3.53) | 245 (55.1) | 74 (16.6) |
| 02W312B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02V314B | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02W314B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02V316B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 02W316B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 03W312B | 194.0 (7.64) | 164.0 (6.46) | 90.5 (3.56) | No key | | | | – | 300 (0.40) | 2.2 (4.85) | | |
| 03W314B | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03W316B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 04V312B | | | | No key | | | | – | 400 (0.53) | | | |
| 04V314B | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04V316B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note**

1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and type “W” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “02V(W)314B”, “02V(W)316B”, “03W314B”, “03W316B”, “04V314B” and “04V316B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

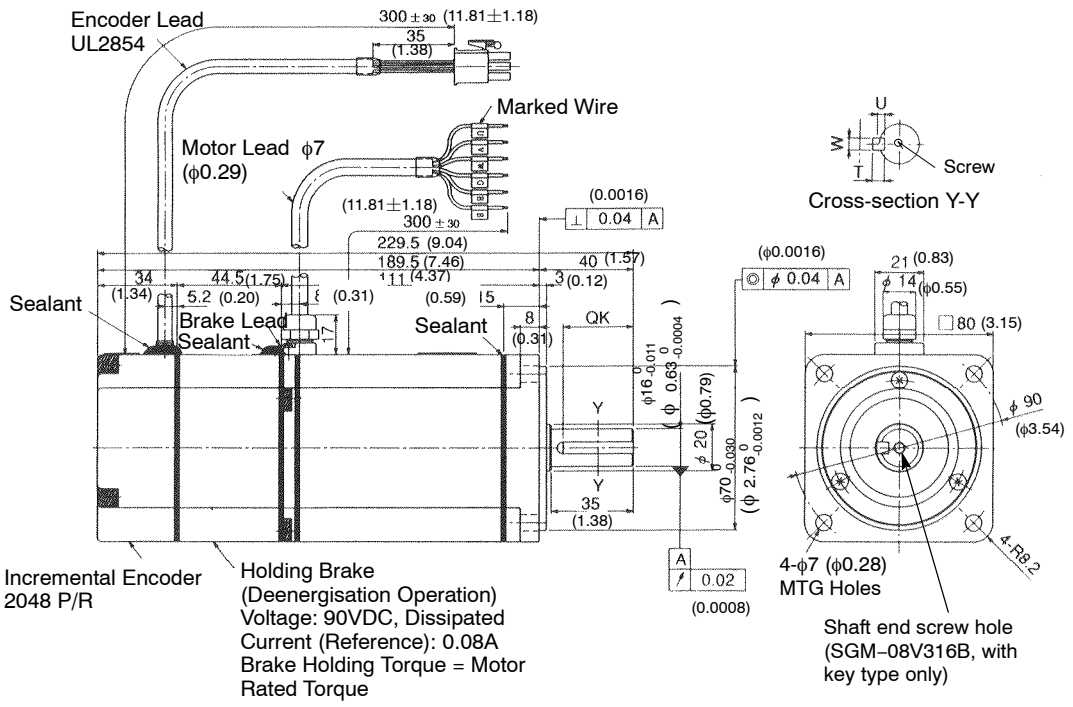
4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• 750 W (1.01 HP)




| Type SGM- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08V312B | No key | | | | – | 750 (1.01) | 4.3 (9.48) | 392 (88.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08V314B | 30 (1.18) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 08V316B | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification.

3) “08V314B” and “08V316B have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

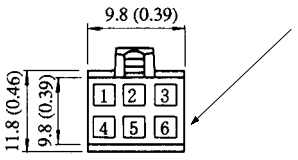


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 30 W (0.04 HP) to 750 W (1.01 HP)

Motor Plug

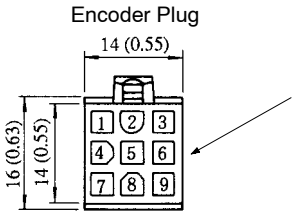



Plug : 172168-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170360-1 or 170364-1
(17359-1 or 170363-1: 30, 50, or 100 W only)
Connected to
Cap: 172160-1
Socket: 170362 -1 or 170366-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green/Yellow |
| 5 | Brake terminal | Red |
| 6 | Brake terminal | Black |

Encoder Plug




Plug: 172169-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170363-1
Connected to
Cap :172161-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Incremental Encoder Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | Blue/Black |
| 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | Yellow/Black |
| 5 | C channel output | Green |
| 6 | $\overline{C}$ channel output | Green/Black |
| 7 | 0 V (power supply) | Gray |
| 8 | +5 V (power supply) | Red |
| 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Orange |

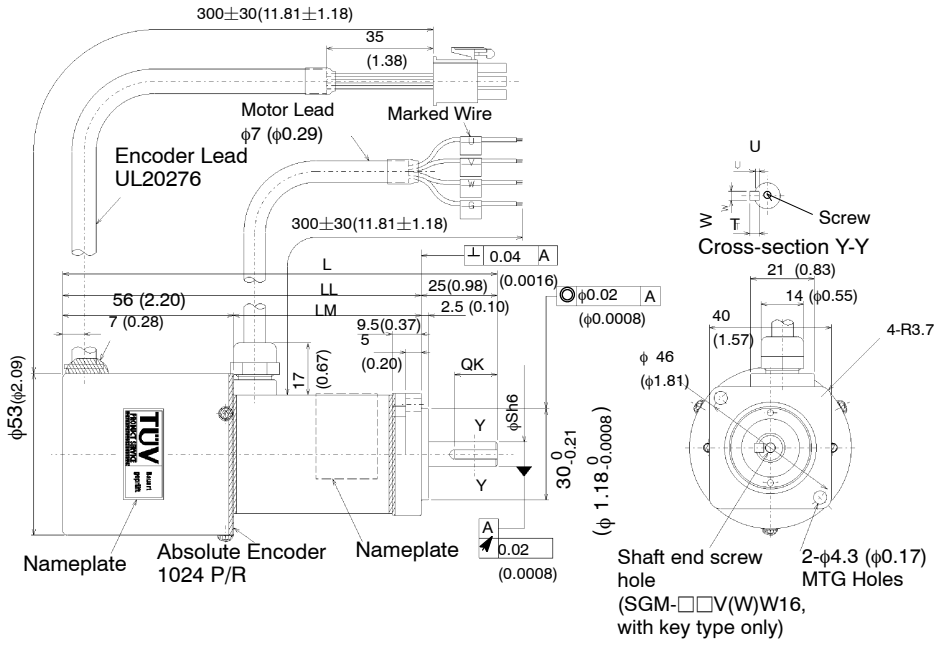




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

(3) TÜV approved (conforming to the machine instructions) SGM Servomotor
Absolute encoder, no brake (Type SGM-□□□W1□)

• 30 W (0.04 HP), 50 W (0.07 HP), 100 W (0.13 HP)




| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | S | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A3VW12 | 117.5 (4.63) | 92.5 (3.64) | 36.5 (1.44) | 6 (0.24) | No key | | | | --- | 30 (0.04) | 0.45 (0.99) | 68 (15.3) | 54 (12.1) |
| A3WW12 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3VW14 | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A3WW14 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3VW16 | | | | | | | | | M2.5, depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A3WW16 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5VW12 | 125.0 (4.92) | 100.0 (3.94) | 44.0 (1.73) | | No key | | | | --- | 50 (0.07) | 0.55 (1.21) | | |
| A5WW12 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5VW14 | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A5WW14 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5VW16 | | | | | | | | | M2.5, depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A5WW16 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01VW12 | 142.5 (5.61) | 117.5 (4.63) | 61.5 (2.42) | 8 (0.31) | No key | | | | --- | 100 (0.13) | 0.65 (1.43) | 78 (17.5) | |
| 01WW12 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01VW14 | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01WW14 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01VW16 | | | | | | | | | M3, depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01WW16 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

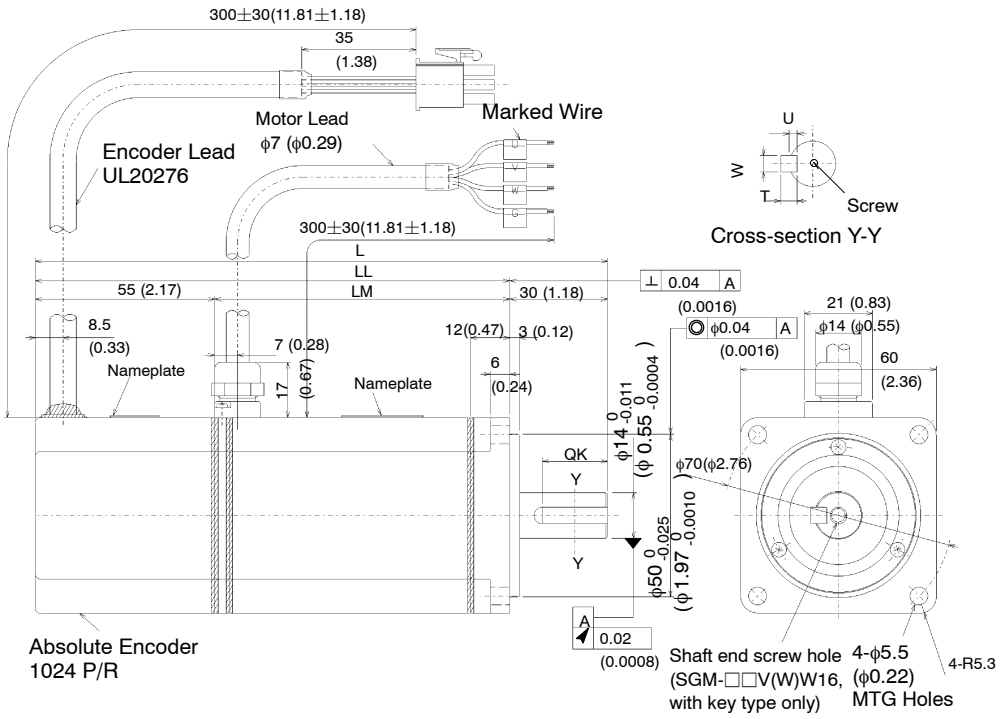
**Note** 1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and type “W” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “A3V(W)W14”, “A3V(W)W16”, “A5V(W)W14”, “A5V(W)W16”, “01V(W)W14” and “01V(W)W16” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

• 200 W (0.27 HP), 300W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.53 HP)






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02VW12 | 147.5 (5.81) | 117.5 (4.63) | 62.5 (2.46) | No key | | | | – | 200 (7.87) | 1.2 (2.65) | 245 (55.1) | 74 (16.6) |
| 02WW12 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02VW14 | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02WW14 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02VW16 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 02WW16 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 03WW12 | 175.5 (6.91) | 145.5 (5.73) | 90.5 (3.56) | No key | | | | – | 300 (0.40) | 1.8 (3.97) | | |
| 03WW14 | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03WW16 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 04VW12 | | | | No key | | | | – | 400 (15.7) | | | |
| 04VW14 | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04VW16 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and type “W” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “02V(W)W14”, “02V(W)W16”, “03WW14” “03WW16”, “04VW14” and “04VW16” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

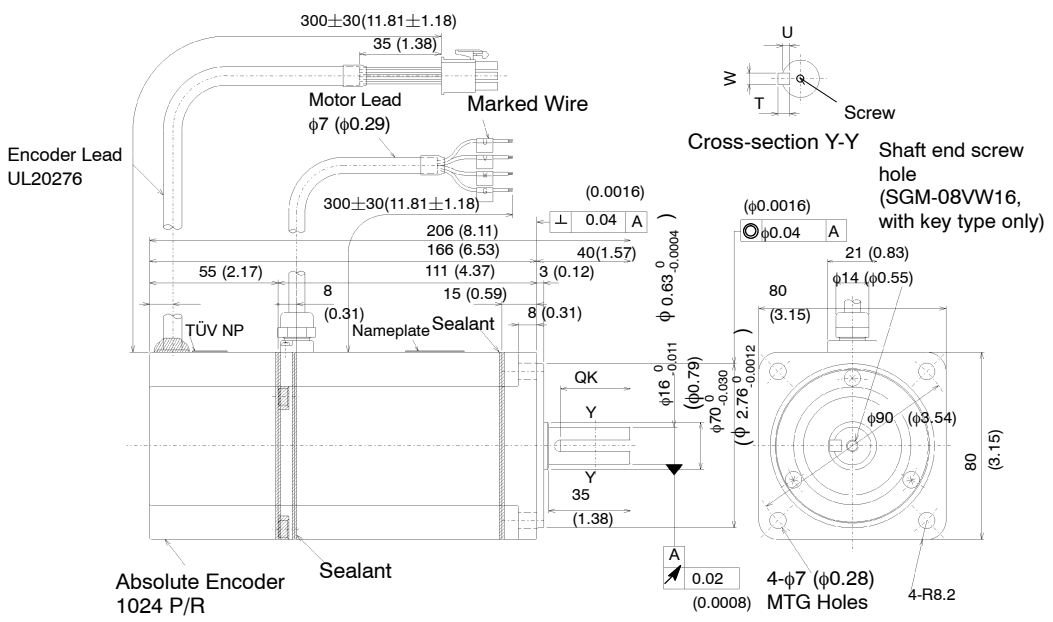




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

• 750 W (1.01 HP)




| Type SGM- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08VW12 | No key | | | | ––– | 750 (1.01) | 3.5 (7.72) | 392 (88.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08VW14 | 30 (1.18) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 08VW16 | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification.

3) “08VW14” and “08VW16” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38 in.) from the motor mounting surface.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 30 W (0.04 HP) to 750 W (1.01 HP)

Motor Plug

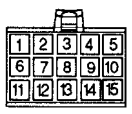



Plug : 172167-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170360-1 or 170364-1
(17359-1 or 170363-1: 30, 50, or 100 W only)
Connected to
Cap: 172159-1
Socket: 170362 -1 or 170366-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green/Yellow |

Encoder Plug




Plug: 172171-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170363-1
Connected to
Cap :172163-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Incremental Encoder Wiring Specifications

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| | 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | White/Blue |
| | 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| | 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | White/Yellow |
| | 5 | Z channel output | Green |
| | 6 | $\overline{Z}$ channel output | White/Green |
| | 7 | 0 V (power supply) | Gray |
| | 8 | +5 V (power supply) | Red |
| | 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Orange |
| | 10 | S channel output | Purple |
| | 11 | $\overline{S}$ channel output | White/Purple |
| * | (12) | (Capacitor reset) | (Gray) |
| | 13 | Reset | White/Gray |
| | 14 | 0V(battery) | White/Orange |
| | 15 | 3.6V(battery) | Orange |

* Terminal to discharge capacitor for product dispatch. Do not use.

5

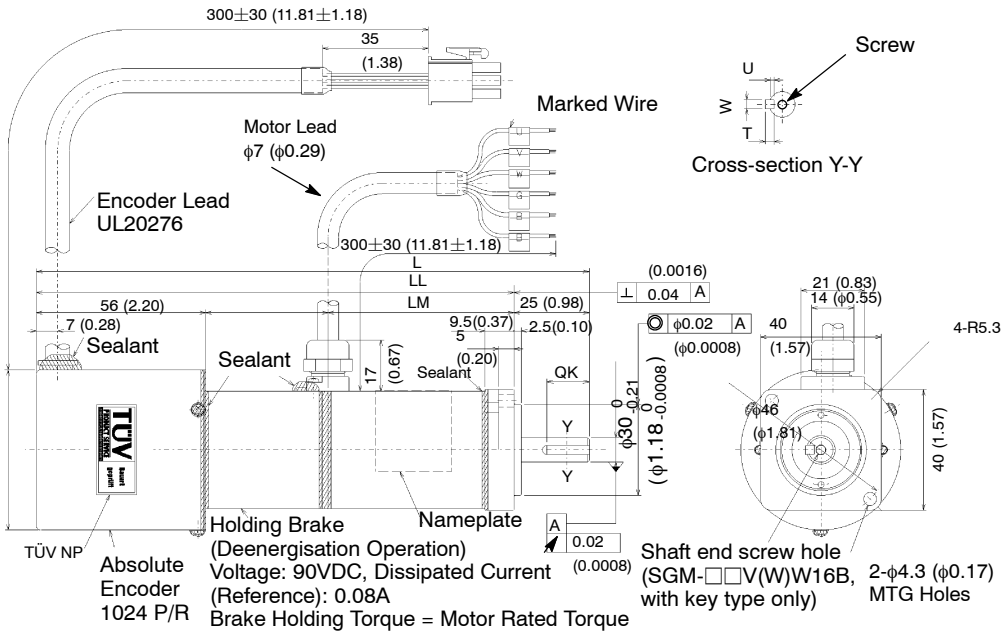


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

(4) TÜV approved (conforming to the machine instructions) SGM Servomotor Absolute encoder, with brake (Type SGM-□□□W1□B)

• 30 W (0.04 HP), 50 W (0.07 HP), 100 W (0.13 HP)




| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | LB | S | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimen-sions | Out-put W (HP) | Appr ox. mass kg (lb) | Al-low-able radial load N (lb) | Al-low-able thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A3VW12B | 149.0 (5.87) | 124.0 (4.88) | 36.5 (1.44) | 31.5 (1.24) | 6 (0.24) | No key | | | | --- | 30 (0.04) | 0.75 (1.65) | 68 (15.3) | 54 (12.1) |
| A3WW12B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3VW14B | | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A3WW14B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A3VW16B | | | | | | | | | | M2.5, depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A3WW16B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5VW12B | 156.5 (6.16) | 131.5 (5.18) | 44.0 (1.73) | 31.5 (1.24) | | No key | | | | --- | 50 (0.07) | 0.85 (1.87) | | |
| A5WW12B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5VW14B | | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.2 (0.05) | 2 (0.08) | 2 (0.08) | | | | | |
| A5WW14B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A5VW16B | | | | | | | | | | M2.5, depth 5 (0.20) | | | | |
| A5WW16B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01VW12B | 183.0 (7.20) | 158.0 (6.22) | 61.5 (2.42) | 40.5 (1.59) | 8 (0.31) | No key | | | | --- | 100 (0.13) | 0.95 (2.09) | 78 (17.5) | |
| 01WW12B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01VW14B | | | | | | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01WW14B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 01VW16B | | | | | | | | | | M3, depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01WW16B | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Note** 1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

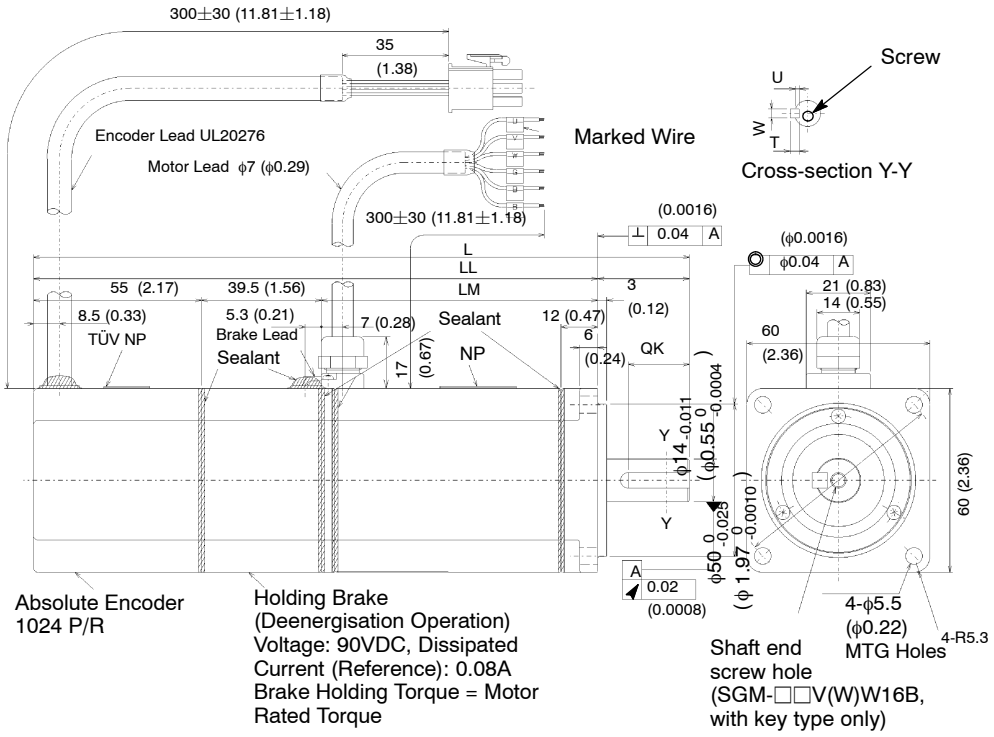
2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and type “W” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “A3V(W)W14B”, “A3V(W)W16B”, “A5V(W)W14B”, “A5V(W)W16B”, “01V(W)W14B” and “01V(W)W16B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

• 200 W (0.27 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.53 HP)






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

| Type SGM- | L | LL | LM | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02VW12B | 187.0 (7.36) | 157.0 (6.18) | 62.5 (2.46) | No key | | | | – | 200 (0.27) | 1.7 (3.75) | 245 (55.1) | 74 (16.6) |
| 02WW12B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02VW14B | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02WW14B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02VW16B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 02WW16B | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 03WW12B | 215.0 (8.46) | 185.0 (7.28) | 90.5 (3.56) | No key | | | | – | 300 (0.40) | 2.3 (5.07) | | |
| 03WW14B | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03WW16B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 04VW12B | | | | No key | | | | – | 400 (0.53) | | | |
| 04VW14B | | | | 20 (0.79) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04VW16B | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and type “W” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “02V(W)W14B”, “02V(W)W16B”, “03WW14B”, “03WW16B”, “04VW14B” and “04VW16B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

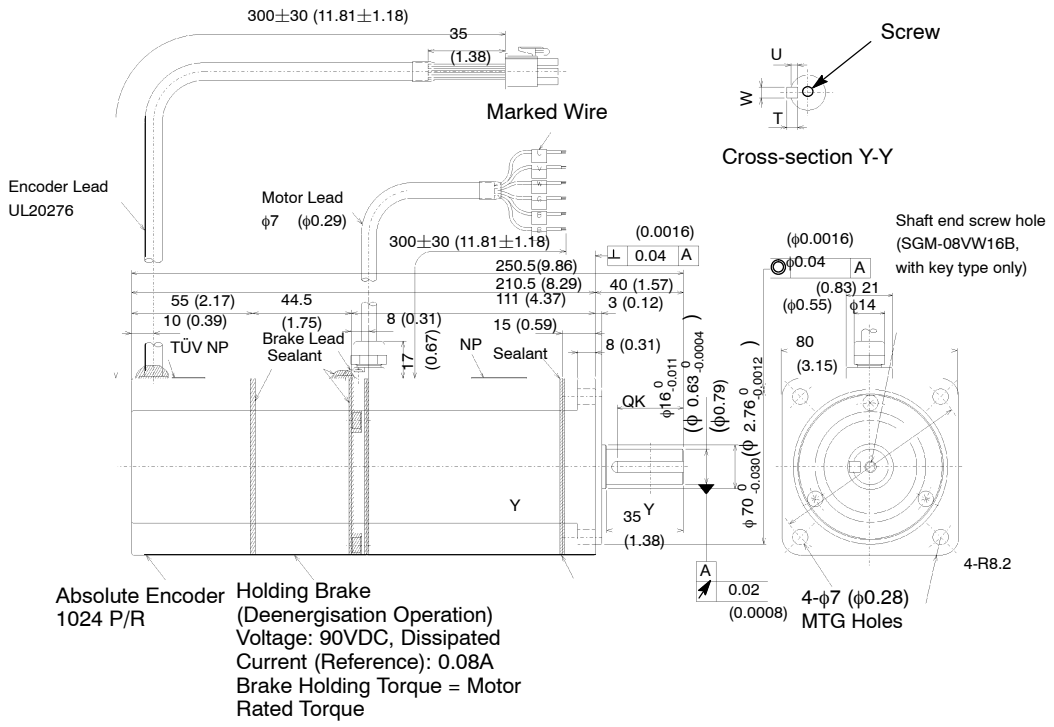
4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• 750 W (1.01 HP)




| Type SGM- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions (lb) | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08VW12B | No key | | | | ––– | 750 (1.01) | 4.5 (9.92) | 392 (88.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08VW14B | 30 (1.18) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 08VW16B | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification.

3) “08VW14B” and “08VW16B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

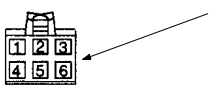


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 30 W (0.04 HP) to 750 W (1.01 HP)

Motor Plug

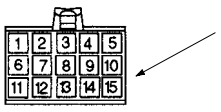



Plug : 172168-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170360-1 or 170364-1
(17359-1 or 170363-1: 30, 50, or 100 W only)
Connected to
Cap: 172160-1
Socket: 170362 -1 or 170366-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green/Yellow |
| 5 | Brake terminal | Red |
| 6 | Brake terminal | Black |

Encoder Plug




Plug: 172171-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170363-1
Connected to
Cap :172163-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Incremental Encoder Wiring Specifications

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| | 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | White/Blue |
| | 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| | 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | White/Yellow |
| | 5 | Z channel output | Green |
| | 6 | $\overline{Z}$ channel output | White/Green |
| | 7 | 0 V (power supply) | Black |
| | 8 | +5 V (power supply) | Red |
| | 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Green/Yellow |
| | 10 | S channel output | Purple |
| | 11 | $\overline{S}$ channel output | White/Purple |
| * | (12) | (Capacitor reset) | (Gray) |
| | 13 | Reset | White/Gray |
| | 14 | 0V(battery) | White/Orange |
| | 15 | 3.6V(battery) | Orange |

* Terminal to discharge capacitor for product dispatch. Do not use.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) The dimensional drawings of TÜV approved SGMP Servomotors (conforming to the machine instructions) are broadly grouped into the following four categories.

   a) Incremental encoder, no brake (from page 310)

   b) Incremental encoder, with brake (from page 314 )

   c) Absolute encoder, no brake (from page 319)

   d) Absolute encoder, with brake (from page 324)

   Motor capacities are available as 100 W (0.13 HP), 200 W (0.27 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP) , 400 W (0.53 HP), 750 W (1.01 HP). These are grouped into three categories, as follows:

   • 100W (0.13 HP)

   • 200W (0.27 HP), 300W (0.40 HP), 400W (0.53 HP)

   • 750W (1.01 HP)

   • **As for the dimensional drawings of SGM servomotors, see from the page 247 on.**

   • **As for the dimensional drawings of SGMP servomotors, see from the page 269 on.**

   • **As for the dimensional drawings of TÜV approved SGM servomotors, see from the page 289 on.**



All drawings conform to the machine instructions. As for the motor drawings conforming to the EMC instructions, encoder plug and its accessories are different. For details, contact your Yaskawa representative.

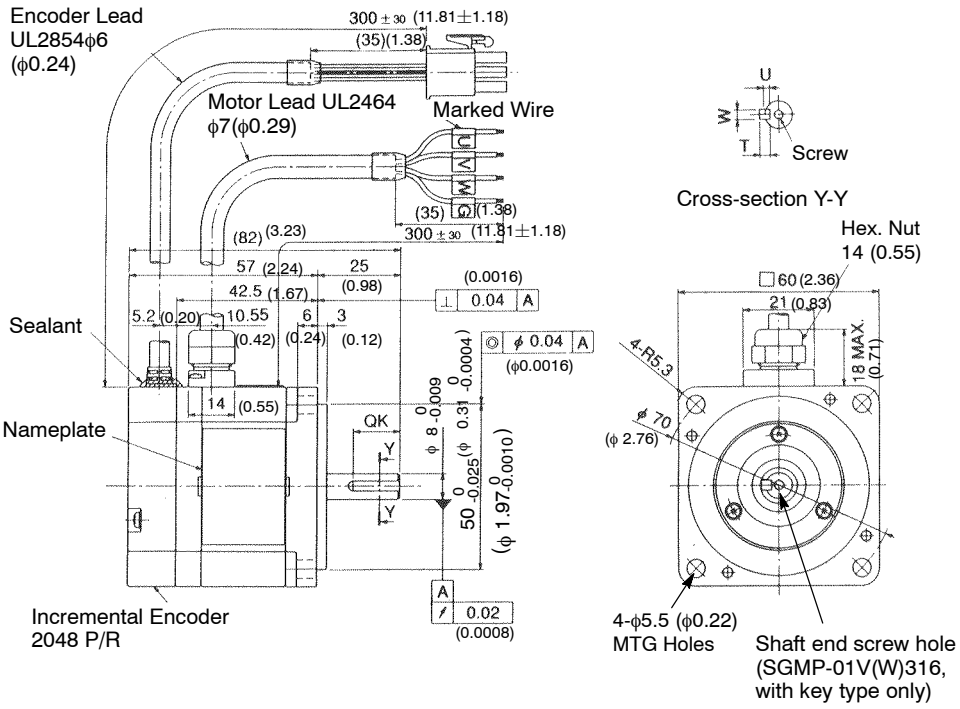


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

(1) TÜV approved (conforming to the machine instructions) SGMP Servomotor Incremental encoder, no brake (Type SGMP-□□□31□)

• 100 W (0.13 HP)




| Type SGMP- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 01V312 | No key | | | | --- | 100 (0.13) | 0.7 (1.54) | 78 (17.5) | 49 (11.0) |
| 01W312 | | | | | | | | | |
| 01V314 | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01W314 | | | | | | | | | |
| 01V316 | | | | | M3, depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01W316 | | | | | | | | | |

**Note**

1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and type “W” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “01V(W)314” and “01V(W)316” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

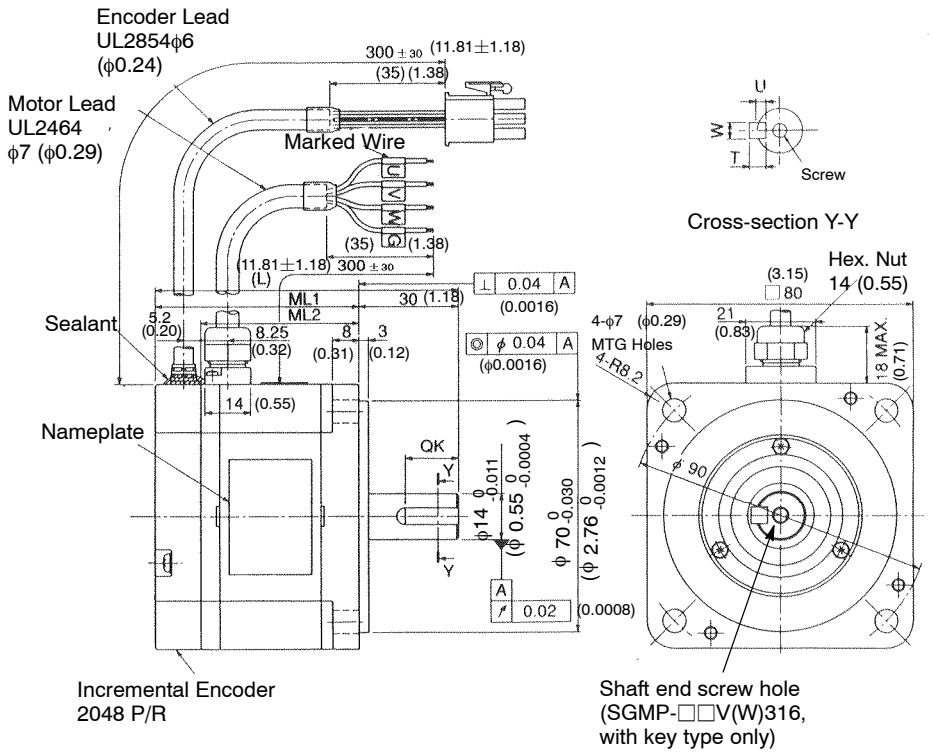
4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) Conforms to “IP55” protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• 200 W (0.27 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.53 HP)




| Type SGMP- | L | ML1 | ML2 | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02V312 | 92 (3.62) | 62 (2.44) | 48.1 (1.89) | No key | | | | --- | 200 (0.27) | 1.4 (3.09) | 245 (55.1) | 68 (15.3) |
| 02W312 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02V314 | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02W314 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02V316 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 02W316 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 03W312 | 112 (4.41) | 82 (3.23) | 68.1 (2.68) | No key | | | | --- | 300 (0.40) | 2.1 (4.63) | | |
| 03W314 | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03W316 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 04V312 | | | | No key | | | | --- | 400 (0.53) | | | |
| 04V314 | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04V316 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and type “W” indicates 100 V specification.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

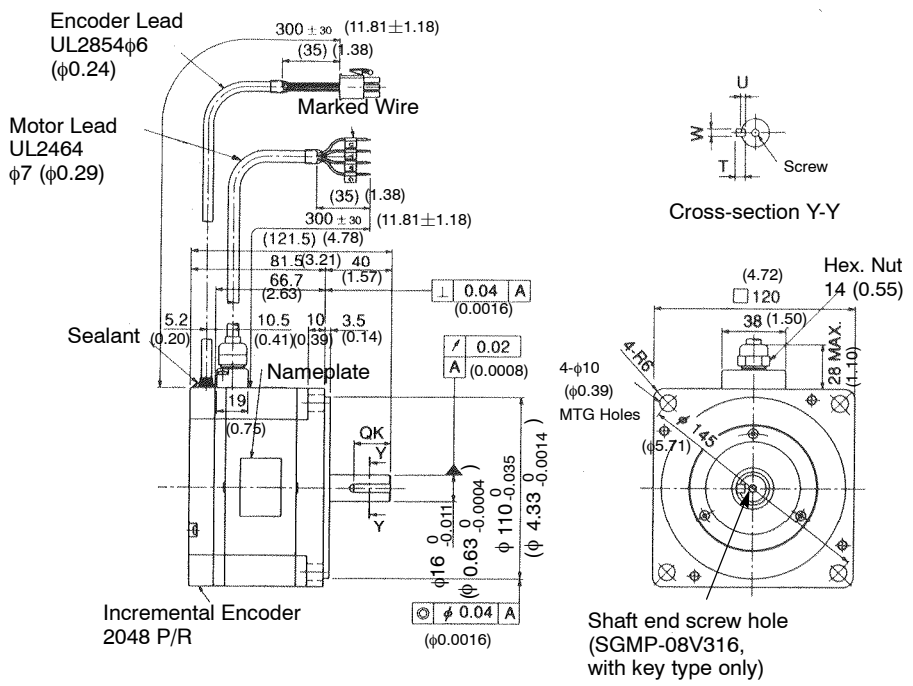
*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

3) “02V(W)314”, “02V(W)316”, “04V314”, “04V316”, “03W314”, and 03W316 have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) Conforms to “IP55” protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

• 750 W (1.01 HP)




| Type SGMP- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08V312 | No key | | | | --- | 750 (1.01) | 4.6 (10.14) | 392 (80.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08V314 | 22 (0.87) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 08V316 | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note**

1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification.

3) “08V314” and “08V316” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 100 W (0.13HP) to 750 W (1.01HP))

Motor Plug



Plug : 172167-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170360-1 or 170364-1

Connected to
Cap 172159-1
Socket 170362-1 or 170366-1

Encoder Plug



Plug: 172169-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170363-1

Connected to
Cap :172161-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green/Yellow |

Incremental Encoder Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | Blue/Black |
| 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | Yellow/Black |
| 5 | C channel output | Green |
| 6 | $\overline{C}$ channel output | Green/Black |
| 7 | 0 V (power supply) | Gray |
| 8 | +5 V (power supply) | Red |
| 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Orange |



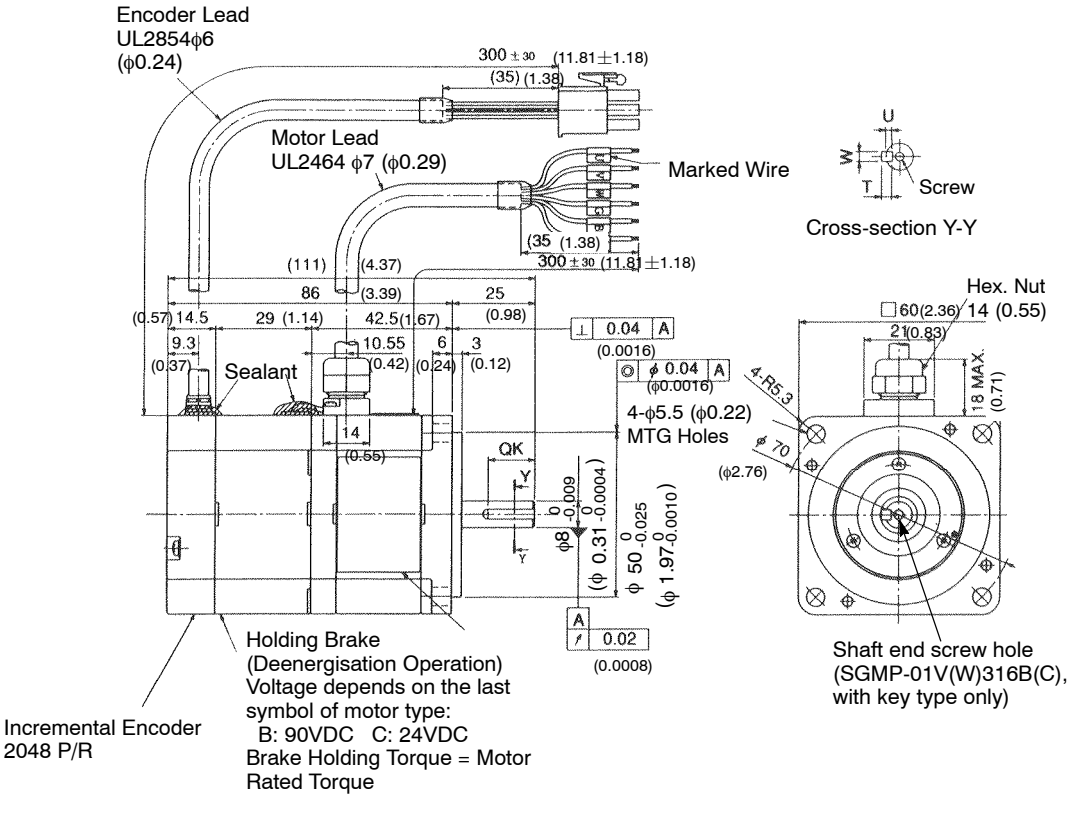


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

(2) TÜV approved (conforming to the machine instructions) SGMP Servomotor Incremental encoder, with brake (Type SGMP-□□□31□B)

• 100 W (0.13HP)




| Type SGMP- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 01V312B(C) | No key | | | | --- | 100 (0.13) | 0.9 (1.98) | 78 (17.5) | 49 (11.0) |
| 01V314B(C) | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01V316B(C) | | | | | M3, depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01W312B(C) | No key | | | | --- | | | | |
| 01W314B(C) | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | M3, depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01W316B(C) | | | | | | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and “W” indicates 100V specification.

3) “01V314B(C)”, “01V316B(C)”, “01W314B(C)” and “01W316B(C)” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.



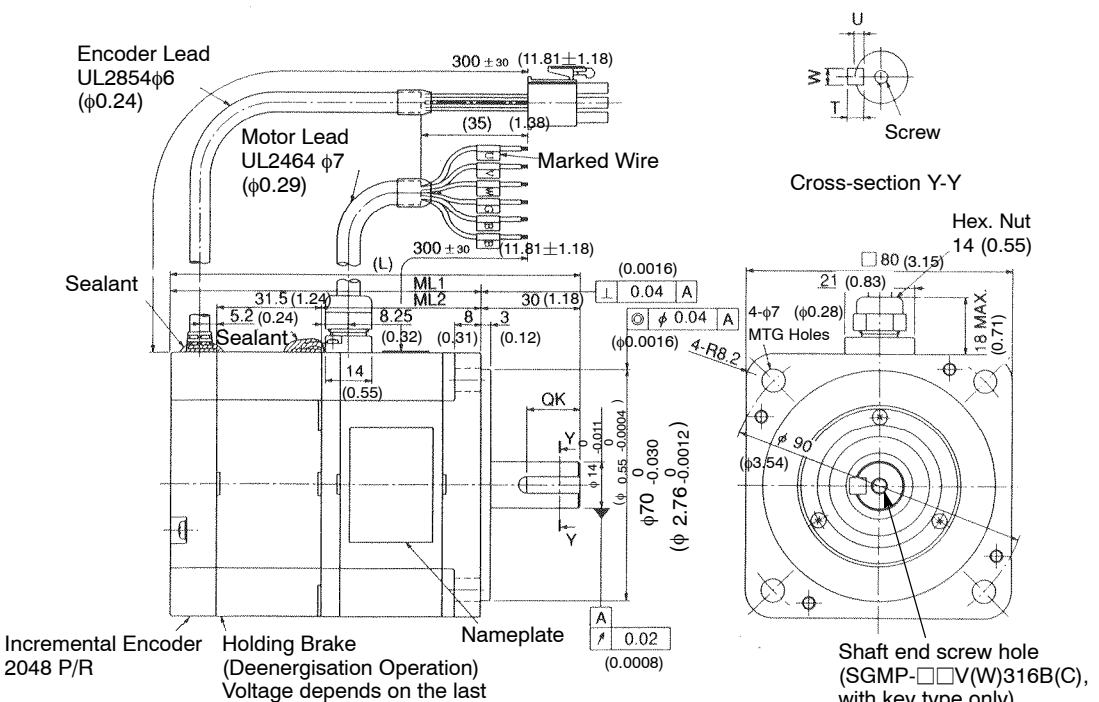
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

6) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

• 200 W (0.27HP), 300W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.53HP)








Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

| Type SGMP- | L | LL | LM | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02V312B(C) | 123.5 (4.86) | 93.5 (3.68) | 48.1 (1.89) | No key | | | | – | 200 (0.27) | 1.9 (4.19) | 245 (55.1) | 68 (15.3) |
| 02V314B(C) | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02V316B(C) | | | | | | | | M5 depth 8 | | | | |
| 02W312B(C) | | | | No key | | | | – | | | | |
| 02W314B(C) | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02W316B(C) | | | | | | | | M5 depth 8 | | | | |
| 03W312B(C) | 143.5 (5.65) | 113.5 (4.47) | 68.1 (2.68) | No key | | | | – | 300 (0.40) | 2.6 (0.10) | | |
| 03W314B(C) | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03W316B(C) | | | | | | | | M5 depth 8 | | | | |
| 04V312B(C) | | | | No key | | | | – | 400 (0.53) | | | |
| 04V314B(C) | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04V316B(C) | | | | | | | | M5 depth 8 | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and “W” indicates 100V specification.

3) “02V314B(C)”, “02V316B(C)”, “02W314B(C)”, “02W316B(C)”, “03W314B(C)”, “03W316B(C)”, “04V314B(C)” and “04V316B(C)” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98in.) from the motor mounting surface.

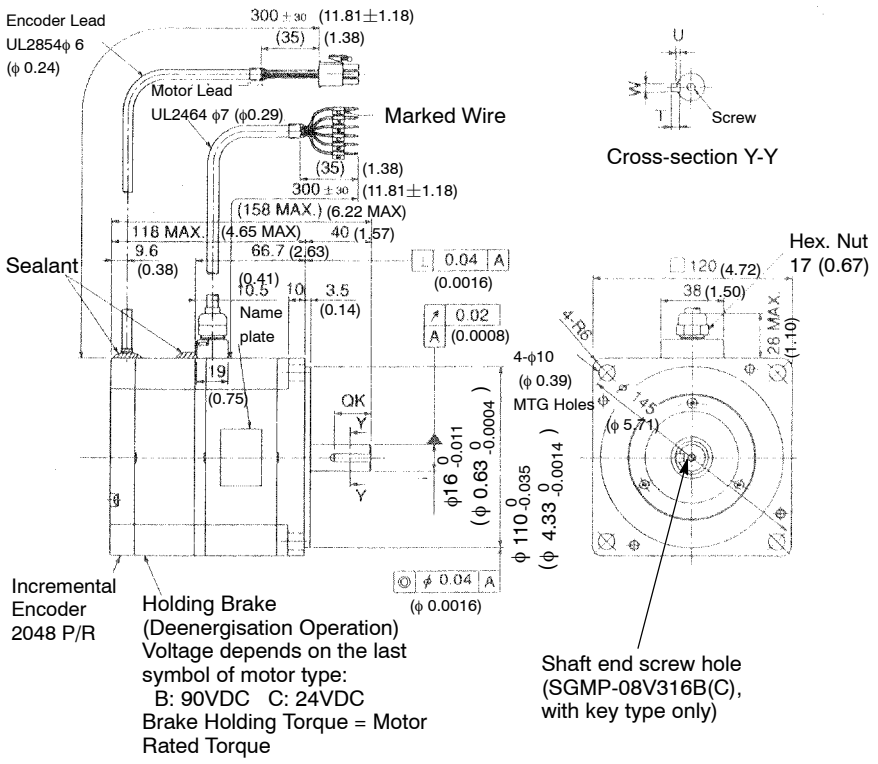
5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

6) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• 750 W (1.01HP)




| Type SGMP- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08V312B(C) | No key | | | | – | 750 (1.01) | 5.7 (12.57) | 392 (88.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08V314B(C) | 22(0.87) | 3(0.12) | 5(0.20) | 5(0.20) | M5 Depth 8 | | | | |
| 08V316B(C) | | | | | | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses an incremental encoder 2048 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification.

3) “08V314B(C)” and “08V316B(C)” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

6) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

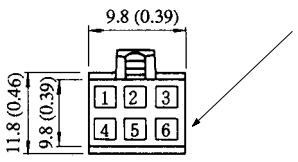


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 100 W (0.13 HP) to 750 W (1.01 HP))

Motor Plug

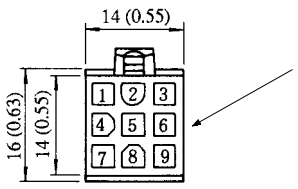



Plug : 172168-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170360-1 or 170364-1
(17359-1 or 170363-1: 30, 50, or 100 W only)
Connected to
Cap: 172160-1
Socket: 170362 -1 or 170366-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green/Yellow |
| 5 | Brake terminal | Red |
| 6 | Brake terminal | Black |

Encoder Plug




Plug: 172169-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170363-1
Connected to
Cap :172161-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Incremental Encoder Wiring Specifications

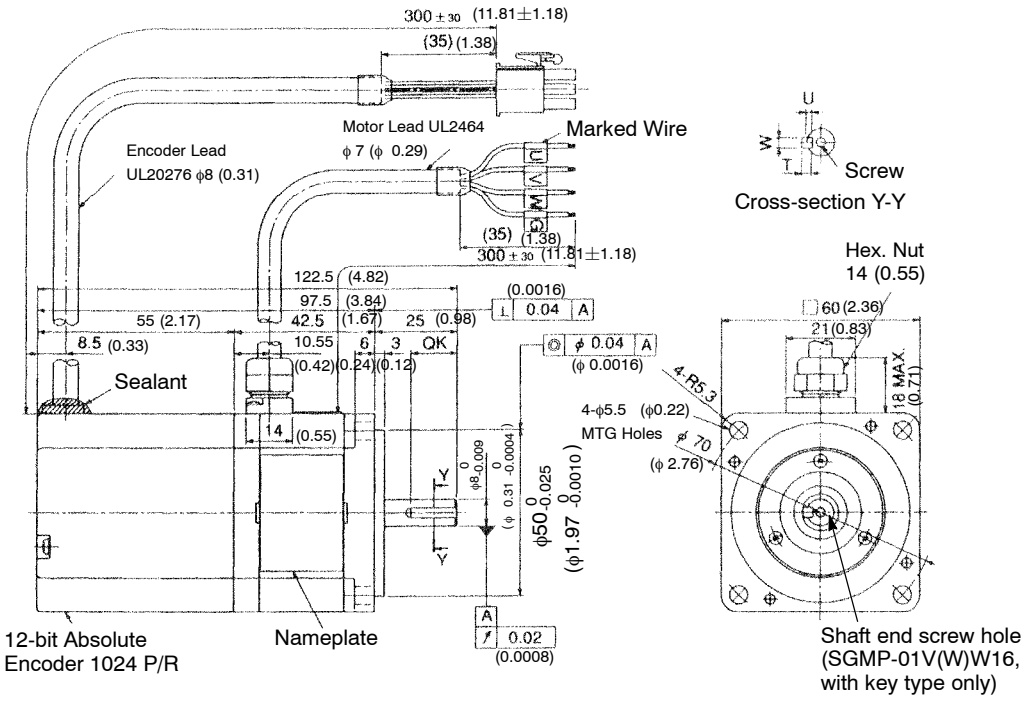
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | Blue/Black |
| 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | Yellow/Black |
| 5 | C channel output | Green |
| 6 | $\overline{C}$ channel output | Green/Black |
| 7 | 0V (power supply) | Gray |
| 8 | +5 V(power supply) | Red |
| 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Orange |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

(3) TÜV approved (conforming to the machine instructions) SGMP Servomotor Absolute encoder, no brake (Type SGMP-□□□W1□)

• 100 W (0.13HP)




| Type SGMP- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 01VW12 | No key | | | | – | 100 (0.13) | 0.95 (2.09) | 78 (17.5) | 49 (11.0) |
| 01WW12 | | | | | | | | | |
| 01VW14 | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01WW14 | | | | | | | | | |
| 01VW16 | | | | | M3, depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01WW16 | | | | | | | | | |

**Note**

1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and “W” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “01V(W)W14” and “01V(W)W16” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

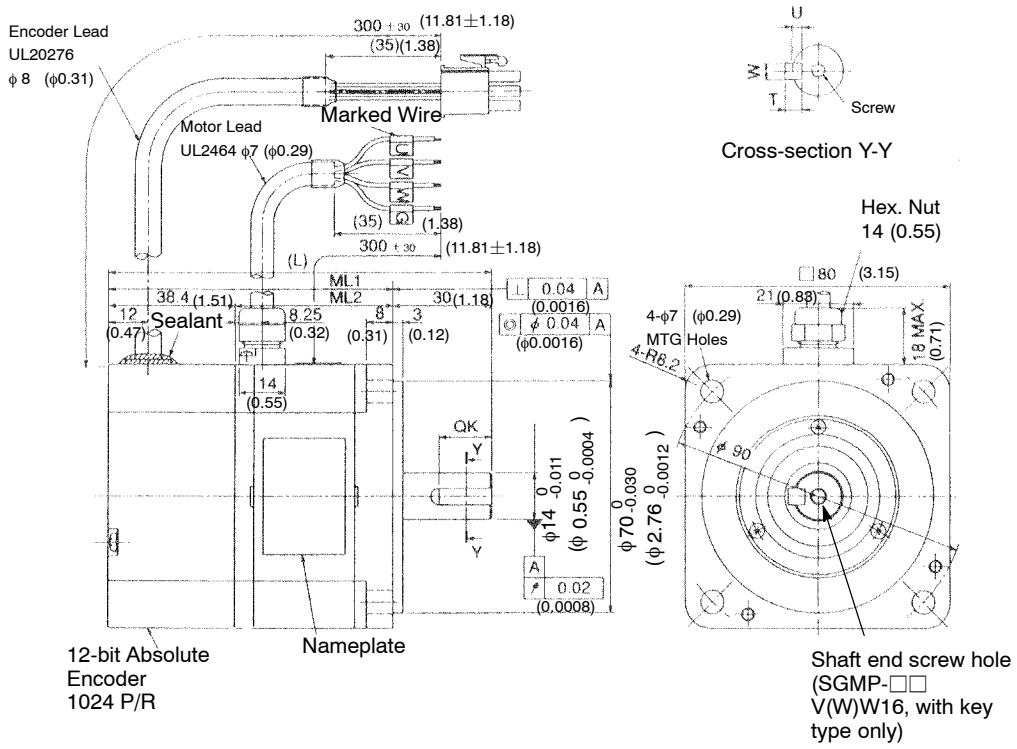
5) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

• 200 W (0.27 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP) (100 V only), 400 W (0.53HP) (200 V only)




| Type SGMP- | L | LL | LM | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02VW12 | 116.5 (4.59) | 86.5 (3.41) | 48.1 (1.89) | No key | | | | --- | 200 (0.27) | 1.6 (3.53) | 245 (55.1) | 68 (15.3) |
| 02WW12 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02VW14 | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02WW14 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02VW16 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 02WW16 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 03WW12 | 136.5 (5.37) | 106.5 (4.19) | 68.1 (2.68) | No key | | | | --- | 300 (0.40) | 2.3 (5.07) | | |
| 03WW14 | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03WW16 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 04VW12 | | | | No key | | | | --- | 400 (0.53) | | | |
| 04VW14 | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04VW16 | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and “W” indicates 100 V specification.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3) “02V(W)W14”, “02V(W)W16”, “03WW14”, “03WW16”, “04VW14”, and “04VW16” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

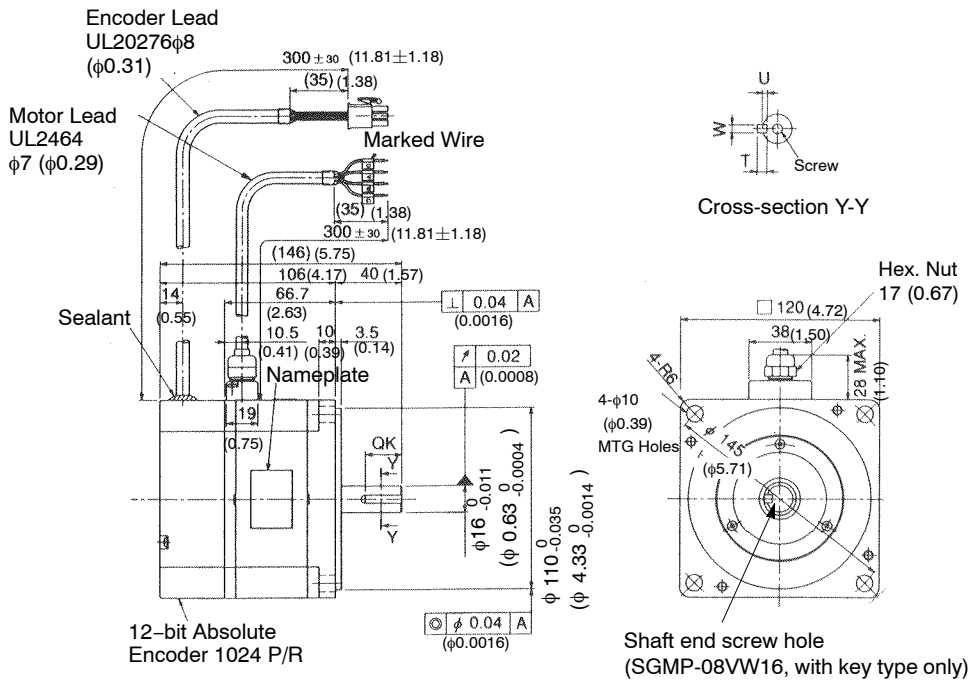




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

• 750 W (1.01HP)




| Type SGMP- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08VW12 | No key | | | | – | 750 (1.01) | 4.7 (10.36) | 392 (88.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08VW14 | 22 (0.87) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 08VW16 | | | | | | | | | |

**Note**

1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification.

3) “08VW14” and “08VW16” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 100 W (0.13 HP) to 750 W (1.01 HP))

Motor Plug



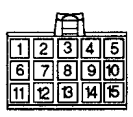

Plug : 172167-1 (AMP)
Pin 170360-1 or 170364-1

Connected to
Cap 172159-1
Socket 170362-1 or 170366-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green/Yellow |

Encoder Plug




Plug: 172171-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170363-1

Connected to
Cap :172163-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Absolute Encoder Wiring Specifications

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| | 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | White/Blue |
| | 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| | 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | White/Yellow |
| | 5 | Z channel output | Green |
| | 6 | $\overline{Z}$ channel output | White/Green |
| | 7 | 0V (power supply) | Black |
| | 8 | +5 V(power supply) | Red |
| | 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Green/Yellow |
| | 10 | S channel output | Purple |
| | 11 | $\overline{S}$ channel output | White/Purple |
| * | (12) | (Capacitor reset) | (Gray) |
| | 13 | Reset | White/Gray |
| | 14 | 0V(battery) | White/Orange |
| | 15 | 3.6V(battery) | Orange |

* Terminal to discharge capacitor for product dispatch.
Do not use.

5



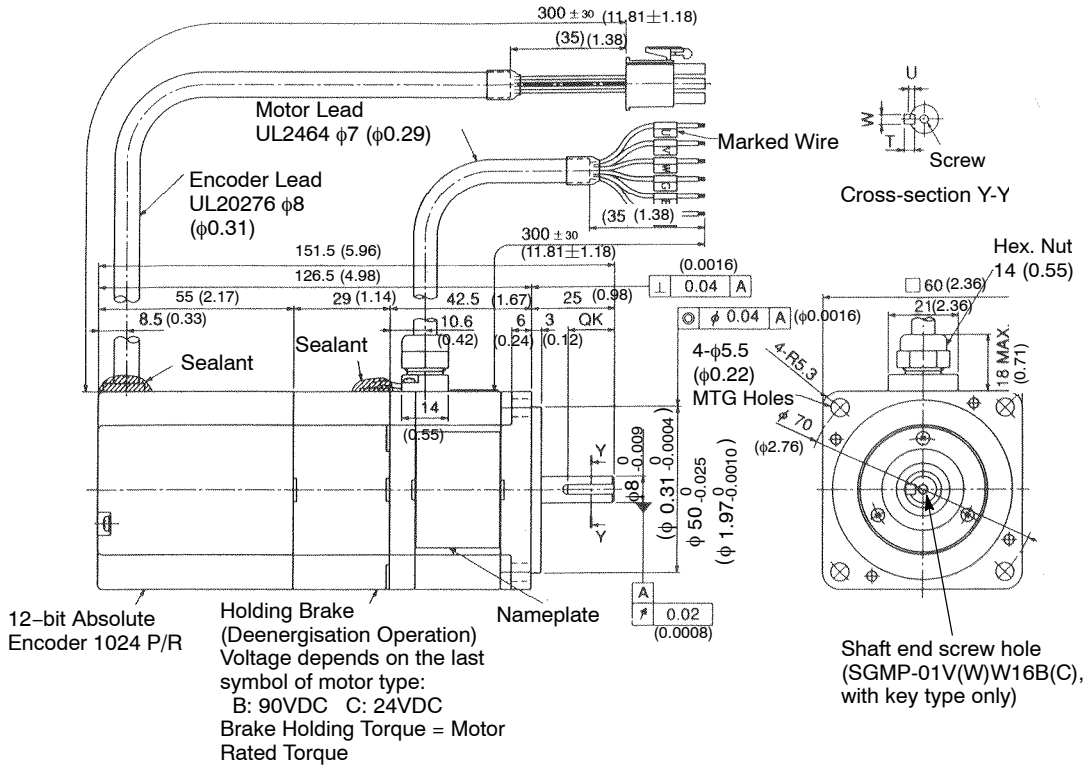
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

(4) TÜV approved (conforming to the machine instructions) SGMP Servomotor

Absolute encoder, with brake (Type SGMP-□□□W1□B)

• 100 W (0.13 HP)




| Type SGMP- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 01VW12B(C) | No key | | | | --- | 100 (0.13) | 1.2 (2.65) | 78 (17.5) | 49 (11.0) |
| 01WW12B(C) | | | | | | | | | |
| 01VW14B(C) | 14 (0.55) | 1.8 (0.07) | 3 (0.12) | 3 (0.12) | | | | | |
| 01WW14B(C) | | | | | | | | | |
| 01VW16B(C) | | | | | M3, depth 6 (0.24) | | | | |
| 01WW16B(C) | | | | | | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and “W” indicates 100 V specification.

3) “01VW14B(C)”, “01VW16B(C)”, “01WW14B(C)” and “01WW16B(C)” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 20 mm (0.79 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

6) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

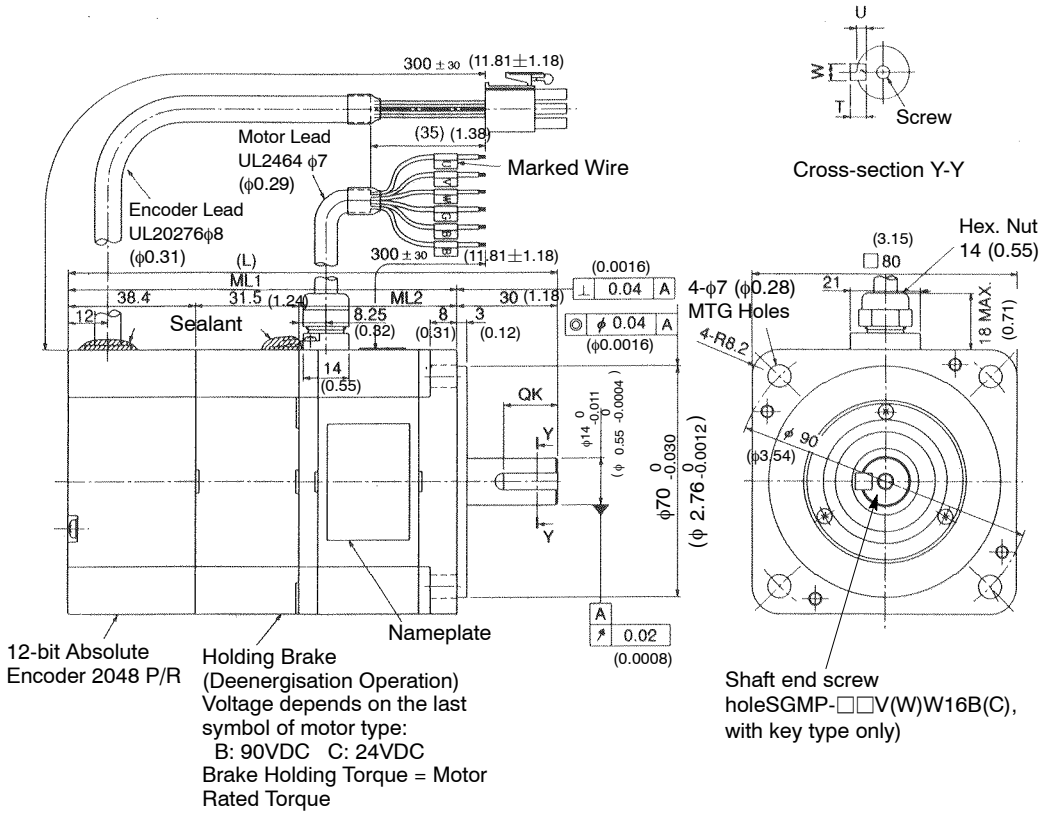




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings cont.*

• 200 W (0.27 HP), 300 W (0.40 HP), 400 W (0.53 HP)




| Type SGMP- | L | LL | LM | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 02VW12B(C) | 148 (5.83) | 118 (4.65) | 48.1 (1.89) | No key | | | | --- | 200 (0.27) | 2.3 (5.07) | 245 (55.1) | 68 (15.3) |
| 02WW12B(C) | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02VW14B(C) | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 02WW14B(C) | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 02VW16B(C) | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 02WW16B(C) | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 03WW12B(C) | 168 (6.61) | 138 (5.43) | 68.1 (2.68) | No key | | | | --- | 300 (0.40) | 3.0 (6.61) | | |
| 03WW14B(C) | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 03WW16B(C) | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 04VW12B(C) | | | | No key | | | | --- | 400 (0.53) | | | |
| 04VW14B(C) | | | | 16 (0.63) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | | | | | |
| 04VW16B(C) | | | | | | | | M5, depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |

**Note** 1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification, and “W” indicates 100 V specification.

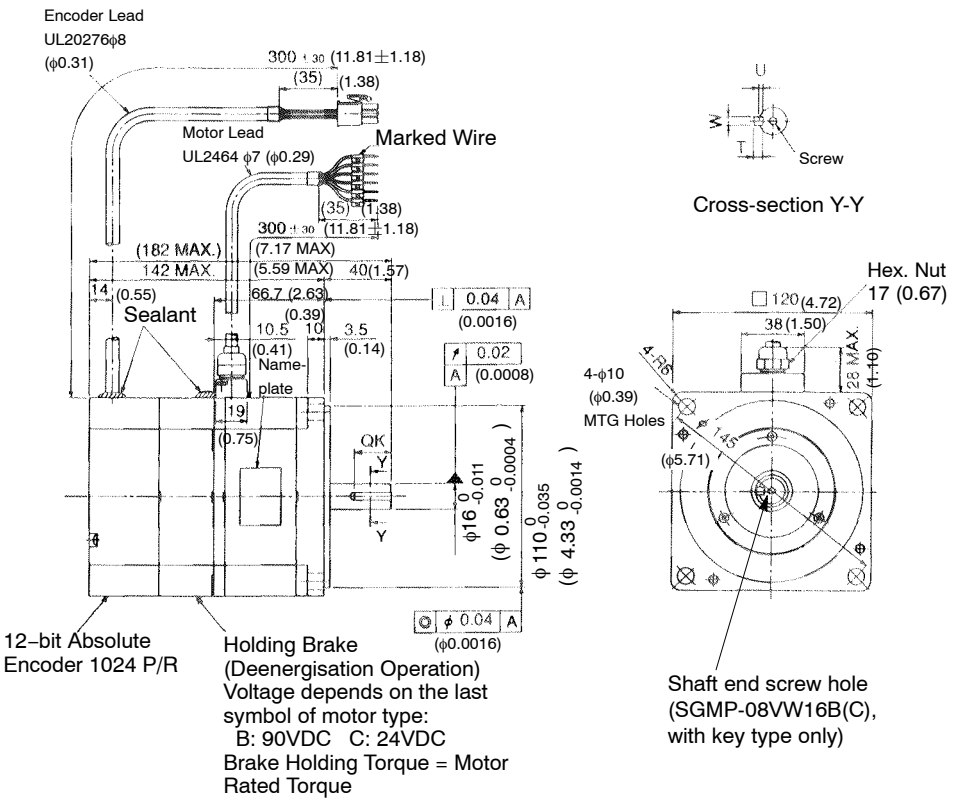
3) “02V(W)W14B”, “02V(W)W16B”, “03WW14B”, “03WW16B”, “04VW14B”, and “04VW16B” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 25 mm (0.98 in.) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

6) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

• 750 W (1.01 HP)




| Type SGMP- | QK | U | W | T | Screw dimensions | Output W (HP) | Approx. mass kg (lb) | Allowable radial load N (lb) | Allowable thrust load N (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 08VW12B(C) | No key | | | | – | 750 (1.01) | 6.2 (13.67) | 392 (88.1) | 147 (33.0) |
| 08VW14B(C) | 22 (0.87) | 3 (0.12) | 5 (0.20) | 5 (0.20) | M5 depth 8 (0.31) | | | | |
| 08VW16B(C) | | | | | | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Note**

1) The detector uses a 12-bit absolute encoder 1024 P/R.

2) Type “V” indicates 200 V specification.

3) “08VW14B(C)” and “08VW16B(C)” have a keyed shaft. The keyway complies with JIS B 1301-1976 (precision). A straight key is supplied.

4) The quoted allowable radial load is the value at a position 35 mm (1.38 in) from the motor mounting surface.

5) The electromagnetic brake is only to hold the load in position and cannot be used to stop the motor.

6) Conforms to IP55 protective structure (except connector and output shaft faces).

• Details of Motor and Encoder Plugs (Common for 100W (0.13 HP) to 750 W (1.01 HP))

Motor Plug



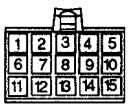

Plug : 172168-1 (AMP)
Pin 170360-1 or 170364-1(1 to 4pin)
170359-1 or 170363 (5 to 6 pin)
(17360-1 or 17364-1:only 750W)

Connected to
Cap 172160-1
Socket 170362-1 or 170366-1

Motor Wiring Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | U phase | Red |
| 2 | V phase | White |
| 3 | W phase | Blue |
| 4 | FG | Green/Yellow |
| 5 | Brake terminal | Black |
| 6 | Brake terminal | Black |

Encoder Plug




Plug: 172171-1 (AMP)
Pin: 170359-1 or 170363-1

Connected to
Cap :172163-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

Absolute Encoder Wiring Specifications

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 1 | A channel output | Blue |
| | 2 | $\overline{A}$ channel output | White/Blue |
| | 3 | B channel output | Yellow |
| | 4 | $\overline{B}$ channel output | White/Yellow |
| | 5 | Z channel output | Green |
| | 6 | $\overline{Z}$ channel output | White/Green |
| | 7 | 0 V (power supply) | Black |
| | 8 | +5 V (power supply) | Red |
| | 9 | FG (Frame Ground) | Green/Yellow |
| | 10 | S channel output | Purple |
| | 11 | $\overline{S}$ channel output | White/Purple |
| * | (12) | (Capacitor reset) | (Gray) |
| | 13 | Reset | White/Gray |
| | 14 | 0V(battery) | White/Orange |
| | 15 | 3.6V(battery) | Orange |

* Terminal to discharge capacitor for product dispatch. Do not use.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.4.3 Servopack Dimensional Drawings

1) The dimension drawings of the DR2 Servopack are broadly grouped into the following two categories according to capacity and option specifications (semi-closed or full-closed loop).

   a) Semi-closed loop (standard)
   200V, 30W (0.04 HP) to 200 W (0.27HP) (Types: DR2-A3A□ to 02A□)
   100V, 30W (0.04 HP) to 100 W (0.13HP) (Types: DR2-A3B□ to 01B□)

   b) Semi-closed loop (standard)
   200V, 400W (0.53 HP), 750W (1.01 HP) (Types: DR2-04A□, 08A□)
   100V, 200W (0.27 HP), 300W (0.40 HP) (Types: DR2-02B□,03B□)

   c) Full-closed loop (option)
   200V, 30W (0.04 HP) to 200W (0.27 HP) (Types: DR2-A3A□-F to 02A□-F)
   100V, 30W (0.04 HP) to 100W (0.13 HP) (Types: DR2-A3B□-F to 01B□-F)

   d) Full-closed loop (option)
   200V, 400W (0.53 HP) to 750W (1.01 HP) (Types: DR2-04A□-F to 08A□-F)
   100V, 200W (0.27 HP) to 300W (0.40 HP) (Types: DR2-02B□-F to 03B□-F)

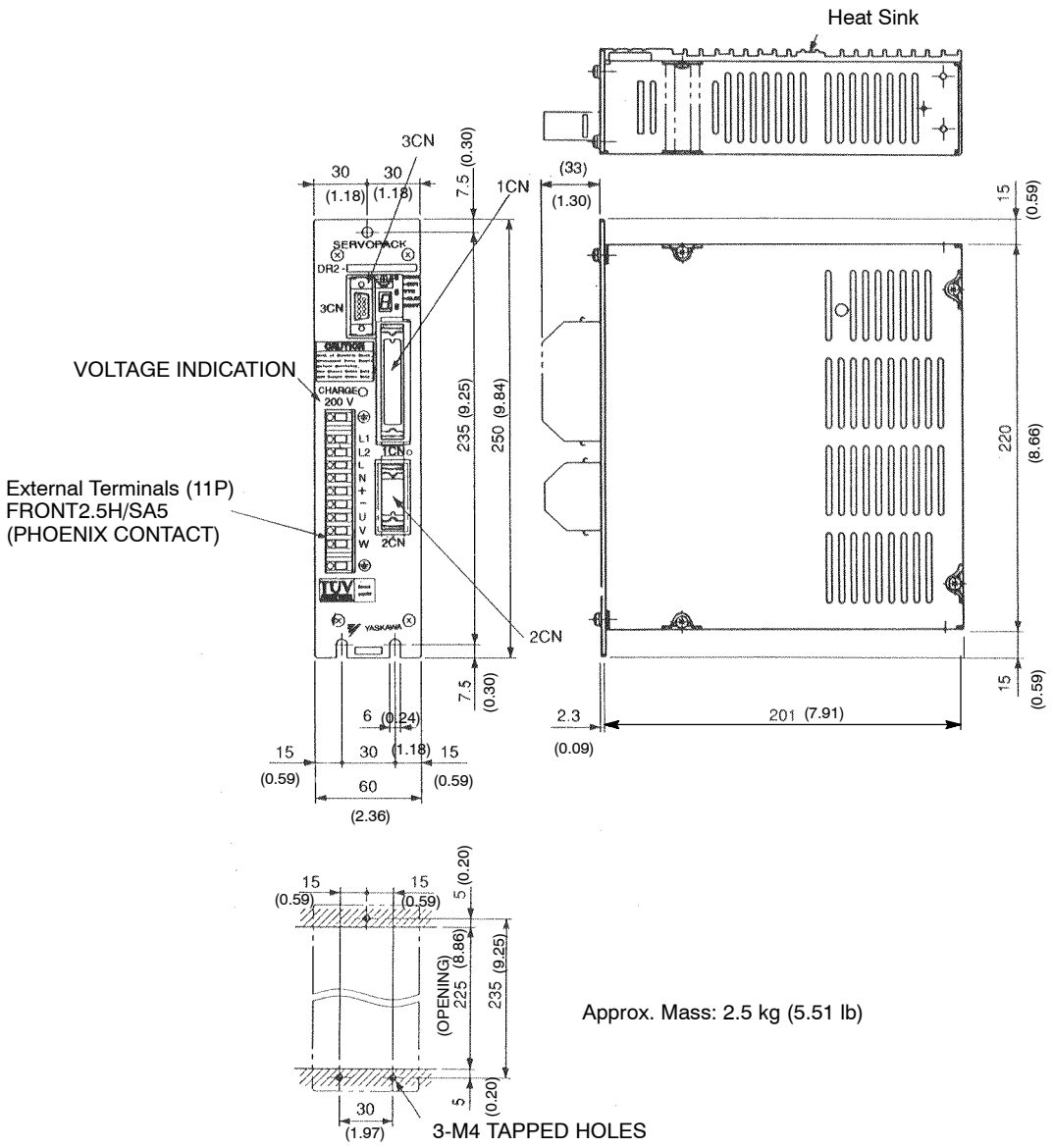




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.3 Servopack Dimensional Drawings cont.*

a) Semi-closed loop (standard)
DR2-A3A□ to 02A□ (200V, 30W (0.04 HP) to 200 W (0.27HP))
DR2-A3B□ to 01B□ (100V, 30W (0.04 HP) to 100 W (0.13HP))




Approx. Mass: 2.5 kg (5.51 lb)

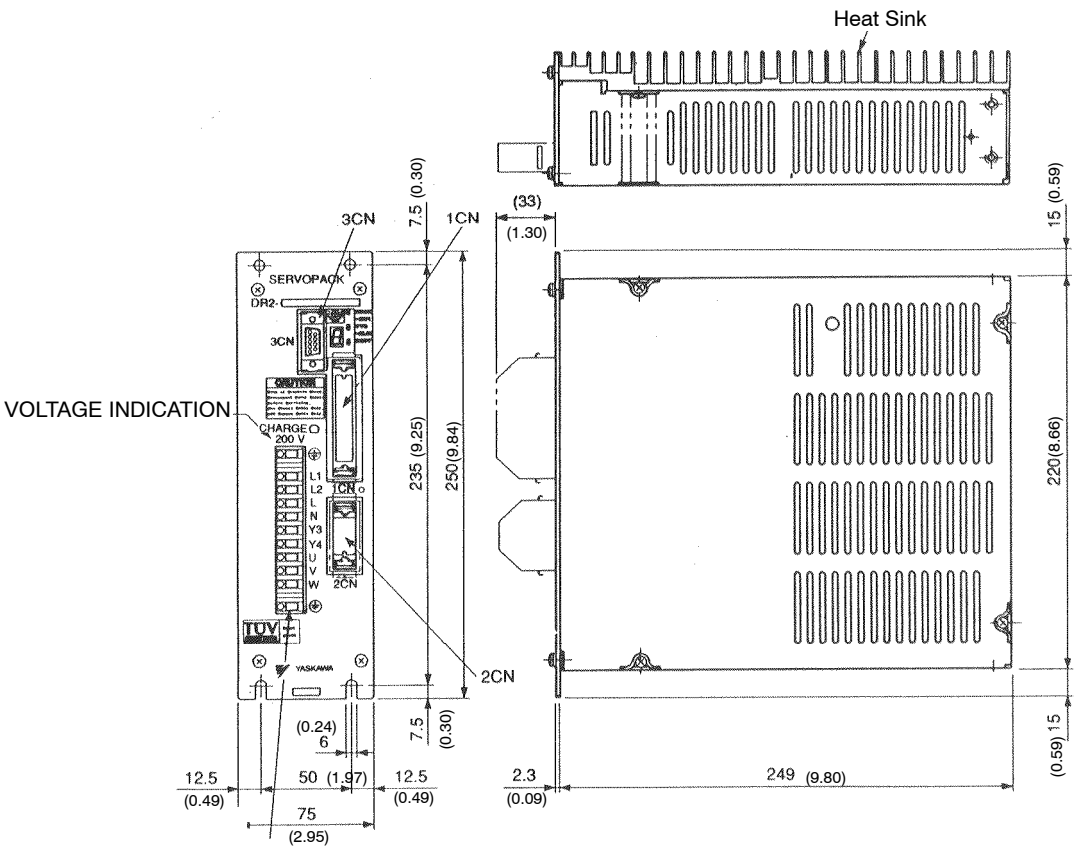


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

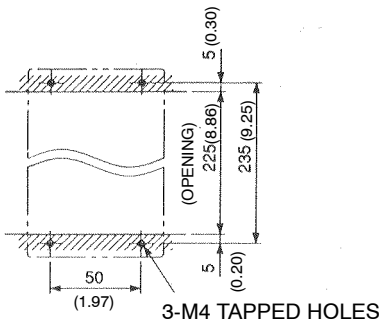
b) Semi-closed loop (standard)

DR2-04A□, 08A□ (200V, 400W (0.53 HP), 750W (1.01 HP))

DR2-02B□, 03B□ (100V, 200W (0.27 HP), 300W (0.40 HP))




External Terminals (11P)
FRONT2.5H/SA5
(PHOENIX CONTACT)



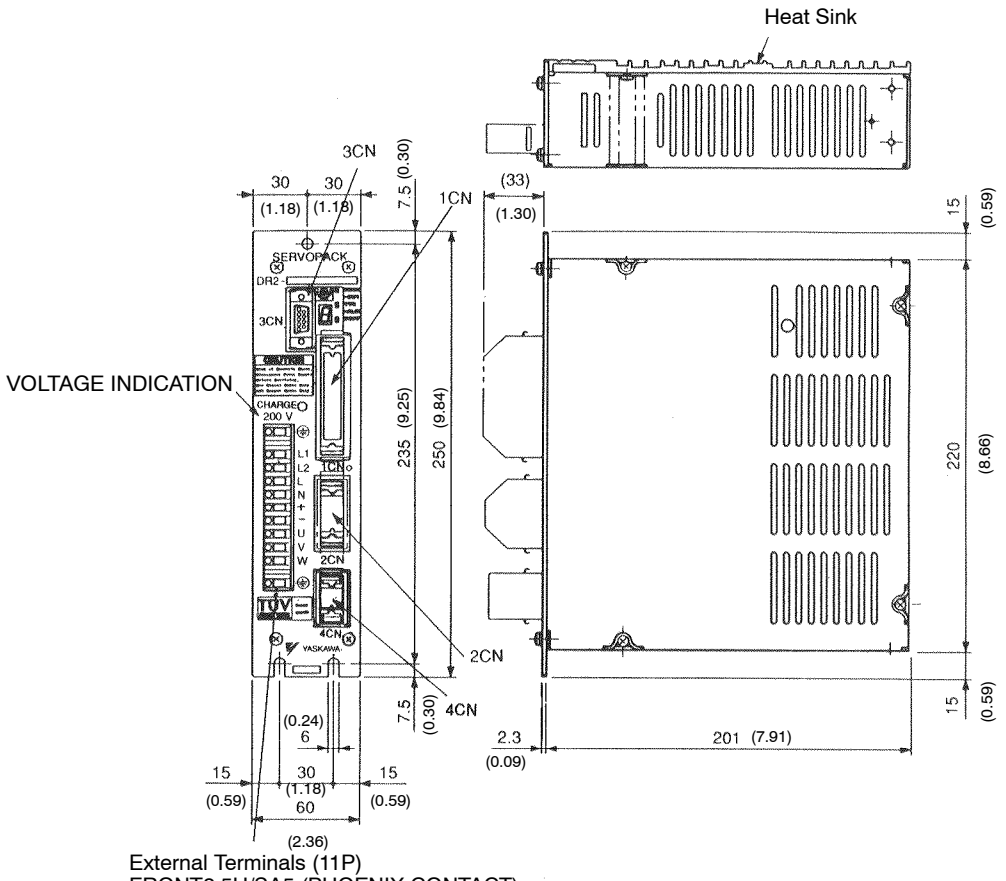

Approx. Mass: 3.7 kg (8.16 lb)

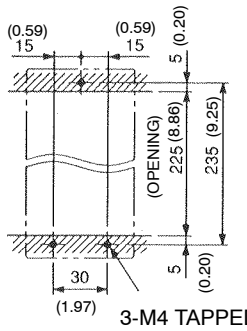


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.4.3 Servopack Dimensional Drawings cont.*

c) Full-closed loop (option)
200V, 30W (0.04 HP) to 200W (0.27 HP) (Types: DR2-A3A□-F to 02A□-F)
100V, 30W (0.04 HP) to 100W (0.13 HP) (Types: DR2-A3B□-F to 01B□-F)



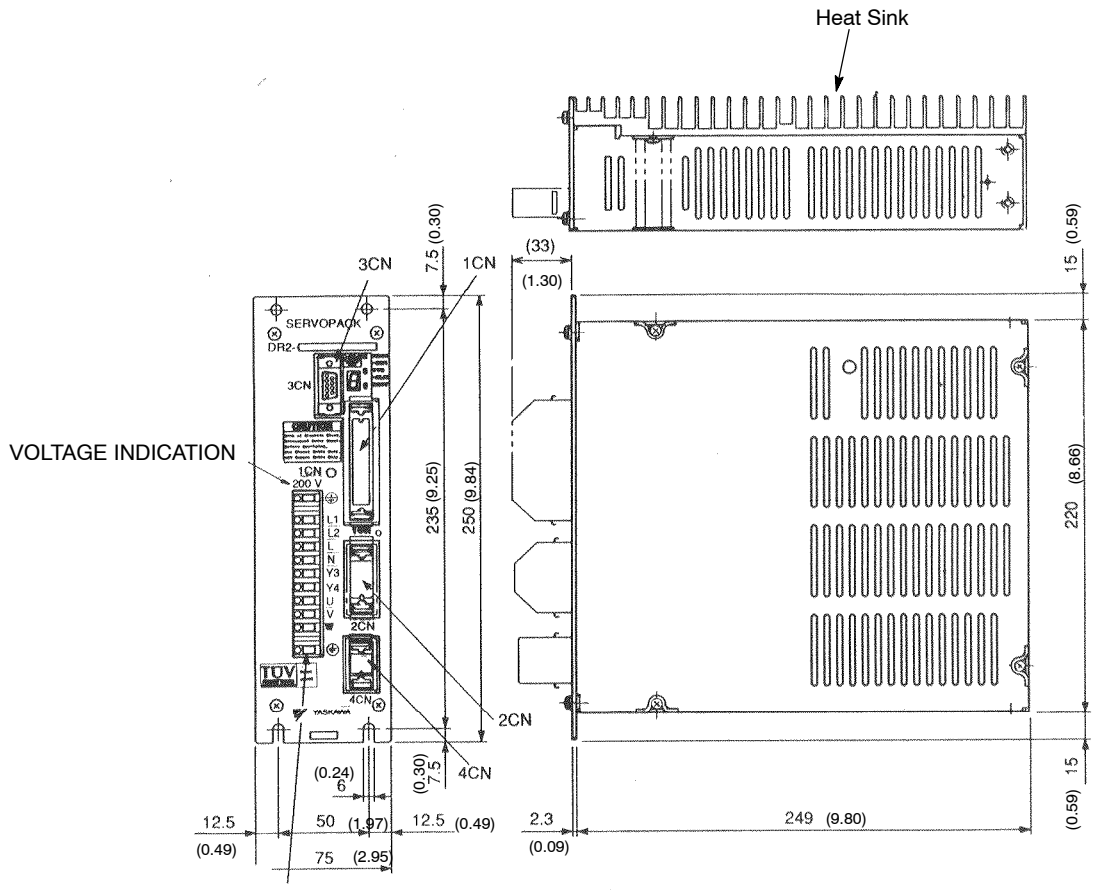



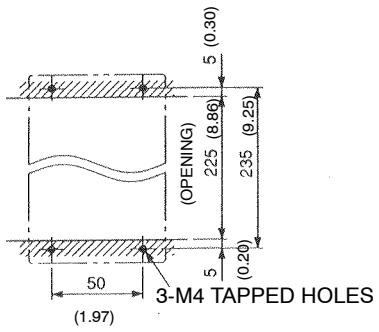

Approx. Mass: 2.5 kg (5.51 lb)



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

d) Full-closed loop (option)
200V, 400W (0.53 HP) to 750W (1.01 HP) (Types: DR2-04A□-F to 08A□-F)
100V, 200W (0.27 HP) to 300W (0.40 HP) (Types: DR2-02B□-F to 03B□-F)



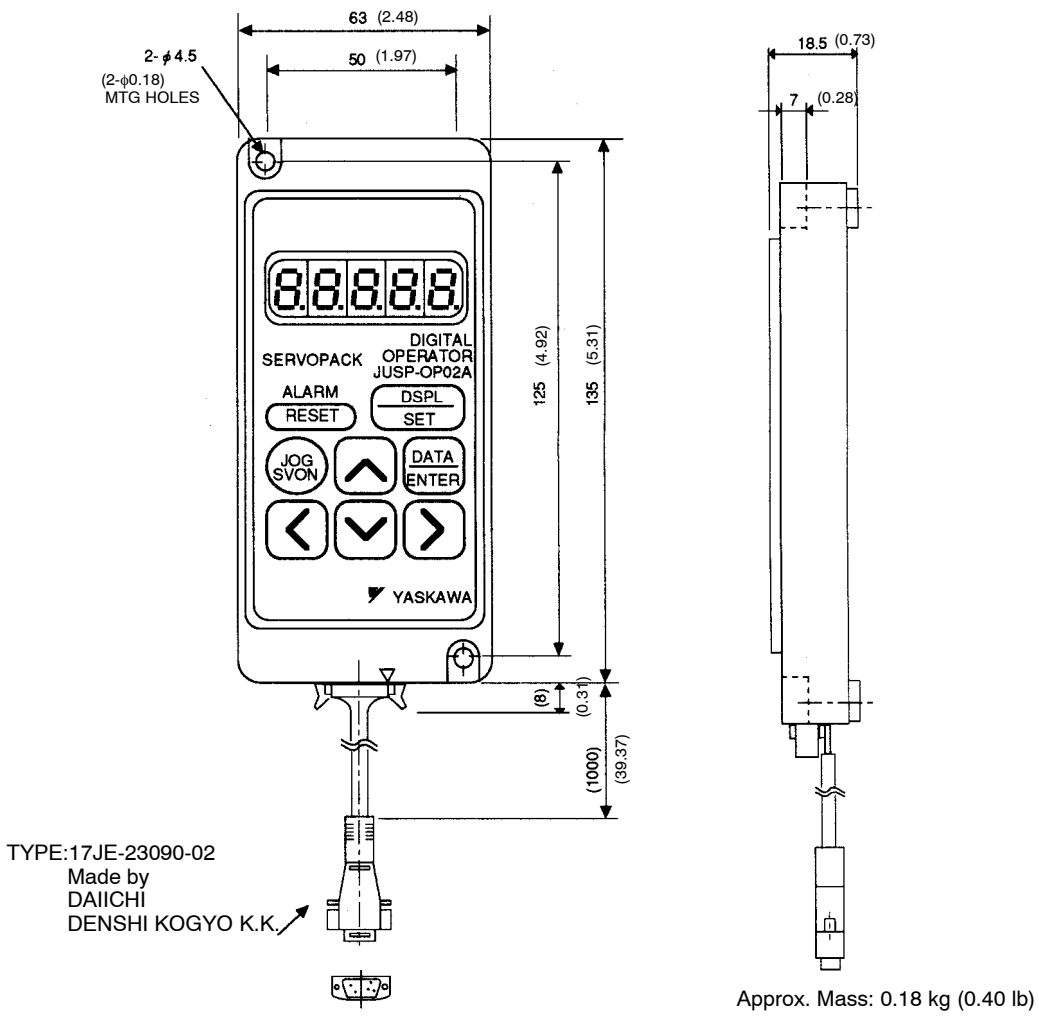

Approx. Mass: 3.7 kg (8.16 lb)



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.4.4 Digital Operator Dimensional Drawing

a) JUSP-OP02A-1 (Hand-held type)




Approx. Mass: 0.18 kg (0.40 lb)

**Note** Mount type digital operator (type: JUSP-OP03A) cannot be used for DR2 Servopack.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 5.5 Selecting Peripheral Devices

This section shows how to select peripheral devices using flowcharts. Order lists for Servomotors, Servopacks, digital operators, and peripheral devices are also included.

5.5.1 Selecting Peripheral Devices . . . . . 335
5.5.2 Order List . . . . . 341

## 5.5.1 Selecting Peripheral Devices

Select the peripheral devices using the flowcharts on the subsequent pages.

The items below are not included in the flowcharts. Refer to *5.6 Specifications and Dimensional Drawings of Peripheral Devices*.

- Variable resistors for speed setting
- Encoder signal converter units
- Cables for connecting PC and Servopack

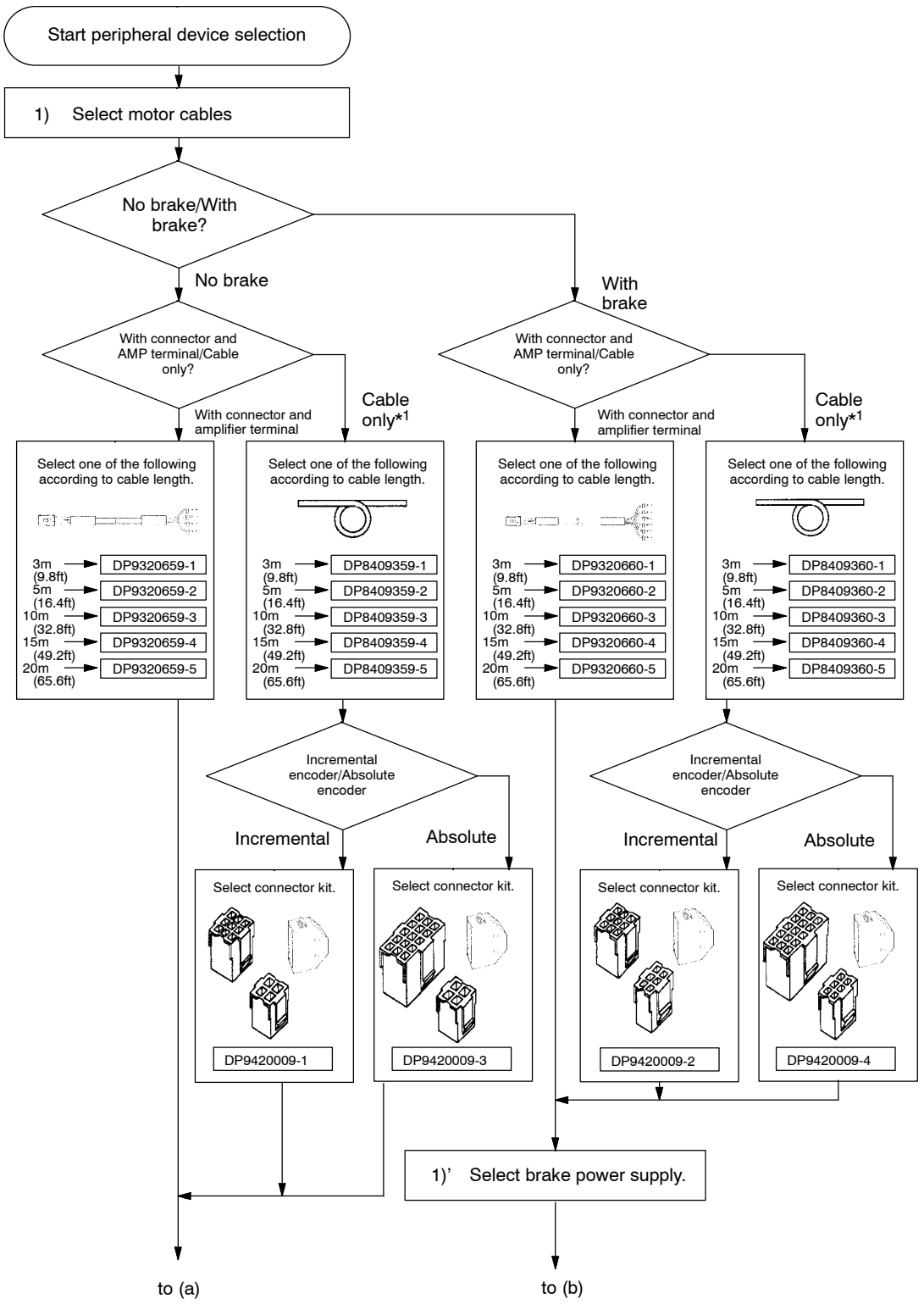




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.5.1 Selecting Peripheral Devices cont.*

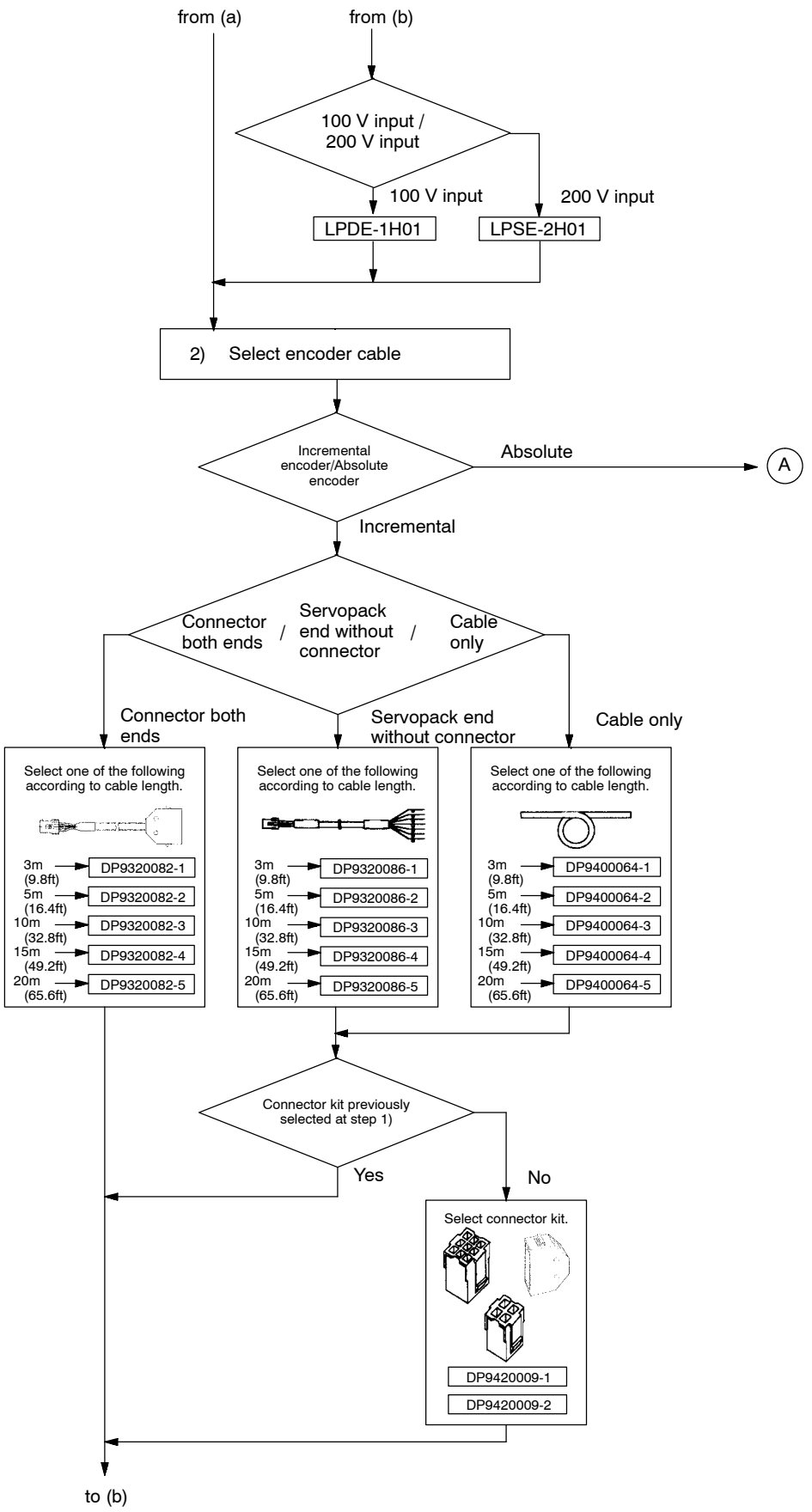
<Flowchart for peripheral device selection>




*1 When approved cable is required, use the following cable :
VDE250 approved, without brake : 4 ×0.75mm$^2$
with brake : 7× 0.75mm$^2$



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

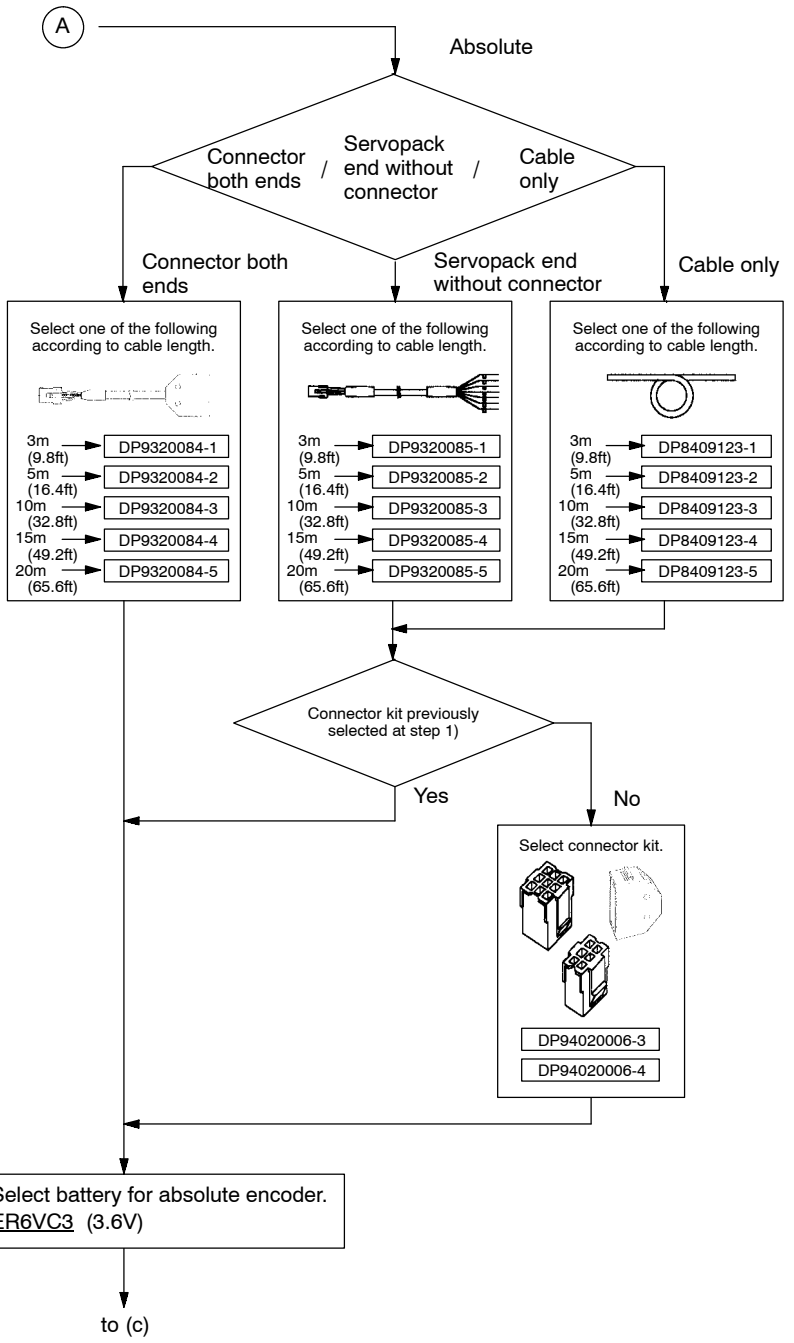






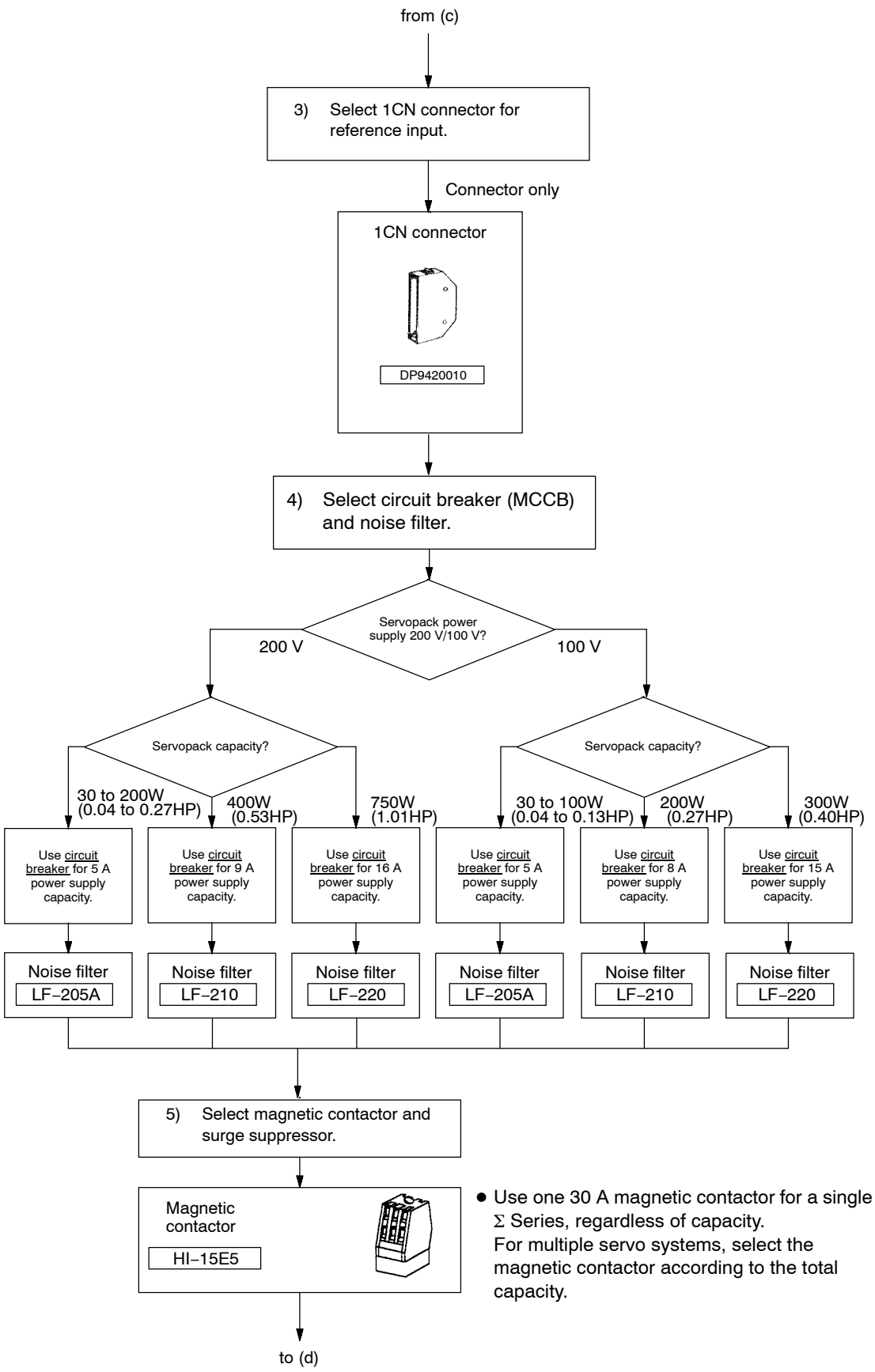

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.5.1 Selecting Peripheral Devices cont.*






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

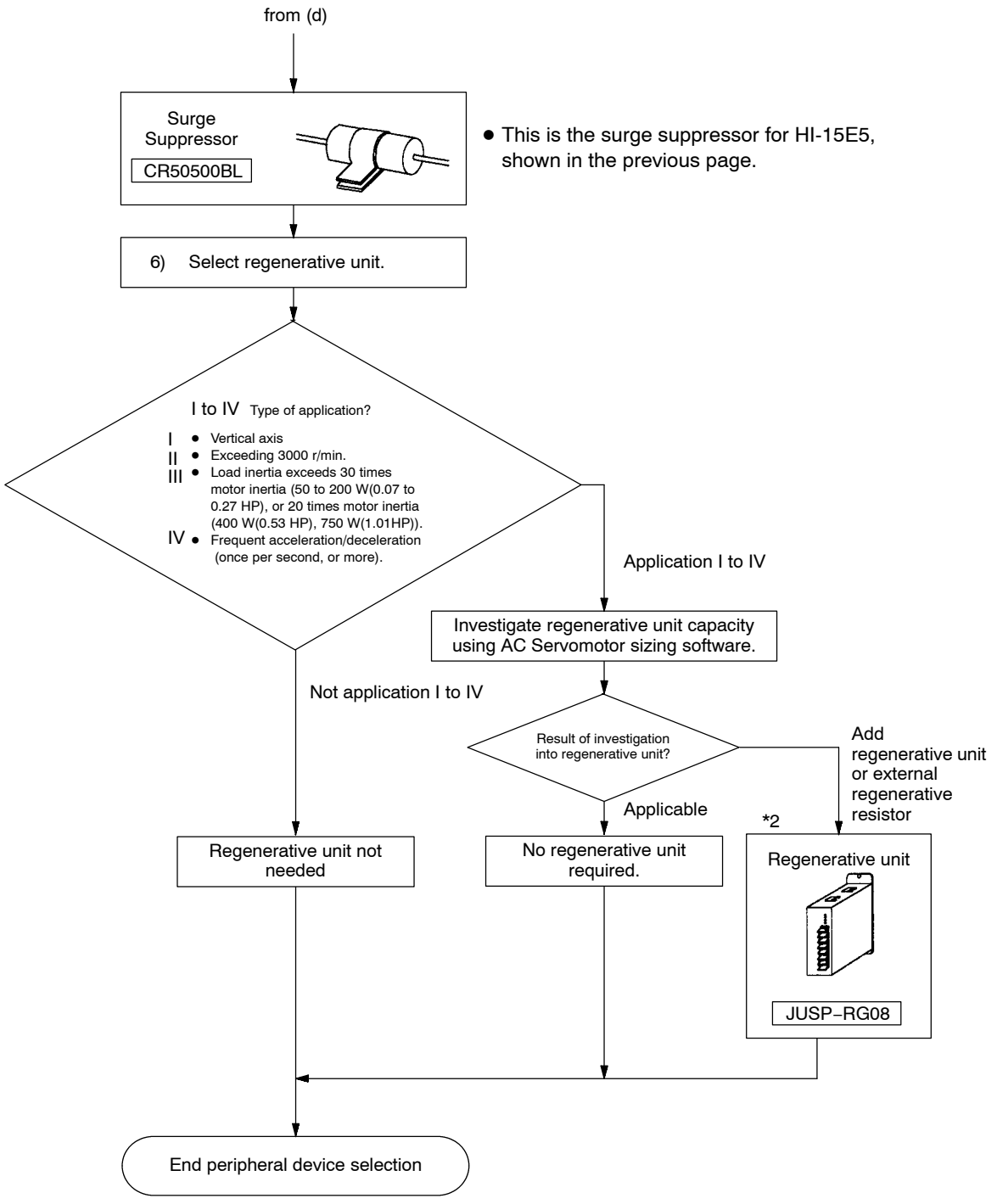



- Use one 30 A magnetic contactor for a single Σ Series, regardless of capacity.
  For multiple servo systems, select the magnetic contactor according to the total capacity.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.5.1 Selecting Peripheral Devices cont.*




- This is the surge suppressor for HI-15E5, shown in the previous page.

*2 Regenerative unit : applicable to 200V 30W to 200W
External regenerative resistor : applicable to 100V 200W, 300W or 200V 400W, 750W
When power supply is 100V, 30W to 100W, review the application using larger capacity Servopack.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.5.2 Order List

1) Order lists are given below for the Servomotors, Servopacks, digital operators, and peripheral devices which comprise the AC Servo Σ–Series. These order lists are a convenient aid to selecting peripheral devices.

**SGM Servomotor**

| Servomotor Type | Qty |
|---|---|
| SGM-□□□□□□ | |
| SGM-□□□□□□ | |
| SGM-□□□□□□ | |
| SGM-□□□□□□ | |
| SGM-□□□□□□ | |
| SGM-□□□□□□ | |

**DR2 Servopack (excluding cables and connectors)**

| Servopack Type | Qty |
|---|---|
| DR2-□□□□-□ | |
| DR2-□□□□-□ | |
| DR2-□□□□-□ | |
| DR2-□□□□-□ | |
| DR2-□□□□-□ | |
| DR2-□□□□-□ | |

**SGMP Servomotor**

| Servomotor Type | Qty |
|---|---|
| SGMP-□□□□□□ | |
| SGMP-□□□□□□ | |
| SGMP-□□□□□□ | |
| SGMP-□□□□□□ | |
| SGMP-□□□□□□ | |
| SGMP-□□□□□□ | |

**Digital Operator** (Purchase Separately)

| Digital Operator Type | Qty |
|---|---|
| JUSP-OP02A-1 | |

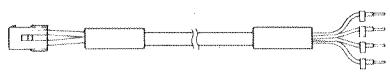


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

M1 Cables for Servomotor without Brake

(with connector and amplifier terminals) (Purchase Separately)

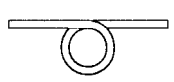
| Cable Type | | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| DP9320659-1 | 3 m (9.8 ft) | |
| DP9320659-2 | 5 m (16.4 ft) | |
| DP9320659-3 | 10 m (32.8 ft) | |
| DP9320659-4 | 15 m (49.2 ft) | |
| DP9320659-5 | 20 m (65.6 ft) | |



M2 Cables for Servomotor without Brake

(Cable Only)*1 (Purchase Separately)

| Cable Type | | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| DP8409359-1 | 3 m (9.8 ft) | |
| DP8409359-2 | 5 m (16.4 ft) | |
| DP8409359-3 | 10 m (32.8 ft) | |
| DP8409359-4 | 15 m (49.2 ft) | |
| DP8409359-5 | 20 m (65.6 ft) | |

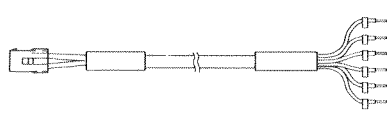


*1 Customer to attach connector and amplifier terminals. Requires K1 connector kit.

M3 Cables for Servomotor with Brake

(with connector and amplifier terminals) (Purchase Separately)

| Cable Type | | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| DP9320660-1 | 3 m (9.8 ft) | |
| DP9320660-2 | 5 m (16.4 ft) | |
| DP9320660-3 | 10 m (32.8 ft) | |
| DP9320660-4 | 15 m (49.2 ft) | |
| DP9320660-5 | 20 m (65.6 ft) | |



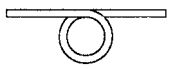


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

M4 Cables for Servomotor with Brake

(Cable Only)*1 (Purchase Separately)

| Cable Type | | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| DP8409360-1 | 3 m (9.8 ft) | |
| DP8409360-2 | 5 m (16.4 ft) | |
| DP8409360-3 | 10 m (32.8 ft) | |
| DP8409360-4 | 15 m (49.2 ft) | |
| DP8409360-5 | 20 m (65.6 ft) | |



*1 Customer to attach connector and amplifier terminals. Requires K1 connector kit.

K1 Connector Kits

(Purchase Separately)

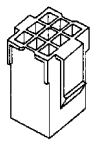
| Connector Kit Type | Qty |
|---|---|
| DP9420009-1 (Incremental encoder, no brake) | |
| DP9420009-2 (Incremental encoder, with brake) | |
| DP9420009-3 (Absolute encoder, no brake) | |
| DP9420009-4 (Absolute encoder, with brake) | |

5

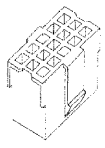
• The three products in the diagrams below are supplied as a set.

1) Encoder Connector for Motor End of Cable ... one connector for incremental or absolute encoder
2) Motor Connector for Motor End of Cable ... one connector for Servomotor with or without brake
3) Encoder Connector for Servopack End of Cable ... one 2CN connector

1) Encoder Connector for Motor End of Cable

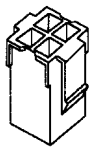


For Incremental Encoder



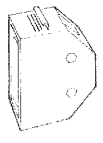
For Absolute Encoder

2) Motor Connector for Motor End of Cable



No Brake

3) Encoder Connector for Servopack End of Cable





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.5.2 Order List cont.*

**Brake Power Supply (for motor with brake)**

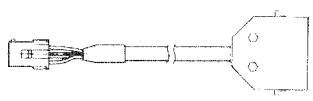
(Purchase Separately)

| Brake Power Supply Type | Qty |
|---|---|
| LPSE–2H01 (for 200 V) | |
| LPDE–1H01 (for 100 V) | |

E1 Cables for Incremental Encoder

(Connector Both Ends) (Purchase Separately)

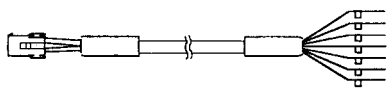
| Cable Type | | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| DP9320082–1 | 3m (9.8 ft) | |
| DP9320082–2 | 5m (16.4 ft) | |
| DP9320082–3 | 10m (32.8 ft) | |
| DP9320082–4 | 15m (49.2 ft) | |
| DP9320082–5 | 20m (65.6 ft) | |



E2 Cables for Incremental Encoder

(Servopack end without connectors)*2 (Purchase Separately)

| Cable Type | | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| DP9320086–1 | 3m (9.8 ft) | |
| DP9320086–2 | 5m (16.4 ft) | |
| DP9320086–3 | 10m (32.8 ft) | |
| DP9320086–4 | 15m (49.2 ft) | |
| DP9320086–5 | 20m (65.6 ft) | |



*2 Customer to attach connector to Servopack end of cable. Requires K1 connector kit.

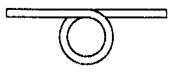


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

E3 Cables for Incremental Encoder

(Cable Only)*3 (Purchase Separately)

| Cable Type | | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| B9400064–1 | 3m (9.8 ft) | |
| B9400064–2 | 5m (16.4 ft) | |
| B9400064–3 | 10m (32.8 ft) | |
| B9400064–4 | 15m (49.2 ft) | |
| B9400064–5 | 20m (65.6 ft) | |



*3 Customer to attach connector to both ends of cable. Requires K1 connector kit.

E4 Cables for Absolute Encoder

(Connector Both Ends) (Purchase Separately)

| Cable Type | | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| DP9320084–1 | 3m (9.8 ft) | |
| DP9320084–2 | 5m (16.4 ft) | |
| DP9320084–3 | 10m (32.8 ft) | |
| DP9320084–4 | 15m (49.2 ft) | |
| DP9320084–5 | 20m (65.6 ft) | |





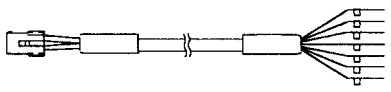


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

E5 Cables for Absolute Encoder

(Servopack end without connectors)*2 (Purchase Separately)

| Cable Type | | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| DP9320085–1 | 3m (9.8 ft) | |
| DP9320085–2 | 5m (16.4 ft) | |
| DP9320085–3 | 10m (32.8 ft) | |
| DP9320085–4 | 15m (49.2 ft) | |
| DP9320085–5 | 20m (65.6 ft) | |



*2 Customer to attach connector to Servopack end of cable. Requires K1 connector kit.

E6 Cables for Absolute Encoder

(Cable Only)*3 (Purchase Separately)

| Cable Type | | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| DP8409123–1 | 3m (9.8 ft) | |
| DP8409123–2 | 5m (16.4 ft) | |
| DP8409123–3 | 10m (32.8 ft) | |
| DP8409123–4 | 15m (49.2 ft) | |
| DP8409123–5 | 20m (65.6 ft) | |

*3 Customer to attach connector to both ends of cable. Requires K1 connector kit.

**Battery for Absolute Encoder**

(Purchase Separately)

| Battery Type | Qty |
|---|---|
| ER6VC3 (3.6V) | |

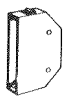


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

C1 1CN Connector

(Purchase Separately)

| Connector Type | Qty |
|---|---|
| DP9420010 | |

One 1CN Connector 

### Noise Filter

(Purchase Separately)

| Noise Filter Type | Qty |
|---|---|
| LF−205A (5A) | |
| LF−210 (10A) | |
| LF−220 (20A) | |

### Magnetic Contactor

(Purchase Separately)

| Magnetic Contactor Type | Qty |
|---|---|
| HI−15E5 (30A) | |

### Surge Suppressor

(Purchase Separately)

| Surge Suppressor Type | Qty |
|---|---|
| CR50500BL | |

### Regenerative Unit *4

(Purchase Separately)

| Regenerative Unit Type | Qty |
|---|---|
| JUSP−RG08 | |

*4 Applicable only to 200V, 30W to 200W specification.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.5.2 Order List cont.*

### Variable Resistor for Speed Setting

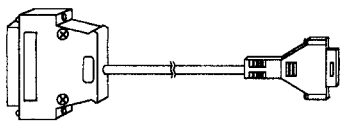
(Purchase Separately)

| Variable Resistor Type | Qty |
|---|---|
| 25HP−10B | |

### Cables for Connecting PC and Servopack

(Purchase Separately)

| Cable Type | | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| DE9405258 | 2m (6.6 ft) | |



### Encoder Signal Converter Unit

(Purchase Separately)

| Unit Type | Qty |
|---|---|
| LRX−01/A1 | |
| LRX−01/A2 | |
| LRX−01/A3 | |
| LRX−01/A4 | |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 5.6 Specifications and Dimensional Drawings of Peripheral Devices

This section shows the specifications and dimensional drawings of the peripheral devices required for the Σ-Series servo system. The sequence of peripheral devices is given by the Flowchart for Peripheral Device Selection in *5.5 Selecting Peripheral Devices*.


5.6.1 Cable Specifications and Peripheral Devices . . . . . 349
5.6.2 Motor Cables . . . . . 355
5.6.3 Connector Kits . . . . . 358
5.6.4 Brake Power Supply . . . . . 363
5.6.5 Encoder Cables . . . . . 365
5.6.6 Battery for Absolute Encoder . . . . . 371
5.6.7 1CN Connector . . . . . 371
5.6.8 Circuit Breaker . . . . . 373
5.6.9 Noise Filter . . . . . 374
5.6.10 Magnetic Contactor . . . . . 375
5.6.11 Surge Suppressor . . . . . 376
5.6.12 Regenerative Unit . . . . . 376
5.6.13 Variable Resistor for Speed Setting . . . . . 379
5.6.14 Encoder Signal Converter Unit . . . . . 379
5.6.15 Cables for Connecting PC and Servopack . . . . . 381
5.6.16 4CN Connector . . . . . 385




## 5.6.1 Cable Specifications and Peripheral Devices

1) The rated current of the DR2 Servopack external terminals, cable size, and peripheral devices are listed in the next table.

   For wiring, refer to *2.3.1.*



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

•For 200VAC Class

| Servopack Type DR2- | | Applicable Servomotor | Power supply capacity per Servopack*1 kVA | MCCB or fuse capacity*2 A | Noise filter type (reference diagram) | Recommended noise filter*3 | | Power ON/OFF Switch |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | Type | Spec. | |
| 30 W (0.04HP) | A3AC | SGM–A3A ☐<br>SGM–A3V ☐ | 0.25 | 5 | Applicable | LF–205A | Single–phase 200 VAC Class, 5 A | Contactor 35A or above |
| 50 W (0.07HP) | A5AC | SGM–A5A ☐<br>SGM–A5V ☐ | 0.3 | | | | | |
| 100 W (0.13HP) | 01AC | SGM–01A ☐<br>SGM–01V ☐ | 0.5 | | | | | |
| | 01ACP | SGMP–01A ☐<br>SGMP–01V ☐ | | | | | | |
| 200 W (0.27HP) | 02AC | SGM–02A ☐<br>SGM–02V ☐ | 0.75 | | | | | |
| | 02ACP | SGMP–02A ☐<br>SGMP–02V ☐ | | | | | | |
| 400 W (0.53HP) | 04AC | SGM–04A ☐<br>SGM–04V ☐ | 1.2 | 9 | | LF- 210 | Single-phase 200 VAC Class, 10 A | |
| | 04ACP | SGMP–04A ☐<br>SGMP–04V ☐ | | | | | | |
| 750 W (1.01HP) | 08AC | SGM–08A ☐<br>SGM–08V ☐ | 2.2 | 16 | Not applicable | LF- 220 | Single-phase 200 VAC Class, 20 A | |
| | 08ACP | SGMP–08A ☐<br>SGMP–08V ☐ | | | | | | |

**Note** For power ON/OFF switch, use contactor 30A or above.

*1 Value at rated load.

*2 Braking characteristics (at 25° C): 200% for 2s min., 700% for 0.01s min.

*3 Yaskawa recommends noise filters manufactured by Tokin Corp.
Yaskawa Controls Co., Ltd. can supply these noise filters.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

•For 100VAC Class

| Servopack Type DR2- | | Applicable Servomotor | Power supply capacity per Servopack*1 kVA | MCCB or fuse capacity*2 A | Noise filter type (reference diagram) | Recommended noise filter*3 | | Power ON/OFF switch |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | Type | Spec. | |
| 30 W (0.04HP) | A3BC | SGM–A3B □<br>SGM–A3W □ | 0.25 | 5 | Applicable  | LF- 205A | Single-phase 200 VAC Class, 5 A | Contactor 35A or above |
| 50 W (0.07HP) | A5BC | SGM–A5B □<br>SGM–A5W □ | 0.3 | | | | | |
| 100 W (0.13HP) | 01BC | SGM–01B □<br>SGM–01W □ | 0.5 | | Not applicable  | | | |
| | 01BCP | SGMP–01B □<br>SGMP–01W □ | | | | | | |
| 200 W (0.27HP) | 02BC | SGM–02B □<br>SGM–02W □ | 0.75 | 8 | | LF- 210 | Single-phase 200 VAC Class, 10 A | |
| | 02BCP | SGMP–02B □<br>SGMP–02W □ | | | | | | |
| 300 W (0.40HP) | 03BC | SGM–03B □<br>SGM–03W □ | 1.4 | 15 | | LF- 220 | Single-phase 200 VAC Class, 20 A | |
| | 03BCP | SGMP–03B □<br>SGMP–03W □ | | | | | | |

**Note** For power ON/OFF switch, use contactor 30A or above.

*1 Value at rated load.

*2 Braking characteristics (at 25°C): 200% for 2s min., 700% for 0.01s min.

*3 Yaskawa recommends noise filters manufactured by Tokin Corp.
Yaskawa Controls Co., Ltd. can supply these noise filters.

The types of cable are shown in the table below. Use it in combination with the table above.

| Cable Type | | Conductor Allowable Temperature °C |
|---|---|---|
| Symbol | Name | |
| PVC | Normal vinyl cable | --- |
| IV | 600 V vinyl cable | 60 |
| HIV | Temperature-resistant vinyl cable | 75 |

**Note** 1) Use cable with 600 V min. withstand voltage for main circuits.

2) Consider allowable current reduction ratio if cables are bundled in PVC or metal ducts.

3) Use temperature-resistant cable under high ambient or panel temperature where normal vinyl cables rapidly deteriorate.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) Cable Specifications

Cable Specifications for Main Circuit Power Input Terminals

| Applied Voltage | Servopack Type DR2– | Main Circuit Power Input Terminal*1 L1. L2, ⏚ | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Rated Input Current A (rms) | Cable Spec.*2 | Tightening Torque (N·m) |
| 200VAC Class | A3A □ | 1.3 | AWG16 (HIV 1.25) Min. | 0.5 |
| | A5A □ | 1.5 | | |
| | 01A □ | 2.5 | | |
| | 02A □ | 4.0 | | |
| | 04A □ | 6.0 | AWG14 (HIV 2.0) Min. | |
| | 08A □ | 11.0 | | |
| 100VAC Class | A3B □ | 2.0 | AWG16 (HIV 1.25) Min. | |
| | A5B □ | 2.6 | | |
| | 01B □ | 4.5 | | |
| | 02B □ | 8.0 | AWG14 (HIV 2.0) Min. | |
| | 03B □ | 14.0 | | |

*1 When P, N (Y3, Y4) terminals are used, use the same size cable as those of L1, L2. Tightening torque is the same as those of L1, L2 (0.5N·m).

*2 The cable specifications were selected under conditions of three cables per bundle at 40°C ambient temperature, with the rated current flowing. Max. connectable cable size is 2.5mm$^2$.

Cable Specifications for Control Circuit Power Input Terminals

| Applied Voltage | Servopack Type DR2– | Control Circuit Power Input Terminal L, N | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Rated Input Current*2 A (rms) | Cable Spec.*1 | Tightening Torque (N·m) |
| 200VAC Class | All Models | 0.2 | AWG16 (HIV 1.25) Min. | 0.5 |
| 100VAC Class | All Models | 0.4 | | |

*1 Max. connectable cable size is 2.5mm$^2$.

*2 When control circuit breaker and main circuit breaker are used separately, be aware of in–rush current (30 to 40 A, for 5 ms or less) flows at control power ON.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Cable Specifications for Motor Connecting Terminals

| Applied Voltage | Servopack Type DR2– | Main Circuit Power Input Terminal*1 U, V, W, ⏚ | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Rated Input Current A (rms) | Cable Spec.*1 | Tightening Torque (N·m) |
| 200VAC Class | A3A□ | 0.42 | Refer to the “Cable Specifications” shown below. | 0.5 |
| | A5A□ | 0.6 | | |
| | 01A□ | 0.87 (0.89)*2 | | |
| | 02A□ | 2.0 | | |
| | 04A□ | 2.6 | | |
| | 08A□ | 4.4 (4.1)*2 | | |
| 100VAC Class | A3B□ | 0.63 | | |
| | A5B□ | 0.9 | | |
| | 01B□ | 2.2 | | |
| | 02B□ | 2.7 | | |
| | 03B□ | 3.7 (4.3)*2 | | |

*1 Max.connectable cable size is 2.5mm$^2$.

*2 Values in parentheses are applied only when SGMP motor is used.

5

• Cable Specifications

(When motor conforms to Japanese Standard)

When Yaskawa cables are used, contact your Yaskawa representative for details. When selecting non−Yaskawa cables, check the cable current rating and consider the operating environment. In this case, use cable sizes AWG 22 to AWG 18 (0.3 to 0.89mm$^2$) since motor−side connector has some restriction. As for connectors on motor side, contact your Yaskawa representative.

(When motor conforms to EN Standard)

Connector is not supplied with motor power cable. Check the cable current rating and consider the operating environment to select the cable and connector conforming to the EN Standard.

| <Motor Power Cable Color> | <Phase> |
|---|---|
| Red | Phase−U |
| White | Phase−V |
| Blue | Phase−W |
| Green/Yellow | FG |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3) The appropriate cables for Servopack connectors 1CN and 2CN are shown in the table below. As for the cables conforming to the EMC instructions, refer to *7.2.4* and *7.2.5.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Control I/O Signal Connector** | **1CN** | Cable | Use twisted-pair cable or twisted-pair shielded cable.<br>Max. wiring length is 3m (9.8ft.). |
| | | Finished Cable Dimensions | $\phi$16.0 mm ($\phi$ 0.63 in.)MAX. |
| **PG Signal Connector** | **2CN** | Cable | Use Yaskawa cable.<br>Use twisted-pair shielded cable if Yaskawa cable is not used.<br>If using cable other than Yaskawa's, use AWG22 for encoder power supply and FG line. Use AWG26 for other signals. These connections permit wiring distances up to 20 m (65.6 ft). |
| | | Finished Cable Dimensions | $\phi$11.0mm ($\phi$0.43 in.) MAX. |





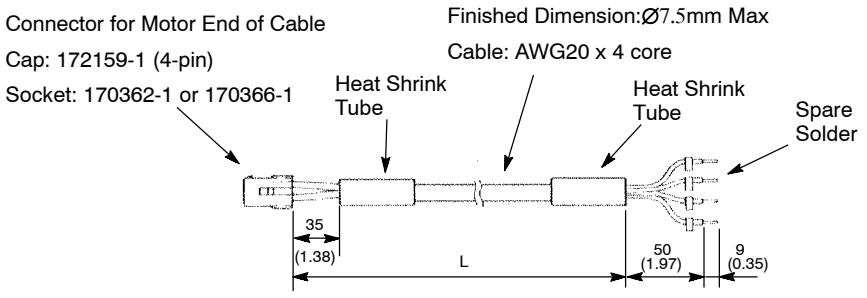
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.6.2 Motor Cables

1) The dimensions and appearance of the motor cables are shown below. Specify the cable type when ordering.

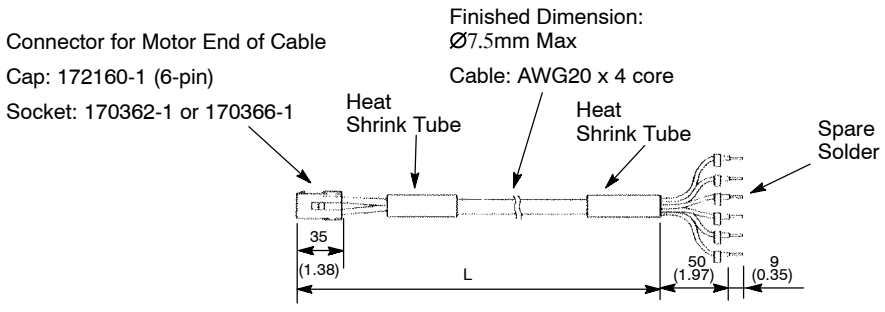
a) Cables For Motor Without Brake (with connector and AMP terminals)

| Type | L in mm (feet) |
|---|---|
| DP9320659-1 | $3000^{+100}_{0}$ ($10^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP9320659-2 | $5000^{+100}_{0}$ ($16.7^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP9320659-3 | $10000^{+500}_{0}$ ($33.3^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP9320659-4 | $15000^{+500}_{0}$ ($50^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP9320659-5 | $20000^{+500}_{0}$ ($66.7^{+1.67}_{0}$) |




b) Cables For Motor With Brake (with connector and AMP terminals)

| Type | L in mm (feet) |
|---|---|
| DP9320660-1 | $3000^{+100}_{0}$ ($10^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP9320660-2 | $5000^{+100}_{0}$ ($16.7^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP9320660-3 | $10000^{+500}_{0}$ ($33.3^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP9320660-4 | $15000^{+500}_{0}$ ($50^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP9320660-5 | $20000^{+500}_{0}$ ($66.7^{+1.67}_{0}$) |

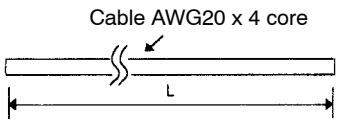





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

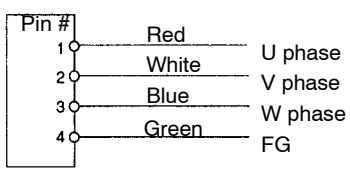
*5.6.2 Motor Cables cont.*

c) Cables For Motor Without Brake
(Cable Only)




| Type | L in mm (feet) |
|---|---|
| DP8409359-1 | $3000^{+100}_{0}$ ($10^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP8409359-2 | $5000^{+100}_{0}$ ($16.7^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP8409359-3 | $10000^{+500}_{0}$ ($33.3^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP8409359-4 | $15000^{+500}_{0}$ ($50^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP8409359-5 | $20000^{+500}_{0}$ ($66.7^{+1.67}_{0}$) |

AMP Connector
Cap: 172159-1
Socket: 170362-1 or 170366-1 (Manufactured by AMP.) *

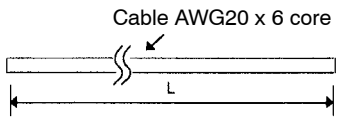



5



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

d) Cables For Motor With Brake
(Cable Only)




| Type | L in mm (feet) |
|---|---|
| DP8409360-1 | $3000^{+100}_{0}$ ($10^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP8409360-2 | $5000^{+100}_{0}$ ($16.7^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP8409360-3 | $10000^{+500}_{0}$ ($33.3^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP8409360-4 | $15000^{+500}_{0}$ ($50^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP8409360-5 | $20000^{+500}_{0}$ ($66.7^{+1.67}_{0}$) |

AMP Connector
Cap: 172160-1
Socket: 170362-1 or 170366-1 (Manufactured by AMP.) *




5

* If cable only is ordered, purchase the AMP connector separately. Refer to *5.6.3 Connector Kits* for details about caps and sockets.

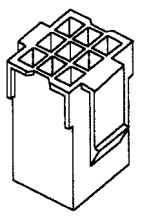


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

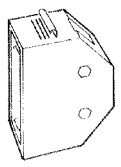
## 5.6.3 Connector Kits

1) A connector kit comprises three connectors as shown in the diagram below: one encoder connector at both the motor and Servopack ends of the cable and a motor connector for the motor end of the cable.

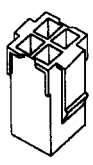
Encoder Connector for Motor End of Cable



Encoder Connector for Servopack End of Cable



Motor Connector for Motor End of Cable



Four types of connector kit are available according to the following information:

• Is the encoder incremental or absolute?

• Is the motor with or without a brake?

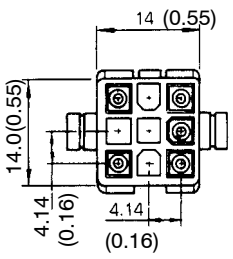
A connector kit is required in the following cases:

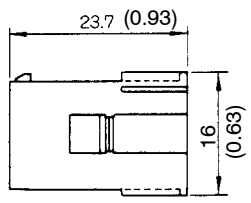
a) If motor cable only is purchased (whether or not motor has a brake).

b) If the encoder cable with a motor connector only and Servopack end without connector, or encoder cable only is purchased (for either incremental or absolute encoder).

2) Select one of the following two types of encoder cable connector.

a) For Incremental Encoder



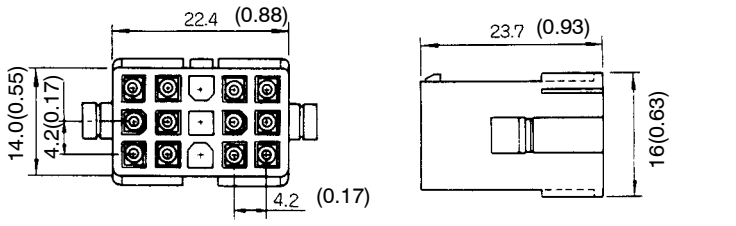




Cap: 172161-1
Socket: 170365-1



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

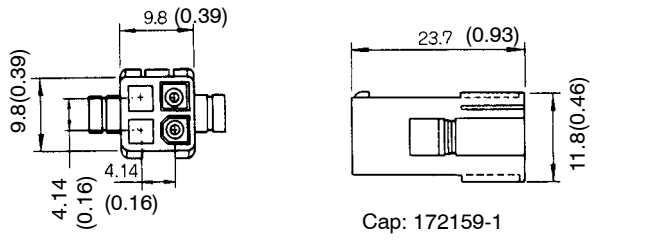
b) For Absolute Encoder




Cap: 172163-1
Socket: 170361-1 or 170365-1

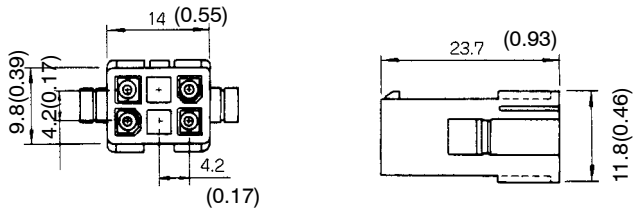
3) Select one of the following two types of motor cable connector.

a) Motor Without Brake




Cap: 172159-1
Socket: 170362-1 or 170366-1

b) Motor With Brake




Cap: 172160-1
Socket: 170362-1 or 170366-1

5

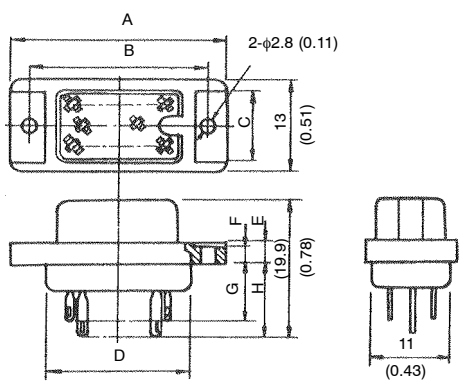


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.6.3 Connector Kits cont.*

4) The following shows the encoder connector for the Servopack end of the cable. Caulking type is not provided as the connector kits. When using the caulking type, order separately and use MRP-F□type contact.

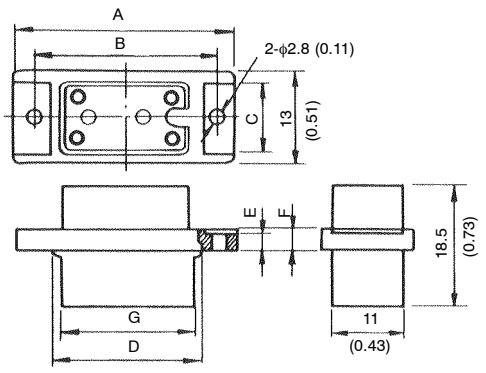
• Connector (Soldering type)




Units: mm (inches)

| Connector Type | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MR-20F | 32.8 (1.29) | 27.8 (1.09) | 10 (0.39) | 22.3 (0.88) | 3 (0.12) | 2.4 (0.09) | 8.4 (0.33) | 10.9 (0.43) |

• Connector (Caulking type)



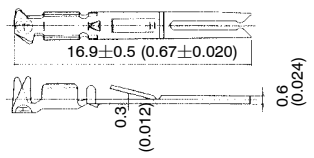

Units: mm (inches)

| Connector Type | A | B | C | D | E | F | G |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MRP-20F01 | 32.8 (1.29) | 27.8 (1.09) | 10 (0.39) | 22.3 (0.88) | 2.4 (0.09) | 3 (0.12) | 21.3 (0.84) |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Female Contact




Type Designation

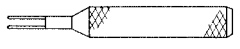
MRP - F 102

- Terminal status (See the Table below.)
- Terminal type*
- Connector series

* M: Male F: Female

| Terminal Status | Type | Processing | Applicable Female Insulation |
|---|---|---|---|
| Chain | MRP-F102 | Silver plated | MRP-8F01 to MRP-50F01 |
| | MRP-F103 | Gold plated | |
| Loose | MRP-F112 | Silver plated | |
| | MRP-F113 | Gold plated | |

Tool

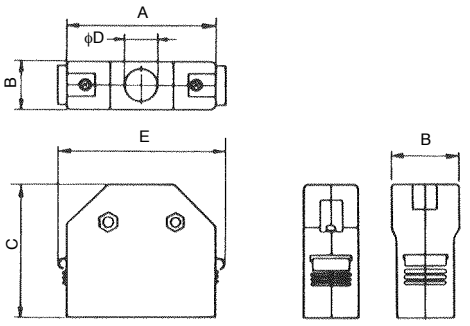


Type Designation

MRP - MF

- Contact pulling tool
- Connector series

• Case




Units: mm (inches)

| Case Type | A | B* | C | φD | E* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MR-20L | 39.3 (1.55) | 18 (0.71) | 39.8 (1.57) | 11 (0.43) | (47.9) (1.89) |

* Maximum dimensions



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.6.3 Connector Kits cont.*

5) The types of connector kit are shown below. Select the type of connector kit according to the connectors selected in (2), (3), and (4) above.

| Connector Kit Type | Application | | Connector Kit Part List | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Encoder/Motor Cable | | For Encoder Cable | | | | | | | | For Motor Cable | | | |
| | | | Encoder End | | | | Servopack End | | | | | | | |
| | Encoder Type | Motor Brake With/ Without | Cap | | Socket | | Connector | | Case | | Cap | | Socket | |
| | | | Type | Qty | Type | Qty | Type | Qty | Type | Qty | Type | Qty | Type | Qty |
| DP9420009-1 | Incremental | Without | *1 172161-1 | 1 | *1 170365-1 | *3 10 | *2 MR-20F | 1 | *2 MR-20L | 1 | *1 172159-1 | 1 | *1 170366-1 | *3 5 |
| DP9420009-2 | Incremental | With | | | | | | | | | *1 172160-1 | 1 | | *3 7 |
| DP9420009-3 | Absolute | Without | *1 172163-1 | 1 | | *3 16 | | | | | *1 172159-1 | 1 | | *3 5 |
| DP9420009-4 | Absolute | With | | | | | | | | | *1 172160-1 | 1 | | *3 7 |

*1 Manufactured by AMP.

*2 Manufactured by 3M.

*3 Including one spare.

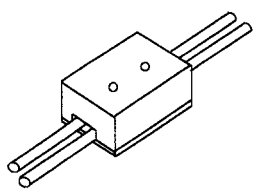


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.6.4 Brake Power Supply

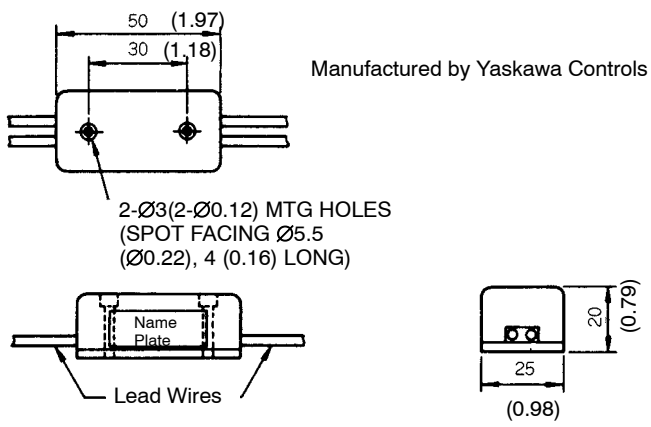
1) Brake power supplies are available for 200 V and 100 V input.

200 VAC Input: LPSE-2H01
100 VAC Input: LPDE-1H01



Use for Servomotor with brake.

• Dimensional Drawings




Manufactured by Yaskawa Controls Co., Ltd.

• Lead Wire Length: 500 mm each (19.69 in.)

• Max. Ambient Temperature: 60°C

• Lead Wires: Color Coded

| AC Input | | Brake |
|---|---|---|
| 100V | 200V | |
| Blue/White | Yellow/White | Red/Black |

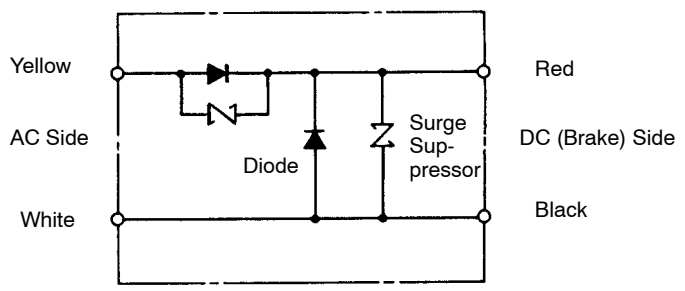


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

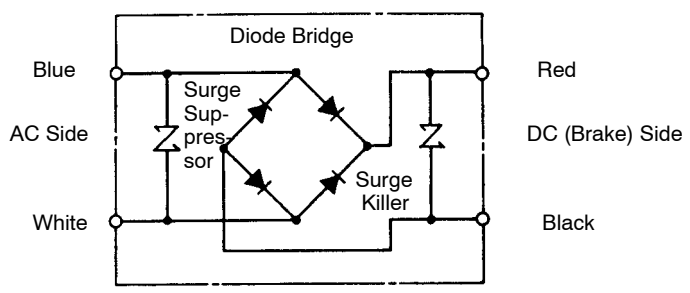
*5.6.4 Brake Power Supply cont.*

2) The internal circuits are shown below. While it is possible to switch either the AC or DC side of the brake power supply, it is normally safer to switch the AC side. If the DC side is to be switched, install a surge suppressor near the brake coil to prevent the surge voltages due to switching the DC side damaging the brake coil.

• Internal Circuit for 200 VAC Input (LPSE-2H01)




• Internal Circuit for 100 VAC Input (LPDE-1H01)




5

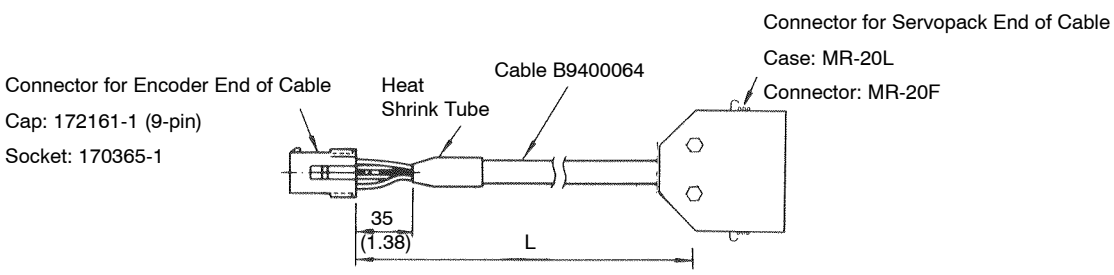


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.6.5 Encoder Cables

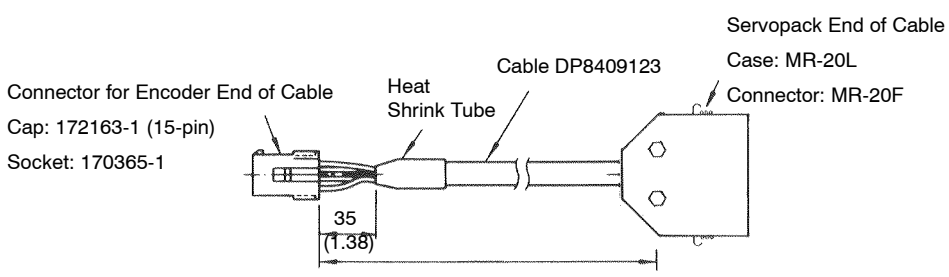
1) The dimensions and appearance of the encoder cables are shown below. Specify the cable type when ordering.
As for the cables conforming to the EMC instructions, refer to *7.2.4*.

a) Cables for Incremental Encoder (Connector Both Ends)




| Type | L in mm (feet) |
|---|---|
| DP9320082-1 | $3000^{+100}_{0}$ ($10^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP9320082-2 | $5000^{+100}_{0}$ ($16.7^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP9320082-3 | $10000^{+500}_{0}$ ($33.3^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP9320082-4 | $15000^{+500}_{0}$ ($50^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP9320082-5 | $20000^{+500}_{0}$ ($66.7^{+1.67}_{0}$) |

b) Cables for Absolute Encoder (Connector Both Ends)




| Type | L in mm (feet) |
|---|---|
| DP9320084-1 | $3000^{+100}_{0}$ ($10^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP9320084-2 | $5000^{+100}_{0}$ ($16.7^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP9320084-3 | $10000^{+500}_{0}$ ($33.3^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP9320084-4 | $15000^{+500}_{0}$ ($50^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP9320084-5 | $20000^{+500}_{0}$ ($66.7^{+1.67}_{0}$) |

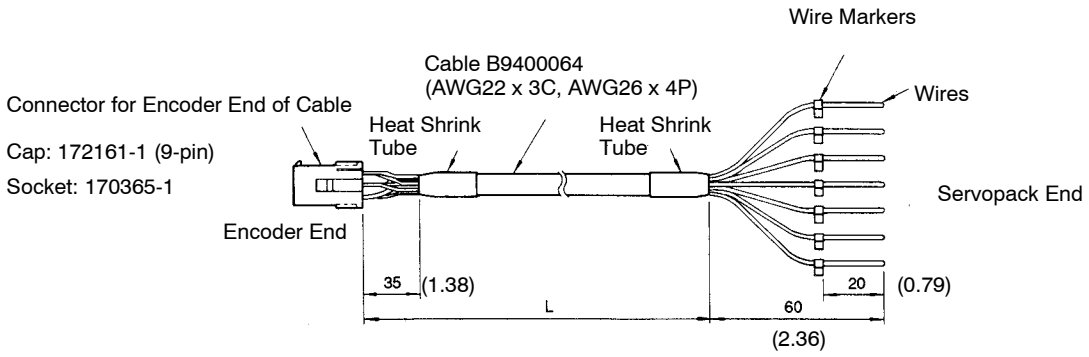




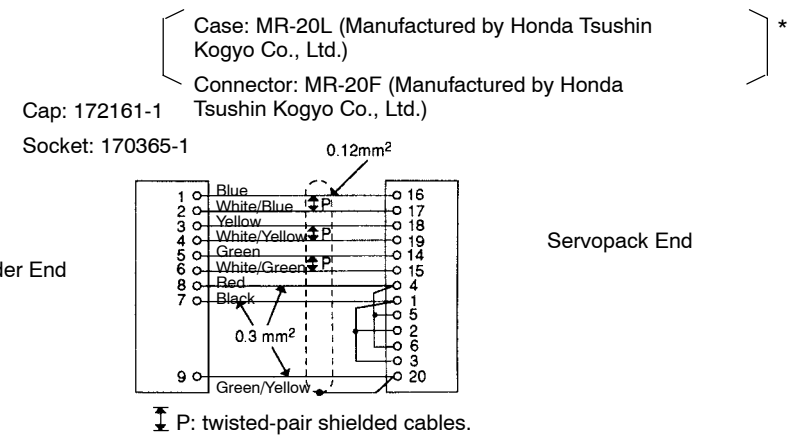
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.6.5 Encoder Cables cont.*

c) Cables for Incremental Encoder (Servopack End without Connector)




| Type | L in mm (feet) |
|---|---|
| DP9320086-1 | $3000^{+100}_{0}$ ($10^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP9320086-2 | $5000^{+100}_{0}$ ($16.7^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP9320086-3 | $10000^{+500}_{0}$ ($33.3^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP9320086-4 | $15000^{+500}_{0}$ ($50^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP9320086-5 | $20000^{+500}_{0}$ ($66.7^{+1.67}_{0}$) |

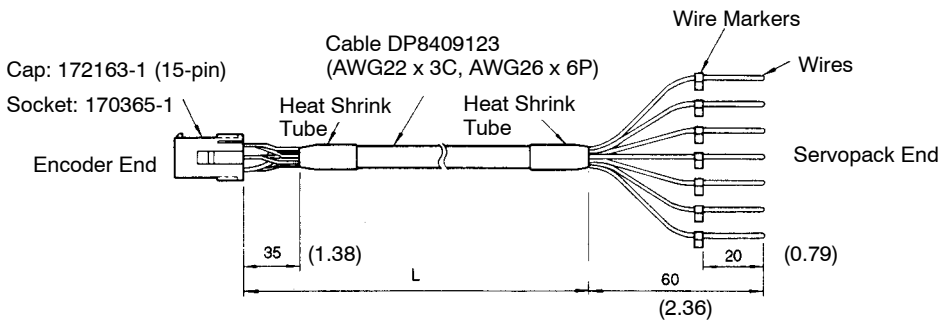



*Purchase cases and connectors separately. Refer to *5.6.3 Connector Kits* for details.



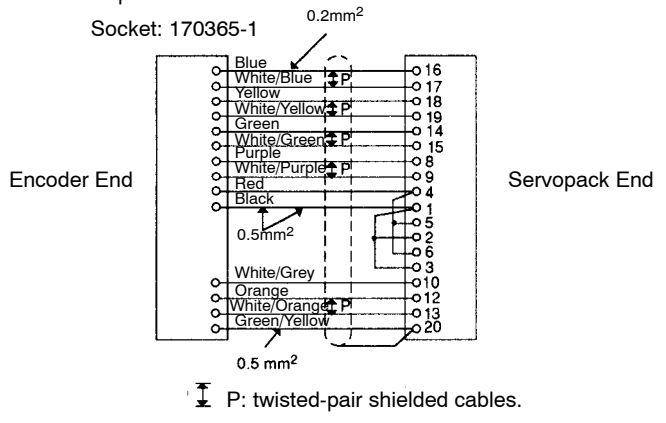
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

d) Cables for Absolute Encoder (Servopack End without Connector)




| Type | L in mm (feet) |
|---|---|
| DP9320085-1 | $3000^{+100}_{0}$ ($10^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP9320085-2 | $5000^{+100}_{0}$ ($16.7^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP9320085-3 | $10000^{+500}_{0}$ ($33.3^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP9320085-4 | $15000^{+500}_{0}$ ($50^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP9320085-5 | $20000^{+500}_{0}$ ($66.7^{+1.67}_{0}$) |

* Case: MR-20L (Manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)
Connector: MR-20F (Manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd. )




*Purchase cases and connectors separately. Refer to *5.6.3 Connector Kits* for details.

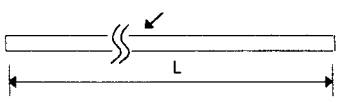


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.6.5 Encoder Cables cont.*

e) Cables for Incremental Encoder (Cable Only)

Cable AWG22 x 3C, AWG26 x 4P




| Type | L in mm (feet) |
|---|---|
| B9400064-1 | $3000^{+100}_{0}$ ($10^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| B9400064-2 | $5000^{+100}_{0}$ ($16.7^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| B9400064-3 | $10000^{+500}_{0}$ ($33.3^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| B9400064-4 | $15000^{+500}_{0}$ ($50^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| B9400064-5 | $20000^{+500}_{0}$ ($66.7^{+1.67}_{0}$) |

Cap: 172161-1 (Manufactured by AMP.)

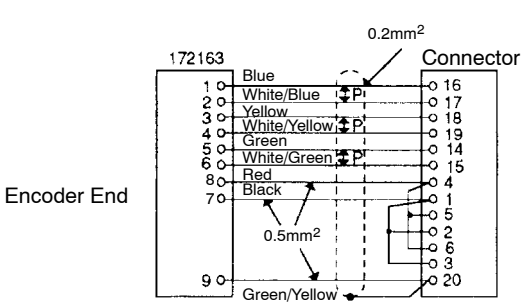
Socket: 170365-1
(Manufactured by AMP.)

*

Case: MR-20L (Manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)

Connector: MR-20F (Manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd. )

*




P: twisted-pair shielded cables.

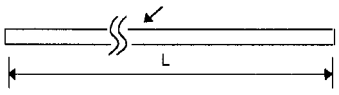
* Purchase caps, sockets, cases, and connectors separately. Refer to *5.6.3. Connector Kits* for details.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

f) Cables for Absolute Encoder (Cable Only)

Cable AWG22 x 3C, AWG26 x 6P




| Type | L in mm (feet) |
|---|---|
| DP8409123-1 | $3000^{+100}_{0}$ ($10^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP8409123-2 | $5000^{+100}_{0}$ ($16.7^{+0.33}_{0}$) |
| DP8409123-3 | $10000^{+500}_{0}$ ($33.3^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP8409123-4 | $15000^{+500}_{0}$ ($50^{+1.67}_{0}$) |
| DP8409123-5 | $20000^{+500}_{0}$ ($66.7^{+1.67}_{0}$) |

Cap: 172163-1

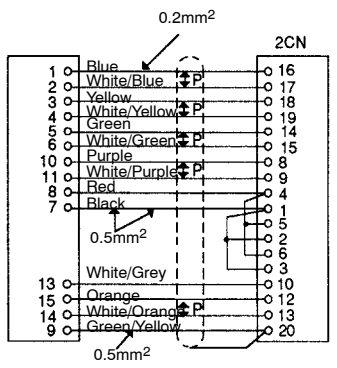
Socket: 170365-1

*

Case: MR-20L (Manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)

Connector: MR-20F (Manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)

*




P: twisted-pair shielded cables.

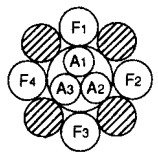
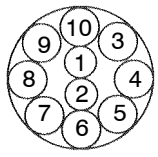
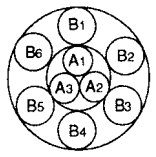
* Purchase caps, sockets, cases, and connectors separately. Refer to *5.6.3. Connector Kits* for details.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.6.5 Encoder Cables cont.*

2) Details of the encoder cables are summarized in the table below.
These cables are not supplied as accessories with a Servopack or Servomotor.
Purchase in standard specified lengths as required.

| Cable Specification | Incremental Encoder | | Absolute Encoder |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **Yaskawa Drg. #B9400064 (Soldering type)** | **Yaskawa Drg. #DE8400093 (Caulking type)** | **Yaskawa Drg. #DP8409123 (Soldering type)** |
| Basic Specifications | Compound KQVV-SW<br>AWG22 x 3C, AWG26 x 4P | KQVV-SB<br>AWG26 x 10P | Compound KQVV-SW<br>AWG22 x 3C, AWG26 x 6P |
| Finished Dimension | $\phi$7.5 mm ($\phi$0.30in.) | $\phi$10.0 mm ($\phi$0.39in.) | $\phi$8.0 mm ($\phi$0.31in.) |
| Internal Structure and Lead Colors | <br>$A_1$ Red<br>$A_2$ Black<br>$A_3$ Green/Yellow<br>$F_1$ Blue – White/Blue (Twisted pair)<br>$F_2$ Yellow – White/Yellow (Twisted Pair)<br>$F_3$ Green – White/Green (Twisted Pair)<br>$F_4$ Orange – White/Orang (Twisted Pair) | <br>1 Blue – White (Twisted pair)<br>2 Yellow – White (Twisted pair)<br>3 Greem – White (Twisted pair)<br>4 Red – White (Twisted pair)<br>5 Purple – White (Twisted Pair)<br>6 Blue – Brown (Twisted Pair)<br>7 Yellow – Brown (Twisted Pair)<br>8 Green – Brown (Twisted pair)<br>9 Red – Brown (Twisted pair)<br>10 Purple – Brown (Twisted pair) | <br>$A_1$ Red<br>$A_2$ Black<br>$A_3$ Green/Yellow<br>$B_1$ Blue – White/Blue (Twisted pair)<br>$B_2$ Yellow – White/Yellow (Twisted Pair)<br>$B_3$ Green – White/Green (Twisted Pair)<br>$B_4$ Orange – White/Orang (Twisted Pair)<br>$B_5$ Purple – White/Purple (Twisted Pair)<br>$B_6$ Grey – White/Grey (Twisted Pair) |
| Yaskawa standard specifications | Standard lengths:<br>3 m (9.8ft.) , 5 m (16.4ft.) , 10 m (32.8ft.), 15 m (49.2ft.), 20 m (65.6ft.) * | | |

*When appropriate cable is used, the allowable wiring distance between Servopack and Servomotor (PG) is 20 m (65.6ft.) max.

**Note** 1 See items a) to d) in this section for details about cables with connectors.

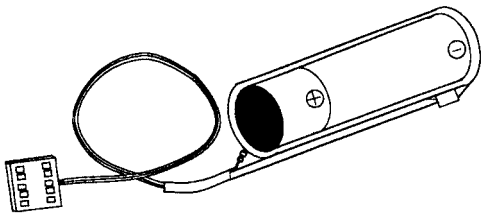
2 When wiring distance between Servopack and servomotor (PG) exceeds 20m (65.6ft.), max. 50m (164ft.) cable can be available (AWG16, Yaskawa Drg. #DP8409179). For details, contact your Yaskawa representative.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.6.6 Battery for Absolute Encoder

1) Purchase the following battery if using an absolute encoder. (Manufactured by Toshiba Battery Co., Ltd.)



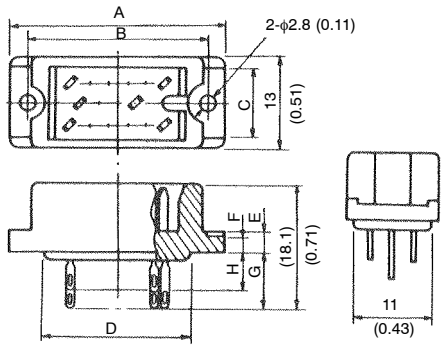
- Lithium Battery: ER 6 V C3
- Nominal Voltage: 3.6 V
- Standard Capacity: 2000 mAh

## 5.6.7 1CN Connector

1) This connector is required to connect the host controller to 1CN on the Servopack.

   As for the connector conforming to the EMC instructions, refer to *7.2.5*.
   As for the caulking type contact tool, see *5.6.3 Connector Kits* for details, and use MRP-M□type contact.

   • Connector (Soldering type)




Units: mm (inches)

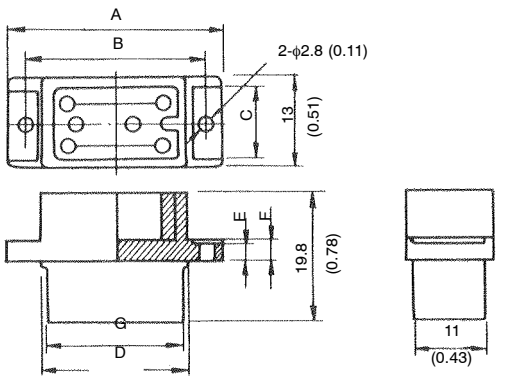
| Connector Type | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MR-50M | 61.4 (2.42) | 56.4 (2.22) | 10 (0.39) | 50.9 (2.00) | 3 (0.12) | 2.4 (0.09) | 8.5 (0.33) | 6 (0.24) |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.6.7 1CN Connector cont.*

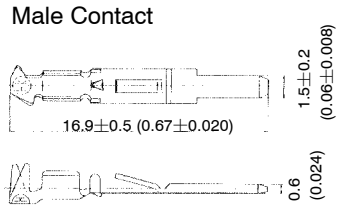
• Connector (Caulking type)




Units: mm (inches)

| Connector Type | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MRP-20M01 | 61.4 (2.42) | 56.4 (2.22) | 10 (0.39) | 50.9 (2.00) | 2.4 (0.09) | 3 (0.12) |

Male Contact




Type Designation

MRP - M 102

- Terminal status (See the Table below.)
- Terminal type*
- Connector series

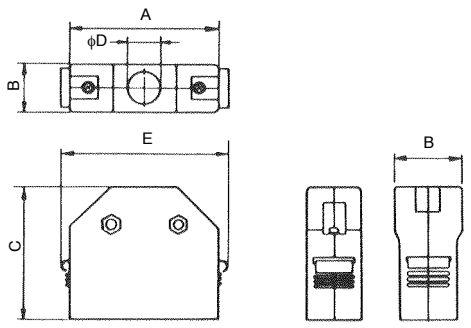
* M: Male F: Female

| Terminal Status | Type | Processing | Applicable Male Insulation |
|---|---|---|---|
| Chain | MRP-M102 | Silver plated | MRP-8M01 to MRP-50M01 |
| | MRP-M103 | Gold plated | |
| Loose | MRP-M112 | Silver plated | |
| | MRP-M113 | Gold plated | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• Case




Units: mm (inches)

| Case Type | A | B* | C | φD | E* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MR-50L | 67.9<br>(2.67) | 18<br>(0.71) | 44.8<br>(1.76) | 16<br>(0.63) | (76.5)<br>(3.01) |

* Maximum dimensions

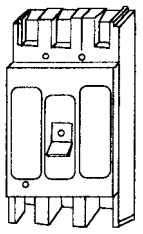
2) The 1CN connector type is shown below.

| Connector Type | Application | Connector Part List | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Connector | | Case | |
| | | Type | Qty | Type | Qty |
| DP9420010 | I/O connector for 1CN (Soldering type) | MR-50M* | 1 | MR-50L* | 1 |
| – | I/O connector for 1CN (Caulking type) | MRP-50M01* | 1 | MR-50L* | 1 |

* Manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.

## 5.6.8 Circuit Breaker

1) The customer should purchase a circuit breaker (MCCB) of appropriate capacity.



• Recommended Product

Ground fault detector for motor protection manufactured by Mitsubishi Electric Co. Ltd.
Type: MN50-CF
Rated Current: 7.1 A, 10 A, 16 A, 25 A, 32 A, 45A

Use to protect the power lines.

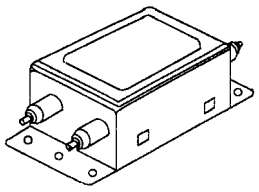


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.6.9 Noise Filter

1) Select the noise filter from the following three types according to the Servopack capacity.

As for the noise filter conforming to the EMC instructions, refer to *7.2.2*.

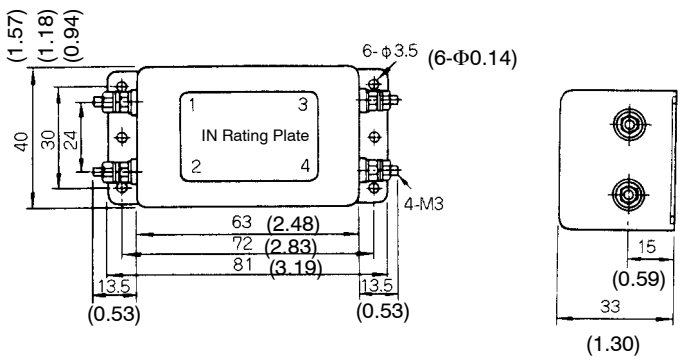


Install to eliminate external noise from the power lines.

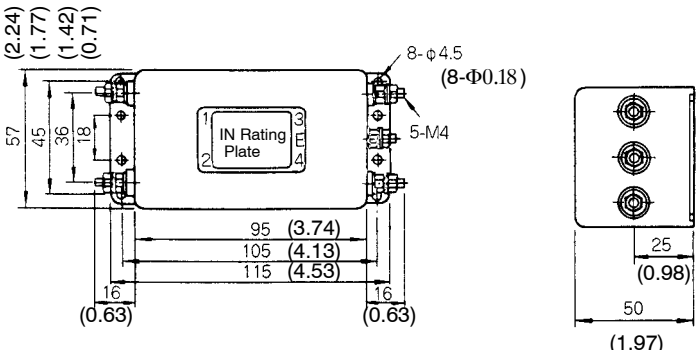
| Servopack Capacity | Noise Filter Type |
|---|---|
| 30W(0.04 HP),50W(0.07HP),100W(0.13HP),200W(0.27HP) | LF-205A |
| 200W(0.27HP)(100V),400W(0.53HP) | LF-210 |
| 300W(0.40HP)(100V),750W(1.01HP) | LF-220 |

• Dimensional Diagrams

• LF-205A (Single-phase 200 VAC Class, 5 A)



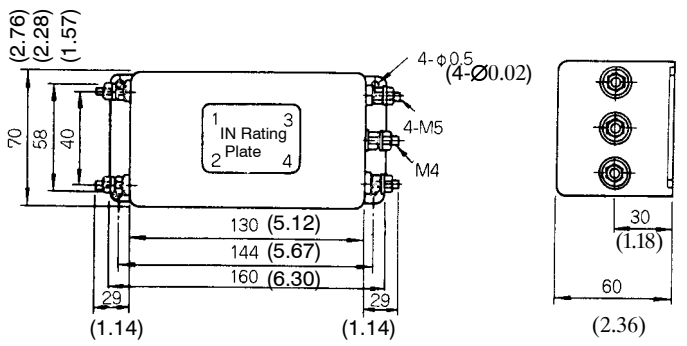

• LF-210 (Single-phase 200 VAC Class, 10 A)





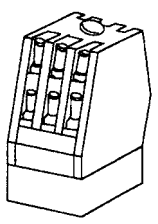

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• LF-220 (Single-phase 200 VAC Class, 20 A)




## 5.6.10 Magnetic Contactor

1) Use one 30 A magnetic contactor of the type shown below for a single Σ Series, regardless of capacity. For multiple servo systems, select the magnetic contactor according to the total capacity.

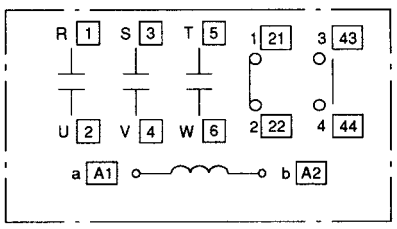


Type: HI-15E5 (30 A)

Turns servo ON and OFF.

(Note)Attach an appropriate surge suppressor to the magnetic contactor.

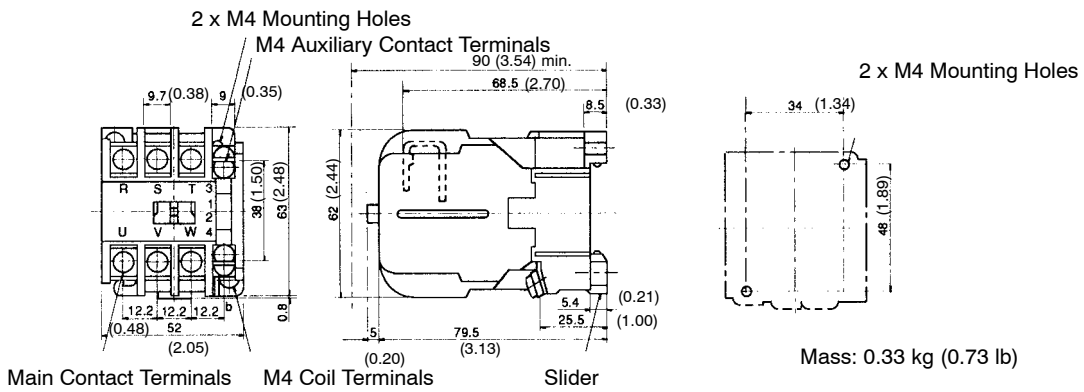
• Internal Connection Diagram






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

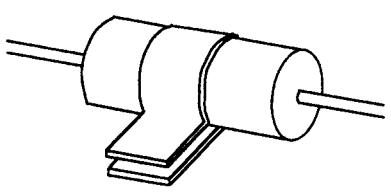
• Dimensional Diagram




Mass: 0.33 kg (0.73 lb)

## 5.6.11 Surge Suppressor

1) Attach a surge suppressor to the magnetic contactor to prevent power supply noise and protect contacts.

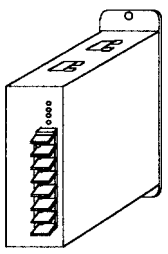


• Recommended Product

Spark Killer manufactured by Okaya Electric Industries Co., Ltd.
Type: CR50500 (250 VAC)
Static Electricity Capacity: 0.5 μF ± 20%
Resistance: 50 Ω (1/2 W) ±30%

## 5.6.12 Regenerative Unit

1) Dimensional drawings of the regenerative unit are shown below.

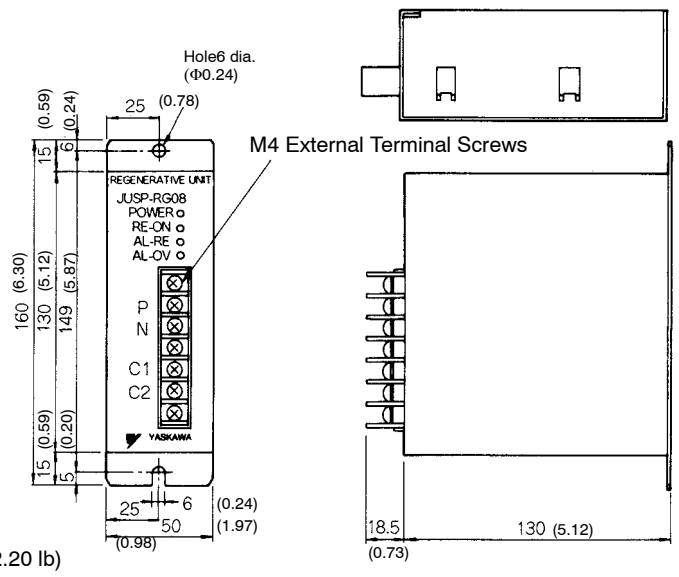


Type: JUSP-RG08



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• Dimensional Drawings




Mass: 1 kg (2.20 lb)

• Regenerative Unit Specifications

| Type | JUSP-RG08 | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| Applicable Servopack | Only for 200V, 30 to 200W specifications | |
| Regenerative Working Voltage | 380Vdc | |
| Regenerative Process Current | 8Adc | Built–in regenerative resistance: 50 Ω, 60 W |
| Error Detection Functions | Regenerative resistance failure, regenerative transistor failure, overvoltage | |
| Alarm Output | Normally closed contact (open when protective function operates) | 200 V operation OK |
| Dimensions in mm (inches) | 55W × 160H × 130D (2.17W × 6.30H × 5.31D) | |





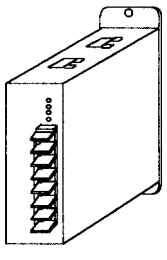
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.6.12 Regenerative cont.*

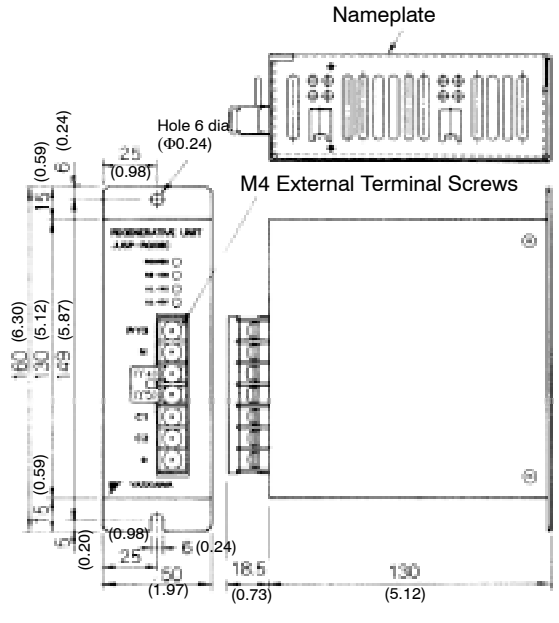
2) JUSP−RG08C type

JUSP−RG08C type is an exterior type regenerative unit. When regenerative ability of the built−in resistor is insufficient, install this regenerative unit to enhance the regenerative ability. When regenerative resistor is installed externally, disconnect the jumper cable between terminals Y4 and Y5. Connect exterior type regenerative unit between terminals P/Y3 and Y4.

• Dimensional Drawings



Approx. Mass: 1 kg (2.20 lb)




• Regenerative Unit Specifications

| Type | JUSP−RG08C | Remarks |
|---|---|---|
| Applicable Servopack | Only for 200 V, 30 to 200 W specifications | |
| Regenerative Working Voltage | 380Vdc | |
| Regenerative Processing Current | 8Adc | Regenerative Resistance: 50 Ω, 60 W |
| Error Detection Function | Regenerative resistance disconnection, regenerative transistor fault, overvoltage | |
| Minimum Exterior Resistance | 50 Ω | |
| Alarm Output | Normally closed contact (open when protective function operates) | 200 V operation OK |
| Dimensions in mm (inches) | 55W × 160H × 130D (2.17W × 6.30H × 5.31D) | |

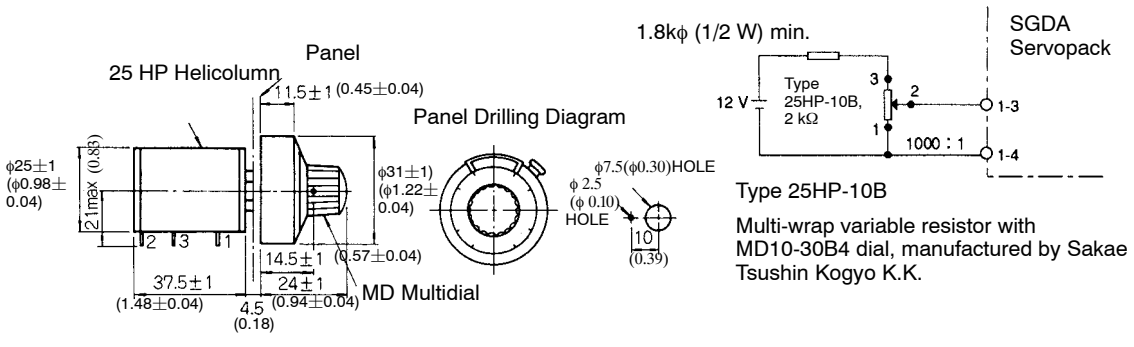


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.6.13 Variable Resistor for Speed Setting

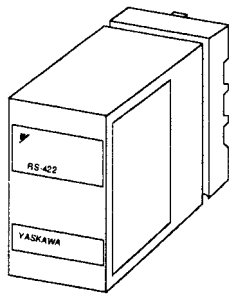
1) This variable resistor is used to give speed references by applying the speed reference voltage from the external power supply across 1CN pins #3 and #4.

• Dimensional Drawings



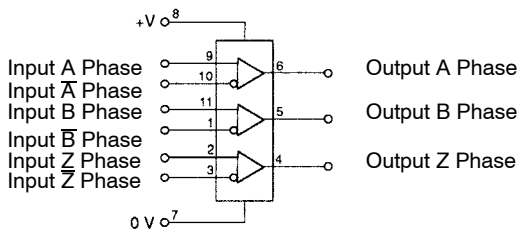

## 5.6.14 Encoder Signal Converter Unit

1) Unit to convert the encoder signal output from the line driver to an open collector output or voltage pulse output.



Line Receiver Unit

• Terminal Numbers

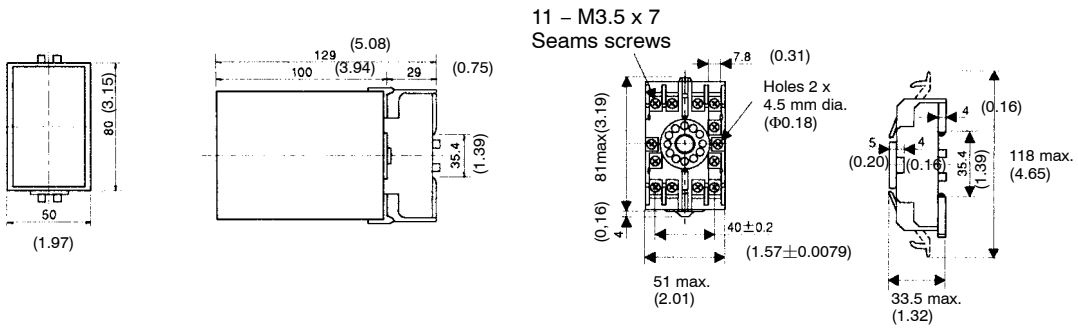





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.6.14 Encoder Signal Converter Unit cont.*

• Dimensional Drawings




2) The encoder signal converter unit specifications are as follows:

| Type | Receiver Unit | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Spec.** | **LRX-01/A1** | **LRX-01/A2** | **LRX-01/A3** | **LRX-01/A4** |
| Power Supply | 12 VDC ±10%, 100 mA | | 5 VDC ± 10%, 100 mA | |
| Input Signals | Balanced line driver input (RS-422) | | | |
| Output Signals | Voltage pulse output | Open collector output | Voltage pulse output | Open collector output |
| Input Signal Level | Voltage differential ≥ 0.3 V, internal termination resistance 100 Ω | | | |
| Output Signal Level | H: 10 V min. (1 mA) L: 0.5 V max. (30 mA) | L: 0.5 V max. (30 mA) Withstand voltage: 50 V | H: 3 V min. (1 mA) L: 0.5 V max. (30 mA) | L: 0.5 V max. (30 mA) Withstand voltage: 50 V |
| Operating Ambient Temperature Range | 0 to +60°C | | | |
| IC Used | AM26LS32C Receiver IC, or equivalent | | | |

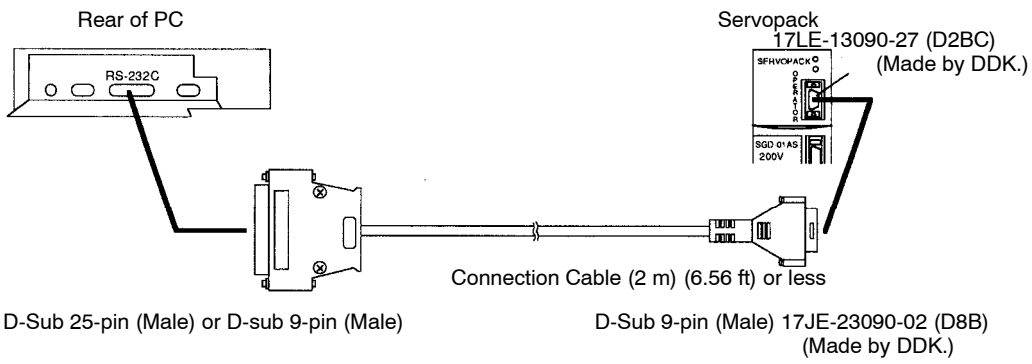
5



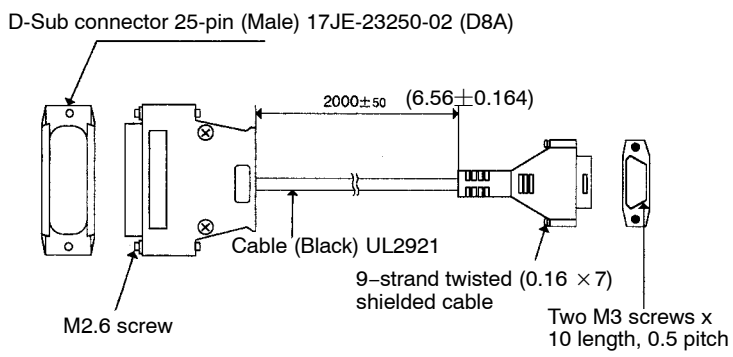
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.6.15 Cables for Connecting PC and Servopack

1) Special cables for connecting a PC to a Servopack. Using these cables allows monitoring and setting of user constants with a PC.
PC software is available for these communications. Ask your Yaskawa representative for details. Operate the software as described in the manual supplied.




• Dimensional Drawings for Type DE9405258 (for NEC PC)




Pin Connector 17JE-23090-02 (D1)

Note: Fold back the cable shielding at each end of the cable and secure it with clamps.

2) The communications specifications and connecting-circuit specifications are listed below.

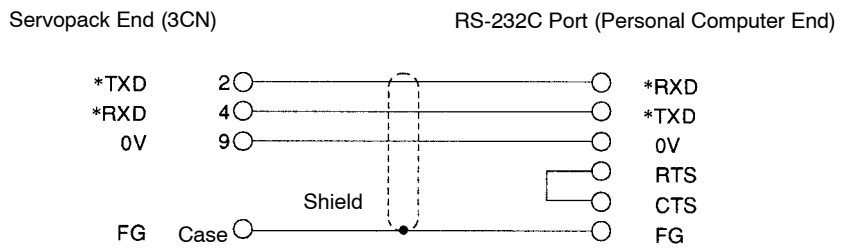
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| • Baud Rate: | 9600 bps | |
| • Number of Bits | Start: | 1 bit |
| | Data: | 7 bits |
| | Stop: | 1 bit |
| | Parity: | 1 bit (even) |
| • Synchronization | Start-Stop | |
| • XON/XOFF Control | None | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• Shift Control: None

• Communications Method: Semi-duplex

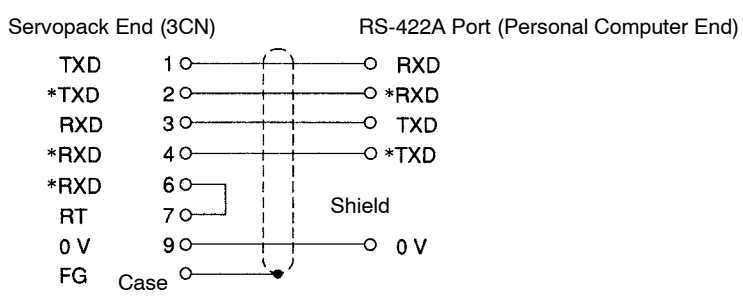



Note: Maximum cable length is 2 m (6.56 ft).

3) Connection is also possible to the RS-422A port. In this case, the connection circuit is as follows:

• Transmission Distance: 30 m (98.4 ft) max.

• Transmission System: RS-422A




• Terminal Arrangement at Servopack End

| Pin # | Signal Name | Signal Circuit Name | Signal Direction |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | TXD | Transmit data (not inverted) | P←S |
| 2 | *TXD | Transmit data (inverted) | P←S |
| 3 | RXD | Receive data (not inverted) | P→S |
| 4 | *RXD | Receive data (inverted) | P→S |
| 5 | OPH | | # |
| 6 | *RXD | Shorting pins 6 and 7 inserts 220 Ω termination resistance between RXD and *RXD. | |
| 7 | RT | | |
| 8 | 5VPP | | # |
| 9 | GND | Signal ground 0 V | |

P: Personal computer
S: Servopack
#: Terminal not used, leave open.

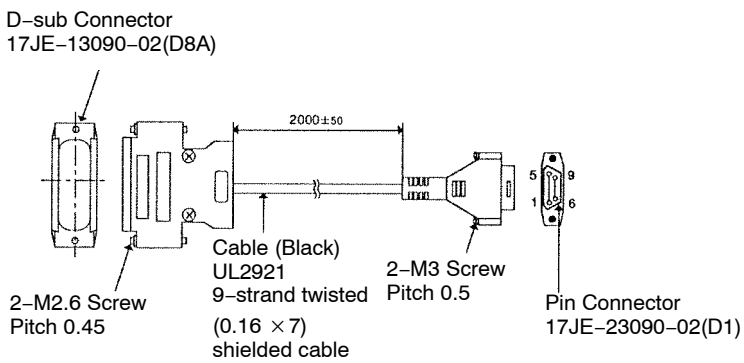


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4) Cable for connecting Servopack andIBM PC (IBM compatible PC)

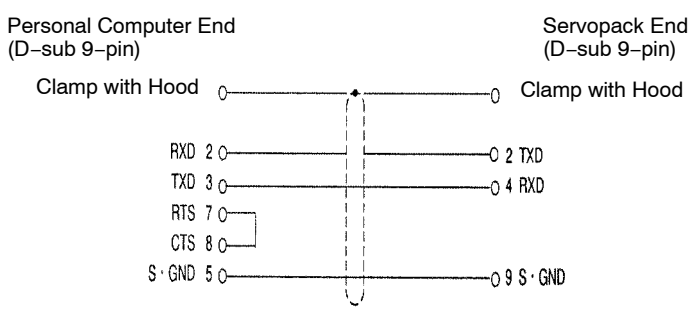
Use Yaskawa DE9408565 type cable.

• Dimensional Drawings: Type DE9408565




Note: Fold back the cable shielding at each end of the cable and secure it with clamp.

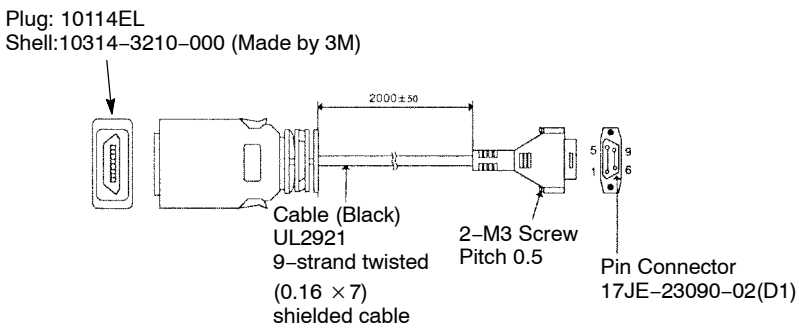
• Connection




5) Cable for connecting Servopack and NEC PC–98 half–pitch connector

Use Yaskawa DE9408564 type cable.

• Dimensional Drawings: Type DE9408564



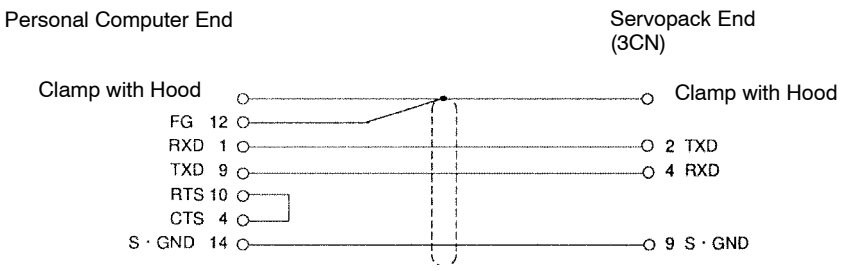

Note: Fold back the cable shielding at each end of the cable and secure it with clamp.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.6.15 Cables for Connecting PC and Servopack cont.*

• Connection





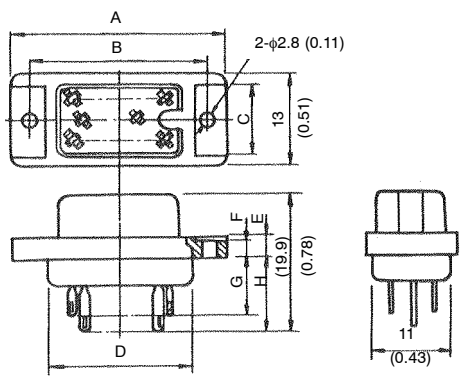



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 5.6.16 4CN Connector

1) This 4CN connector is used for full-closed loop specification to connect external PG to 4CN. As for caulking type contacts and tool, refer to *5.6.3 Connector Kits*. Use MRP-F□type contact.

• Connector (Soldering type)

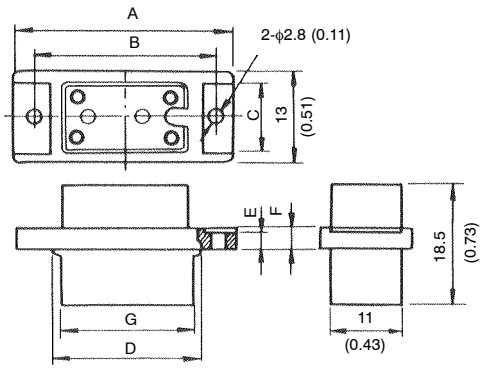



Units: mm (inches)

| Connector Type | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MR-8F | 22.4 (0.88) | 17.4 (0.69) | 10 (0.39) | 11.9 (0.47) | 3.4 (0.13) | 2.8 (0.11) | 8 (0.31) | 10.5 (0.41) |

5

• Connector (Caulking type)




Units: mm (inches)

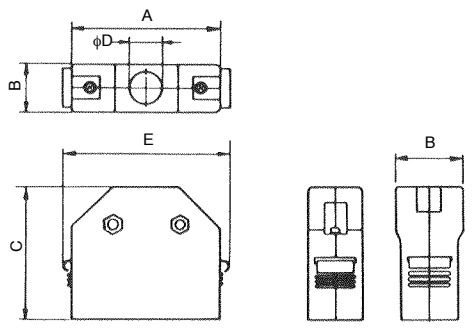
| Connector Type | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MRP-8F01 | 22.4 (0.88) | 17.4 (0.69) | 5 (0.20) | 11.9 (0.47) | 1.9 (0.07) | 3.4 (0.13) |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*5.6.16 4CN Connector cont.*

• Case




Units: mm (inches)

| Case Type | A | B* | C | ϕD | E* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MR-8L | 31<br>(1.22) | 19<br>(0.75) | 39.8<br>(1.57) | 11<br>(0.43) | (36.6)<br>(1.44) |

* Maximum dimensions



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# INSPECTION, MAINTENANCE, AND TROUBLESHOOTING

# 6

This chapter describes the basic inspections and maintenance to be carried out by the customer.
In addition, troubleshooting procedures are described for problems which cause an alarm display and for problems which result in no alarm display.


**6.1 Inspection and Maintenance . . . . . 388**
6.1.1 Servomotor . . . . . 388
6.1.2 Servopack . . . . . 389
6.1.3 Replacing Battery for Absolute Encoder . . . . . 390

**6.2 Troubleshooting . . . . . 391**
6.2.1 Troubleshooting Problems with Alarm Display . . . . . 391
6.2.2 Troubleshooting Problems With No Alarm Display . . . . . 409
6.2.3 Internal Connection Diagram and Instrument Connection Examples . . . . . 411






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 6.1 Inspection and Maintenance

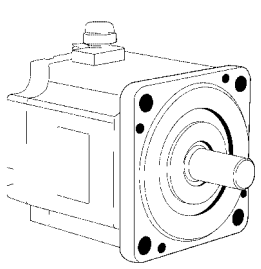
This section describes the basic inspections and maintenance for Σ-Series servo drives.

6.1.1 Servomotor . . . . . 388
6.1.2 Servopack . . . . . 389
6.1.3 Replacing Battery for Absolute Encoder . . . . . 390

## 6.1.1 Servomotor

For inspection and maintenance of servomotors, follow the simple, daily inspection procedures in the table below.

The AC servomotors are brushless. Simple, daily inspection is sufficient. The inspection and maintenance frequencies in the table are only guidelines. Increase or decrease the frequency to suit the operating conditions and environment.





| Item | Frequency | Procedure | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| Vibration and noise | Daily | Touch and listen. | Levels higher than normal? |
| Appearance | According to degree of contamination | Clean with cloth or compressed air. | |
| Insulation resistance measurement | Yearly | Disconnect Servopack and test insulation resistance at 500 V. Must exceed 10 MΩ. (See note below) | Contact your Yaskawa representative if the insulation resistance is below 10 MΩ. |
| Replace oil seal | Every 5,000 hours | Remove servomotor from machine and replace oil seal. | Applies only to motors with oil seal. |
| Overhaul | Every 20,000 hours or 5 years | Contact your Yaskawa representative. | The customer should not disassemble and clean the servomotor. |

**Note** Measure across the servomotor FG (green/yellow) and the U-phase (red), V-phase (white), or W-phase (blue) power lead.

During inspection and maintenance, do not disassemble the servomotor.
If disassembly of the servomotor is required, contact your Yaskawa representative.

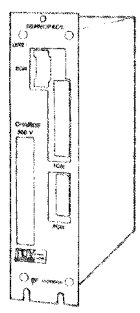


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 6.1.2 Servopack

For inspection and maintenance of the Servopack, follow the inspection procedures in the table below at least once every year.

The Servopack contains highly reliable parts and daily inspection is not required. Carry out the inspections and maintenance in the table below once every year.



| Item | Frequency | Procedure | Remedy |
|---|---|---|---|
| Clean unit interior and circuit boards | Yearly | Check for dust, dirt, and oil on the surfaces. | Clean with compressed air. |
| Loose screws | Yearly | Check for loose terminal block and connector screws. | Tighten any loose screws. |
| Defective parts in unit or on circuit boards. | Yearly | Check for discoloration, damage or discontinuities due to heating. | Contact your Yaskawa representative. |

**Part Replacement Schedule**



The following parts are subject to mechanical wear or deterioration over time. To avoid failure, replace these parts at the frequency indicated.

| Part | Standard Replacement Period | Replacement Method |
|---|---|---|
| Smoothing Capacitor | 7 to 8 years | Replace with new part. |
| Relays | --- | Replace with new parts. |
| Fuse | 10 years | Replace with new part. |
| Aluminum Electrolytic Capacitor on Circuit Board | 5 years | Replace with new circuit board. |

**Note** Operating Conditions:

- Ambient Temperature: annual average 30°C
- Load Factor: 80% max.
- Operation Rate: 20 hours/day max.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

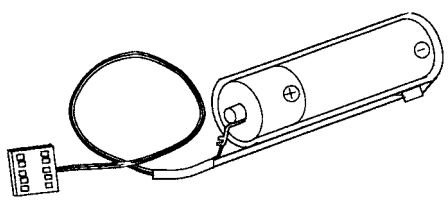
## 6.1.3 Replacing Battery for Absolute Encoder

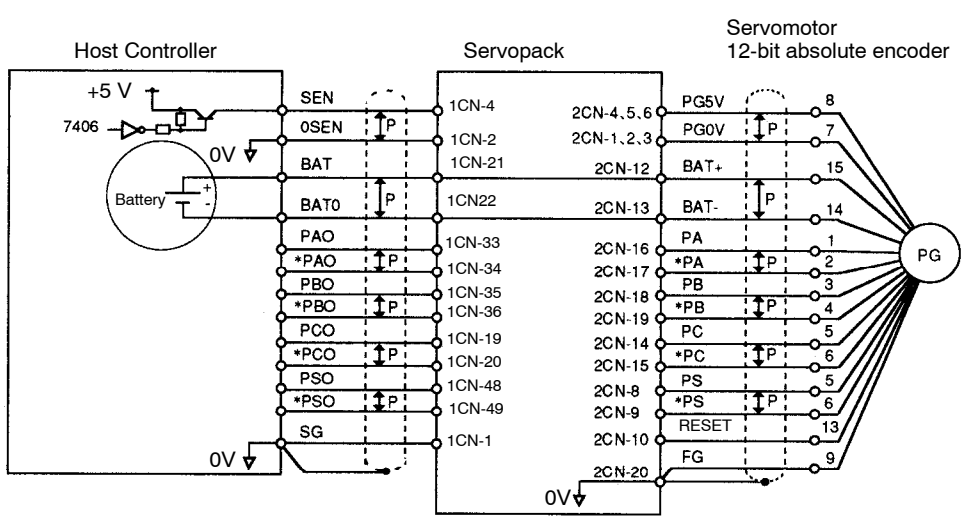
Battery replacement is only required for servo systems using an absolute encoder.

The battery type recommended below (purchased by the customer) is installed in the host controller to allow the absolute encoder to store position data when the power is turned OFF.

Recommended Battery:

- Lithium Battery
  ER 6 V C3, manufactured by Toshiba Battery Co., Ltd. 3.6 V, 2000 mAh
  Estimated Life: Approximately 10 years






The battery voltage is not internally monitored in the Servopack. Therefore, detect low battery voltage at the host controller.

**Minimum required battery voltage is 2.8 V.**

Replace the battery according to the following procedure if the battery voltage drops to the minimum required battery voltage. The battery maintains absolute position data stored in the encoder.

**Battery Replacement Procedure:**

1) Turn ON the Servopack and wait at least 3 minutes. The absolute encoder capacitors are charged.

2) Replace the battery in the host controller. The Servopack power supply can be ON or OFF during battery replacement.

**Note** After completing step 1 above, the absolute encoder will function normally for up to 2 days with no battery.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 6.2 Troubleshooting

This section describes causes and remedies for problems which cause an alarm display and for problems which result in no alarm display.

6.2.1 Troubleshooting Problems with Alarm Display . . . . . 391
6.2.2 Troubleshooting Problems with No Alarm Display . . . . . 409
6.2.3 Internal Connection Diagram and Instrument Connection Examples . . . . . 411

## 6.2.1 Troubleshooting Problems with Alarm Display

Refer to the tables below to identify the cause of a problem which causes an alarm display and take the remedy described.
Note that A.99 does not indicate an alarm.

Contact your Yaskawa representative if the problem cannot be solved by the described procedures.

### 1. Alarm Display and Troubleshooting Table

- **Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.00** Absolute data error | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

**Status When Alarm Occurred**



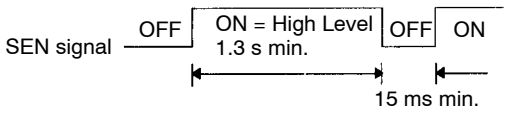



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Absolute encoder power not supplied from Servopack. | Use the Servopack power supply for the absolute encoder. |
| B | Incorrect absolute encoder wiring (PA, PB, RESET, SEN signal (for speed control), etc.) | Check and correct the absolute encoder wiring. |
| C | Absolute encoder malfunctioned | • When Cn-01 Bit 1 = 0, turn SEN signal OFF and back ON. (See note)<br>• When Cn-01 Bit 1 = 1, turn Servopack control power OFF and back ON. |
| D | Incorrect user constant setting.<br>Incremental encoder used with Cn-01 Bit E set to 1. | Set Cn-01 Bit E to 0. |
| E | Absolute encoder defective | Replace servomotor. |
| F | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |

**NOTE** **Resetting SEN Signal**

When resetting the SEN signal (i.e., turning it OFF and then back ON) for any reason, keep the SEN signal at the high level for more than 1.3 s before turning it OFF.




- **Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.02** User constants breakdown | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

**Status When Alarm Occurred**

At control power ON — **A**, **B**

| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Power turned OFF during parameter write. Alarm occurred next power ON. | Replace Servopack. |
| B | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |



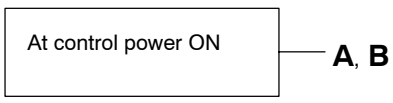
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

● **Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.04** User constant setting error | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

**Status When Alarm Occurred**




| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | An out-of-range user constant was previously set or loaded. | Reset all user constants in range. Otherwise, re-load correct user constants. |
| B | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |

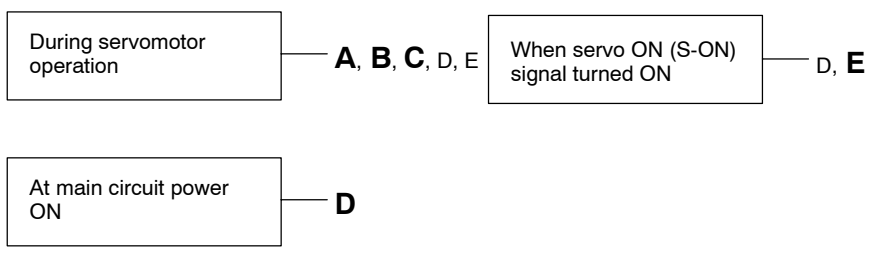
● **Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.10** Overcurrent | ON | OFF | OFF | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

**Note** Alarm A10 is reset when the power is turned OFF and back ON. It is not reset by the normal alarm reset.

**Status When Alarm Occurred**






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Wiring grounded between Servopack and servomotor. | Check and correct wiring. |
| B | Servopack ambient temperature exceeds 55°C | Bring Servopack ambient temperature to 55°C<br>**Note** Alarm cannot be reset while power transistor module temperature exceeds 90°C. |
| C | Servomotor U, V, or W phase grounded. | Replace servomotor. |
| D | • Circuit board (1PWB) defective<br>• Power transistor defective | Replace Servopack. |
| E | Current feedback circuit, power transistor, DB relay, or circuit board defective. | Replace Servopack. |

**● Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.20** Fuse blown | OFF | ON | OFF | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

**Status When Alarm Occurred**




| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |
| B | Fuse is blown. | Replace Servopack. |
| C | Main circuit diode module defective | Replace Servopack. |

**● Display and Outputs**

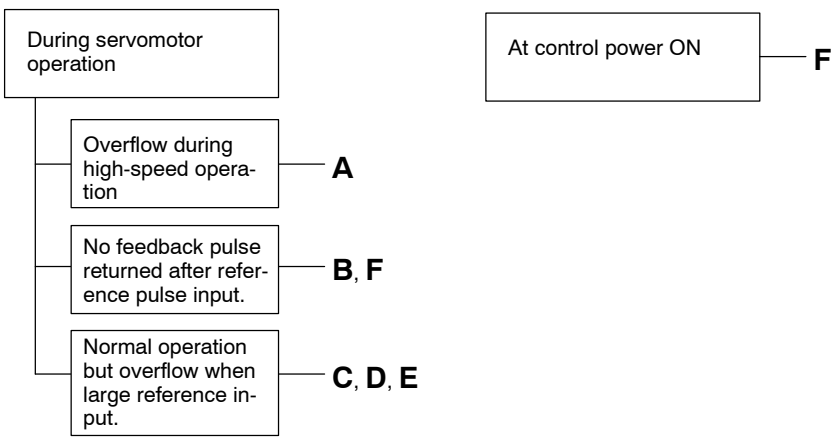
| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.31** Position error pulse overflow (position control only) | ON | ON | OFF | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Status When Alarm Occurred**



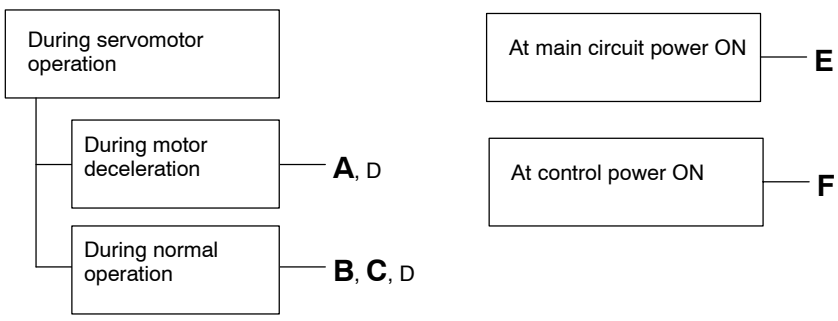

| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Servomotor wiring incorrect. | Check and correct wiring. (Check A-, B-, C-phase pulses correct at 2CN.) |
| B | Encoder wiring incorrect (disconnection, short, power supply, etc.) | |
| C | Servopack adjustment incorrect | Increase speed loop gain (Cn-04) and/or position loop gain (Cn-1A). |
| D | Servomotor overloaded | Reduce load torque and inertia. Otherwise, replace with larger capacity servomotor. |
| E | Position reference pulse frequency too high | • Decrease reference pulse frequency.<br>• Use smoothing function.<br>• Change electronic gear ratio. |
| F | Circuit board (1PWB) defective. | Replace Servopack. |

- **Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.40** Overvoltage | OFF | OFF | ON | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

**Status When Alarm Occurred**






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

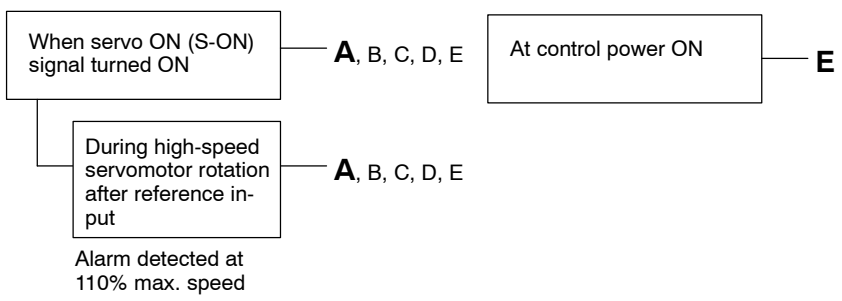
| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Load inertia high and motor speed too high | • Change operating conditions.<br>• Use external regenerative resistor or regenerative unit. (Refer to 3.8.4.) |
| B | Load exceeds capacity of regenerative unit | Change operating conditions. |
| C | Servomotor speed too high | Reduce motor speed. |
| D | Servopack defective | Replace Servopack. |
| E | Input voltage too high | Change input voltage to normal value. |
| F | Circuit board (1PWB) defective. | Replace Servopack. |

**• Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.51** Overspeed | ON | OFF | ON | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

**Status When Alarm Occurred**




| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | • Servomotor wiring incorrect.<br>• Encoder wiring incorrect (disconnection, short, power supply, etc.) | Check and correct wiring. (Check A-, B-, C-phase pulses correct at 2CN.) |
| B | Incremental encoder power not supplied from Servopack. | Use the Servopack power supply for the encoder. |
| C | Noise in encoder wiring. | Separate encoder wiring from main wiring circuits. |
| D | Incorrect user constant (number of encoder pulses) setting. | Set user constant Cn-11 to the correct number of pulses. |
| E | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |



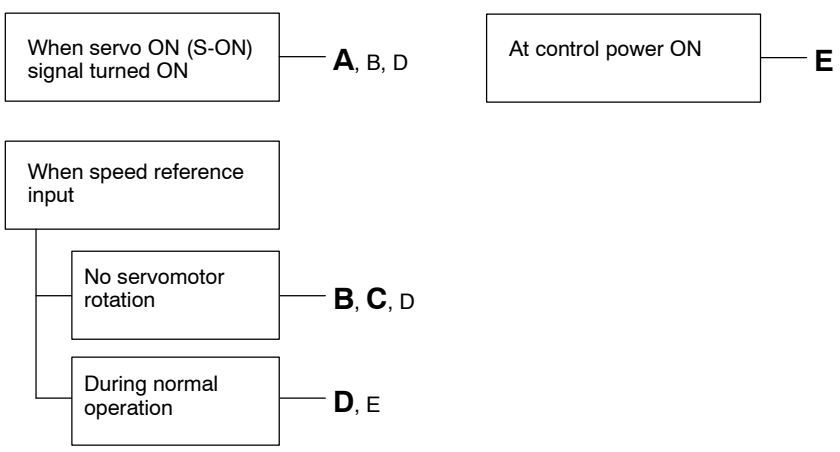
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

● **Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.70** Overload | ON | ON | ON | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

**Status When Alarm Occurred**




| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Servomotor wiring incorrect or disconnected | Check wiring and connectors at servomotor. |
| B | Encoder wiring incorrect or disconnected | Check wiring and connectors at encoder. |
| C | Load greatly exceeds rated torque | Reduce load torque and inertia. Otherwise, replace with larger capacity servomotor. |
| D | Incremental encoder power not supplied from Servopack. | Use the Servopack power supply for the encoder. |
| E | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |



● **Display and Outputs**

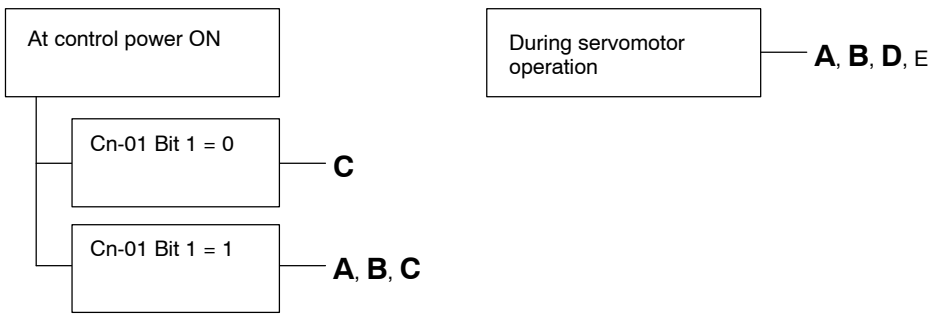
| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.80** Absolute encoder error (only if absolute encoder is used) | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

### Status When Alarm Occurred




| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Incorrect absolute encoder wiring (PA, PB, RESET, SEN signal (for speed control), etc.) | Check and correct the absolute encoder wiring. |
| B | Absolute encoder malfunctioned | • When Cn-01 Bit 1 = 0, turn SEN signal OFF and back ON.<br>• When Cn-01 Bit 1 = 1, turn Servopack control power OFF and back ON. |
| C | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |
| D | Error occurred in absolute encoder.<br><br>Another encoder alarm displayed when SEN signal or power supply turned back ON. | ● When Cn-01 Bit 1 = 0, turn SEN signal OFF and back ON (if servomotor is rotating, first turn servo OFF).<br>● When Cn-01 Bit 1 = 1, turn Servopack control power OFF and back ON. |
| E | Servopack miscounted pulses (positional displacement) or malfunctioned due to noise. | • Separate encoder wiring from main wiring circuits.<br>• When Cn-01 Bit 1 = 0, turn SEN signal OFF and back ON (if servomotor is rotating, first turn servo OFF).<br>• When Cn-01 Bit 1 = 1, turn Servopack control power OFF and back ON. |

6

● **Display and Outputs**

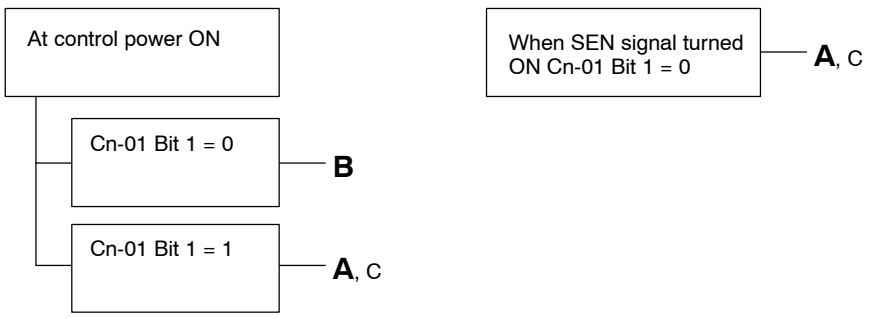
| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.81** Absolute encoder back-up error (only if absolute encoder is used) | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Status When Alarm Occurred**




| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | The following power supplied to the absolute encoder all failed:<br>• +5 V supply<br>• Battery (ER6V C3)<br>• Internal capacitor | Follow absolute encoder set-up procedures. |
| B | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |
| C | Absolute encoder malfunctioned | Replace servomotor. |

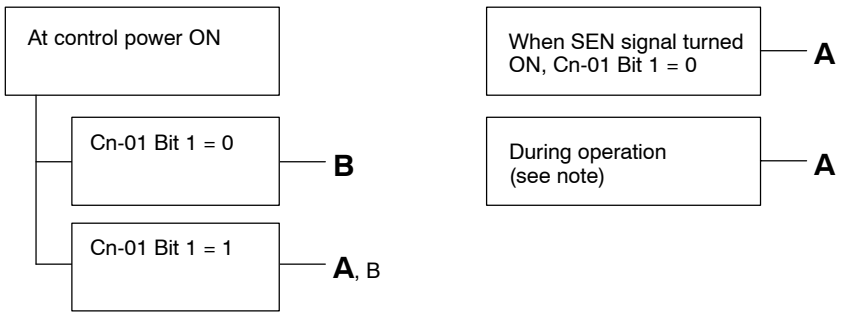
**• Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.82**<br>Absolute encoder sum-check error (only if absolute encoder is used) | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

6

**Status When Alarm Occurred**




| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Abnormality during absolute encoder memory check | • Follow absolute encoder set-up procedures.<br>• Replace servomotor if error occurs frequently. |
| B | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

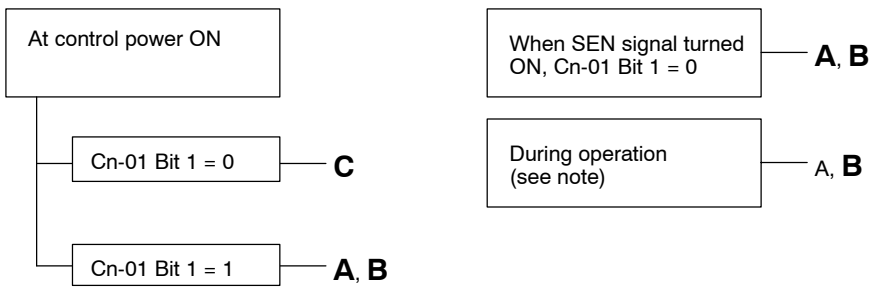
**Note** An absolute encoder error (**A.80**) is given initially if a sum-check error (**A.82**) is generated during operation.
The sum-check error (**A.82**) occurs after turning the SEN signal (or Servopack power supply) OFF and back ON.
However, the sum-check error (**A.82**) does occur during operation if the host controller is receiving the S-phase signal (serial data).

### • Display and Outputs

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.83** Absolute encoder sum-check error (only if absolute encoder is used) | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

### Status When Alarm Occurred




| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | • Battery not connected<br>• Battery connection defective | Check and correct battery connection. |
| B | Battery voltage below specified value.<br>Specified value: 2.8 V. | Install new battery and turn SEN signal (or Servopack control power) ON. |
| C | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |

**Note** No alarm occurs at the Servopack when a battery error (**A.83**) is generated. The battery error (**A.83**) occurs the next time the SEN signal (or Servopack) turns ON.
However, the battery error (**A.83**) can be read during operation if the host controller is receiving the S-phase signal (serial data).



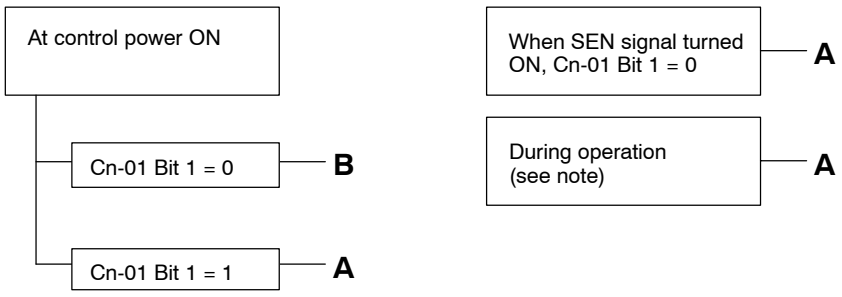
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

● **Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.84** Absolute encoder data error (only if absolute encoder is used) | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

**Status When Alarm Occurred**




| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Absolute encoder malfunctioned | • When Cn-01 Bit 1 = 0, turn SEN signal OFF and back ON.<br>• When Cn-01 Bit 1 = 1, turn Servopack control power OFF and back ON.<br>• Replace servomotor if error occurs frequently. |
| B | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |

**Note** No alarm occurs at the Servopack when a data error (**A.84**) is generated. The data error (**A.84**) occurs the next time the SEN signal (or Servopack) turns ON.
However, the data error (**A.84**) can be read during operation if the host controller is receiving the S-phase signal (serial data).



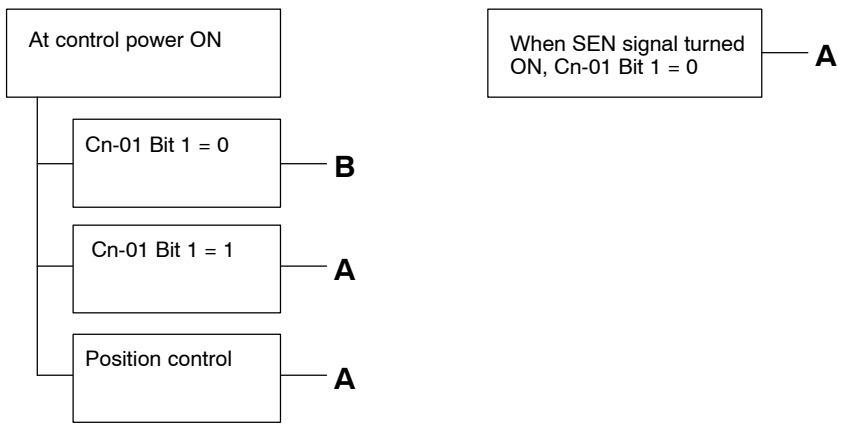
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

● **Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.85** Absolute encoder overspeed (only if absolute encoder is used) | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

**Status When Alarm Occurred**




| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Absolute encoder turned ON at a speed exceeding 400 r/min. | Turn ON encoder power supply (or SEN signal or Servopack control power supply) at a speed not exceeding 400 r/min. |
| B | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |

● **Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.b1** Reference input read error (for speed/torque control only) | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

### Status When Alarm Occurred

During servomotor operation — **A**, **B**

At control power ON — **C**

| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Part malfunctioned in reference read-in unit (A/D converter, etc.). | Reset alarm and restart operation. |
| B | Part defective in reference read-in unit (A/D converter, etc.). | Replace Servopack. |
| C | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |

### ● Display and Outputs

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.C1** Servo overrun | ON | OFF | ON | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

### Status When Alarm Occurred

At control power ON
- User constant Cn-01 Bit 0 = 0 — **E**

When servo ON (S-ON) signal turned ON — **A**, **B**, C, D, E

On speed reference input — **A**, **B**, C, D, E

Occurred 1 to 3 seconds after power ON
- User constant Cn-01 Bit 0 = 1 — **A**, **B**, C, D, E

| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Servomotor wiring incorrect or disconnected | Check wiring and connectors at servomotor. |
| B | Encoder wiring incorrect or disconnected | Check wiring and connectors at encoder. |
| C | Incremental encoder power not supplied from Servopack. | Use the Servopack power supply for the encoder. |
| D | Encoder defective | Replace servomotor. |
| E | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

● **Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.C2**<br>Encoder phase detection error<br><br>Incremental encoder initial pulse error | ON | OFF | ON | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

**Status When Alarm Occurred**

During servomotor operation — **A**, **B**, **C**

At control power ON — **D, E, F, G,** H

Occurred 1 to 3 seconds after control power ON — **E, F, G,**

During servomotor operation — **H**

| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Noise in encoder wiring. | Separate encoder wiring from main wiring circuits. |
| B | Encoder wiring incorrect or poor connection | Check wiring and connectors at encoder. |
| C | Encoder defective | Replace servomotor. |
| D | Noise in encoder wiring. | Separate encoder wiring from main wiring circuits. |
| E | Encoder wiring incorrect or poor connection | Check wiring and connectors at encoder. |
| F | Encoder defective | Replace servomotor. |
| G | Absolute encoder is used. | Set the following user constants as follows:<br>•Cn-02 bit 9 = 1<br>•Cn-11 (number of encoder pulses) |



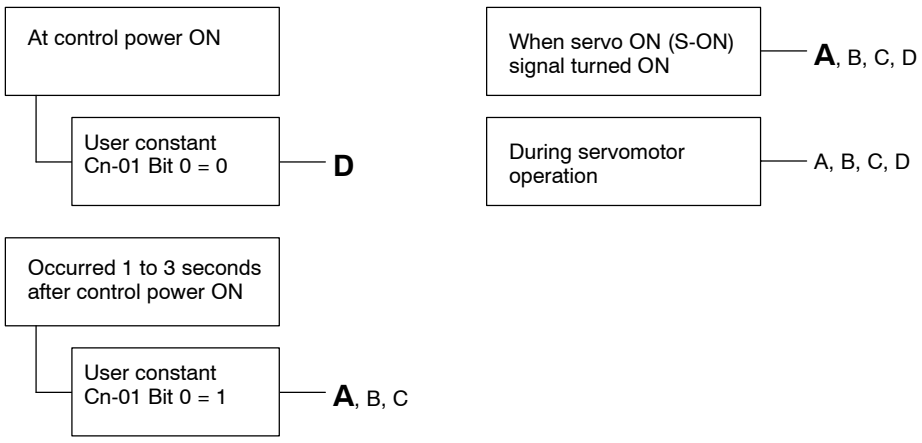
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

● **Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.C3**<br>Encoder A-, B-phase disconnection<br><br>**A.C6**<br>External PG A-, B-phase disconnection (only for full-closed loop specification) | ON | OFF | ON | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

**Status When Alarm Occurred**




| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Encoder wiring incorrect or poor connection | Check wiring and connectors at encoder. |
| B | Noise in encoder wiring. | Separate encoder wiring from main wiring circuits. |
| C | Encoder defective | Replace servomotor. |
| D | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |





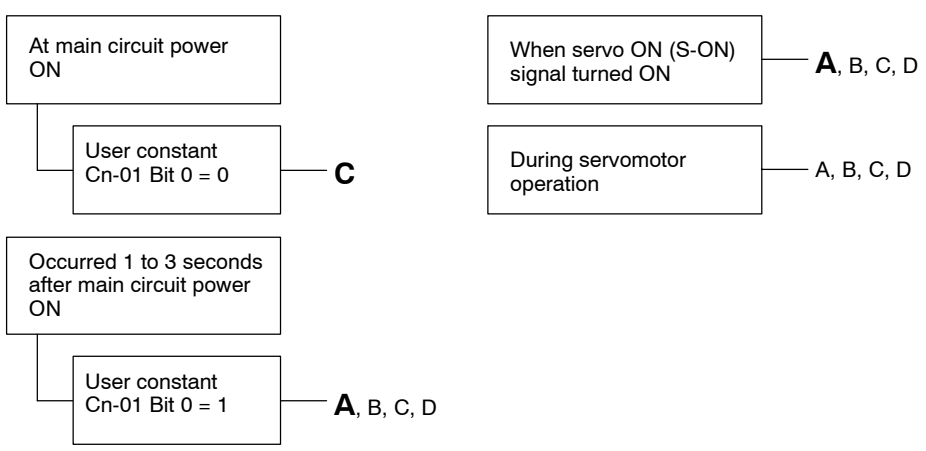
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

● **Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.C4** Encoder C-phase disconnection<br>**A.C7** External PG C-phase disconnection (only for full-closed loop specification) | ON | OFF | ON | OFF |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

**Status When Alarm Occurred**




| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Encoder wiring incorrect or poor connection | Check wiring and connectors at encoder. |
| B | Noise in encoder wiring. | Separate encoder wiring from main wiring circuits. |
| C | Encoder defective | Replace servomotor. |
| D | Circuit board (1PWB) defective | Replace Servopack. |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

● **Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **CPF00** Digital operator transmission error 1 | Not specified | | | |

**Note** This alarm is not stored in alarm trace-back function memory.

**Status When Alarm Occurred**

At control power ON. Digital operator connected before Servopack power turned ON. — **A**, **B**, **C**, **D**

Digital operator conected to Servopack while control power turned ON. — **A**, **B**, **C**, **D**

| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Cable defective or poor contact between digital operator and Servopack. | • Check connector connections.<br>• Replace cable. |
| B | Malfunction due to external noise | Separate digital operator and cable from noise source. |
| C | Digital operator defective | Replace digital operator. |
| D | Servopack defective | Replace Servopack. |

● **Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **CPF01** Digital operator transmission error 2 | Not specified | | | |

**Note** This alarm is not stored in alarm trace-back function memory.

**Status When Alarm Occurred**

During operation — **A**, **B**, **C**, **D**

| | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| A | Cable defective or poor contact between digital operator and Servopack. | • Check connector connections.<br>• Replace cable. |
| B | Malfunction due to external noise | Separate digital operator and cable from noise source. |
| C | Digital operator defective | Replace digital operator. |
| D | Servopack defective | Replace Servopack. |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

● **Display and Outputs**

| Digital Operator Display and Alarm Name | Alarm Output | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alarm Code Output | | | Alarm Output |
| | ALO1 | ALO2 | ALO3 | |
| **A.99** | OFF | OFF | OFF | ON |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
ON: Output transistor is ON

**Status When Alarm Occurred**

Indicates normal operation. Not an alarm.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 6.2.2 Troubleshooting Problems with No Alarm Display

Refer to the tables below to identify the cause of a problem which causes no alarm display and take the remedy described.

**Turn OFF the servo system power supply before commencing the shaded procedures.**

Contact your Yaskawa representative if the problem cannot be solved by the described procedures.

**Troubleshooting Table No Alarm Display**

| Symptom | Cause | Inspection | Remedy |
|---|---|---|---|
| Servomotor does not start | Power not connected | Check voltage across L1 and L2, L and N. | Correct the power circuit. |
| | Loose connection | Check terminals of connectors (1CN, 2CN). | Tighten any loose parts. |
| | Connector (1CN) external wiring incorrect | Check connector (1CN) external wiring | Refer to connection diagram and correct wiring. |
| | Servomotor or encoder wiring disconnected. | | Reconnect wiring |
| | Overloaded | Run under no load. | Reduce load or replace with larger capacity servomotor. |
| | Speed/position references not input | Check input pins of connector 1CN. | Correctly input speed/position references. |
| | $\overline{\text{S-ON}}$ is turned OFF | Cn-01 Bit 0 is 0. | Turn $\overline{\text{S-ON}}$ input ON. |
| | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ input function setting incorrect | Refer to Subsection 3.2.1. | Refer to Subsection 3.2.1 and set user constants to match application. |
| | Reference pulse mode selection incorrect. | Refer to Subsection 3.2.2. | Select correct user constants Cn-02 Bits 3, 4, 5. |
| | Encoder type differs from user constant setting. | Incremental or absolute encoder? | Set user constants Cn-01 Bit E to the encoder type used. |
| | P-OT and N-OT inputs are turned OFF. | (If Cn-01 Bits 2, 3 are 0) | Turn P-OT and N-OT input signals ON. |
| | CLR input is turned ON | Check status of error counter clear input. | Turn CLR input OFF. |
| | SEN input is turned OFF. | Absolute encoder used with Cn-01 Bit 1 set to 0. | Turn SEN input ON. |
| Servomotor moves instantaneously, then stops | Number of encoder pulses differs from user constant setting. | 2048 pulses/revolution or 1024 pulses/revolution | Set the user constant (Cn-11) to match the number of encoder pulses. |
| | Servomotor or encoder wiring incorrect. | | Refer to Subsection 3.8.8 and correct wiring. |
| Suddenly stops during operation and will not restart | Alarm reset signal ($\overline{\text{ALM-RST}}$) is turned ON because an alarm occurred. | | Remove cause of alarm. Turn alarm reset signal (ALM-RST) from ON to OFF. |
| Servomotor speed unstable | Wiring connection to motor defective | Check connection of power lead (U, V, and W phase) and encoder connectors. | Tighten any loose terminals or connectors. |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*6.2.2 Troubleshooting Problems with No Alarm Display cont.*

| Symptom | Cause | Inspection | Remedy |
|---|---|---|---|
| Servomotor vibrates at approximately 200 to 400 Hz. | Speed loop gain value too high. | | Reduce speed loop gain (Cn-04) preset value. |
| | Speed/position reference input lead too long. | | Minimize length of speed/position reference input lead, with impedance not exceeding several hundred ohms |
| | Speed/position reference input lead is bundled with power cables. | | Separate reference input lead at least 30 cm from power cables. |
| High rotation speed overshoot on starting and stopping. | Speed loop gain value too high. | | Reduce speed loop gain (Cn-04) preset value. |
| Servomotor overheated | Ambient temperature too high | Measure servomotor ambient temperature. | Reduce ambient temperature to 40°C max. |
| | Servomotor surface dirty | Visual check | Clean dust and oil from motor surface. |
| | Overloaded | Run under no load. | Reduce load or replace with larger capacity servomotor. |
| Abnormal noise | Mechanical mounting incorrect | Servomotor mounting screws loose? | Tighten mounting screws. |
| | | Coupling not centered? | Center coupling. |
| | | Coupling unbalanced? | Balance coupling. |
| | Bearing defective | Check noise and vibration near bearing. | Consult your Yaskawa representative if defective. |
| | Machine causing vibrations | Foreign object intrusion, damage or deformation of sliding parts of machine. | Consult with machine manufacturer. |
| Speed reference 0 V but servomotor rotates. | Speed reference voltage offset applied | --- | Refer to Subsections 4.2.4 and 4.2.5 and adjust reference offset. |





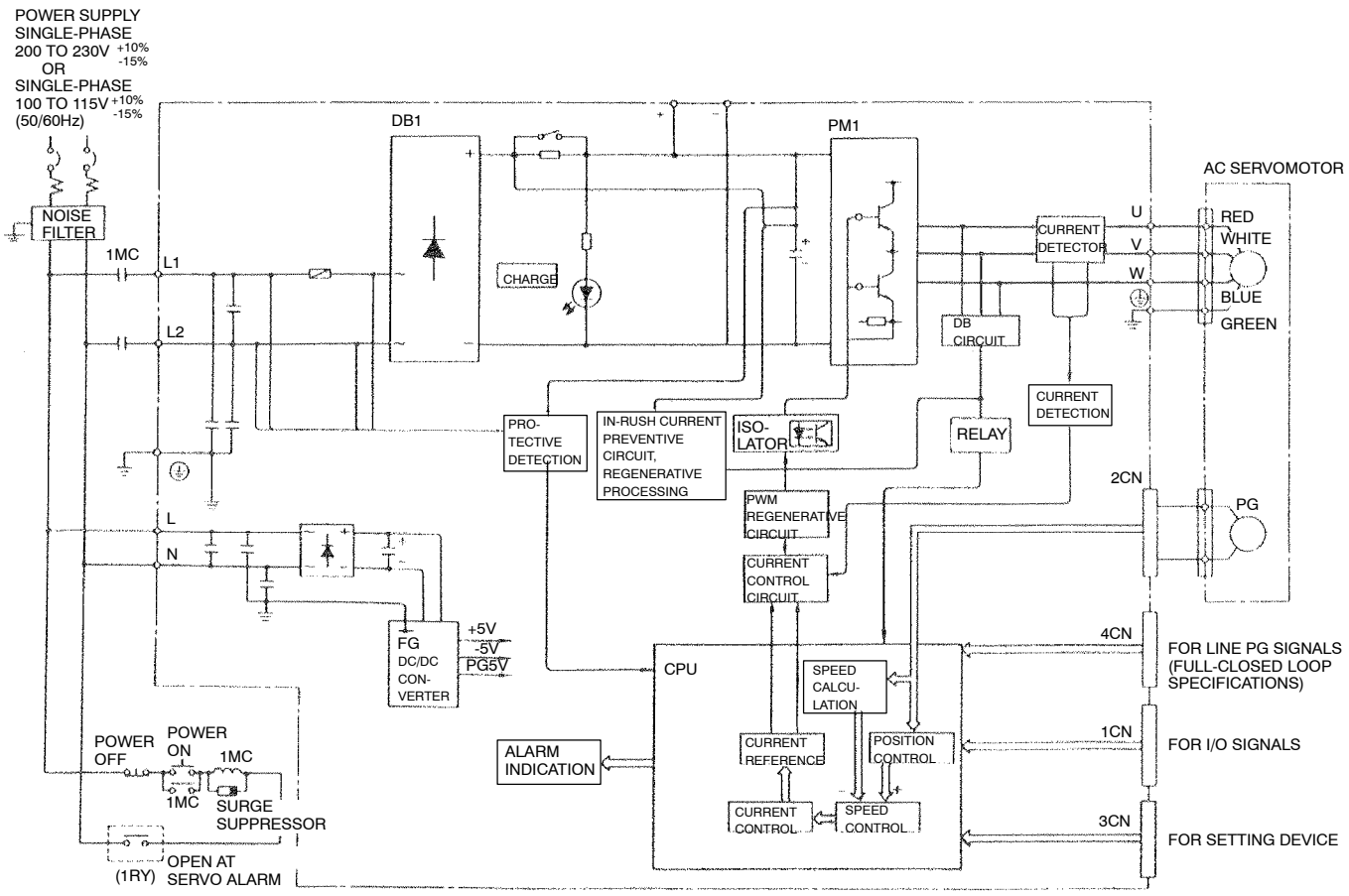
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 6.2.3 Internal Connection Diagram and Instrument Connection Examples

The DR2 Servopack internal connection diagram and instrument connection examples are given below.
Refer to these diagrams during inspection and maintenance.

1) Internal Connection Diagram

• 200VAC: 30W to 200W (0.04 HP to 0.53 HP)
100VAV: 30W to 100W (0.04 HP to 0.13HP)

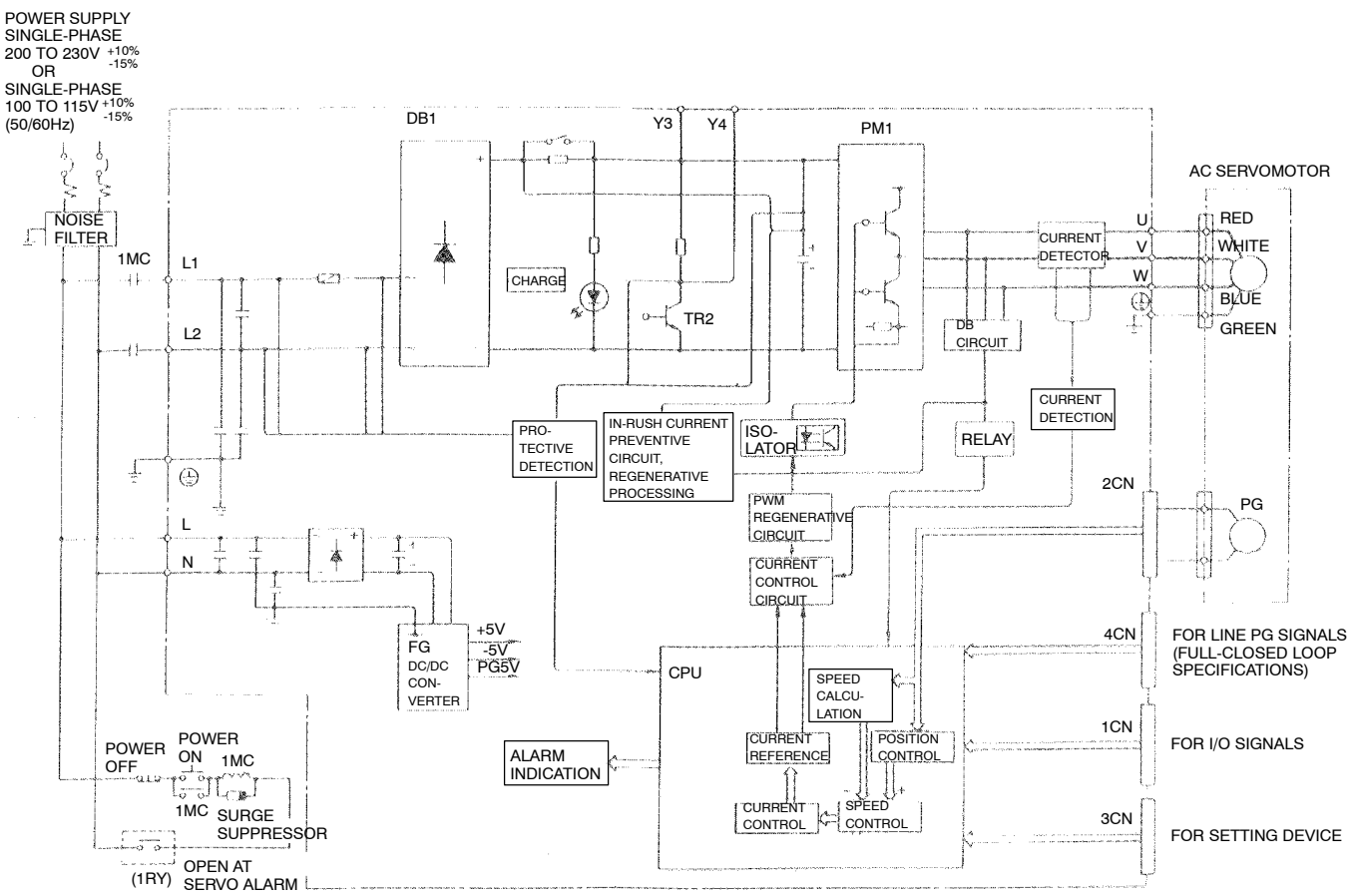





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*6.2.3 Internal Connection Diagram and Instrument Connection Examples cont.*

• 200VAC: 400W, 750W (0.27 HP, 1.01 HP)
100VAV: 200W, 300W (0.53 HP, 0.40HP)

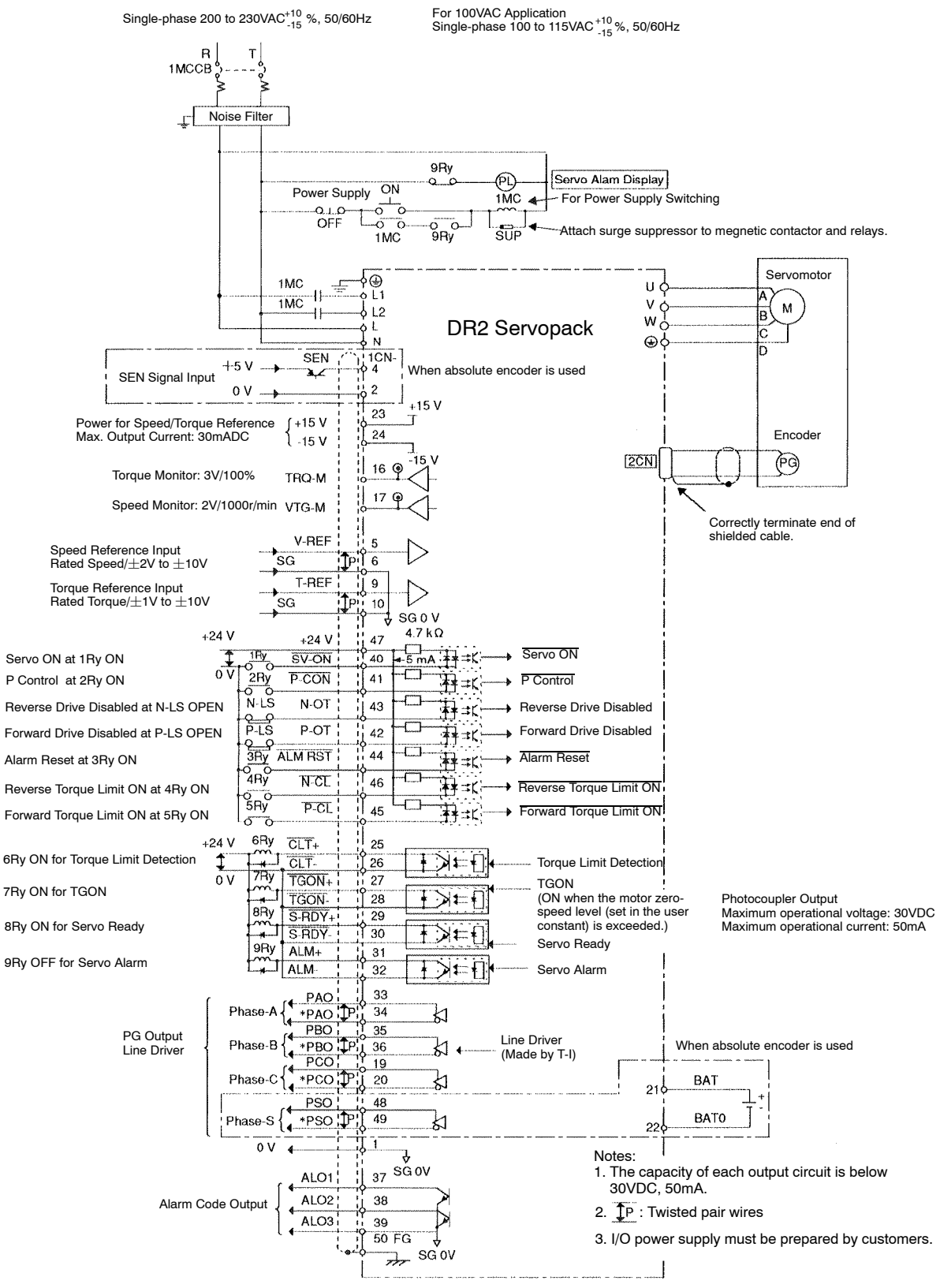







Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## 2) Instrument Connection Examples – Speed/Torque Control

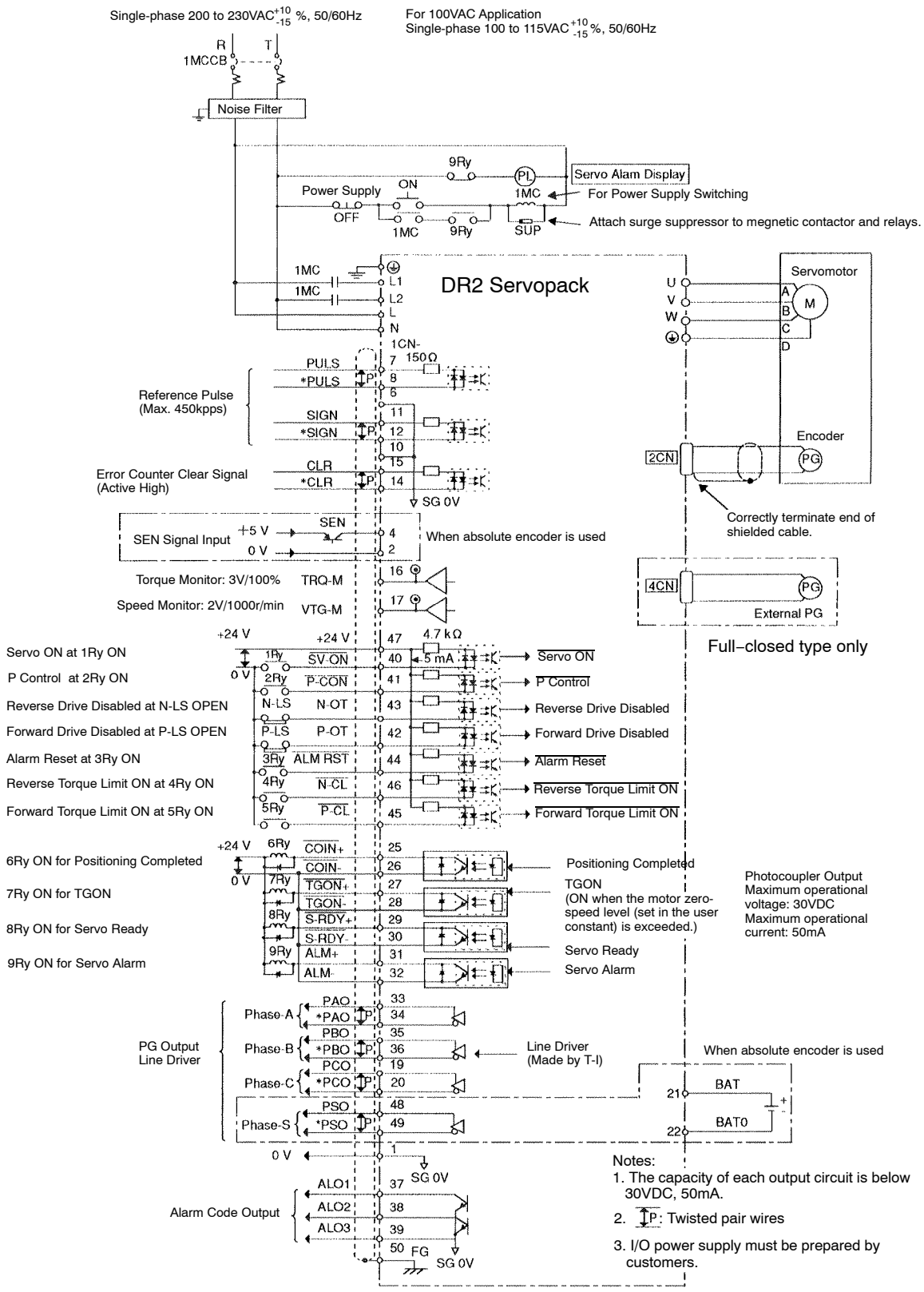





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*6.2.3 Internal Connection Diagram and Instrument Connection Examples cont.*

### 3) Instrument Connection Examples – Position Control






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# MEASURES TO SATISFY THE REQUIREMENTS OF EMC DIRECTIVE

# 7

This chapter outlines EMC directive of European Safe Standard especially to DR2 Servopack.
In addition, section 2 describes concrete measures for DR2 Servopack to conform to EN standard.


**7.1 What is European Safe Standard? ..... 416**
7.1.1 What is EN Standard? ..... 416
7.1.2 What is CE Marking? ..... 416
7.1.3 EMC Directive ..... 417
7.1.4 Certification Body TÜV Authorized by EU ..... 417

**7.2 Measures to Satisfy the Requirements of EMC Directive ..... 418**
7.2.1 Applicable Servomotor ..... 418
7.2.2 Applicable Noise Filter ..... 418
7.2.3 Motor Cables ..... 419
7.2.4 Encoder Cables ..... 419
7.2.5 Control I/O ..... 420
7.2.6 Digital Operator and Monitoring by Personal Computer ..... 420
7.2.7 The Core on the Cable ..... 421
7.2.8 Wiring ..... 421






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 7.1 What is European Safe Standard?

This section outlines the contents of EN standard, CE marking and EMC directive.

7.1.1 What is EN Standard? . . . . . 416
7.1.2 What is CE Marking? . . . . . 416
7.1.3 EMC Directive . . . . . 417
7.1.4 Certification Body TÜV Authorized by EU . . . . . 417

## 7.1.1 What is EN Standard?

1) Board of directors, which consisted of EC cabinet members, provided “EC directive” in 1985 when the European Union was still called EC, with the purpose of management of products from each area of Europe under one standard over applicable standards of member countries.

2) Concrete standard to satisfy “EC directive” is “EN standard (European standard)”.
At the present time, they have instructions for 12 items such as machine directive, low–voltage directive, etc. in addition to EMC directive specified for each of dozens of standards.

## 7.1.2 What is CE Marking?

1) “CE marking” is a mark to indicate that a product is a safe product conforming to the protection level specified by EC directive.
Attaching this mark to a machine indicates that the machine is a product conforming to EN standards based on EC directive.
In Europe, every industrial machine has been obliged to have CE marking by machine directive since the 1st of January, 1995.

2) “CE” is an abbreviation of Communauté Européenne in French, which means European Communities (EC).
After an increase of members, the name has been changed to EU (European Union), but EC is still used for the name of the directive.

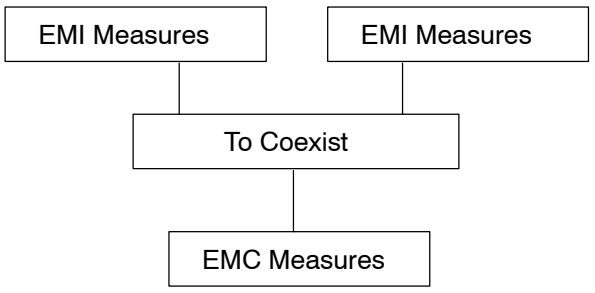


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

### 7.1.3 EMC Directive

1) This is one of EC directives related to safe requirements for industrial products. EMC directive is concerned with electro−magnetic interference (magnetic noise) mainly from electronic devices, and specify two measures; whether a product controls generating electro−magnetic interference down to a level where it does not affect other devices (generating side) and whether any measures are provided to prevent an electronic device receiving electro−magnetic interference from malfunctioning (receiving side).
   If a product is considered in the above two aspects of the generating side and the receiving side of electro−magnetic interference and provided with proper measures, the product can be said to “coexist with electro−magnetic environment”, which means that the product satisfies EMC requirements.

2) EMC is an abbreviation of Electro−Magnetic Compatibility, indicating electro−magnetic compatibility of a product.
   The following diagram outlines the contents explained in 1).




In the above diagram:
EMI: Electro−Magnetic Interference (generating side)
EMS: Electro−Magnetic Susceptibility (receiving side)

Machines are to be tested according to their operating status.

### 7.1.4 Certification Body TÜV Authorized by EU



1) TÜV is one of the certification bodies authorized by European Union (EU) specified organization, which is a German “technical inspection association”.
   TÜV has an office (TÜV Product Service, etc.) in Japan, through which Yaskawa obtains approvals.
   DR2 Servopack has been approved by this TÜV.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 7.2 Measures to Satisfy the Requirements of EMC Directive

This section describes the required measures to adapt DR2 Servopack to EMC directive (EN50081−2, EN50082−2).

7.2.1 Applicable Servomotor . . . . . 418
7.2.2 Applicable Noise Filter . . . . . 418
7.2.3 Motor Cables . . . . . 419
7.2.4 Encoder Cables . . . . . 419
7.2.5 Control I/O . . . . . 420
7.2.6 Digital Operator and Monitoring by Personal Computer . . . . . 420
7.2.7 The Core on the Cable . . . . . 421
7.2.8 Wiring . . . . . 421

## 7.2.1 Applicable Servomotor

1) Use Yaskawa Servomotor conforming to EN standard.
For details, refer to *5.4.2 Servomotor Dimensional Drawings (TÜV approved).*

Servomotor Type Example: SGM−01V312 (200VAC, 100W)
SGM−01W312 (100VAC, 100W)

## 7.2.2 Applicable Noise Filter

1) Use the following noise filter.
Make sure to ground the noise filter securely.

| Applied Voltage | Servopack Type DR2− | Servopack Rated Input Current A (rms) | Noise Filter Type and Specifications (Input Line) | Noise Filter Type and Specifications (Power Supply for Brake) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 200VAC Class | A3A□ | 1.3 | SUP−P5H−EPR 250V, 5A | SUP−P5H−EPR 250V, 5A |
| | A5A□ | 1.5 | | |
| | 01A□ | 2.5 | | |
| | 02A□ | 4.0 | | |
| | 04A□ | 6.0 | SUP−P8H−EPR 250V, 8A | |
| | 08A□ | 11.0 | SUP−P10H−EPR 250V, 10A | |
| 100VAC Class | A3B□ | 2.0 | SUP−P5H−EPR 250V, 5A | |
| | A5B□ | 2.6 | | |
| | 01B□ | 4.5 | | |
| | 02B□ | 8.0 | SUP−P8H−EPR 250V, 8A | |
| | 03B□ | 14.0 | SUP−P10H−EPR 250V, 10A | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

### 7.2.3 Motor Cables

1) Max. cable length is 20m.

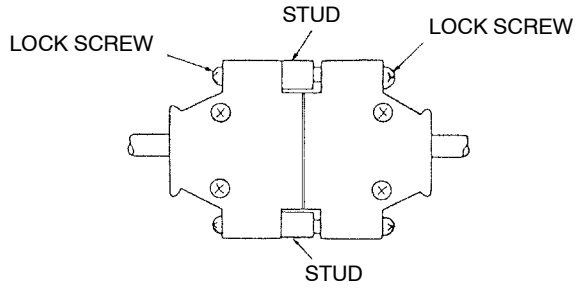
### 7.2.4 Encoder Cables

1) For PG input (2CN), use the following connectors and cables.
   Max. cable length is 20m.
   Connectors on Servopack and Servomotor are plated.
   Make sure to ground between PG cable shield and connector case.

| Encoder Type | | Incremental | Absolute |
|---|---|---|---|
| Cable only | | B9400064*1 | DP8409123*1 |
| Connector on Servopack Side | Case | MR–20L4*2 | |
| | Connector | MR–20F*2 | |
| Connector on Motor Side | | 17JE13090–02D8A*3 | 17JE13150–02D8A*3 |
| Stud for Connector on Motor Side | | 17L–002A*3 | |

*1 Contact your Yaskawa representative for details.
*2 Made by Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.
*3 Made by DDK Ltd.

Connect the motor side connectors as shown below using studs.



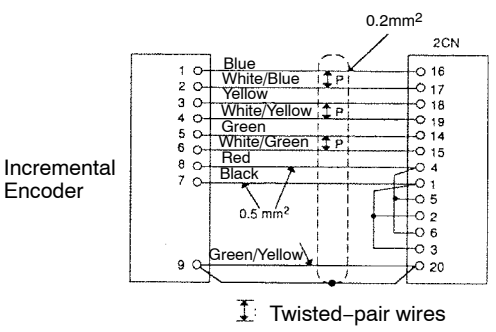




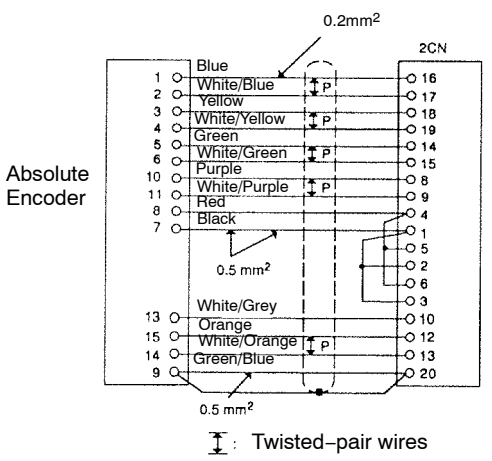

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) Connect the PG cable as follows:

•Incremental Encoder




•Absolute Encoder




## 7.2.5 Control I/O

1) For control I/O (1CN) connector, use the following connector. Connector case shown below is plated.
For 1CN cable, use the shielded cable and make sure to ground between cable shield and connector case.
Also, perform shield processing on host controller side securely.

Connector: MR−50M
Connector Case: MR−50L4

## 7.2.6 Digital Operator and Monitoring by Personal Computer

1) Use digital operator or personal computer (for monitoring) only at test run.
Disconnect them during normal operation.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

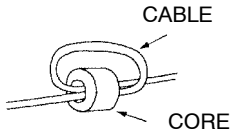
## 7.2.7 The Core on the Cable

1) Attach the core on the cable as shown below:

• Core specifications

| | |
|---|---|
| Core Model | ESD−SR−25 |
| Quantity | 1 |
| Turn | 1.5 |
| Manufacturer | Tokin Corp. |

Note: 1.5 turn is as shown below:

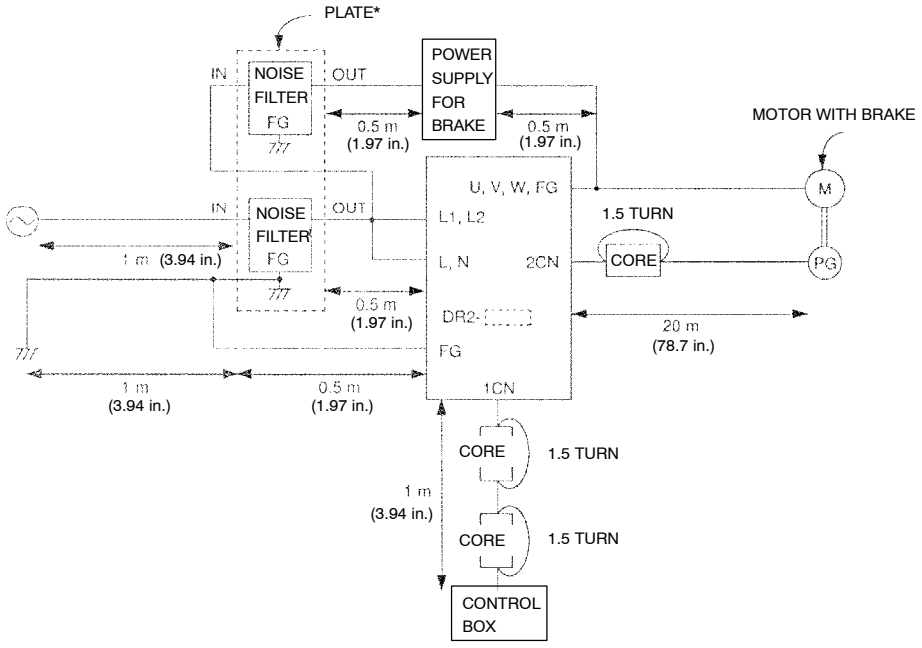



• Cable line and the line position where the core is attached:

| Cable Line | PG Line | I/O Signal Input Line |
|---|---|---|
| Line Position | Near the Servopack side | Near the host controller and Servopack |

## 7.2.8 Wiring

1) The following diagram shows the wiring example for motor with brake.
The noise filter and the core are shown in the same figure.




* When eatrth plate is not used, polish the mounted noise filter part with sand paper to expose the metal. Then, ground the noise filter securely on the panel.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# Appendix A

## Differences Between DR2 and DR1, SGDA and SGD Servopacks



The functions and performance of Servopacks DR2, DR1, SGDA and SGD are listed and compared in the Tables.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## Comparison of the DR2 Servopack with the DR1 Servopack (1)

| Item | DR2 Servopack | | DR1 Servopack |
|---|---|---|---|
| Speed Loop Frequency Characteristics | 250 Hz | | 100 Hz |
| Servo Gain Compensation (See note 1) | Yes | | No |
| Auto Tuning | 7-stage settings | | No |
| Serial Communications Features | User constant setting/editing<br>Reference to all monitored values<br>Auto-tuning<br>Alarm trace-back confirmation | | No |
| Multi-axis Communications | Yes (However, use rotary switch when axis is set.) | | No |
| 100 V, 300 W Version | Yes (External dimensions identical to 200 V, 750 W version) | | No |
| Applicable Servomotors | Both SGM and SGMP servomotors<br>Either servomotor type can be used by changing user constant (memory switch) setting.<br>No Servopack change required. | | SGM servomotors.<br>Not applicable to SGMP Servomotors. |
| Torque Feed Forward (See note 2) | Yes | Torque feed forward and torque restriction with analog references cannot be used simultaneously.<br>Settings identical for forward and reverse. | No |
| Torque Restriction with Analog References (See note 2) | Yes | | No |
| Reference Pulse Input Unit Filter Selection (See note 3) | Yes | Select according to output form of the customer's controller (line driver or open collector). | Yes |
| External Reference Receive During Contact Input Speed Control | Selectable<br>(Software version: 0003 or later. See Par. 4.2.8.) | | Always receivable |
| Reference Pulse Inhibit | Yes | Switch the $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ signal with the user constant settings. | No |
| Reference Pulse Value Display (See note 3) | Possible (Monitor mode Un-09) | | Not possible |
| Analog Speed Monitor | 2V/1000r/min | | 0.5V/1000r/min |
| Analog Torque Monitor | 3V/100% | | 0.5V/100% |
| PG Dividing Open Collector Output | Can be available as an option | | Available only to Phase-C |
| Full-closed Loop | Possible | | Not possible |
| Electronic Gear Function | Yes | | No |
| Soft Stop Function | Yes | | The same as that of soft start |
| Smoothing Function | Yes | | No |
| Regenerative Processing Circuit | None<br>However, only 200V, 30W to 200W can be connectable to regenerative unit.<br>(200V, 30W to 200W<br>100V, 30W to 100W) | | None<br>Regenerative unit cannot be connected.<br>(200V, 30W to 100W<br>100V, 30W and 50W) |
| | Incorporated<br>(200V, 400W and 750W<br>100V, 200W and 300W) | | Incorporated<br>(200V, 200W to 750W<br>100V, 100W and 200W) |
| Power Supply | Main circuit and control circuit are separated. | | |

**Note** 1) Material is being prepared on speed loop servo gain compensation.
2) Speed control type only.
3) Position control type only.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Item | DR2 Servopack | DR1 Servopack |
|---|---|---|
| Digital Operator | Hand-held type: JUSP-OP02A-1 | Hand-held type: JUSP-OP02A |
| Motor Cable | 3, 5, 10, 15, 20m are available.<br>(Not the same types as those of SGD, SGDA) | 3, 5, 10, 15, 20m are available.<br>(The same types as those of SGD, SGDA) |
| Encoder Cable | 3,5,10,15,20m are available (Not the same types as those of SGD, SGDA) | |
| Conformable Overseas Standard | TÜV approved<br>(Conforming to EN61010) | No |
| Control Type | Speed, torque and position are controlled by the same Servopack. | |
| User Constant Cn-05 Setting Unit | 0.01ms | 1ms |

A



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## Comparison of the DR2 Servopack with the DR1 Servopack (2)

| Item | | DR2 Servopack | DR1 Servopack | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Type | | DR2-□□AC (Semi-closed type) DR2-□□AC-F (Full-closed type) | DR1-□□AC (Incremental type) DR1-□□AA (Absolute type) | As for DR2, factory setting of applicable motor is SGM Servomotor. |
| | | DR2-□□ACP (Semi-closed type) DR2-□□ACP-F (Full-closed type) | – | Factory setting of applicable motor is SGMP Servomotor. |
| Outside Dimensions | | 60W ×250H ×204D (200V: 30W to 200W) (100V: 30W to 100W) | 60W ×250H ×250D (200V: 30W to 200W) (100V: 30W to 100W) | Mounting hole position is in common with DR2 and DR1. |
| | | 75W ×250H ×252D (200V: 400W and 750W) (100V: 200W and 300W) | 75W ×250H ×250D (200V: 400W and 750W) (100V: 200W) | |
| Base-mount type | | Option | No | |
| Motor Terminals | | External terminals in conformance with Standard (PHOENIX CONTACT) | External terminal (M4 screw) | |
| Encoder Connector 2CN | | MR-20RMA | MR-20RMA | Common with DR2 and DR1. (Different from SGD type) |
| Connector 4CN for Full-closed Type | | MR-8RMA | – | |
| External I/O Signals (1CN) | Used Connector | MR-50RFA | MR-50RFA | Common with DR2 and DR1. |
| | 3-pin | PL1: PULS pull-up | SG: Signal ground | PL1, 2 and 3 are used for pull-up of open collector input. Signals other than described here are used in common with DR2 and DR1. |
| | 5-pin | V-REF: Exclusive for speed reference input | IN-A: Main input | |
| | 9-pin | T-REF: Exclusive for torque reference input | IN-B: Auxiliary input | |
| | 13-pin | PL2: SIGN pull-up | SG: Signal ground | |
| | 18-pin | PL3: CLR pull-up | SG: Signal ground | |
| | 23-pin | +15V: Reference power supply 30mA | PHC: Phase-C open collector | |
| | 24-pin | -15V: Reference power supply 30mA | SG: Signal ground | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## Comparison of the SGDA Servopack with the SGD Servopack

| Item | SGDA Servopack | | SGD Servopack |
|---|---|---|---|
| Speed Loop Frequency Characteristics | 250 Hz | | 150 Hz |
| Servo Gain Compensation (See note 1) | Yes | | No |
| Auto Tuning | 7-stage settings | | 3-stage settings |
| Serial Communications Features | User constant setting/editing<br>Reference to all monitored values<br>Auto-tuning<br>Alarm trace-back confirmation | | User constant setting/editing |
| Multi-axis Communications | Yes (However, 1:1 communications when axis address is set.) | | No |
| 100 V, 300 W Version | Yes (External dimensions identical to 200 V, 750 W version) | | No |
| Applicable Servomotors | Both SGM and SGMP servomotors<br>Either servomotor type can be used by changing user constant (memory switch) setting.<br>No Servopack change required. | | SGM servomotors.<br>Servopack must be changed to use SGMP servomotor.<br>SGMP-compatible Servopack Types<br>SGD-□□□□-P<br>SGMP-compatible<br>Capacity<br>01 : 100W<br>02 : 200W<br>04 : 400W<br>08 : 750W<br>S: Speed control<br>P: Position control<br>A : 200 V<br>B : 100 V |
| Torque Feed Forward (See note 2) | Yes | Torque feed forward and torque restriction with analog references cannot be used simultaneously.<br>Settings identical for forward and reverse. | No |
| Torque Restriction with Analog References (See note 2) | Yes | | No |
| Reference Pulse Input Unit Filter Selection (See note 3) | Yes | Select according to output form of the customer's controller (line driver or open collector). | None |
| External Reference Receive During Contact Input Speed Control | Possible | | Not possible |
| Reference Pulse Inhibit | Yes | Switch the $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ signal with the user constant settings. | No |
| Reference Pulse Value Display (See note 3) | Possible (Monitor mode Un-09) | | Not possible |
| Analog Speed Monitor | No | | No |
| Analog Torque Monitor | No | | No |
| PG Dividing Open Collector Output | Can be available as an option | | Not possible |
| Full-closed Loop | Not possible | | Not possible |
| Electronic Gear Function | Yes | | Yes |
| Soft Stop Function | Yes | | Yes |
| Smoothing Function | Yes | | Yes |
| Regenerative Processing Circuit | None (Renererative unit can be connectable.) | | |
| Power Supply | Main circuit and control circuit are separated. | | |
| Digital Operator | Hand-held type : JUSP-OP02A-1<br>Mount type : JUSP-OP03 | | |
| Motor Cable | 3,5,10,15,20m are available | | |

A



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Item | SGDA Servopack | SGD Servopack |
|---|---|---|
| Encoder Cable | 3,5,10,15,20m are available | |
| Conformable Overseas Standard | No | |
| Control Type | Speed/torque and position are controlled by the different type Servopack. | |
| User Constant Cn-05 Setting Unit | 1ms | |

A

**Note**
1) Material is being prepared on speed loop servo gain compensation.
2) Speed control type only.
3) Position control type only.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# Appendix B

## Servo Adjustment



This appendix presents the basic rules for Σ-Series AC Servopack gain adjustment, describes various adjustment techniques, and gives some preset values as guidelines.

**B.1 Σ-Series AC Servopack Gain Adjustment . . . . 430**
B.1.1 Σ-Series AC Servopacks and Gain Adjustment Methods . . . . 430
B.1.2 Basic Rules for Gain Adjustment . . . . . 431

**B.2 Adjusting a Servopack for Speed Control . . . . 432**
B.2.1 Adjusting Using Auto-tuning . . . . . 432
B.2.2 Manual Adjustment . . . . . 433

**B.3 Adjusting a Servopack for Position Control . . 436**
B.3.1 Adjusting Using Auto-tuning . . . . . 436
B.3.2 Manual Adjustment . . . . . 437

**B.4 Gain Setting References . . . . . 441**
B.4.1 Guidelines for Gain Settings According to Load Inertia Ratio . . . . . 441



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# B.1 Σ-Series AC Servopack Gain Adjustment

This section gives some basic information required to adjust the servo system.

B.1.1 Σ-Series AC Servopacks and Gain Adjustment Methods ..... 430
B.1.2 Basic Rules for Gain Adjustment ..... 431

## B.1.1 Σ-Series AC Servopacks and Gain Adjustment Methods

1) Five types of Σ-Series AC Servopack are available: DR1, SGDA, SGDB, SGD and the current DR2.
The adjustment method is basically identical for each Servopack type, except that auto-tuning is not available for some types.
The DR2, SGDA,SGDB and SGD Servopacks allow both manual adjustment by the conventional method of observing the machine response and automatic adjustment using the internal auto-tuning function. The DR1 Servopack does not offer auto-tuning.

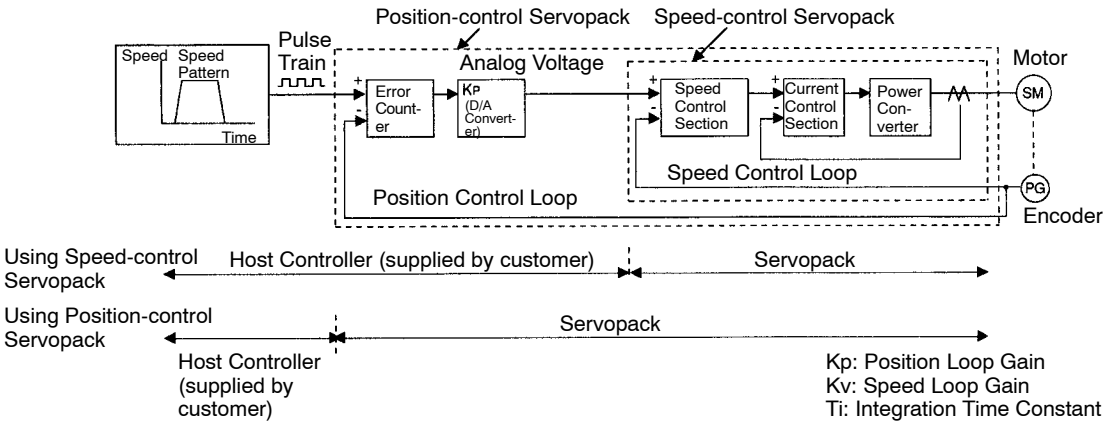
2) The main user constants changed by the customer to adjust the servo system include the following:

- Cn-04 (Speed Loop Gain)
- Cn-05 (Speed Loop Integration Time Constant)
- Cn-17 (Torque Reference Filter Time Constant)
- Cn-1A (Position Loop Gain)

In a speed-control Servopack (where speed references are applied as analog voltages), the position loop is controlled by the host controller, so the position loop gain is normally adjusted at the host controller.
If adjustment is not possible at the host controller, the same adjustment can be achieved using Cn-03 (Speed Reference Gain), but the servomotor may not reach maximum speed for some preset values of this user constant.

A simple block diagram of the servo system is shown below.

**Servo System Block Diagram**




**Note:** A position-control Servopack has no D/A converter for speed reference output. This conversion is handled by internal calculations.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## B.1.2 Basic Rules for Gain Adjustment

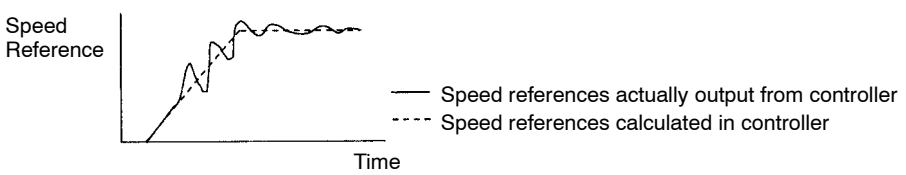
1) The servo system comprises three feedback systems: position loop, speed loop, and current loop. The response must increase from outer loop to inner loop (see Servo System Block Diagram, above). The response deteriorates and oscillates if this principle is not obeyed.
   The customer cannot adjust the current loop. Sufficient response is assured for the current loop.
   The customer can adjust the position loop gain and speed loop gain, as well as the speed loop integration time constant and torque reference filter.

2) The position loop and speed loop must be adjusted to provide a balanced response.
   In particular, if the position loop gain only is increased (adjustment with Cn-03 at the Servopack if position loop gain adjustment is not possible at the host controller), the speed references oscillate and the result is increased, oscillating position control times.
   If the position loop gain (or Cn-03) is increased, the speed loop gain (Cn-04) must be similarly increased.
   If the mechanical system starts to oscillate after the position loop gain and speed loop gain are increased, do not increase the gains further.

3) The position loop gain should not normally be increased above the characteristic frequency of the mechanical system.
   For example, the harmonic gears used in an articulated robot form a structure with extremely poor rigidity and a characteristic frequency of approximately 10 to 20 Hz. This type of machine allows a position loop gain of only 10 to 20 (1/sec).
   Conversely, the characteristic frequency of a precision machine tool such as a chip mounter or IC bonder exceeds 70 Hz, allowing a position loop gain exceeding 70 (1/sec) for some machines.
   Therefore, although the response of the servo system (controller, servo driver, motor, detectors, etc.) is an important factor where good response is required, it is also important to improve the rigidity of the mechanical system.

4) In cases where the position loop response is greater than or equal to the speed loop response and linear acceleration or deceleration is attempted, the poor speed loop response and follow-up cause an accumulation of position loop errors and result in increased output of speed references from the position loop.
   The motor moves faster and overshoots as a result of increased speed references, and the position loop tends to decrease the speed references. However, the poor motor follow-up due to the poor speed loop response results in oscillating speed references, as shown in the diagram below.
   If this problem occurs, reduce the position loop gain or increase the speed loop gain to eliminate the speed reference oscillations.

**Speed Reference Output with Unbalanced Position Loop Gain and Speed Loop Gain**






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# B.2 Adjusting a Servopack for Speed Control

This section gives examples of adjusting the gains of a Servopack for speed control manually and using auto-tuning.

B.2.1 Adjusting Using Auto-tuning . . . . . 432
B.2.2 Manual Adjustment . . . . . 433



## B.2.1 Adjusting Using Auto-tuning

The DR1 Servopack does not offer auto-tuning.

1) Important Points About Auto-tuning

a) Speed During Auto-tuning
Auto-tuning may not function correctly if the speed is too low. Set the speed to approximately 500 r/min.
Set the speed with the user constant Cn-10 (Jog speed).

b) Selecting Machine Rigidity
If the machine rigidity is unknown, select the rigidity according to the following standards.

| Drive Method | Machine Rigidity | |
|---|---|---|
| | DR2, SGDA, SGDB | SGD |
| Ball screw, direct | 3 (C-003) to 7 (C-007) | High/medium response |
| Ball screw, with reduction gears | 2 (C-002) to 3 (C-003) | Medium response |
| Timing belt | 1 (C-001) to 3 (C-003) | Low/medium response |
| Chain | 1 (C-001) to 2 (C-002) | Low response |
| Wave reduction gears* | 1 (C-001) to 2 (C-002) | Low response |

* Product name: Harmonic Drive

Select the machine rigidity level for DR2, SGDA and SGDB andaccording to the table.

| Level | Rigidity |
|---|---|
| 7 (C-007) | High |
| 6 (C-006) | ⋮ |
| 5 (C-005) | ⋮ |
| 4 (C-004) | ⋮ |
| 3 (C-003) | Medium |
| 2 (C-002) | ⋮ |
| 1 (C-001) | Low |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Auto-tuning may not end if high response is selected for a low-rigidity machine or low response is selected for a high-rigidity machine.
If this occurs, halt the auto-tuning and change the machine rigidity selection.

2) If Auto-tuning is Unsuccessful

Auto-tuning may be unsuccessful (the end of auto-tuning not displayed) for machines with large play or extremely low rigidity.
Similarly, auto-tuning may be unsuccessful for a machine with high load inertia (exceeding 15 to 30 times the motor moment of inertia).
In these cases, use conventional manual adjustment.
Even if auto-tuning is successful for a machine with large fluctuations in load inertia or load torque, vibrations or noise may still occur in some positions.



3) Response During Operation is Unsatisfactory after Auto-tuning

Auto-tuning sets the gain and integration time constant with some safety margin (to avoid oscillations). This can result in positioning times.
In particular, the target position may not be reached if low response is selected, because the machine does not move in response to the final minute references. An excessively high setting of the integration time constant (Cn-05) during auto-tuning is one cause of this problem.
If response is slow after auto-tuning, the speed loop gain cannot be manually increased very much before oscillation starts.
In this case, manually reduce the integration time constant while observing the machine behavior to ensure oscillation does not occur.
Auto-tuning does not set the torque reference filter (Cn-17) or speed reference gain (Cn-03).

## B.2.2 Manual Adjustment

1) The role of each user constant is briefly described below.

a) Speed Loop Gain (Cn-04)
This user constant sets the speed loop response.
The response is improved by setting this user constant to the maximum value in the range which does not cause vibrations in the mechanical system.
The following formula relates the speed loop gain to the load inertia.

$$\text{Speed Loop Gain Kv [Hz]} = \frac{2}{\frac{GD_L^2}{GD_M^2} + 1} \times \text{(Cn-04 Preset value)}$$

$GD_L^2$: Motor Axis Converted Load Inertia
$GD_M^2$: Motor Moment of Inertia



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

b) Speed Loop Integration Time Constant (Cn-05)
The speed loop has an integration element to allow response to micro-inputs.
This integration element can produce a delay in the servo system, and the positioning setting time increases and response becomes slower as the time constant increases.
However, the integration time constant must be increased to prevent machine vibration if the load inertia is large or the mechanical system includes a element that is prone to vibration.
The following formula calculates a guideline value.

$$Ti \geq 2.3 \times \frac{1}{2\pi \times Kv}$$

Ti: Integration Time Constant (sec)
Kv: Speed Loop Gain (Hz) (calculated above)



c) Torque Reference Filter Time Constant (Cn-17)
When a ball screw is used, torsional resonance may occur which increases the pitch of the vibration noise.
This vibration can sometimes be overcome by increasing the torque reference filter time constant.
However, this filter will produce a delay in the servo system, just like the integration time constant, and its value should not be increased more than necessary.

d) Speed Reference Gain (Cn-03)
Changing the speed reference gain (Cn-03) changes the position loop gain an equivalent amount. That is, reducing the speed reference gain is equivalent to reducing the position loop gain and increasing it is equivalent to increasing the position loop gain.
Use this user constant (Cn-03) in the following circumstances:

- No position loop gain adjustment at host controller (including cases where fine adjustment not possible by changing number of D/A converter bits)
- Clamping the speed reference output range to specific speeds

Normally leave at the factory setting.

**NOTE** For a speed-control SGD or SGDA Servopack or SGDB or DR2 Servopack used for speed control, the position loop gain (Cn-1A) is valid in zero-clamp mode only.
The position loop gain (Cn-1A) user constant is always invalid for a DR1 Servopack.
For normal control, change the position loop gain at the host controller or adjust the speed reference gain (Cn-03) in the Servopack.
Changing Cn-1A does not change the position loop gain.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) Adjustment Procedure

a) Set the position loop gain at the host controller to a low value and increase the speed loop gain (Cn-04) within the range that no abnormal noise or vibration occurs.
If adjustment of the position loop gain is not possible at the host controller, reduce the speed reference gain (Cn-03).

b) Slightly reduce the speed loop gain from the value at step 1, and increase the position loop gain at the host controller in the range that no overshooting or vibration occurs.
If adjustment of the position loop gain is not possible at the host controller, increase the speed reference gain (Cn-03).

c) Determine the speed loop integration time constant (Cn-05), by observing the positioning setting time and vibrations in the mechanical system.
The positioning setting time may become excessive if the speed loop integration time constant (Cn-05) is too large.

d) It is not necessary to change the torque reference filter time constant (Cn-17) unless torsional resonance occurs in the machine shafts.
Torsional resonance may be indicated by a high vibration noise. Adjust the torque reference filter time constant (Cn-17) to reduce the vibration noise.

e) Finally, fine adjustment of the position gain, speed gain, and integration time constant is required to determine the optimum point for step response.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# B.3 Adjusting a Servopack for Position Control

This section gives examples of adjusting the gains of a Servopack for position control manually and using auto-tuning.

B.3.1 Adjusting Using Auto-tuning . . . . . 436
B.3.2 Manual Adjustment . . . . . 437



## B.3.1 Adjusting Using Auto-tuning

The DR1 Servopack does not offer auto-tuning.

1) Important Points About Auto-tuning

a) Speed During Auto-tuning
Auto-tuning may not function correctly if the speed is too low. Set the speed to approximately 500 r/min.
Set the speed with the user constant Cn-10 (Jog speed).

b) Selecting Machine Rigidity
If the machine rigidity is unknown, select the rigidity according to the following standards.

| Drive Method | Machine Rigidity | |
|---|---|---|
| | DR2, SGDA, SGDB | SGD |
| Ball screw, direct | 3 (C-003) to 7 (C-007) | High/medium response |
| Ball screw, with reduction gears | 2 (C-002) to 3 (C-003) | Medium response |
| Timing belt | 1 (C-001) to 3 (C-003) | Low/medium response |
| Chain | 1 (C-001) to 2 (C-002) | Low response |
| Wave reductiongears* | 1 (C-001) to 2 (C-002) | Low response |

* Product name: Harmonic Drive

Select the machine rigidity level for DR2, SGDA and SGDB according to the table.

| Level | Rigidity |
|---|---|
| 7 (C-007) | High |
| 6 (C-006) | ⋮ |
| 5 (C-005) | ⋮ |
| 4 (C-004) | ⋮ |
| 3 (C-003) | Medium |
| 2 (C-002) | ⋮ |
| 1 (C-001) | Low |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Auto-tuning may not end if high response is selected for a low-rigidity machine or low response is selected for a high-rigidity machine.
If this occurs, halt the auto-tuning and change the machine rigidity selection.

2) If Auto-tuning is Unsuccessful

Auto-tuning may be unsuccessful (the end of auto-tuning not displayed) for machines with large play or extremely low rigidity.
Similarly, auto-tuning may be unsuccessful for a machine with high load inertia (exceeding 15 to 30 times the motor moment of inertia).
In these cases, use conventional manual adjustment.
Even if auto-tuning is successful for a machine with large fluctuations in load inertia or load torque, vibrations or noise may still occur in some positions.

3) Response During Operation is Unsatisfactory after Auto-tuning

Auto-tuning sets the gain and integration time constant with some safety margin (to avoid oscillations). This can result in positioning times.
In particular, the target position may not be reached if low response is selected, because the machine does not move in response to the final minute references. An excessively high setting of the integration time constant (Cn-05) during auto-tuning is one cause of this problem.
If response is slow after auto-tuning, the speed loop gain cannot be manually increased very much before vibration starts.
In this case, manually reduce the integration time constant while observing the machine behavior to ensure oscillation does not occur.
Auto-tuning does not set the torque reference filter (Cn-17).

B

## B.3.2 Manual Adjustment

1) The role of each user constant is briefly described below.

a) Speed Loop Gain (Cn-04)
This user constant sets the speed loop response.
The response is improved by setting this user constant to the maximum value in the range which does not cause vibrations in the mechanical system.
The following formula relates the speed loop gain to the load inertia.

$$\text{Speed Loop Gain Kv [Hz]} = \frac{2}{\frac{GD_L^2}{GD_M^2} + 1} \times \text{(Cn-04 Preset value)}$$

$GD_L^2$: Motor Axis Converted Load Inertia
$GD_M^2$: Motor Moment of Inertia

b) Speed Loop Integration Time Constant (Cn-05)
The speed loop has an integration element to allow response to micro-inputs.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

This integration element can produce a delay in the servo system, and the positioning setting time increases and response becomes slower as the time constant increases. However, the integration time constant must be increased to prevent machine vibration if the load inertia is large or the mechanical system includes a vibration elements. The following formula calculates a guideline value.

$$Ti \geq 2.3 \times \frac{1}{2\pi \times Kv}$$

Ti: Integration Time Constant (sec)

Kv: Speed Loop Gain (Hz) (calculated above)



c) Torque Reference Filter Time Constant (Cn-17)
When a ball screw is used, torsional resonance may occur which increases the pitch of the vibration noise.
These vibrations can sometimes be overcome by increasing the torque reference filter time constant.
However, this filter can produce a delay in the servo system, as is the integration time constant, and its value should not be increased more than necessary.

d) Position Loop Gain
The position loop gain user constant sets the servo system response.
The higher the position loop gain is set, the better the response and shorter the positioning times.
To enable a high setting of the position loop gain, increase the machine rigidity and raise the machine characteristic frequency.
Increasing the position loop gain only to improve the response can result in oscillating response of the overall servo system, that is, the speed references output from the position loop oscillate. Therefore, also increase the speed loop gain while observing the response.

2) Adjustment Procedure

a) Set the position loop gain to a low value and increase the speed loop gain (Cn-04) within the range that no abnormal noise or oscillation occurs.

b) Slightly reduce the speed loop gain from the value at step 1, and increase the position loop gain in the range that no overshooting or vibration occurs.

c) Determine the speed loop integration time constant (Cn-05), by observing the positioning set time and vibrations in the mechanical system.
The positioning set time may become excessive if the speed loop integration time constant (Cn-05) is too large.

d) It is not necessary to change the torque reference time constant (Cn-17) unless torsional resonance occurs in the machine shafts.
Torsional resonance may be indicated by a high vibration noise. Adjust the torque reference filter time constant to reduce the vibration noise.

e) Finally, fine adjustment of the position gain, speed gain, and integration time constant is required to determine the optimum point for step response, etc.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3) Functions to Improve Response
The mode switch, feed-forward, and bias functions improve response.
However, they are not certain to improve response and may even worsen it in some cases. Follow the points outlined below and observe the actual response while making adjustments.

a) Mode Switch
The mode switch improves the transition characteristics when the torque references become saturated during acceleration or deceleration.
Above the set level, the speed loop control switches from PI (proportional/integral) control to P (proportional) control.

b) Feed-forward Function
Use feed-forward to improve the response speed. However, feed-forward may be ineffective in systems where a sufficiently high value of position loop gain is not possible.
Follow the procedure below to adjust the feed-forward amount (Cn-1D).

(1) Adjust the speed loop and position loop, as described above.

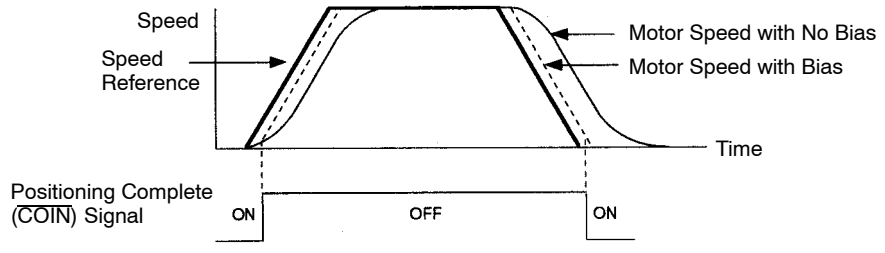
(2) Gradually increase the feed-forward amount (Cn-1D), such that the positioning complete ($\overline{\text{COIN}}$) signal is output early.

At this point, ensure that the positioning complete ($\overline{\text{COIN}}$) signal breaks up (alternately turns ON/OFF) and that the speed does not overshoot. These problems can arise if the feed-forward is set too high.

For all types of Servopack except DR1, a primary delay filter can be applied to feed-forward. This filter can be used to correct breakup (alternatingly turning ON/OFF) of the positioning complete ($\overline{\text{COIN}}$) signal or speed overshoot arising when feed-forward is activated.

c) Bias Function
When the lag pulses in the error counter exceeds the positioning complete width (Cn-1B), the bias amount (Cn-1C) is added to the error counter output (speed reference). If the lag pulses in the error counter lies within the positioning complete width (Cn-1B), the bias amount (Cn-1C) is no longer added.
This reduces the number of pulses in the error counter and shortens the positioning time.
The motor speed becomes unstable if the bias amount is too large.
Observe the response during adjustment as the optimum value depends on the load, gain, and positioning complete width.
Set Cn-0C to zero (0) when the bias is not used.

**Bias Function**






Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The adjustment procedures described above are common for all Yaskawa digital AC Servopacks. However, not all functions are available on each Servopack. Consult the technical specifications of your Servopack for details.
The adjustment procedures are also identical for conventional analog servos. However, in this case, the adjustments are made using potentiometers instead of the user constants.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# B.4 Gain Setting References

This section presents tables of load inertia values for reference when adjusting the gain.

B.4.1 Guidelines for Gain Settings According to Load Inertia Ratio . . . . . 441

## B.4.1 Guidelines for Gain Settings According to Load Inertia Ratio



1) Adjustment guidelines are given below according to the rigidity of the mechanical system and load inertia. Use these values as guidelines when adjusting according to the procedures described above.
These values are given as guidelines only. Oscillations and poor response may occur inside the specified value ranges. Observe the response (waveform) when optimizing the adjustment.
Higher gains are possible for machines with high rigidity.

a) Machines with High Rigidity

Ball Screw, Direct Drive Machines
Example: Chip mounter, IC bonder, precision machine tools

| Load/Inertia Ratio ($GD_L^2/GD_M^2$) | Position Loop Gain (Cn-1A) [1/s] | Speed Loop Gain (Cn-04) [Hz] | Speed Loop Integration Time Constant (Cn-05) [0.01ms] |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 x | 50 to 70 | 50 to 70 | 500 to 2000 |
| 3 x | | 100 to 140 | Slightly increase for inertia ratio of 20 x, or greater. |
| 5 x | | 150 to 200 | |
| 10 x | | 270 to 380 | |
| 15 x | | 400 to 560 | |
| 20 x | | 500 to 730 | |
| 30 x | | 700 to 1100 | |

For an inertia ratio of 10 x, or greater, slightly reduce the position loop gain and speed loop gain below the values shown and set the integration time constant to a higher value before starting the adjustment.
As the inertia ratio increases, set the position loop gain and speed loop gain to the lower limit of the range of values specified. Conversely, increase the speed loop integration time constant.

b) Machines with Medium Rigidity

Machines driven by ball screw through reduction gears, or machines directly driven by long ball screws.
Example: General machine tools, orthogonal robots, conveyors



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

*B.4.1 Guidelines for Gain Settings According to Load Inertia Ratio cont.*

| Load/Inertia Ratio ($GD_L^2/GD_M^2$) | Position Loop Gain (Cn-1A) [1/s] | Speed Loop Gain (Cn-04) [Hz] | Speed Loop Integration Time Constant (Cn-05) [0.01ms] |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 x | 30 to 50 | 30 to 50 | 1000 to 4000 |
| 3 x | | 60 to 100 | Slightly increase for inertia ratio of 20 x, or greater. |
| 5 x | | 90 to 150 | |
| 10 x | | 160 to 270 | |
| 15 x | | 240 to 400 | |
| 20 x | | 310 to 520 | |
| 30 x | | 450 to 770 | |



For an inertia ratio of 10 x, or greater, slightly reduce the position loop gain and speed loop gain below the values shown and set the integration time constant to a higher value before starting the adjustment.
As the inertia ratio increases, set the position loop gain and speed loop gain to the lower limit of the range of values specified. Conversely, increase the speed loop integration time constant.

c) Machines with Low Rigidity

Machines driven by timing belts, chains or wave reduction gears (product name: Harmonic Drive).
Example: Conveyors, articulated robots

| Load/Inertia Ratio ($GD_L^2/GD_M^2$) | Position Loop Gain (Cn-1A) [1/s] | Speed Loop Gain (Cn-04) [Hz] | Speed Loop Integration Time Constant (Cn-05) [0.01ms] |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 x | 10 to 20 | 10 to 20 | 5000 to 10000 |
| 3 x | | 20 to 40 | Slightly increase for inertia ratio of 20 x, or greater. |
| 5 x | | 30 to 60 | |
| 10 x | | 50 to 110 | |
| 15 x | | 80 to 160 | |
| 20 x | | 100 to 210 | |
| 30 x | | 150 to 310 | |

For an inertia ratio of 10 x, or greater, slightly reduce the position loop gain and speed loop gain below the values shown and set the integration time constant to a higher value before starting the adjustment.
As the inertia ratio increases, set the position loop gain and speed loop gain to the lower limit of the range of values specified. Conversely, increase the speed loop integration time constant.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) When a speed-control Servopack is used, set the position loop gain at the host controller. If the position loop gain cannot be set at the host controller, adjust the Servopack speed reference gain (Cn-03).
The position loop gain (Cn-1A) of a speed-control Servopack is valid in zero-clamp mode only.
The position loop gain is determined from the following relationship.

$$K_p = \frac{VS}{\epsilon}$$

$K_P$ [1/s]: Position loop gain
VS [PPS]: Steady speed reference
ε: (pulse): Steady error
(The number of pulses in the error counter at steady speed.)





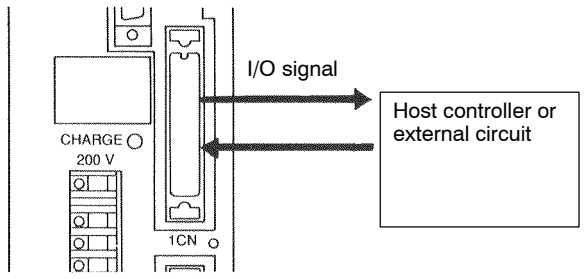
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# Appendix C

## List of I/O Signals

This appendix lists I/O signal terminals (connector 1CN) on Servopacks which connect to a host controller or external circuit.

C



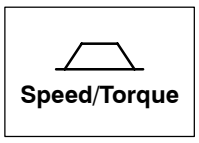

**Note** 1) The meanings of some signals for speed/torque control and position control are different. Always refer to the correct list for the Servopack type.

2) Refer to *Chapter 3* for details of how to use I/O signals.

3) Note that the functions of I/O signal terminals differ according to the memory switch (Cn-01, Cn-02) settings.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com




## List of Input Signals in Speed/Torque Mode (1) (1CN Terminal No.)

| Specifications | Standard Specifications | Absolute Encoder | Speed Coincide Output | Zero-clamp | Speed Control with Torque Feed Forward | Torque Control I |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Memory Switch Setting | Standard Setting (Cn-02 BitB = 0) | Cn-01 Bit 9 = 1 | Cn-01 Bit 4 = 1 | Cn-01 Bit A = 1 Bit B = 0 | Cn-01 Bit F = 1 | Cn-01 Bit A = 0 Bit B = 1 |
| 1 | SG<br>GND | | | | | |
| 2 | SG<br>GND | | | | | |
| 3 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |
| 4 | –<br>(Unused) | SEN<br>Sensor ON<br>***3.8.5*** | | | | |
| 5 | V-REF<br>Speed reference input ***3.2.1*** | | | | V-REF<br>Speed reference ***3.2.8*** | –<br>(Unused) ***3.2.7*** |
| 6 | SG<br>GND | | | | SG<br>GND ***3.2.8*** | SG<br>GND ***3.2.7*** |
| 7 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |
| 8 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |
| 9 | T-REF<br>Torque reference input ***3.2.7*** | | | | T-REF<br>Torque feed forward reference ***3.2.8*** | T-REF<br>Torque reference ***3.2.7*** |
| 10 | SG<br>GND | | | | SG<br>GND ***3.2.8*** | SG<br>GND ***3.2.7*** |
| 11 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |
| 12 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |
| 13 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |
| 14 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |
| 15 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |
| 16 | TRQ-M<br>Torque monitor ***3.2.12*** | | | | | |
| 17 | VTG-M<br>Speed monitor ***3.2.12*** | | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Specifications | Standard Specifications | | Absolute Encoder | Speed Coincide Output | Zero-clamp | Speed Control with Torque Feed Forward | Torque Control I |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Memory Switch Setting** | **Standard Setting (Cn-02 BitB = 0)** | | **Cn-01 Bit 9 = 1** | **Cn-01 Bit 4 = 1** | **Cn-01 Bit A = 1 Bit B = 0** | **Cn-01 Bit F = 1** | **Cn-01 Bit A = 0 Bit B = 1** |
| 18 | – (Unused) | | | | | | |
| 19 | PCO | PG signal output phase-C ***3.2.3*** | | | | | |
| 20 | *PCO | | | | | | |
| 21 | – (Unused) | | BAT+ Backup battery +input ***3.8.5*** | | | | |
| 22 | – (Unused) | | BAT- Backup battery -input ***3.8.5*** | | | | |
| 23 | +15V | Power for speed/ torque reference ***3.2.1*** | | | | | |
| 24 | -15V | | | | | | |
| 25 | $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+ | Torque limit detection output ***3.1.3*** | | $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+ Speed coincide output ***3.7.4*** | | | |
| 26 | $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- | | | $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- Speed coincide output ***3.7.4*** | | | |
| 27 | $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+ | TGON output signal ***3.7.5*** | | | | | |
| 28 | $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- | | | | | | |
| 29 | $\overline{\text{S-RDY}}$+ | Servo ready output ***3.7.6*** | | | | | |
| 30 | $\overline{\text{S-RDY}}$- | | | | | | |
| 31 | ALM+ | Servo alarm output ***3.7.1*** | | | | | |
| 32 | ALM- | | | | | | |

C



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Specifi-cations | Standard Specifications | | Absolute Encoder | Speed Coincide Output | Zero-clamp | Speed Control with Torque Feed Forward | Torque Control I |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Memory Switch Setting** | **Standard Setting (Cn-02 BitB = 0)** | | **Cn-01 Bit 9 = 1** | **Cn-01 Bit 4 = 1** | **Cn-01 Bit A = 1 Bit B = 0** | **Cn-01 Bit F = 1** | **Cn-01 Bit A = 0 Bit B = 1** |
| 33 | PAO | PG signal output phase-A ***3.2.3*** | | | | | |
| 34 | *PAO | | | | | | |
| 35 | PBO | PG signal output phase-B ***3.2.3*** | | | | | |
| 36 | *PBO | | | | | | |
| 37 | ALO1<br>Alarm code output<br>(Open collector)<br>***3.7.1*** | | | | | | |
| 38 | ALO2<br>Alarm code output<br>(Open collector)<br>***3.7.1*** | | | | | | |
| 39 | ALO3<br>Alarm code output<br>(Open collector)<br>***3.7.1*** | | | | | | |
| 40 | $\overline{\text{S-ON}}$<br>Servo ON input<br>***3.7.2*** | | | | | | |
| 41 | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$<br>P control input<br>***3.6.4*** | | | | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$<br>Zero-clamp operation reference<br>***3.4.3*** | | |
| 42 | P-OT<br>Forward rotation prohibited<br>***3.1.2*** | | | | | | |
| 43 | N-OT<br>Reverse rotation prohibited<br>***3.1.2*** | | | | | | |
| 44 | $\overline{\text{ALM-RST}}$<br>Alarm reset input<br>***3.7.1*** | | | | | | |
| 45 | $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$<br>Forward torque limit ON input<br>***3.1.3*** | | | | | | |

C



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Specifi-cations | Standard Specifications | Absolute Encoder | Speed Coincide Output | Zero-clamp | Speed Control with Torque Feed Forward | Torque Control I |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Memory Switch Setting** | **Standard Setting (Cn-02 BitB = 0)** | **Cn-01 Bit 9 = 1** | **Cn-01 Bit 4 = 1** | **Cn-01 Bit A = 1 Bit B = 0** | **Cn-01 Bit F = 1** | **Cn-01 Bit A = 0 Bit B = 1** |
| 46 | $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$<br>Reverse torque limit ON input<br>***3.1.3*** | | | | | |
| 47 | +24VIN<br>I/O power supply<br>***3.2.4*** | | | | | |
| 48 | –<br>(Unused) | PSO<br>Phase-S signal output<br>***3.8.5*** | | | | |
| 49 | –<br>(Unused) | *PSO<br>Phase-S signal output<br>***3.8.5*** | | | | |
| 50 | FG<br>Frame ground<br>***3.2.3*** | | | | | |

**Note** Information described in the “Standard Specifications” column is also applicable to blank columns.
Number “***x.x.x***” represents a section number corresponding to each signal name. For example, ***3.2.3*** represents Section 3.2.3.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Speed/Torque

**List of Input Signals in Speed/Torque Mode (2)**
**(1CN Terminal No.)**

| Specifications | Standard Specifications | Brake Interlock Output | Contact Input Speed Control | | Speed Control with Torque Limit by Analog Voltage Reference |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Memory Switch Setting | Standard Setting (Cn-02 bitB = 0) | Cn-01 Bit E | Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1 | | Cn-02 Bit F = 1 |
| | | | Cn-01 Bit B = 0 | Cn-01 Bit B = 1 | |
| 1 | SG<br>GND | | | | |
| 2 | SG<br>GND | | | | |
| 3 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 4 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 5 | V-REF<br>Speed reference input<br>***3.2.1*** | | –<br>(Unused)<br>***3.2.6*** | V-REF<br>Speed reference<br>***3.2.6*** | V-REF<br>Speed reference<br>***3.2.9*** |
| 6 | SG<br>GND | | SG<br>GND<br>***3.2.6*** | SG<br>GND<br>***3.2.6*** | SG<br>GND<br>***3.2.9*** |
| 7 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 8 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 9 | T-REF<br>Torque reference input<br>***3.2.7*** | | | | T-REF<br>Torque limit input<br>***3.2.9*** |
| 10 | SG<br>GND | | | | SG<br>GND<br>***3.2.9*** |
| 11 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 12 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 13 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 14 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 15 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Specifications | Standard Specifications | | Brake Interlock Output | Contact Input Speed Control | | Speed Control with Torque Limit by Analog Voltage Reference |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Memory Switch Setting | Standard Setting (Cn-02 bitB = 0) | | Cn-01 Bit E | Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1 | | Cn-02 Bit F = 1 |
| | | | | Cn-01 Bit B = 0 | Cn-01 Bit B = 1 | |
| 16 | TRQ-M<br>Torque monitor<br>***3.2.12*** | | | | | |
| 17 | VTG-M<br>Speed monitor<br>***3.2.12*** | | | | | |
| 18 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |
| 19 | PCO | PG signal output phase-C<br>***3.2.3*** | | | | |
| 20 | *PCO | | | | | |
| 21 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |
| 22 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |
| 23 | +15V | Power for speed/ torque reference<br>***3.2.1*** | | | | |
| 24 | -15V | | | | | |
| 25 | $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+ | Torque limit detection output<br>***3.1.3*** | | | | |
| 26 | $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- | | | | | |
| 27 | $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+ | TGON output signal<br>***3.7.5*** | $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+<br>Brake interlock signal<br>***3.4.4*** | | | |
| 28 | $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- | | $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+<br>Brake interlock signal<br>***3.4.4*** | | | |
| 29 | $\overline{\text{S-RDY}}$+ | Servo ready output<br>***3.7.6*** | | | | |
| 30 | $\overline{\text{S-RDY}}$- | | | | | |
| 31 | ALM+ | Servo alarm output<br>***3.7.1*** | | | | |
| 32 | ALM- | | | | | |
| 33 | PAO | PG signal output phase-A<br>***3.2.3*** | | | | |
| 34 | *PAO | | | | | |

C



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Specifications | Standard Specifications | | Brake Interlock Output | Contact Input Speed Control | | Speed Control with Torque Limit by Analog Voltage Reference |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Memory Switch Setting | Standard Setting (Cn-02 bitB = 0) | | Cn-01 Bit E | Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1 | | Cn-02 Bit F = 1 |
| | | | | Cn-01 Bit B = 0 | Cn-01 Bit B = 1 | |
| 35 | PBO | PG signal output phase-B ***3.2.3*** | | | | |
| 36 | *PBO | | | | | |
| 37 | ALO1<br>Alarm code output<br>(Open collector)<br>***3.7.1*** | | | | | |
| 38 | ALO2<br>Alarm code output<br>(Open collector)<br>***3.7.1*** | | | | | |
| 39 | ALO3<br>Alarm code output<br>(Open collector)<br>***3.7.1*** | | | | | |
| 40 | $\overline{\text{S-ON}}$<br>Servo on input<br>***3.7.2*** | | | | | |
| 41 | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$<br>P control input<br>***3.6.4*** | | | | | |
| 42 | P-OT<br>Forward rotation prohibited<br>***3.1.2*** | | | | | |
| 43 | N-OT<br>Reverse rotation prohibited<br>***3.1.2*** | | | | | |
| 44 | $\overline{\text{ALM-RST}}$<br>Alarm reset input<br>***3.7.1*** | | | | | |
| 45 | $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$<br>Forward torque limit ON input<br>***3.1.3*** | | | | $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$<br>Contact input speed control 1<br>***3.2.6*** | |
| 46 | $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$<br>Reverse torque limit ON input<br>***3.1.3*** | | | $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$<br>Contact input speed control 2<br>***3.2.6*** | $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$<br>Contact input speed control 2<br>***3.2.6*** | |
| 47 | +24VIN<br>I/O power supply<br>***3.2.4*** | | | | | |
| 48 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |
| 49 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |

C



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Specifications | Standard Specifications | Brake Interlock Output | Contact Input Speed Control | | Speed Control with Torque Limit by Analog Voltage Reference |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Memory Switch Setting | Standard Setting (Cn-02 bitB = 0) | Cn-01 Bit E | Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1 | | Cn-02 Bit F = 1 |
| | | | Cn-01 Bit B = 0 | Cn-01 Bit B = 1 | |
| 50 | FG<br>Frame ground<br>***3.2.3*** | | | | |

**Note** Information described in the “Standard Specifications” column is also applicable to blank columns.
Number “***x.x.x***” represents a section number corresponding to each signal name. For example, ***3.2.3*** represents Section 3.2.3.

C



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Speed/Torque

## List of Input Signals in Speed/Torque Mode (3) (1CN Terminal No.)

| Specifications | Standard Specifications | Torque Control II | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Memory Switch Setting | Standard Setting (Cn-02 bitB = 0) | Cn-01 Bit A = 1, B = 1 | | | |
| | | P-CON = OFF | P-CON = ON | | |
| | | – | Cn-01 Bit F = 0 Cn-02 Bit F = 0 | Cn-01 Bit F = 0 Cn-02 Bit F = 1 | Cn-01 Bit F = 1 Cn-02 Bit F = 1 or 0 |
| 1 | SG<br>GND | | | | |
| 2 | SG<br>GND | | | | |
| 3 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 4 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 5 | V-REF<br>Speed reference input<br>***3.2.1*** | V-REF<br>Speed limit value<br>***3.2.7*** | V-REF<br>Speed reference<br>***3.2.7*** | V-REF<br>Speed reference<br>***3.2.7*** | V-REF<br>Speed reference<br>***3.2.7*** |
| 6 | SG<br>GND | SG<br>GND<br>***3.2.7*** | SG<br>GND<br>***3.2.7*** | SG<br>GND<br>***3.2.7*** | SG<br>GND<br>***3.2.7*** |
| 7 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 8 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 9 | T-REF<br>Torque reference input<br>***3.2.7*** | T-REF<br>Torque reference<br>***3.2.7*** | –<br>(Unused)<br>***3.2.7*** | T-REF<br>Torque limit value<br>***3.2.7*** | T-REF<br>Torque feed forward reference<br>***3.2.7*** |
| 10 | SG<br>GND | SG<br>GND<br>***3.2.7*** | SG<br>GND<br>***3.2.7*** | SG<br>GND<br>***3.2.7*** | SG<br>GND<br>***3.2.7*** |
| 11 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 12 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 13 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 14 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 15 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 16 | TRQ-M<br>Torque monitor<br>***3.2.12*** | | | | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Specifications | Standard Specifications | | Torque Control II | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Memory Switch Setting | Standard Setting (Cn-02 bitB = 0) | | Cn-01 Bit A = 1, B = 1 | | | |
| | | | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ = OFF | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ = ON | | |
| | | | – | Cn-01 Bit F = 0 Cn-02 Bit F = 0 | Cn-01 Bit F = 0 Cn-02 Bit F = 1 | Cn-01 Bit F = 1 Cn-02 Bit F = 1 or 0 |
| 17 | VTG-M<br>Speed monitor<br>***3.2.12*** | | | | | |
| 18 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |
| 19 | PCO | PG signal output phase-C<br>***3.2.3*** | | | | |
| 20 | *PCO | | | | | |
| 21 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |
| 22 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | |
| 23 | +15V | Power for speed/ torque reference<br>***3.2.1*** | | | | |
| 24 | -15V | | | | | |
| 25 | $\overline{\text{CLT}}$+ | Torque limit detection output<br>***3.1.3*** | | | | |
| 26 | $\overline{\text{CLT}}$- | | | | | |
| 27 | $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+ | TGON output signal<br>***3.7.5*** | | | | |
| 28 | $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- | | | | | |
| 29 | $\overline{\text{S-RDY}}$+ | Servo ready output<br>***3.7.6*** | | | | |
| 30 | $\overline{\text{S-RDY}}$- | | | | | |
| 31 | ALM+ | Servo alarm output<br>***3.7.1*** | | | | |
| 32 | ALM- | | | | | |
| 33 | PAO | PG signal output phase-A<br>***3.2.3*** | | | | |
| 34 | *PAO | | | | | |
| 35 | PBO | PG signal output phase-B<br>***3.2.3*** | | | | |
| 36 | *PBO | | | | | |
| 37 | ALO1<br>Alarm code output<br>(Open collector)<br>***3.7.1*** | | | | | |

C



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Specifications | Standard Specifications | Torque Control II | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Memory Switch Setting | Standard Setting (Cn-02 bitB = 0) | Cn-01 Bit A = 1, B = 1 | | | |
| | | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ = OFF | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ = ON | | |
| | | – | Cn-01 Bit F = 0 Cn-02 Bit F = 0 | Cn-01 Bit F = 0 Cn-02 Bit F = 1 | Cn-01 Bit F = 1 Cn-02 Bit F = 1 or 0 |
| 38 | ALO2<br>Alarm code output<br>(Open collector)<br>***3.7.1*** | | | | |
| 39 | ALO3<br>Alarm code output<br>(Open collector)<br>***3.7.1*** | | | | |
| 40 | $\overline{\text{S-ON}}$<br>Servo on input<br>***3.7.2*** | | | | |
| 41 | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$<br>P control input<br>***3.6.4*** | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$<br>Torque/speed control switch<br>***3.2.7*** | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$<br>Torque/speed control switch<br>***3.2.7*** | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$<br>Torque/speed control switch<br>***3.2.7*** | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$<br>Torque/speed control switch<br>***3.2.7*** |
| 42 | P-OT<br>Forward rotation prohibited<br>***3.1.2*** | | | | |
| 43 | N-OT<br>Reverse rotation prohibited<br>***3.1.2*** | | | | |
| 44 | $\overline{\text{ALM-RST}}$<br>Alarm reset input<br>***3.7.1*** | | | | |
| 45 | $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$<br>Forward torque limit ON input<br>***3.1.3*** | | | | |
| 46 | $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$<br>Reverse torque limit ON input<br>***3.1.3*** | | | | |
| 47 | +24VIN<br>I/O power supply<br>***3.2.4*** | | | | |
| 48 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 49 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | |
| 50 | FG<br>Frame ground<br>***3.2.3*** | | | | |

**Note** Information described in the “Standard Specifications” column is also applicable to blank columns.
Number “***x.x.x***” in box represents a section number corresponding to each signal name. For example, ***3.2.3*** represents Section 3.2.3.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Positions

## List of I/O Signals IN Position Control Mode (1) (1CN Terminal No.)

| Specifications | Standard Specifications | | Absolute Encoder | Brake Interlock Output | INHIBIT Input | Contact Input Speed Control | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Memory Switch Setting | Standard Setting (Cn-02 Bit B = 1) | | Cn-02 Bit 9 = 1 | Cn-01 Bit E = 1 | Cn-01 Bit F = 1 Cn-02 Bit 2 = 0 | Cn-01 Bit F = 0 Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1 | Cn-01 Bit F = 1 Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1 |
| 1 | SG<br>GND | | | | | | |
| 2 | SG<br>GND | | | | | | |
| 3 | PL1<br>Power for open collector reference<br>***3.2.2*** | | | | | | |
| 4 | –<br>(Unused) | | SEN<br>Sensor ON signal<br>***3.8.5*** | | | | |
| 5 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | | |
| 6 | SG<br>GND | | | | | | |
| 7 | PULS | Reference pulse input<br>***3.2.2*** | | | | –<br>(Unused)<br>***3.2.6*** | PULS<br>Reference pulse input<br>***3.2.2*** |
| 8 | *PULS | | | | | –<br>(Unused)<br>***3.2.6*** | *PULS<br>Reference pulse input<br>***3.2.2*** |
| 9 | –<br>(Unused) | | | | | | |
| 10 | SG<br>GND | | | | | | |
| 11 | SIGN | Reference sign input<br>***3.2.2*** | | | | –<br>(Unused)<br>***3.2.6*** | PULS<br>Reference pulse input<br>***3.2.2*** |
| 12 | *SIGN | | | | | –<br>(Unused)<br>***3.2.6*** | *PULS<br>Reference pulse input<br>***3.2.2*** |
| 13 | PL2<br>Power for open collector reference<br>***3.2.2*** | | | | | | |

C



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Specifications | Standard Specifications | | Absolute Encoder | Brake Interlock Output | INHIBIT Input | Contact Input Speed Control | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Memory Switch Setting | Standard Setting (Cn-02 Bit B = 1) | | Cn-02 Bit 9 = 1 | Cn-01 Bit E = 1 | Cn-01 Bit F = 1 Cn-02 Bit 2 = 0 | Cn-01 Bit F = 0 Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1 | Cn-01 Bit F = 1 Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1 |
| 14 | *CLR | Clear input ***3.2.2*** | | | | – (Unused) ***3.2.6*** | CLR Clear input ***3.2.2*** |
| 15 | CLR | | | | | – (Unused) ***3.2.6*** | *CLR Clear input ***3.2.2*** |
| 16 | TRQ-M Torque monitor ***3.2.12*** | | | | | | |
| 17 | VTG-M Speed monitor ***3.2.12*** | | | | | | |
| 18 | PL3 Power for open collector reference ***3.2.2*** | | | | | | |
| 19 | PCO | PG signal output phase-C ***3.2.3*** | | | | | |
| 20 | *PCO | | | | | | |
| 21 | – (Unused) | | BAT+ Backup battery + input ***3.8.5*** | | | | |
| 22 | – (Unused) | | BAT- Backup battery - input ***3.8.5*** | | | | |
| 23 | – (Unused) | | | | | | |
| 24 | – (Unused) | | | | | | |
| 25 | $\overline{\text{COIN}}$+ | Positioning complete signal ***3.7.3*** | | | | | |
| 26 | $\overline{\text{COIN}}$- | | | | | | |
| 27 | $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+ | TGON output signal ***3.7.5*** | | $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+ Brake interlock signal ***3.4.4*** | | | |
| 28 | $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- | | | $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- Brake interlock signal ***3.4.4*** | | | |

C



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Specifications | Standard Specifications | | Absolute Encoder | Brake Interlock Output | INHIBIT Input | Contact Input Speed Control | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Memory Switch Setting | Standard Setting (Cn-02 Bit B = 1) | | Cn-02 Bit 9 = 1 | Cn-01 Bit E = 1 | Cn-01 Bit F = 1 Cn-02 Bit 2 = 0 | Cn-01 Bit F = 0 Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1 | Cn-01 Bit F = 1 Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1 |
| 29 | $\overline{\text{S-RDY+}}$ | Servo ready output ***3.7.6*** | | | | | |
| 30 | $\overline{\text{S-RDY-}}$ | | | | | | |
| 31 | ALM+ | Servo alarm output ***3.7.1*** | | | | | |
| 32 | ALM- | | | | | | |
| 33 | PAO | PG signal output phase-A ***3.2.3*** | | | | | |
| 34 | *PAO | | | | | | |
| 35 | PBO | PG signal output phase-B ***3.2.3*** | | | | | |
| 36 | *PBO | | | | | | |
| 37 | ALO1 | Alarm code output (Open collector) ***3.7.1*** | | | | | |
| 38 | ALO2 | | | | | | |
| 39 | ALO3 | | | | | | |
| 40 | $\overline{\text{S-ON}}$ Servo ON input ***3.7.2*** | | | | | | |
| 41 | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ P control input ***3.6.4*** | | | | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ INHIBIT input ***3.2.10*** | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ Rotation direction reference at contact input speed control ***3.2.6*** | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$ Rotation direction reference at contact input speed control ***3.2.6*** |
| 42 | P-OT Forward rotation prohibited ***3.1.2*** | | | | | | |
| 43 | N-OT Reverse rotation prohibited ***3.1.2*** | | | | | | |
| 44 | $\overline{\text{ALM-RST}}$ Alarm reset input ***3.7.1*** | | | | | | |
| 45 | $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ Forward torque limit ON input ***3.1.3*** | | | | | $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ Contact input speed control 1 ***3.2.6*** | $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ Contact input speed control 1 ***3.2.6*** |

C



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Specifications | Standard Specifications | Absolute Encoder | Brake Interlock Output | INHIBIT Input | Contact Input Speed Control | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Memory Switch Setting** | **Standard Setting (Cn-02 Bit B = 1)** | **Cn-02 Bit 9 = 1** | **Cn-01 Bit E = 1** | **Cn-01 Bit F = 1 Cn-02 Bit 2 = 0** | **Cn-01 Bit F = 0 Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1** | **Cn-01 Bit F = 1 Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1** |
| 46 | N-CL<br>Reverse torque limit ON input<br>***3.1.3*** | | | | $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$<br>Contact input speed control 2<br>***3.2.6*** | $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$<br>Contact input speed control 2<br>***3.2.6*** |
| 47 | +24VfIN<br>I/O power supply<br>***3.2.4*** | | | | | |
| 48 | –<br>(Unused) | PSO<br>Phase-S signal output<br>***3.8.5*** | | | | |
| 49 | –<br>(Unused) | *PSO<br>Phase-S signal output<br>***3.8.5*** | | | | |
| 50 | FG<br>Frame ground<br>***3.2.3*** | | | | | |

C

**Note** Information described in the “Standard Specifications” column is also applicable to blank columns.
Number “***x.x.x***” represents a section number corresponding to each signal name. For example, ***3.2.3*** represents Section 3.2.3.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Positions

## List of I/O Signals IN Position Control Mode (2) (1CN Terminal No.)

| Specifications | Standard Specifications | | CCW Pulse + CW Pulse | 90° Dirrerence Two-phase Pulse Reference |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Memory Switch Setting** | **Standard Setting (Cn-02 Bit B = 1)** | | **Cn-02 Bit 5, 4, 3 = 0, 0, 1** | **Cn-02 Bit 5, 4, 3 = 0, 1, 0 (× 1 multiplication) = 0, 1, 1 (× 2 multiplication) = 1, 0, 0 (× 4 multiplication)** |
| 1 | SG<br>GND | | | |
| 2 | SG<br>GND | | | |
| 3 | PL1<br>Power for open collector reference ***3.2.2*** | | | |
| 4 | –<br>(Unused) | | | |
| 5 | –<br>(Unused) | | | |
| 6 | SG<br>GND | | | |
| 7 | PULS | Reference pulse input ***3.2.2*** | PULS<br>Forward reference pulse input (CCW) ***3.2.2*** | PULS<br>Phase-A reference pulse input ***3.2.2*** |
| 8 | *PULS | | *PULS<br>Forward reference pulse input (CCW) ***3.2.2*** | *PULS<br>Phase-A reference pulse input ***3.2.2*** |
| 9 | –<br>(Unused) | | | |
| 10 | SG<br>GND | | | |
| 11 | SIGN | Reference sign input ***3.2.2*** | SIGN<br>Reverse reference pulse input (CW) ***3.2.2*** | SIGN<br>Phase-B reference pulse input ***3.2.2*** |
| 12 | *SIGN | | *SIGN<br>Reverse reference pulse input (CW) ***3.2.2*** | *SIGN<br>Phase-B reference pulse input ***3.2.2*** |
| 13 | PL2<br>Power for open collector reference ***3.2.2*** | | | |
| 14 | *CLR | Clear input ***3.2.2*** | | |
| 15 | CLR | | | |

C



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Specifications | Standard Specifications | | CCW Pulse + CW Pulse | 90° Dirrerence Two-phase Pulse Reference |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Memory Switch Setting | Standard Setting (Cn-02 Bit B = 1) | | Cn-02 Bit 5, 4, 3 = 0, 0, 1 | Cn-02 Bit 5, 4, 3 = 0, 1, 0 (× 1 multiplication) = 0, 1, 1 (× 2 multiplication) = 1, 0, 0 (× 4 multiplication) |
| 16 | TRQ-M<br>Torque monitor<br>***3.2.12*** | | | |
| 17 | VTG-M<br>Speed monitor<br>***3.2.12*** | | | |
| 18 | PL3<br>Power for open collector reference<br>***3.2.2*** | | | |
| 19 | PCO | PG signal output phase-C<br>***3.2.3*** | | |
| 20 | *PCO | | | |
| 21 | –<br>(Unused) | | | |
| 22 | –<br>(Unused) | | | |
| 23 | –<br>(Unused) | | | |
| 24 | –<br>(Unused) | | | |
| 25 | $\overline{\text{COIN}}$+ | Positioning complete signal<br>***3.7.3*** | | |
| 26 | $\overline{\text{COIN}}$- | | | |
| 27 | $\overline{\text{TGON}}$+ | TGON output signal<br>***3.7.5*** | | |
| 28 | $\overline{\text{TGON}}$- | | | |
| 29 | $\overline{\text{S-RDY}}$+ | Servo ready output<br>***3.7.6*** | | |
| 30 | $\overline{\text{S-RDY}}$- | | | |
| 31 | ALM+ | Servo alarm output<br>***3.7.1*** | | |
| 32 | ALM- | | | |
| 33 | PAO | PG signal output phase-A<br>***3.2.3*** | | |
| 34 | *PAO | | | |
| 35 | PBO | PG signal output phase-B<br>***3.2.3*** | | |
| 36 | *PBO | | | |
| 37 | ALO1 | Alarm code output (Open collector)<br>***3.7.1*** | | |
| 38 | ALO2 | | | |
| 39 | ALO3 | | | |
| 40 | $\overline{\text{S-ON}}$<br>Servo ON input<br>***3.7.2*** | | | |
| 41 | $\overline{\text{P-CON}}$<br>P control input<br>***3.6.4*** | | | |

C



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Specifi-cations | Standard Specifications | CCW Pulse + CW Pulse | 90°Dirrerence Two-phase Pulse Reference |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Memory Switch Setting** | **Standard Setting (Cn-02 Bit B = 1)** | **Cn-02 Bit 5, 4, 3 = 0, 0, 1** | **Cn-02 Bit 5, 4, 3 = 0, 1, 0 (× 1 multiplication) = 0, 1, 1 (× 2 multiplication) = 1, 0, 0 (× 4 multiplication)** |
| 42 | P-OT<br>Forward rotation prohibited<br>***3.1.2*** | | |
| 43 | N-OT<br>Reverse rotation prohibited<br>***3.1.2*** | | |
| 44 | $\overline{\text{ALM-RST}}$<br>Alarm reset input<br>***3.7.1*** | | |
| 45 | $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$<br>Forward torque limit ON input<br>***3.1.3*** | | |
| 46 | $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$<br>Reverse torque limit ON input<br>***3.1.3*** | | |
| 47 | +24VIN<br>I/O power supply<br>***3.2.4*** | | |
| 48 | –<br>(Unused) | | |
| 49 | –<br>(Unused) | | |
| 50 | FG<br>Frame ground<br>***3.2.3*** | | |

C

**Note** Information described in the “Standard Specifications” column is also applicable to blank columns.
Number “***x.x.x***” represents a section number corresponding to each signal name. For example, ***3.2.3*** represents Section 3.2.3.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# Appendix D

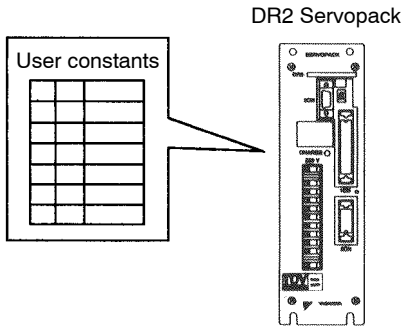
## List of User Constants

• Σ-Series Servopacks provide many functions, and have parameters called "user constants" to allow the user to select each function and perform fine adjustment. This appendix lists these user constants.

• User constants are divided into the following two types:

| | |
|---|---|
| 1) Memory switch<br>Cn-01, Cn-02 | Each bit of this switch is turned ON or OFF to select a function. |
| 2) User constant setting<br>Cn-03 and later | A numerical value such as a torque limit value or speed loop gain is set in this constant. |





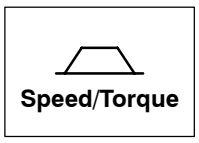

**Note** 1) Some user constants for speed/torque control and position control are different. Always refer to the correct list of user constants for the Servopack type.

2) Refer to *Chapter 3* for details of how to use user constants.

3) For details of how to set user constants, refer to *Section 4.1.5 Operation in User Constant Setting Mode*.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com




# For Speed/Torque Control

## List of User Constants (User Constant Setting)

| Category | User Constant No. | Code | Name | Unit | Lower Limit | Upper Limit | Factory Setting | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Cn-00 | Not a user constant. (Cn-00 is used to select special mode for digital operator.) | | | | | | |
| | Cn-01 | Memory switch (see on page 468.) | | | | | | See note 1 |
| | Cn-02 | Memory switch (see on page 469.) | | | | | | See note 1 |
| Gain Related Constants | Cn-03 | VREFGN | Speed reference gain | (r/min)/V | 10 | 2162 | 500 | See 3.2.1, 3.2.7. |
| | Cn-04 | LOOPHZ | Speed loop gain | Hz | 1 | 2000 | 80 | See note 2 See 3.5.2, 3.6.1, 3.6.2. |
| | Cn-05 | PITIME | Speed loop integration time constant | 0.01ms | 2 | 10000 | 2000 | See note 2 See 3.5.2, 3.6.1, 3.6.2. |
| | Cn-1A | POSGN | Position loop gain | 1/s | 1 | 500 | 40 | See note 2 and 3 See 3.5.2, 3.6.1, 3.6.2. |
| Torque Related Constants | Cn-13 | TCRFGN | Torque reference gain | (0.1 V/rated torque) | 10 | 100 | 30 | See 3.2.7, 3.2.8, 3.2.9. |
| | Cn-06 | EMGTRQ | Emergency stop torque | % | 0 | Max. torque | Max. torque | See 3.1.2. |
| | Cn-08 | TLMTF | Forward rotation torque limit | % | 0 | Max. torque | Max. torque | See 3.1.3. |
| | Cn-09 | TLMTR | Reverse rotation torque limit | % | 0 | Max. torque | Max. torque | See 3.1.3. |
| | Cn-14 | TCRLMT | Speed limit for torque control I | r/min | 0 | 4500 | 4500 | See 3.2.7. |
| | Cn-17 | TRQFIL | Torque reference filter time constant | 100 μs | 0 | 250 | 4 | See 3.5.5. |
| | Cn-18 | CLMIF | Forward external torque limit | % | 0 | Max. torque | 100 | See 3.1.3. |
| | Cn-19 | CLMIR | Reverse external torque limit | % | 0 | Max. torque | 100 | See 3.1.3. |
| Sequence Related Constants | Cn-07 | SFSACC | Soft start time (acceleration) | ms | 0 | 10000 | 0 | See note 4 See 3.2.6, 3.5.1. |
| | Cn-23 | SFSDEC | Soft start time (deceleration) | ms | 0 | 10000 | 0 | See note 4 See 3.2.6, 3.5.1. |
| | Cn-0B | TGONLV | Zero-speed level | r/min | 1 | 4500 | 20 | See 3.7.5. |
| | Cn-12 | BRKTIM | Time delay from brake reference until servo OFF | 10 ms | 0 | 50 | 0 | See 3.4.4. |
| | Cn-15 | BRKSPD | Speed level for brake reference output during motor operation | r/min | 0 | 4500 | 100 | See 3.4.4. |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Category | User Constant No. | Code | Name | Unit | Lower Limit | Upper Limit | Factory Setting | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sequence Related Constants | Cn-16 | BRKWAI | Output timing of brake reference during motor operation | 10 ms | 10 | 100 | 50 | See 3.4.4. |
| | Cn-22 | VCMPLV | Speed coincidence signal output range | r/min | 0 | 100 | 10 | See 3.7.4. |
| | Cn-29 | ZCLVL | Zero-clamp level | r/min | 0 | 4500 | 10 | See 3.4.3. |
| Pulse Related Constants | Cn-0A | PGRAT | Dividing ratio setting | P/R | 16 | 32768 | 2048 | See note 1 See 3.2.3. |
| | Cn-11 | PULSNO | Number of encoder pulses | P/R | 513 | 32768 | 2048 | See note 1 See 3.3.3, 3.8.5. |
| Other Constants | Cn-0C | TRQMSW | Mode switch (torque reference) | % | 0 | 800 | 200 | See 3.6.6. |
| | Cn-0D | REFMSW | Mode switch (speed reference) | r/min | 0 | 4500 | 0 | See 3.6.6. |
| | Cn-0E | ACCMSW | Mode switch (acceleration reference) | 10 (r/min)/s | 0 | 3000 | 0 | See 3.6.6. |
| | Cn-10 | JOGSPD | Jog speed | r/min | 0 | 4500 | 500 | See 3.3.2. |
| | Cn-1F | SPEED1 | 1st speed (contact input speed control) | r/min | 0 | 4500 | 100 | See 3.2.6. |
| | Cn-20 | SPEED2 | 2nd speed (contact input speed control) | r/min | 0 | 4500 | 200 | See 3.2.6. |
| | Cn-21 | SPEED3 | 3rd speed (contact input speed control) | r/min | 0 | 4500 | 300 | See 3.2.6. |
| | Cn-28 | NFBCC | Speed loop compensation constant | --- | 0 | 100 | 0 | |

D

: User constants that must be always set

**Note** 1) After changing the setting, always turn the power OFF, then ON. This makes the new setting valid.

2) Automatically set by autotuning function

3) Valid only when zero-clamp function is used

4) To use soft start function, always set both Cn-07 and Cn-23.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## List of User Constants (Memory Switch Setting)

| | User Constant No. | Bit No. | Setting | | | | Factory Setting |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Input signal enable/disable | Cn-01 | 0 | 0 | 1 | | | 0 |
| | | | Uses servo ON input ($\overline{\text{S-ON}}$). | Does not use servo ON input ($\overline{\text{S-ON}}$). Servo is always ON. | | | |
| | | 1 | 0 | 1 | | | 0 |
| | | | Uses SEN signal input (SEN) when absolute encoder is used. | Does not use SEN signal input (SEN) when absolute encoder is used. Servopack automatically treats signal voltage as high level. | | | |
| | | 2 | 0 | 1 | | | 0 |
| | | | Uses forward rotation prohibited input (P-OT). | Does not use forward rotation prohibited input (P-OT). Forward rotation is always possible. | | | |
| | | 3 | 0 | 1 | | | 0 |
| | | | Uses reverse rotation prohibited input ($\overline{\text{N-OT}}$). | Does not use reverse rotation prohibited input ($\overline{\text{N-OT}}$). Reverse rotation is always possible. | | | |
| CLT signal switching | | 4 | 0 | 1 | | | 0 |
| | | | Uses CLT signal (CLT) as torque limit detection output. | Uses CLT signal (CLT) as speed coincide output. | | | |
| – | | 5 | Not used. | Not used | | | 0 |
| Sequence selection at alarm condition | | 6 | 0 | 1 | | | 0 |
| | | | Stops the motor by applying dynamic brake when an alarm arises. | Causes the motor to coast to a stop when an alarm arises. | | | |
| | | 7 | 0 | 1 | | | 1 |
| | | | When an alarm arises, stops the motor by applying dynamic brake and then releases dynamic brake. | When an alarm arises, stops the motor by applying dynamic brake but does not release dynamic brake. | | | |
| | | 8 | 0 | 1 | | | 0 |
| | | | Stops the motor according to bit 6 setting when overtravel is detected (P-OT, N-OT). | Decelerates the motor to a stop by applying the torque specified in Cn-06 when overtravel is detected (P-OT, N-OT). | | | |
| | | 9 | 0 | 1 | | | 0 |
| | | | When overtravel is detected (P-OT, N-OT), decelerates the motor to a stop by applying the torque specified in Cn-06 and then turns the servo OFF. | When overtravel is detected (P-OT, N-OT), decelerates the motor to a stop by applying the torque specified in Cn-06 and then performs zero-clamp. | | | |
| Control mode selection | | B•A | 0•0 | 0•1 | 1•0 | 1•1 | 0•0 |
| | | | Speed control | Speed control with zero-clamp function | Torque control I | Torque control II | |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | User Constant No. | Bit No. | Setting | | | | Factory Setting |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Mode switch selection | Cn-01 | D•C | 0•0 | 0•1 | 1•0 | 1•1 | 0•0 |
| | | | Uses internal torque reference as a condition. (Level setting: Cn-0C) | Uses speed reference as a condition. (Level setting: Cn-0D) | Uses acceleration as a condition. (Level setting: Cn-0E) | Does not use mode switch function. | |
| $\overline{\text{TGON}}$ signal function switch | | E | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Uses $\overline{\text{TGON}}$ signal as the motor running detection signal. | | Uses $\overline{\text{TGON}}$ signal as the brake interlock signal. | | |
| Torque feed-forward function | | F | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Does not use torque feed-forward function. | | Uses torque feed-forward function. | | |
| Rotation direction selection | Cn-02 | 0 | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Defines counterclockwise (CCW) rotation as forward rotation. | | Defines clockwise (CW) rotation as forward rotation (reverse rotation mode). | | |
| Home position error processing selection | | 1 | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Detects home position error (when absolute encoder is used). | | Does not detect home position error. | | |
| Contact input speed control | | 2 | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Does not use contact input speed control. | | Uses contact input speed control. | | |
| Reserved | | 3•4 5 | Reserved (not to be set) | | | | 0 |
| Reserved | | 6 | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Uses 1CN #16 pin as the torque reference monitor. | | Uses 1CN #16 pin as the speed reference monitor. | | |
| Reserved | | 7 | Reserved (not to be set) | | | | 0 |
| Motor selection | | 8 | 0 | | 1 | | * |
| | | | SGM motor | | SGMP motor | | |
| Encoder selection | | 9 | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Incremental encoder | | Absolute encoder | | 0 |
| Reserved | | A | Reserved (not to be set) | | | | 0 |
| Selection of speed/torque or position control mode | | B | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Speed/torque control mode selection | | Not used. | | |
| Torque reference filter type | | C | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Primary | | Secondary | | |

* The factory setting depends on the Servopack type as shown below.

| Servopack Type | Factory Setting |
|---|---|
| DR2-□ | 0 |
| DR2-□P | 1 |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

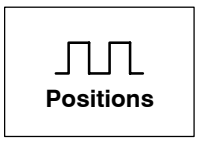
| | User Constant No. | Bit No. | Setting | | Factory Setting |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Reserved | Cn-02 | E•D | Reserved (not to be set) | | 0 |
| Torque reference input selection | | F | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| | | | Uses torque reference or torque feed-forward reference. | Uses analog voltage reference as torque limit input. | |

**NOTE** For the Cn-01 and Cn-02 memory switches, always turn the power OFF and then ON after changing the setting. This makes the new setting valid.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com




# For Position Control

### List of User Constants (User Constant Setting)

| Category | User Constant No. | Code | Name | Unit | Lower Limit | Upper Limit | Factory Setting | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Cn-00 | Not a user constant. (Cn-00 is used to select special mode for digital operator.) | | | | | | See 4.1.3. |
| | Cn-01 | Memory switch (see on page 474.) | | | | | | See note 1 |
| | Cn-02 | Memory switch (see on page 476.) | | | | | | See note 1 |
| Gain Related Constants | Cn-04 | LOOPHS | Speed loop gain | Hz | 1 | 2000 | 80 | See note 2 See 3.6.1, 3.6.2. |
| | Cn-05 | PITIME | Speed loop integration time constant | 0.01ms | 2 | 10000 | 2000 | See note 2 See 3.6.1, 3.6.2. |
| | Cn-1A | POSGN | Position loop gain | 1/s | 1 | 500 | 40 | See note 2 See 3.6.1, 3.6.2. |
| | Cn-1C | BIASLV | Bias | r/min | 0 | 450 | 0 | See 3.6.5. |
| | Cn-1D | FFGN | Feed-forward | % | 0 | 100 | 0 | See 3.6.3. |
| | Cn-26 | ACCTME | Position reference acceleration/deceleration time constant | 100 μs | 0 | 640 | 0 | See 3.5.2. |
| | Cn-27 | FFFILT | Feed-forward reference filter | 100 μs | 0 | 640 | 0 | See 3.6.3. |
| Torque Related Constants | Cn-06 | EMGTRQ | Emergency stop torque | % | 0 | Max. torque | Max. torque | See 3.1.2. |
| | Cn-08 | TLMTF | Forward rotation torque limit | % | 0 | Max. torque | Max. torque | See 3.1.3. |
| | Cn-09 | TLMTR | Reverse rotation torque limit | % | 0 | Max. torque | Max. torque | See 3.1.3. |
| | Cn-17 | TRQFIL | Torque reference filter time constant | 100 μs | 0 | 250 | 4 | See 3.5.5. |
| | Cn-18 | CLMIF | Forward external torque limit | % | 0 | Max. torque | 100 | See 3.1.3. |
| | Cn-19 | CLMIR | Reverse external torque limit | % | 0 | Max. torque | 100 | See 3.1.3. |
| Sequence Related Constants | Cn-0B | TGONLV | Zero-speed level | r/min | 1 | 4500 | 20 | See 3.7.5. |
| | Cn-12 | BRKTIM | Time delay from brake reference until servo OFF | 10 ms | 0 | 50 | 0 | See 3.4.4. |
| | Cn-15 | BRKSPD | Speed level for brake reference output during motor operation | r/min | 0 | 4500 | 100 | See 3.4.4. |

D



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Category | User Constant No. | Code | Name | Unit | Lower Limit | Upper Limit | Factory Setting | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sequence Related Constants | Cn-16 | BRKWAI | Output timing of brake reference during motor operation | 10 ms | 10 | 100 | 50 | See 3.4.4. |
| | Cn-1B | COINLV | Positioning complete range | Reference unit | 0 | 250 | 7 | See 3.7.3. |
| Pulse Related Constants | Cn-0A | PGRAT | Dividing ratio setting | P/R | 16 | 32768 | 2048 | See note 1 See 3.2.3. |
| | Cn-11 | PULSNO | Number of encoder pulses | P/R | 513 | 32768 | 2048 | See note 1 See 3.3.3, 3.8.5. |
| | Cn-24 | RATB | Electronic gear ratio (numerator) | | 4 | 65535 | 4 | See note 3 See 3.2.3, 3.2.5. |
| | Cn-25 | RATA | Electronic gear ratio (denominator) | | 1 | 65535 | 1 | See note 3 See 3.2.3, 3.2.5. |
| | Cn-2A | PULSNO2 | External PG number of pulses | P/R | 513 | 32768 | 2048 | |
| Other Constants | Cn-0C | TRQMSW | Mode switch (torque reference) | % | 0 | Max. torque | 200 | See 3.6.6. |
| | Cn-0D | REFMSW | Mode switch (speed reference) | r/min | 0 | 4500 | 0 | See 3.6.6. |
| | Cn-0E | ACCMSW | Mode switch (acceleration reference) | 10 (r/min)/s | 0 | 3000 | 0 | See 3.6.6. |
| | Cn-0F | ERPMSW | Mode switch (error pulse) | Reference unit | 0 | 10000 | 0 | See 3.6.6. |
| | Cn-10 | JOGSPD | Jog speed | r/min | 0 | 4500 | 500 | See 3.3.2. |
| | Cn-1E | OVERLV | Overflow | ×256 reference unit | 1 | 32767 | 1024 | See note 4 See 3.5.2, 3.6.2. |
| | Cn-1F | SPEED1 | 1st speed (contact input speed control) | r/min | 0 | 4500 | 100 | See 3.2.6. |
| | Cn-20 | SPEED2 | 2nd speed (contact input speed control) | r/min | 0 | 4500 | 200 | See 3.2.6. |
| | Cn-21 | SPEED3 | 3rd speed (contact input speed control) | r/min | 0 | 4500 | 300 | See 3.2.6. |
| | Cn-28 | NFBCC | Speed loop compensation constant | --- | 0 | 100 | 0 | |

: User constants that must be always set



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Note** 1) After changing the setting, always turn the power OFF, then ON. This makes the new setting valid.

2) Automatically set by autotuning function

3) The following restriction applies to electronic gear ratio (Cn-24 and Cn-25):

$$0.01 \leqq \frac{B(Cn\text{-}24)}{A(Cn\text{-}25)} \leqq 100$$

4) For user constant Cn-1E, when full-closed loop specification, factory setting is 1.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Positions

# For Position Control

## List of User Constants (Memory Switch Setting)

| | User Constant No. | Bit No. | Setting | | Factory Setting |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Input signal enable/disable | Cn-01 | 0 | 0<br>Uses servo ON input (S-ON). | 1<br>Does not use servo ON input (S-ON). Servo is always ON. | 0 |
| | | 1 | 0<br>When absolute encoder is used, uses the SEN input signal (SEN). | 1<br>When absolute encoder is used, masks the SEN signal. Automatically regarded as High level inside the Servopack. | 0 |
| Input signal enable/disable | | 2 | 0<br>Uses forward rotation prohibited input (P-OT). | 1<br>Does not use forward rotation prohibited input (P-OT). Forward rotation is always possible. | 0 |
| | | 3 | 0<br>Uses reverse rotation prohibited input (N-OT). | 1<br>Does not use reverse rotation prohibited input (N-OT). Reverse rotation is always possible. | 0 |
| – | | 4 | Not used. | Not used. | 0<br>See note 3 |
| – | | 5 | Not used. | Not used. | 0 |
| Sequence selection at alarm condition | | 6 | 0<br>Stops the motor by applying dynamic brake when an alarm arises. | 1<br>Causes the motor to coast to a stop when an alarm arises. | 0 |
| | | 7 | 0<br>When an alarm arises, stops the motor by applying dynamic brake and then releases dynamic brake. | 1<br>When an alarm arises, stops the motor by applying dynamic brake but does not release dynamic brake. | 1 |
| | | 8 | 0<br>Stops the motor according to bit 6 setting when overtravel is detected (P-OT, N-OT). | 1<br>Decelerates the motor to a stop by applying the torque specified in Cn-06 when overtravel is detected (P-OT, N-OT). | 0 |
| | | 9 | 0<br>When overtravel is detected (P-OT, N-OT), decelerates the motor to a stop by applying the torque specified in Cn-06 and then turns the servo OFF. | 1<br>When overtravel is detected (P-OT, N-OT), decelerates the motor to a stop by applying the torque specified in Cn-06 and then performs zero-clamp. | 0 |

D



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | User Constant No. | Bit No. | Setting | | | | Factory Setting |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Operation performed at servo OFF | Cn-01 | A | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Clears error pulse when servo is turned OFF. | | Does not clear error pulse when servo is turned OFF. | | |
| Mode switch selection | | B | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Uses mode switch function as set in bits D and C of Cn-01. | | Does not use mode switch function. | | |
| | | D•C | 0•0 | 0•1 | 1•0 | 1•1 | 0•0 |
| | | | Uses internal torque reference as a condition. (Level setting: Cn-0C) | Uses speed reference as a condition. (Level setting: Cn-0D) | Uses acceleration as a condition. (Level setting: Cn-0E) | Uses error pulse as a condition. (Level setting: Cn-0F) | |
| $\overline{\text{TGON}}$ signal function switch | | E | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Uses $\overline{\text{TGON}}$ signal as the motor running detection signal. | | Uses $\overline{\text{TGON}}$ signal as the brake interlock signal. | | |
| Contact input speed selection | | F | 0 | | 1 | | 0 See note 1 |
| | | | Stops the motor when both contact signals $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ and $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ are OFF. | | Receives pulse reference when both contact signals $\overline{\text{P-CL}}$ and $\overline{\text{N-CL}}$ are OFF. | | |
| INHIBIT function | | | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Always receives pulse reference. | | Enables INHIBIT function. | | |
| Rotation direction selection | Cn-02 | 0 | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Defines counterclockwise (CCW) rotation as forward rotation. | | Defines clockwise (CW) rotation as forward rotation (reverse rotation mode). | | |
| Home position error processing selection | | 1 | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Detects home position error (when absolute encoder is used). | | Does not detect home position error. | | |
| Contact input speed control | | 2 | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Does not use contact input speed control. | | Uses contact input speed control. | | |
| Reference pulse form selection | | 5•4•3 | 0•0•0 | 0•0•1 | 0•1•0 | 0•1•1 | 1•0•0 | 0•0•0 |
| | | | Sign + Pulse | CW + CCW | Phase A + Phase B (x 1 multiplication) | Phase A + Phase B (x 2 multiplication) | Phase A + Phase B (x 4 multiplication) | |
| Reserved | | 7•6 | Reserved (not to be used) | | | | 0 |
| Motor selection | | 8 | 0 | | 1 | | See note 2 |
| | | | SGM motor | | SGMP motor | | |
| Encoder selection | | 9 | 0 | | 1 | | 0 |
| | | | Incremental encoder | | Absolute encoder | | |

D



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| | User Constant No. | Bit No. | Setting | | Factory Setting |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Error counter clear signal | Cn-02 | A | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| | | | Clears the error counter when an error counter clear signal is at high level. | Clears the error counter when the leading edge of an error counter clear signal rises. | |
| Selection of speed/torque or position control mode | | B | 0 | 1 | 0<br>See note 4 |
| | | | Not used. | Position control mode | |
| Torque reference filter | | C | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| | | | Primary | Secondary | |
| Reference pulse logic | | D | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| | | | Does not invert reference pulse logic. | Inverts reference pulse logic. | |
| Position error monitor level | | E | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| | | | Displays position error Un-08 in x 1 reference units while in monitor mode. | Displays position error Un-08 in x 100 reference units while in monitor mode. | |
| Reference pulse filter | | F | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| | | | Line driver (Maximum reference pulse frequency: 450 kpps) | Open collector (Maximum reference pulse frequency: 200 kpps) | |

D

: User constants that must be always set

**Note** 1) Internal speed selection is valid only when bit 2 of Cn-02 is set to “1.”

2) The factory setting depends on the Servopack type as shown below.

| Servopack Type | Factory Setting |
|---|---|
| DR2-□ | 0 |
| DR2-□P | 1 |

3) At full-closed loop specification, when Cn-01 bit 4 is set to 1, external PG phase-C disconnection error is not detected.

4) At full-closed loop specification, factory setting of Cn-02 bit B is 1.

**NOTE** For the Cn-01 and Cn-02 memory switches, always turn the power OFF and then ON after changing the setting. This makes the new setting valid.

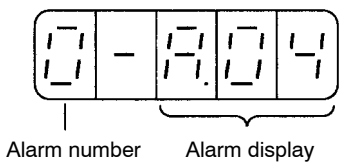


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# Appendix E

## List of Alarm Displays

- SGDA Servopack allows up to 10 last alarms to be displayed at a digital operator. This function is called a traceback function.




- This appendix provides the name and meaning of each alarm display.

- For details of how to display an alarm, refer to the following section:
  *4.2.1 Operation in Alarm Trace-back Mode*

- For the cause of each alarm and the action to be taken, refer to the following section:
  *6.2.1 Troubleshooting Problems with Alarm Display*

E

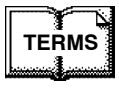


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## Alarm Display

| Alarm Display on Digital Operator | 7-segment LED | Alarm Output | | | | Alarm Name | Meaning | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Alarm Code Output | | | ALM Output | | | |
| | | ALO1 | AL02 | AL03 | | | | |
| A.00 | 0. | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | Absolute data error | Absolute data fails to be received, or received absolute data is abnormal. | For absolute encoder only |
| A.02 | 0. | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | User constant breakdown | **Checksum** results of user constants are abnormal. | |
| A.04 | 0. | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | User constant setting error | The user constant setting is outside the allowable setting range. | |
| A.10 | 1. | **ON** | OFF | OFF | OFF | Overcurrent | An overcurrent flowed through the power transistor. | |
| A.20 | 2. | OFF | **ON** | OFF | OFF | Blown fuse | Fuse is blown. | |
| A.30 | 3. | **ON** | **ON** | OFF | OFF | Regenerative error | Defective regenerative resistor<br><br>Regenerative resistor disconnection | |
| A.31 | 3. | **ON** | **ON** | OFF | OFF | Position error pulse overflow | Position error pulse has exceeded the value set in user constant Cn-1E (overflow). | For position control only |
| A.40 | 4. | OFF | OFF | **ON** | OFF | Overvoltage or undervoltage | The main circuit voltage for motor operation has become too high or too low. | |
| A.51 | 5. | **ON** | OFF | **ON** | OFF | Overspeed | Motor speed has exceeded 4950 r/min. | |
| A.70 | 7. | **ON** | **ON** | **ON** | OFF | Overload | Rated torque was exceeded during continuous operation. | |
| A.80 | 8. | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | Absolute encoder error | The number of pulses per absolute encoder revolution is abnormal. | For absolute encoder only |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
**ON**: Output transistor is ON




**Checksum**

An automatic check function for a set of data such as user constants. It stores the sum of user constant data, recalculates the sum at specific timing, and then checks whether the stored value matches the recalculated value. This function is a simple method of checking whether a set of data is correct.



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Alarm Display on Digital Operator | 7-Segment LED | Alarm Output | | | | Alarm Name | Meaning | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Alarm Code Output | | | ALM Output | | | |
| | | ALO1 | AL02 | AL03 | | | | |
| A.81 | 8. | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | Absolute encoder backup error | All three power supplies for the absolute encoder (+5 V, battery and internal capacitor) have failed. | For absolute encoder only |
| A.82 | 8. | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | Absolute encoder checksum error | The checksum results of absolute encoder memory is abnormal. | For absolute encoder only |
| A.83 | 8. | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | Absolute encoder battery error | Battery voltage for the absolute encoder is abnormal. | For absolute encoder only |
| A.84 | 8. | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | Absolute encoder data error | The checksum results of absolute encoder memory is abnormal. | For absolute encoder only |
| A.85 | 8. | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | Absolute encoder overspeed | The motor was running at a speed exceeding 400 r/min when the absolute encoder was turned ON. | For absolute encoder only |
| A.b1 | b. | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF | Reference input read error | Servopack CPU failed to detect reference input. | |
| A.C1 | C. | **ON** | OFF | **ON** | OFF | Servo overun detected | The servomotor (encoder) ran out of control. | |
| A.C2 | C. | **ON** | OFF | **ON** | OFF | Encoder output phase error<br><br>Incremental encoder initial pulse error | Phases A, B and C output by the encoder are abnormal.<br><br>Wiring of encoder phase A or B is disconnected. | |
| A.C3 | C. | **ON** | OFF | **ON** | OFF | Encoder A-, B-phase disconnection | Phases A, B and C output by the encoder are abnormal. | |
| A.C4 | C. | **ON** | OFF | **ON** | OFF | Encoder C-phase disconnection | Wiring of encoder phases C is disconnected. | |
| A.C6 | C. | **ON** | OFF | **ON** | OFF | Full-closed loop A-, B-phase disconnection | A-, B-phase of external PG is disconnected. | Only for full-closed specifi-cation |
| A.C7 | C. | **ON** | OFF | **ON** | OFF | Full-closed loop C-phase disconnection | C-phase of external PG is disconnected. | Only for full-closed specifi-cation |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
**ON**: Output transistor is ON

E



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| Alarm Display on Digital Operator | 7-Segment LED | Alarm Output | | | | Alarm Name | Meaning | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Alarm Code Output | | | ALM Output | | | |
| | | ALO1 | AL02 | AL03 | | | | |
| CPF00 | - | Undefined | | | | Digital operator transmission error 1 | Digital operator fails to communicate with Servopack even five seconds after power is turned ON. | These alarms are not stored in alarm traceback memory. |
| CPF01 | - | Undefined | | | | Digital operator transmission error 2 | Transmission error has occurred five consecutive times. | |
| A.99 | | OFF | OFF | OFF | **ON** | Not an error | Normal operation status | |

OFF: Output transistor is OFF
**ON**: Output transistor is ON

E



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# Appendix F

## Relationship between Reference Forms and User Constants

This appendix lists the relationship between reference forms and user constants.

<Remarks>

○: Related to or possibly related to

×: Not related at all





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## Relationship between Reference Forms and User Constants (1)

○: Related to or possibly related to
× : Not related at all

| User Constant No. | User Constant Name | Speed/Torque Control Mode (Cn-02 Bit B = 0) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Speed Control | | Torque Control | |
| | | Cn-02 Bit 2 = 0 | | | |
| | | Speed Control (Standard) Cn-01 Bit A = 0 Bit B = 0 | Speed Control with Zero-clamp Function Bit A = 1 Bit B = 0 | Torque Control I Bit A = 0 Bit B = 1 | Torque Control II Bit A = 1 Bit B = 1 |
| Cn-03 | Speed reference gain | ○ | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-04 | Speed loop gain | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-05 | Speed loop integration time constant | ○ | ○ | × | × |
| Cn-06 | Emergency stop torque | ○ | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-07 | Soft start time (acceleration) | ○ | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-08 | Forward torque limit | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-09 | Reverse torque limit | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-0A | Encoder pulse dividing ratio | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-0B | Zero-speed level | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-0C | Mode switch (torque reference) | ○ | ○ | × | × |
| Cn-0D | Mode switch (speed reference) | ○ | ○ | × | × |
| Cn-0E | Mode switch (acceleration) | ○ | ○ | × | × |
| Cn-0F | Mode switch (error pulse) | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-10 | JOG speed | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-11 | Number of encoder pulses | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-12 | Time delay from brake reference until servo OFF | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-13 | Torque reference gain | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-14 | Speed limit for torque control I | ○ | ○ | ○ | × |
| Cn-15 | Speed level for brake reference output during motor operation | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-16 | Output timing of brake reference during motor operation | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-17 | Torque reference filter time constant | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-18 | Forward external torque limit | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-19 | Reverse external torque limit | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-1A | Position loop gain | × | ○ | × | × |
| Cn-1B | Position complete range | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-1C | Bias | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-1D | Feed forward | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-1E | Overflow | × | × | × | × |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| User Constant No. | User Constant Name | Speed/Torque Control Mode (Cn-02 Bit B = 0) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Speed Control | | Torque Control | |
| | | Cn-02 Bit 2 = 0 | | | |
| | | Speed Control (Standard) Cn-01 Bit A = 0 Bit B = 0 | Speed Control with Zero-clamp Function Bit A = 1 Bit B = 0 | Torque Control I Bit A = 0 Bit B = 1 | Torque Control II Bit A = 1 Bit B = 1 |
| Cn-1F | Contact input speed control (1st speed) | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-20 | Contact input speed control (2nd speed) | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-21 | Contact input speed control (3rd speed) | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-22 | Speed coincide signal output range | ○ | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-23 | Soft start time (deceleration) | ○ | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-24 | Electronic gear (numerator) | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-25 | Electronic gear (denominator) | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-26 | Position reference accel/decel time constant | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-27 | Feed forward reference filter | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-28 | Speed loop compensation constant | ○ | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-29 | Zero-clamp level | × | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-2A | Full-closed number of pulses | × | × | × | × |

F



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

## Relationship between Reference Forms and User Constants (2)

○: Related to or possibly related to
×: Not related at all

| User Constant No. | User Constant Name | Speed/Torque Control Mode (Cn-02 Bit B = 0) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Contact Input Speed Control | | | |
| | | Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1 | | | |
| | | Stops at Speed Reference is 0<br>Cn-01<br>Bit A = 0<br>Bit B = 0 | Stops at Zero-clamp<br>Cn-01<br>Bit A = 1<br>Bit B = 0 | Analog Speed Reference (V-REF) Input<br>Cn-01<br>Bit A = 0<br>Bit B = 1 | Analog Speed Reference (V-REF) Input with Zero-clamp Function<br>Cn-01<br>Bit A = 1<br>Bit B = 1 |
| Cn-03 | Speed reference gain | × | × | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-04 | Speed loop gain | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-05 | Speed loop integration time constant | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-06 | Emergency stop torque | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-07 | Soft start time (acceleration) | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-08 | Forward torque limit | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-09 | Reverse torque limit | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-0A | Encoder pulse dividing ratio | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-0B | Zero-speed level | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-0C | Mode switch (torque reference) | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-0D | Mode switch (speed reference) | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-0E | Mode switch (acceleration) | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-0F | Mode switch (error pulse) | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-10 | JOG speed | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-11 | Number of encoder pulses | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-12 | Time delay from brake reference until servo OFF | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-13 | Torque reference gain | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-14 | Speed limit for torque control I | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-15 | Speed level for brake reference output during motor operation | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-16 | Output timing of brake reference during motor operation | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-17 | Torque reference filter time constant | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-18 | Forward external torque limit | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-19 | Reverse external torque limit | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-1A | Position loop gain | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-1B | Position complete range | × | × | × | × |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| User Constant No. | User Constant Name | Speed/Torque Control Mode (Cn-02 Bit B = 0) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Contact Input Speed Control | | | |
| | | Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1 | | | |
| | | Stops at Speed Reference is 0<br><br>Cn-01<br>Bit A = 0<br>Bit B = 0 | Stops at Zero-clamp<br><br>Cn-01<br>Bit A = 1<br>Bit B = 0 | Analog Speed Reference (V-REF) Input<br><br>Cn-01<br>Bit A = 0<br>Bit B = 1 | Analog Speed Reference (V-REF) Input with Zero-clamp Function<br>Cn-01<br>Bit A = 1<br>Bit B = 1 |
| Cn-1C | Bias | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-1D | Feed forward | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-1E | Overflow | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-1F | Contact input speed control (1st speed) | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-20 | Contact input speed control (2nd speed) | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-21 | Contact input speed control (3rd speed) | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-22 | Speed coincide signal output range | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-23 | Soft start time (deceleration) | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-24 | Electronic gear (numerator) | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-25 | Electronic gear (denominator) | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-26 | Position reference accel/decel time constant | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-27 | Feed forward reference filter | × | × | × | × |
| Cn-28 | Speed loop compensation constant | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-29 | Zero-clamp level | × | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-2A | Full-closed number of pulses | × | × | × | × |





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# Relationship between Reference Forms and User Constants (3)

○: Related to or possibly related to
×: Not related at all

| User Constant No. | User Constant Name | Position Control Mode (Cn-02 Bit B = 1) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Position Control | Contact Speed | |
| | | Cn-02 Bit 2 = 0 | Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1 | |
| | | Position Control (Standard) | Stops at Speed Reference is 0 Cn-01 Bit F = 0 | Pulse Reference Input Cn-01 Bit F = 1 |
| Cn-03 | Speed reference gain | × | × | × |
| Cn-04 | Speed loop gain | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-05 | Speed loop integration time constant | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-06 | Emergency stop torque | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-07 | Soft start time (acceleration) | × | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-08 | Forward torque limit | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-09 | Reverse torque limit | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-0A | Encoder pulse dividing ratio | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-0B | Zero-speed level | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-0C | Mode switch (torque reference) | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-0D | Mode switch (speed reference) | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-0E | Mode switch (acceleration) | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-0F | Mode switch (error pulse) | ○ | | ○ |
| Cn-10 | JOG speed | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-11 | Number of encoder pulses | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-12 | Time delay from brake reference until servo OFF | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-13 | Torque reference gain | × | × | × |
| Cn-14 | Speed limit for torque control I | × | × | × |
| Cn-15 | Speed level for brake reference output during motor operation | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-16 | Output timing of brake reference during motor operation | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-17 | Torque reference filter time constant | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-18 | Forward external torque limit | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-19 | Reverse external torque limit | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-1A | Position loop gain | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-1B | Position complete range | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-1C | Bias | ○ | × | ○ |



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

| User Constant No. | User Constant Name | Position Control Mode (Cn-02 Bit B = 1) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Position Control | Contact Speed | |
| | | Cn-02 Bit 2 = 0 | Cn-02 Bit 2 = 1 | |
| | | Position Control (Standard) | Stops at Speed Reference is 0 Cn-01 Bit F = 0 | Pulse Reference Input Cn-01 Bit F = 1 |
| Cn-1D | Feed forward | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-1E | Overflow | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-1F | Contact input speed control (1st speed) | × | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-20 | Contact input speed control (2nd speed) | × | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-21 | Contact input speed control (3rd speed) | × | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-22 | Speed coincide signal output range | × | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-23 | Soft start time (deceleration) | × | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-24 | Electronic gear (numerator) | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-25 | Electronic gear (denominator) | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-26 | Position reference accel/decel time constant | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-27 | Feed forward reference filter | ○ | × | ○ |
| Cn-28 | Speed loop compensation constant | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Cn-29 | Zero-clamp level | × | × | × |
| Cn-2A | Full-closed number of pulses | × | × | × |

F



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# Appendix G

## Reviewing the Full-closed Loop Specifications

This appendix outlines the checking methods for combination of mechanical specifications, linear scale (linear scale + waveform shaping circuit) and Servopack at full-closed loop specifications.

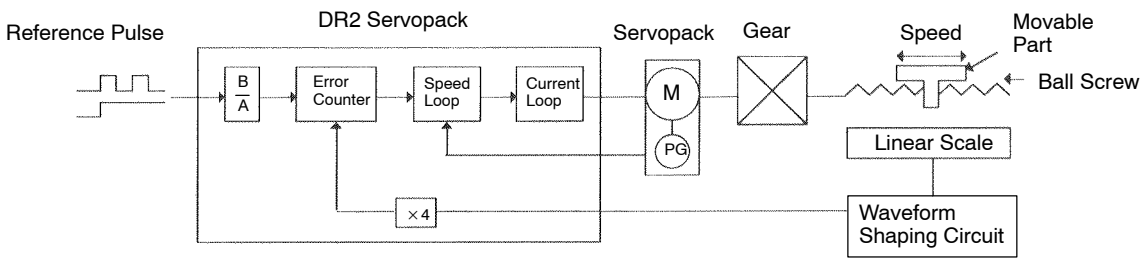




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 1 Grasping the Mechanical Specifications

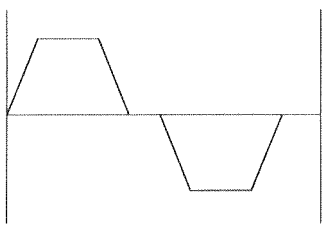
## 1.1 Full-closed Loop System Configuration




## 1.2 Checking the Mechanical Specifications

1) Mechanical Specifications

- Load Speed : V = m/min
- Load Weight : W = kg
- Ball Screw Spec. : Pitch P = mm/rev
- Gear : Gear Ratio = /
- Detection Unit : mm/ PULSE
- Duty Cycle :



G



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2) Applicable Servomotor and Servopack

• Servomotor : (with incremental encoder)

• Servopack : DR2-□-F • • • • Full-closed feedback input conditions:
① Line driver output from linear scale
② Max. frequency : 675kPPS
$\left( \frac{4500 \times 1.1}{60} \times 8192 \fallingdotseq 675\text{kPPS} \right)$

③ Linear scale evaluation magnification : 4

3) Applicable Linear Scale

• Manufacturer :

• Type : , Scale Interval : mm

• Waveform Shaping Circuit : Type =
(Detector EXE, interpolation digital circuit unit)
Max. operation speed = m/min
Max. input frequency = kHz
Output signal form =
Interpolation magnification = • • • • (Conditions under the
Evaluation magnification = combination with
Measuring pitch = μm linear scale)
Min. edge interval = μs • • • • (Combination with Max.
Min. pulse width = μs input frequency)

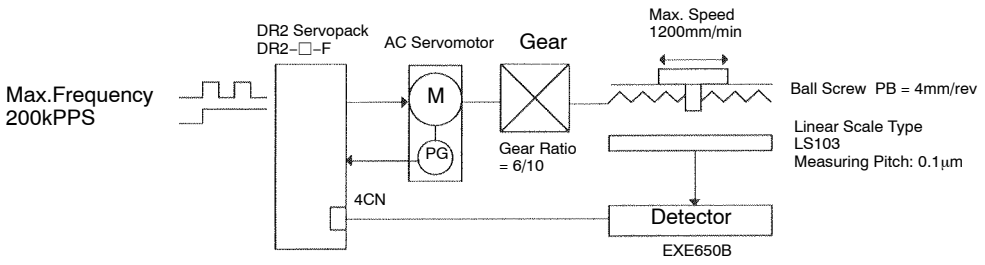




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# 2 Application Example

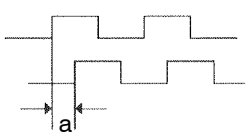
## 2.1 Configuration




## 2.2 Linear Scale Specifications and Application Review at Full-closed System

1) Linear Scale Specifications

- Manufacturer : HEIDENHAIN
- Type : LS103, Scale Interval = 10μm = 0.01mm
- Detector Type : EXE650B
- Max. Input Frequency : 60kHz (Interpolation magnification : 25)
- Interpolation Magnification = 25
- Evaluation Magnification = 4
- Output Signal : 5V line driver output, phase-A leading
  (Conforming to DIN66259, EIA standard RS422)
- Measuring Pitch : 0.1μm
- Min. Edge Interval and Pulse Width




G



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

• When detector EXE650B (interpolation magnification: 25) is used:

| 8MHz Clock | | | 10MHz Clock | | | Switching | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Max. Input Frequency fE max | Min. Edge Interval a min | Min. Pulse Width b min | Max. Input Frequency fE max | Min. Edge Interval a min | Min. Pulse Width b min | S3 | S4 |
| Approx. 60kHz | 0.125μs | 0.125μs | Approx. 60kHz | 0.1μs | 0.1μs | × | × |
| 40kHz | 0.25μs | 0.25μs | 50kHz | 0.2μs | 0.2μs | – | × |
| 20kHz | 0.5μs | 0.5μs | 25kHz | 0.4μs | 0.4μs | × | – |
| 10kHz | 1.0μs | 1.0μs | 12.5kHz | 0.8μs | 0.8s | – | – |

(×: Switch is closed)

2) Application Review

a) Linear Scale :

$$\text{Input Frequency} = \frac{\text{Operation Speed}}{\text{Scale Interval}} = \frac{1200/60}{0.01}$$

$$= 2000\text{PPS} < \text{EXE650B Max.InputFrequency}$$

b) Min. Edge Interval and Pulse Width

DR2 receivable max. frequency : 675kHz

$$\frac{10^6}{675000 \times 4} = 0.3704\ \mu\text{s} < \text{Min. Edge Interval}$$

• With the above a) and b), switching $S_3$ and $S_4$ at 8MHz clock can be performed under both of the following conditions:

| Max. Input Frequency | $S_3$ | $S_4$ |
|---|---|---|
| 20kHz | × | – |
| 10kHz | – | – |

G

c) Feedback Frequency to Detector Output Frequency and Error Counter

Detector Output Frequency = 2000 ×25 = 50000PPS → 50kPPS
Feedback Frequency = 50 ×4 = 200kPPS

d) DR2 User Constant (Cn-24, -25)

$$\text{* Electronic Gear} = \frac{B}{A} = \frac{Cn{-}24}{Cn{-}25} = \frac{Cn{-}2A \times 4}{\dfrac{4 \times 6}{0.0001 \times 10}} = \frac{6000 \times 4}{24000} = \frac{1}{1}$$



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

$$* \text{ Number of Full–closed Pulses} = Cn–2A = \frac{4}{\frac{0.01 \times 10}{25 \times 6}}$$

$$= \frac{4 \times 25 \times 6}{0.01 \times 10} = 6000P/rev$$

. * Memory switch Cn-02 Bit B =1

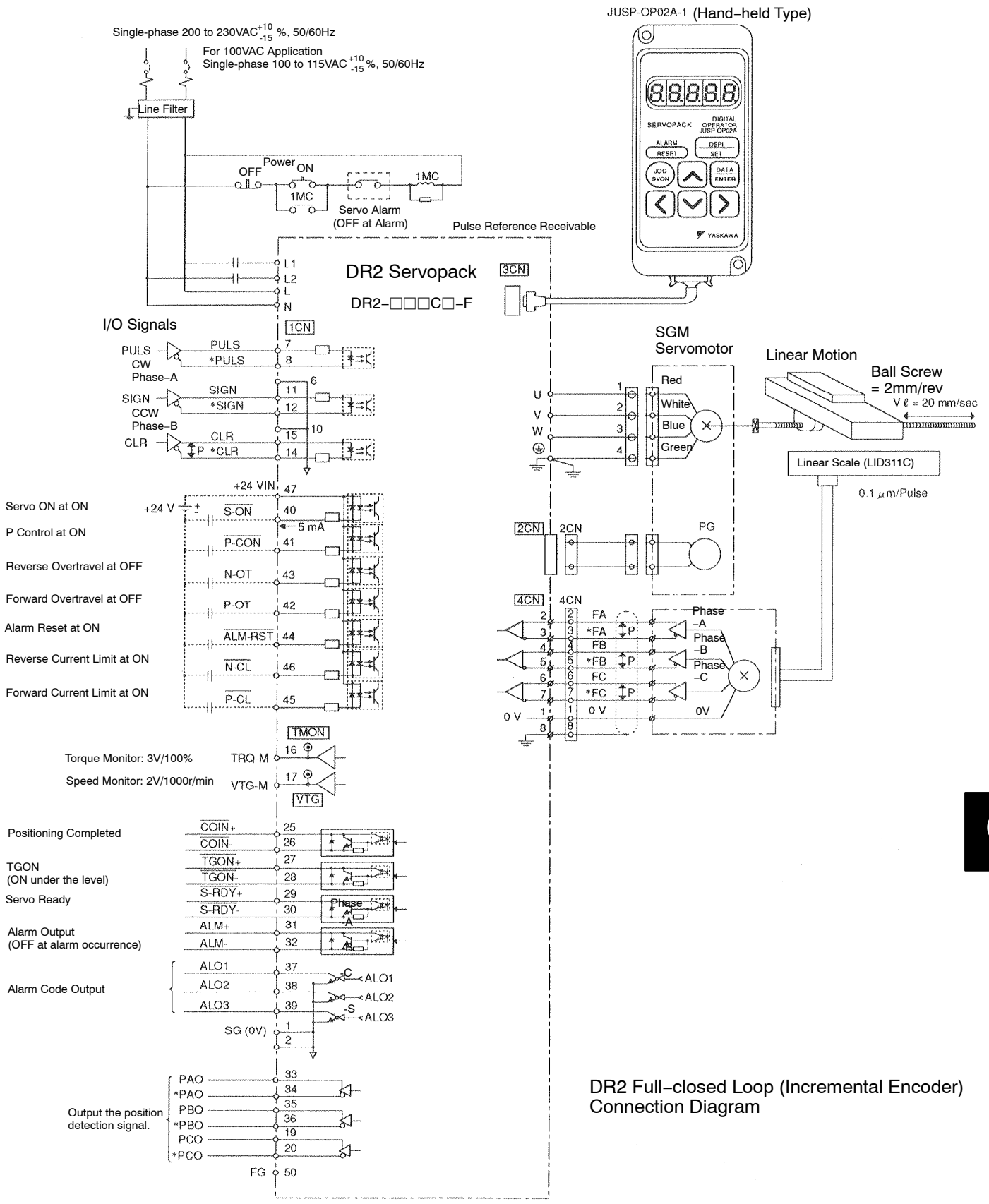
Conditions except above are the same as those of position control at full-closed specifications.

- Reviewing the above data, full-closed loop can be applicable under the above conditions.





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com



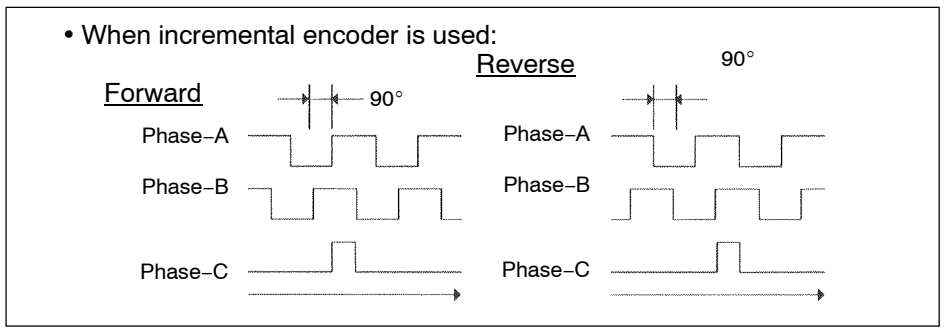

DR2 Full-closed Loop (Incremental Encoder)
Connection Diagram





Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

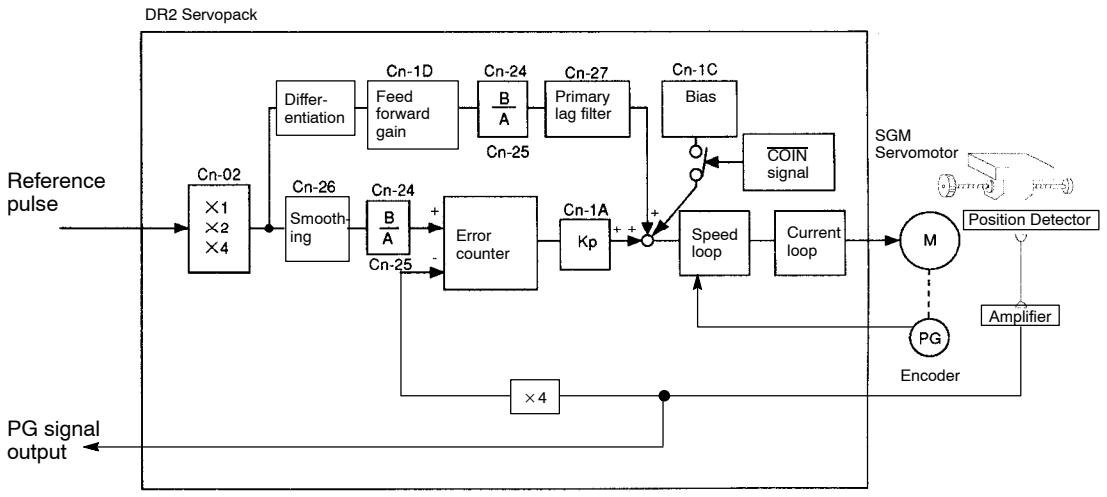
e) Output Phase Form: Refer to the following phase relation for the feedback pulse to Servopack




Forward: CCW when viewed from the drive end

$$\text{Reference pulse frequency} = \frac{20\text{mm/s}}{0.1\mu\text{m/pulse}} = 200\text{kPPS}$$

$$\text{Motor Speed} = \frac{20\text{mm/s}}{2\text{mm/rev}} \times 60\text{s/min} = 600\text{r/min}$$




Note: Semi–closed and full–closed cannot be changed by internal setting.
(DR2–□□□C□–F is the full–closed loop type Servopack.)



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# INDEX

## Numbers

1CN connector
  dimensional drawings, 371
  specifications, 371
1CN connector kit, 27
4CN connector, 385

## A

absolute data
  exchange sequence, 154
  transmitting sequence, 155
absolute value detection system, 151
AC servomotor sizing software, 149
alarm code output, 128
alarm output signals, wiring, 128
alarm signal circuit, test run, 39
alarm traceback data, clearing, 200
alarm traceback mode, 183
alarms
  display, 158
    troubleshooting, 391
  Servo, resetting using Digital Operator, 171
  servo, reset, 171
alignment, Servomotors, 20
analog monitor, 102
autotuning, 191
  precautions, 192
autotuning function, 118
  Digital Operator, 188

## B

battery, 153
  absolute encoder, 371
  replacement, absolute encoder, 390
bits, turning ON and OFF, 178
brake power supply, 26
  dimensional drawings, 363
  internal circuit, 364
  specifications, 363

## C

Cable for motor, 27
Cable for PG, 27
cables, 140
  encoders
    dimensional drawings, 365
    specifications, 365
  for connecting PC and Servopack, 381
  motor
    connectors, 359
    dimensional drawings, 355
    specifications, 355
  specifications, 349
  tension, 140
CE Marking, 416
CLT+, 58
CLT-, 58
comparators, 9
connections
  contact input signal terminals, 80
  contact output signal terminals, 81
  I/O signal terminals, Servopack, 30
Connector kit for motor, 27
Connector kit for PG, 27
connector kits, 358
  dimension drawings, 358
  specifications, 358
connectors
  1CN, test run, 39
  2CN, reverse rotation mode, 53
  absolute encoder, 166
  Digital Operator, 168
  encoder cables, 358
  incremental encoder, 165
  motor cables, 359
  standard−type motor
    with brake, 167
    without brake, 167
  terminal layouts, 163
    Servopack for speed/torque and position control, 163
contact input signal terminals, connections, 80



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

contact input speed control function, 86
  motor speeds, 87
  prohibiting, 62
  soft start time, 87

Contact Input Speed Control Selection, 62

contact output signal terminals, connections, 81

controlled systems
  components, 6
  meaning, 5

## D

deceleration stop mode, 56

detectors
  encoders, 8
  meaning, 5

Digital Operator, 14, 26
  alarm traceback mode, 183
  autotuning, 188
  connection, 170
  dimensional drawings, 334
  mode selection, 172
    monitor mode, 179
    status display mode, 173
    user constant setting mode, 176
  motor operation, 186
  selection, 216
  servo alarm reset, 171
  simple motor check, 186
  test run, 40

dimensional diagrams, noise filter, 374

dimensional drawings
  1CN connector, 371
  brake power supply, 363
  cables, encoders, 365
  connector kits, 358
  Digital Operator, 334
  Encoder Signal Converter Unit, 379
  magnetic contactor, 375
  motor cables, 355
  regenerative unit, 376
  Servomotors, 247–281, 289–323
  Servopacks, 329
  variable resistors, 379

dividing, 76

Dividing ratio setting, 77

drive systems, 6

dynamic brake, 108
  stop mode, 57

## E

electronic gear function, 82
  setting, 82

electronic gear ratio, 82
  for different load mechanisms, 85
  load travel distance per revolution of load shaft in reference units, 83
  machine specifications, 82
  number of encoder pulses for the SGM Servomotor, 82
  reference unit, 83

EMC Instructions, 417

EMC instructions, measures, 418

EN Standard, 416

encoder output, 76
  signals, divided, 76

encoder pulses, number per revolution, 105

Encoder Signal Converter Unit
  dimensional drawings, 379
  specifications, 379

encoders
  absolute, 8, 151
    battery, 371
    battery replacement, 390
    home position error detection, 159
  cables
    connectors, 358
    dimensional drawings, 365
    specifications, 365
  extending cables, 159
  incremental, 8
  specification, 78

error counter
  clear input, 74
  clear signal (CLR), 75
  clearing, 74

European Safe Standard, 416

Exterior type regenerative registor, 26

external torque limit, 60
  forward, 61
  reverse, 61

external torque limit input, 61
  forward, 61



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

reverse, 61

## F

feed-forward control, 120
feedback control, meaning, 3
Forward Run Reference, 52
fuse, 142

## G

gain
  adjustment, 115, 118
  speed reference, 68
GL-Series Positioning Module B2813, connection example, 32
GL-Series Positioning Module B2833, connection example, 31
ground fault detector, 17
ground wire, 140
grounding, 17
  wiring, 143

## H

high-voltage lines, Servopacks, 161
holding brake, 110
  electrical specifications
    100VAC SGM Servomotors, 225
    100VAC SGMP Servomotors, 228
    200VAC SGM Servomotors, 218
    200VAC SGMP Servomotors, 222
home position error detection, 159
host controllers, 5, 10, 27
hot start, 239

## I

I/O Signal Generation Timing, 73
impact resistance, 231
INHIBIT function
  See , reference pulse inhibit function
input pulse multiply function, 73
input signal terminals
  alarm reset, 131
  battery, 78
  error counter clear input, 74
  forward external torque limit input, 61
  forward rotation prohibited, 54
  I/O power supply, 80
  motor rotation direction, 89
  proportional/integral control, 68
  reference pulse input, 71
  reference sign input, 71
  reverse external torque limit input, 61
  reverse rotation prohibited, 54
  SEN signal input, 78
  servo ON, 132
  signal ground for speed reference input, 64, 94
  signal ground for torque reference input, 94
  speed reference input, 64, 94
  speed selection, 88
  torque reference input, 94
  torque/speed changeover, 95
  zero-clamp speed control, 109
inspection, 388, 389
  Servomotors, 388
  Servopacks, 389
installation, 18
  Servomotors, 19
  Servopacks, 22
Installation sites
  Servomotors, 20
  Servopacks, 22
internal torque limit, 57

## J

jog speed, 104

## L

limit switch, 54
  overtravel limit function, 54
load inertia, 241
loads
  allowable radial load, 230
  allowable thrust load, 230
logic setting
  negative, 72
  positive, 72

## M

machine data table, 210



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

machine rigidity, 189
  selection, 192

magnetic contactor, 26
  dimensional drawings, 375
  internal connection diagram, 375
  specifications, 375

maintenance, 388, 389
  Servomotors, 388
  Servopacks, 389

MCCB, 26, 141, 142, 373

mechanical tolerance, 231

memory switches
  See , user constants

MITSUBISHI Positioning Unit AD71 (B Type), connection example, 36

MITSUBISHI Positioning Unit AD72, connection example, 35

mode selection, Digital Operators, 172

mode switch, 122
  detection points
    error pulse, 125
    motor acceleration, 124
    speed reference, 124
    torque reference, 123

molded-case circuit breaker
  See , MCCB

monitor mode, 179

motor
  checking, Digital Operator, 186
  operation, Digital Operator, 186
  type check, 201

## N

N-OT input signal, 55

Nameplate
  Servomotor, 18
  Servopacks, 19

noise control, 17
  filter, 26, 141
    dimensional diagrams, 374
    installation, 144
    specifications, 374
  wiring, 142

## O

OMRON Position Control Unit C500-NC112, connection example, 34

OMRON Position Control Unit C500-NC222, connection example, 33

order lists, 341

output phase, form, 77
  absolute encoder, 77
  incremental encoder, 77

output signal terminals
  alarm code output, 129
  brake interlock output, 111
  encoder output, 77, 78
  frame ground, 78
  output signal ground common, 81
  positioning complete output, 133
  running output, 136
  servo alarm output, 129
  signal ground for alarm code output, 129
  signal ground for encoder output, 78
  signal ground for servo alarm output, 129
  speed coincide output, 134
  torque limit output, 58

overhanging load
  precautions, 17
  Servomotors, 246

overload, characteristics, Servopacks, 239

overtravel
  forward, 54
  reverse, 54

overtravel limit function, 54
  limit switch, 54

## P

P-CON Signal, meaning, 68

P-OT input signal, 55

peripheral devices
  selection, 335
    flowchart, 336
  specifications, 349
  wiring, 25

personal computer, 27

Position Control, illustration, 14

Position Control Mode, 11

position references, inputs, 69
  line driver output, 69



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

open collector output, 70, 71

positioning complete signal, 133

positioning time, minimizing, 118

power amplifiers, 9

Power Consumption, 238

Power for Open Collector Reference, 70

power ON sequence, 29

power ratings, 11

precautions, 16

pressure control, 91

PROGIC-8, 10
connection example, 30

proportional control, 120

proportional/integral control, 9, 120
signal, 68

protective sequence, 128

pulse dividing ratio, 79

pulse trains, 14


## R


radial load, 20

ratings
100VAC SGM Servomotors, 224
100VAC SGMP Servomotors, 227
200VAC SGM Servomotors, 217
200VAC SGMP Servomotors, 221
DR2 Servopacks, 233

reference offset, 195
automatic adjustment, 107, 116, 195
manual adjustment, 107, 116

reference pulse
form, 71
input
allowable voltage level, 74
timing, 74

Reference Pulse Form, 74
Selection, 71

reference pulse inhibit function, 100

Reference Pulse Input, 71

reference pulse input filter selection function, 101

regenerative unit, 26, 148
connection, 150
dimensional drawings, 376
specifications, 376

residual voltage, precautions, 16

reverse rotation mode, 52, 53
2CN connector, 53
user constant, 53

Reverse Run Reference, 52

rotation
forward, prohibiting, 55
reverse, prohibiting, 55

running output signal, 136


## S


SEN signal, 152

Servo amplifier, components, 9

servo amplifiers, 9
meaning, 5

servo drive, meaning, 4

servo mechanisms
illustration, 5
meaning, 2

servo OFF, 56

servo ON input signal, 132

servo ready output signal, 138

servo system
configuration, 5
illustration, 4
meaning, 3, 4

Servomotors
100VAC SGM ratings, 224
100VAC SGM specifications, 224
100VAC SGM torque−motor speed characteristics, 226
100VAC SGMP ratings, 227
100VAC SGMP specifications, 227
100VAC SGMP torque−motor speed characteristics, 229
200VAC SGM ratings, 217
200VAC SGM torque−motor speed characteristics, 220
200VAC SGMP ratings, 221
200VAC SGMP specifications, 221
200VAC SGMP torque−motor speed characteristics, 223




Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

AC, 7
  induction, 7
  synchronous, 7
alignment, 20
components, 7
DC, 7
dimensional drawings, 247–281, 289–323
features, 11
inspection, 388
installation, 19
installation sites, 20
maintenance, 388
meaning, 4, 5
nameplate, 18
overhanging load, 246
selection, 205
  flowchart, 208
  machine data table, 210
setting the type, 106
storage, 19
test run, 39
type designation, 18

Servopacks
dimensional drawings, 329
features, 11
high-voltage lines, 161
inspection, 389
installation, 22
installation sites, 22
instrument connection examples, 411
internal connection diagram, 411
maintenance, 389
meaning, 4
nameplate, 19
overload characteristics, 239
ratings, 233
selection, 212
  flowchart, 214
specifications, 233
storage, 22
test run, 41
type designation, 19

servos
alarm output, 128
alarm reset, 171
control systems, meaning, 4
gain adjustment, 115, 118
meaning, 3
smoothing function, 115
  position reference acceleration/deceleration time constant, 115

soft start function, 90, 114

software, version check, 201

specifications
100VAC SGM Servomotors, 224
100VAC SGMP Servomotors, 227
1CN connector, 371
200VAC SGM Servomotors, 217
200VAC SGMP Servomotors, 221
brake power supply, 363
cables, 349
  encoders, 365
connector kits, 358
DR2 Servopacks, 233
home position pulse, 156
incremental pulse, 156
magnetic contactor, 375
noise filter, 374
peripheral devices, 349
regenerative unit, 376
serial data, 156

speed bias, 121

speed coincide output signal, 134

speed control, 67
  illustration, 12

Speed monitor, 102

speed reference
  gain, 68
  input, 64

Speed Reference Input, 65

speed reference offset, manual adjustment mode, 197

speed references, 64

Speed/Torque Control Mode, 11

starting time, 240

status display mode, 173

stop mode, setting, 107

stop torque, 56

stopping time, 240

Storage
  Servomotors, 19
  Servopacks, 22

supply voltages, precautions, 16



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

surge suppressor, 376

## T

tension control, 91

terminal layout, 2CN, 164

terminal name
  control power supply input, 28
  ground terminal, 28
  main circuit AC input, 28
  motor connection, 28
  regenerative resistor, 28
  regenerative unit connection, 28

terminals, standard−type motor
  with brake, 167
  without brake, 167

Test Run, 37

test run
  minimum user constants, 47
  motor connected to the machine, 43
  motor without load, 39
  position control from the host controller, 46
  servomotor with brake, 45
  step 1, description, 38
  step 1, procedures, 39
  step 2, description, 38
  step 2, procedures, 43

thrust load, 20

Torque Control, illustration, 13

torque control, 57, 91

Torque control I, definition, 13

Torque control II, definition, 13

torque feed−forward function, 97

torque limit
  forward rotation, 57
  input signals, 62
  output signal, 58
  reverse rotation, 57
  value, 99

Torque monitor, 102

Torque Reference Filter Degree, 117

torque reference filter time constant, 116

torque restriction, 57

torque restriction function, 60
  by analog voltage reference, 99
  torque limit value, 61

troubleshooting
  alarm display, 391
  without alarm display, 409

TRQ-M Specifications, 102

TÜV, 417

type designation
  Servomotor, 18
  Servopack, 19

## U

user constant setting mode, 176

user constants, 55, 62
  bias, 121
  brake signal output timing during motor operation, 113
  brake signal speed level output during motor operation, 113
  contact input speed control function, 62
  contact input speed control selection, 86
  control mode selection, 66
  dividing ratio setting, 79, 157
  electronic gear ratio, 84
  emergency stop torque, 56
  encoder type selection, 78, 105, 152
  error counter clear signal selection, 64, 75
  feed-forward gain, 120
  jog speed, 104
  mode switch ON/OFF, 125
  mode switch selection, 126
  motor selection, 106
  motor speeds, 87
  number of encoder pulses, 105, 153
  operation at recovery from power loss, 138
  operation when motor stops after overtravel, 55
  operation when motor stops after servo OFF, 56
  overflow, 119
  PI/P changeover, 120
  position loop gain, 119
  positioning complete range, 133
  reference pulse inhibit function, 100
  reference pulse input filter selection function, 101
  reverse rotation mode, 53
  rotation direction selection, 53
  SEN input signal, 152
  servo ON input signal, 132
  soft start time, 87, 114
  speed coincidence signal output width, 135
  speed limit for torque control I, 96



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

speed loop gain, 119
speed loop integration time constant, 119
speed reference gain, 68, 96
stopping motor at servo OFF, 56, 108
stopping the motor at overtravel, 55
TGON output signal selection, 59, 136, 137
time delay from brake signal output to servo OFF, 112
torque control, 91
torque feed−forward function selection, 97
torque reference filter time constant, 116
torque reference gain, 96, 98, 99
torque restriction by analog voltage reference, 99
zero-clamp speed control, 109
zero-speed level, 138
zero-clamp level, 110

## V

variable resistor, dimensional drawings, 379
vibration class, 232
vibration resistance, 231
voltage resistance test, 17

## W

wiring, 25, 53, 140
grounding, 143
main circuit, 28
more than one servo drive, 147
noise control, 142
peripheral devices, 25
precautions, 16, 140
shorting, 2CN connector, 53

## Z

zero−clamp function, 109
zero-clamp function, meaning, 68
Zero-clamp Speed Control, 67



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

# ΣSeries SGM/SGMP/DR2
# USER'S MANUAL


**TOKYO OFFICE**
New Pier Takeshiba South Tower, 1-16-1, Kaigan, Minatoku, Tokyo 105-6891 Japan
Phone 81-3-5402-4511 Fax 81-3-5402-4580

**YASKAWA ELECTRIC AMERICA, INC.**
2121 Norman Drive South, Waukegan, IL 60085, U.S.A.
Phone 1-847-887-7000 Fax 1-847-887-7370

**MOTOMAN INC. HEADQUARTERS**
805 Liberty Lane West Carrollton, OH 45449, U.S.A.
Phone 1-937-847-6200 Fax 1-937-847-6277

**YASKAWA ELÉTRICO DO BRASIL COMÉRCIO LTDA.**
Avenida Fagundes Filho, 620 Bairro Saude-Sao Pãulo-SP, Brazil CEP: 04304-000
Phone 55-11-5071-2552 Fax 55-11-5581-8795

**YASKAWA ELECTRIC EUROPE GmbH**
Am Kronberger Hang 2, 65824 Schwalbach, Germany
Phone 49-6196-569-300 Fax 49-6196-888-301

**Motoman Robotics Europe AB**
Box 504 S38525 Torsås, Sweden
Phone 46-486-48800 Fax 46-486-41410

**Motoman Robotec GmbH**
Kammerfeldstraβe1, 85391 Allershausen, Germany
Phone 49-8166-900 Fax 49-8166-9039

**YASKAWA ELECTRIC UK LTD.**
1 Hunt Hill Orchardton Woods Cumbernauld, G68 9LF, United Kingdom
Phone 44-1236-735000 Fax 44-1236-458182

**YASKAWA ELECTRIC KOREA CORPORATION**
Kfpa Bldg #1201, 35-4 Youido-dong, Yeongdungpo-Ku, Seoul 150-010, Korea
Phone 82-2-784-7844 Fax 82-2-784-8495

**YASKAWA ELECTRIC (SINGAPORE) PTE. LTD.**
151 Lorong Chuan, #04-01, New Tech Park Singapore 556741, Singapore
Phone 65-282-3003 Fax 65-289-3003

**YASKAWA ELECTRIC (SHANGHAI) CO., LTD.**
4F No.18 Aona Road, Waigaoqiao Free Trade Zone, Pudong New Area, Shanghai 200131, China
Phone 86-21-5866-3470 Fax 86-21-5866-3869

**YATEC ENGINEERING CORPORATION**
Shen Hsiang Tang Sung Chiang Building 10F 146 Sung Chiang Road, Taipei, Taiwan
Phone 886-2-2563-0010 Fax 886-2-2567-4677

**YASKAWA ELECTRIC (HK) COMPANY LIMITED**
Rm. 2909-10, Hong Kong Plaza, 186-191 Connaught Road West, Hong Kong
Phone 852-2803-2385 Fax 852-2547-5773

**BEIJING OFFICE**
Room No. 301 Office Building of Beijing International Club, 21
Jianguomenwai Avenue, Beijing 100020, China
Phone 86-10-6532-1850 Fax 86-10-6532-1851

**TAIPEI OFFICE**
Shen Hsiang Tang Sung Chiang Building 10F 146 Sung Chiang Road, Taipei, Taiwan
Phone 886-2-2563-0010 Fax 886-2-2567-4677

**SHANGHAI YASKAWA-TONGJI M & E CO., LTD.**
27 Hui He Road Shanghai China 200437
Phone 86-21-6531-4242 Fax 86-21-6553-6060

**BEIJING YASKAWA BEIKE AUTOMATION ENGINEERING CO., LTD.**
30 Xue Yuan Road, Haidian, Beijing P.R. China Post Code: 100083
Phone 86-10-6233-2782 Fax 86-10-6232-1536

**SHOUGANG MOTOMAN ROBOT CO., LTD.**
7, Yongchang-North Street, Beijing Economic Technological Investment & Development Area,
Beijing 100076, P.R. China
Phone 86-10-6788-0551 Fax 86-10-6788-2878

YASKAWA ELECTRIC CORPORATION

YASKAWA



MANUAL NO. TSE-S800-17D



Specifications are subject to change without notice
for ongoing product modifications and improvements.

© Printed in Japan September 1999 96-1 ◈9◈
99-7③
94-C71-099, 94-S23-047L



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

**Artisan Technology Group** is an independent supplier of quality pre-owned equipment

## Gold-standard solutions

Extend the life of your critical industrial, commercial, and military systems with our superior service and support.

## We buy equipment

Planning to upgrade your current equipment? Have surplus equipment taking up shelf space? We'll give it a new home.

## Learn more!

Visit us at **artisantg.com** for more info on price quotes, drivers, technical specifications, manuals, and documentation.

Artisan Scientific Corporation dba Artisan Technology Group is not an affiliate, representative, or authorized distributor for any manufacturer listed herein.

We're here to make your life easier. How can we help you today?

(217) 352-9330 | sales@artisantg.com | artisantg.com

ARTISAN® TECHNOLOGY GROUP